

A
GRAMMAR
OF THE
LATIN LANGUAGE:

For the Use of Schools.

WITH EXERCISES AND VOCABULARIES.

✓ BY
WM. BINGHAM, A.M.
SUPERINTENDENT OF THE BINGHAM SCHOOL.



PHILADELPHIA:
PUBLISHED BY E. H. BUTLER & CO.
RALEIGH, N. C.: WM. B. SMITH & CO.
1867.

✓

PA 2087
B63
1867

Entered, according to Act of Congress, in the year 1866, by

WILLIAM BINGHAM,

in the Clerk's Office of the District Court of the United States for the Pamlico
District of North Carolina.

ELECTROTYPED BY L. JOHNSON & CO.
PHILADELPHIA.
SHERMAN & CO., PRINTERS.

P R E F A C E

TO THE SECOND EDITION.

IN preparing the accompanying work, it has been the aim of the author to supply what he has felt in his own experience to be a great desideratum,—a *practical first book in Latin*, suited to the capacity of beginners, and yet full enough for a book of reference throughout a course of preparation for college. Free use has been made of the works of the best German, English, and American authors, and no pains has been spared to produce a book adapted to the wants of our youth.

It will be observed that the paradigms have been syllabicated with reference to the English method of pronunciation; but the teacher can without difficulty use either the Roman or the Continental method.

Madvig's system of gender in the third declension has been adopted, as the most philosophical and the shortest, all the rules and exceptions occupying but two pages; and, though teachers will find it inconvenient to have old associations broken up, the author is convinced that a

fair trial will satisfy all that this system is the best. The gender of nouns is purposely omitted in the vocabularies, to compel the pupil to apply the rules, which will be found to cover all cases.

The exercises have been taken, for the most part, from classical authors, and are so arranged as to constitute a continual review of what precedes. Those teachers who prefer the synthetic method of instruction, to the exclusion of the analytic, can omit the exercises, as the work is complete without them. They are intended to supply the place of a Latin Reader; and it will be found that when a pupil has mastered them he is prepared to take up *Cæsar*.

Many facts of the language, which the pupil will readily find out for himself, have been omitted; also a number which properly pertain to the subject of Latin prose composition, on which subject the author proposes to prepare a work for the use of schools.

In revising for a second edition, great care has been taken to remedy all defects discovered in the practical working of the book as at first presented to the public; and the author commends it to teachers with the hope that they will find it a valuable auxiliary in their noble work of developing mind.

BINGHAM SCHOOL, MEBANEVILLE, N.C.

October 30, 1866.

CONTENTS.

ETYMOLOGY.

	PAGE		PAGE
LETTERS.....	9	Irregular Nouns, Third Decl....	55
DIPHTHONGS	10	Summary of Rules of Gender..	57
PRONUNCIATION	10	Masculines.....	57
SYLLABLES.....	10	Feminines.....	58
EXPLANATION OF MARKS.....	11	Neuters.....	59
QUANTITY, ACCENT.....	11	Peculiar Case-Endings.....	59
DIVISION OF WORDS	12	Fourth Declension.....	64
NOUNS.....	12	Fifth Declension.....	67
Gender	13	Variable Nouns.....	69
General Rules.....	13	Heterogeneous Nouns.....	69
Number	14	Heteroclites.....	70
Case	14	Defective Nouns.....	70
Person.....	14	ADJECTIVES.....	75
Inflection	15	Adjectives of First and Second	
First Declension.....	15	Declension	75
Second Declension.....	25	Adjectives of Third Declension...	80
Stems in <i>ēr</i>	28	Numeral Adjectives.....	85
Dative Case	29	Cardinals.....	86
Ablative Case	31	Ordinals, Distributives, and Ad-	
Third Declension	32	verbs.....	88
Class I.....	34	Comparison of Adjectives	93
Class II.....	37	Formation of Comparative and	
Class III.....	41	Superlative.	94
Class IV.....	43	Irregular Comparison	98
Class V.....	45	Defective Comparison.....	100
Masculine Forms	45	PRONOUNS	105
Neuter Forms	47	Substantive Personal Pronouns..	106
Class VI.....	48	Adjective Personal, or Possessive,	
Masculine Forms.....	49	Pronouns.....	109
Feminine Forms.....	51	Demonstrative Pronouns.....	112
Neuter Forms.....	53	<i>Is, Idem</i>	114
		<i>Hic, Iste, Ille</i>	116

	PAGE		PAGE
Intensive Pronoun.....	118	Irregular Verbs.....	174
Relative Pronouns.....	121	Defective Verbs.....	184
Interrogatives.....	124	Impersonal Verbs.....	187
Indefinites	127	Endings of.....	187
Correlatives.....	130	PARTICLES.....	189
VERBS.....	19, 133	Adverbs	189
Moods.....	19, 134	Comparison of Adverbs.....	193
Tenses	20, 61, 134	Prepositions	193
Voices.....	136	Prepositions in Composition ...	195
Persons and Numbers	136	Conjunctions.....	197
The Indefinite Verb.....	137	Copulative.....	197
Conjugation.....	138	Disjunctive	198
Conjugation of <i>Esse</i>	139	Adversative	199
First Conjugation.....	20, 141	Causal	200
Second Conjugation.....	71, 149	Conclusive.....	201
Third Conjugation.....	102, 154	Final	202
Fourth Conjugation.....	102, 159	Conditional	202
Table of Endings	164	Concessive	202
Verbs in <i>io</i> of the Third Conju-		Temporal.....	202
gation.....	167	Comparative.....	202
The Passive Construction.....	169	Interjections.....	203
Deponent Verbs.....	170		

SYNTAX.

SUBJECT AND PREDICATE	203	Dative of Purpose or End.....	221
AGREEMENT	204	Dative of the Agent.....	222
APPOSITION.....	206	Dativus Ethicus	222
ADJECTIVES.....	207	ACCUSATIVE CASE	225
RELATIVES.....	209	Direct Object.....	225
NOMINATIVE CASE.....	210	Accusative of Time and Space ...	227
GENITIVE CASE.....	211	Accusative of Place whither.....	227
Genitive of Quality.....	212	Accusative of Limitation	228
Genitive of Property	212	VOCATIVE CASE.....	231
Partitive Genitive	212	ABLATIVE CASE.....	231
Objective Genitive with Adjec-		Ablative of Cause, etc.....	231
tives and Verbs.....	213	Ablative of Limitation.....	233
Genitive of Crime.....	214	Ablative of Price.....	233
Genitive of Price.....	215	Ablative of Separation.....	233
DATIVE CASE.....	220	Ablative of Quality.....	233
Dative of Indirect Object.....	220	Ablative of Comparison.....	234
Dative of Advantage or Disad-		Ablative of Place where.....	235
vantage	220	Ablative of Time when.....	235
Dative of Reference.....	221	Ablative of Difference.....	236
Dative of Possession	221	Ablative with Prepositions.....	236
		THE PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.....	241

	PAGE		PAGE
THE INDEFINITE VERB.....	242	INFINITIVE PROPOSITIONS.....	255
Infinitive.....	242	CAUSAL PROPOSITIONS.....	259
Subject Infinitive.....	242	FINAL PROPOSITIONS.....	262
Complementary Infinitive.....	242	CONDITIONAL PROPOSITIONS.....	268
Historical Infinitive.....	243	CONCESSIVE PROPOSITIONS.....	272
Gerund and Gerundive.....	243	COMPARATIVE PROPOSITIONS.....	274
Supine.....	245	TEMPORAL PROPOSITIONS.....	276
PREPOSITIONS, SYNTAX OF.....	248	RELATIVE PROPOSITIONS.....	281
THE MOODS.....	249	INTERROGATIVE PROPOSITIONS.....	286
TENSES.....	250	ORATIO OBLIQUA.....	289
Succession of Tenses.....	250		
PARTICIPIAL PROPOSITIONS.....	251		
Ablative Absolute.....	252		

APPENDICES.

I.—GREEK NOUNS OF THE FIRST DE- CLENSION.....	292	VII.—THE VARIOUS FORMATIONS OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.....	304
II.—GREEK NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.....	292	First Conjugation.....	304
III.—GREEK NOUNS OF THE THIRD DE- CLENSION.....	293	Second Conjugation.....	305
IV.—DERIVATION OF NOUNS.....	293	Third Conjugation.....	308
Denominative Nouns.....	294	Inceptive Verbs.....	313
Abstract Nouns.....	294	Deponent Verbs, Third Conju- gation.....	315
Verbal Nouns.....	294	Fourth Conjugation.....	315
DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.....	295	Deponent Verbs, Fourth Conju- gation.....	316
Denominative Adjectives.....	296	VIII.—ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING TIME.....	317
Verbal Adjectives.....	296	IX.—PROSODY.....	318
DERIVATION OF VERBS.....	297	Quantity.....	318
V.—ANALYSIS OF TENSE-FORMATION....	298	Increments.....	321
Personal Endings.....	299	Singular Increments.....	321
Mood-Signs.....	299	Plural Increments.....	322
Tense-Signs.....	300	Increment of Verbs.....	322
Parts on the Present-Stem... 300, 302		Penults.....	323
Parts on the Perfect-Stem.... 301, 302		Antepenults.....	326
VI.—PECULIARITIES OF TENSE-FORM- ATION.....	303	Final Syllables.....	326
Tenses formed on the Present- Stem.....	303	Monosyllables.....	326
Tenses formed on the Perfect- Stem.....	303	Polysyllables.....	326
Compound Verbs.....	304	Versification.....	328
		Metre and Verses.....	329
		Figures of Prosody.....	330
		Rhythm.....	331

PROSODY (continued).	PAGE		PAGE
Dactylic Metre.....	332	Stanzas	339
Anapæstic Metre.....	334	Horatian Metres	339
Iambic Metre.....	334	Metrical Key to the Odes of	
Trochaic Metre.....	336	Horace.....	341
Choriambic Metre.....	337	X.—FIGURES	342
Ionic Metre.....	338	Figures of Etymology.....	342
Compound Metres.....	338	Figures of Syntax.....	343

VOCABULARIES.

LATIN-ENGLISH	345	ENGLISH-LATIN	372
---------------------	-----	---------------------	-----

LATIN GRAMMAR.

§ 1. LATIN GRAMMAR is the science of the Latin language. It treats of the words of the language, and of the laws by which they are combined into sentences. It is divided into Etymology and Syntax.

ETYMOLOGY.

§ 2. Etymology treats—1. Of the letters which make up words, and their pronunciation; 2. Of the changes which words undergo; 3. Of their derivation.

LETTERS.

§ 3. A letter is a mark used to represent a sound of the human voice.

In the Latin alphabet there are twenty-five letters. They are A, a; B, b; C, c; D, d; E, e; F, f; G, g; H, h; I, i; J, j; K, k; L, l; M, m; N, n; O, o; P, p; Q, q; R, r; S, s; T, t; U, u; V, v; X, x; Y, y; Z, z.

Remark.—I and J were originally the same letter; so also were U and V. K, Y, and Z are used only in words derived from the Greek. H is a breathing. The Romans used only the capital letters.

§ 4. Letters are divided into vowels and consonants. The vowels are a, e, i, o, u, y.

Of the consonants,	{	four are liquids, l, m, n, r; three are c sounds, c, g, q; four are p sounds, p, b, f, v; two are t sounds, t, d; two are double consonants, x, z.
--------------------	---	--

DIPHTHONGS.

§ 5. A diphthong is the union of two vowels in one sound. The diphthongs are ae, oe (often written together, æ, œ), ai, au, ei, eu, oi.

PRONUNCIATION.

§ 6. *Continental Method.*

Short <i>a</i> , as in <i>hat</i> .	Long <i>o</i> , as in <i>no</i> .
Long <i>a</i> , as in <i>father</i> .	<i>u</i> , as <i>o</i> in <i>do</i> .
Short <i>e</i> , as in <i>met</i> .	œ and œ, as <i>a</i> in <i>made</i> .
Long <i>e</i> , as <i>a</i> in <i>made</i> .	<i>au</i> , as <i>ou</i> in <i>our</i> .
Short <i>i</i> , as in <i>sit</i> .	<i>eu</i> , as in <i>feud</i> .
Long <i>i</i> , as in <i>machine</i> .	<i>ei</i> , as <i>i</i> in <i>ice</i> .
Short <i>o</i> , as in <i>not</i> .	

§ 7. *English Method.*

The letters are pronounced as in English.

Exc. 1. Final *a* has the broad sound, as in *ah*. Other final vowels have the long sound.

Exc. 2. *Es* final is pronounced like the English *ease*.

Exc. 3. *Os* final in plural cases is pronounced like *ose* in *dose*.

Exc. 4. *C* has the sound of *s* before *e*, *i*, and *y*, and the diphthongs *æ*, *œ*, and *eu*. Otherwise it has the sound of *k*.

Exc. 5. *Ch* has the sound of *k*.

Exc. 6. *G* has the sound of *j* before *e*, *i*, *y*, *æ*, and *œ*.

SYLLABLES.

§ 8. There are no silent vowels in Latin; but every

word has as many syllables as it has vowels or diphthongs: as, *ma-re*.

A word of one syllable is called a *monosyllable*; a word of two syllables, a *dissyllable*; a word of more than two, a *polysyllable*.

The last syllable of a word is called the *ultimate*; the next to the last, the *penult*; the third from the last, the *antepenult*.

EXPLANATION OF MARKS.

§ 9. The marks of punctuation are the *comma* (,), used to mark the shortest pause; the *semicolon* (;), used to mark a pause twice as long as the comma; the *colon* (:), used to mark a pause three times as long as the comma; the *period* (.), used to mark the longest pause; the *interrogation point* (?), which shows that a question is asked; and the *exclamation point* (!), used to mark expressions of surprise, grief, &c.

The marks of quantity are (—) to indicate a long vowel; (˘) to indicate a short vowel; and (˝) to indicate that a vowel is sometimes long and sometimes short.

The *dieresis* (¨) shows that the vowel over which it is placed does not form a diphthong with the vowel before it: as, *æër*.

The *circumflex* (^) marks a contracted syllable: as, *quîs* for *quibus*.

QUANTITY, ACCENT.

§ 10. *Rule 1.*—All diphthongs are long.

Rule 2.—A vowel before another vowel is short: as, *dě-us*, *lě-o*.

Rule 3.—A vowel before two consonants or a double consonant is long by position: as, *o* in *propter*; *a* in *axis*.

Rule 4.—Dissyllables are accented on the penult: as, *dě-us*.

Rule 5.—Polysyllables are accented—

(a) on the penult if the penult is long: as, le-ō-nis ;

(b) on the antepenult if the penult is short: as, dōm-
ī-nus.

DIVISION OF WORDS.

§ 11. I. Words are divided according to their *formation* into—

1. *Primitive*; i.e. not derived from other words: as, *man*, *king*.

2. *Derivative*; i.e. derived from other words: as, *manly*, *kingdom*.

3. *Simple*; i.e. not made up of other words: as, *man*.

4. *Compound*; i.e. made up of other words: as, *man-kind*.

II. Words are divided according to their *meaning* into eight classes, called parts of speech: viz. the *Noun*, *Adjective*, *Pronoun*, *Verb*, *Adverb*, *Preposition*, *Conjunction*, *Interjection*.

NOUNS.

§ 12. 1. A noun is the name of a thing: as, *man*, *city*.

NOTE.—A *thing* is whatever one can *think* of. (*Thing*,—*think*; *rēs*,—*reōr*.)

2. A *common* noun is the name of any one of a class of things: as, *man*, *city*.

3. A *proper* noun is the name of an individual thing: as, *Cæsar*, *Rome*.

4. An *abstract* noun is the name of a quality, action, being, or mode of action or being: as, *goodness*, *running*, *sickness*.

5. A *material* noun is the name of a substance or material: as, *gold, iron, water*.

6. A *collective* noun is a common noun which in the singular denotes more than one: as, *multitude*.

GENDER, NUMBER, CASE, PERSON.

§ 13. 1. To nouns belong *gender, number, case, and person*.

Gender.

2. Gender means kind, or class. As used by grammarians, it denotes the kind or class of a noun with reference to the sex of the thing the noun denotes.

3. *Natural gender* is determined by sex: thus, the names of males are *naturally* masculine.

4. *Grammatical gender* is determined, not by sex, but by declension and termination: thus, *mensa*, a table, is feminine (though it is the name of a thing without life), because it is of the first declension.

5. *General Rules of Gender.*

Rule 1.—Names of *male beings*, and of most *rivers, winds, months, mountains, and nations*, are masculine.

Rule 2.—Names of *female beings, cities, countries, trees, plants, islands, ships, and gems*, are feminine.

Rule 3.—Nouns which are neither masculine nor feminine are neuter.

Rule 4.—Some nouns are either masculine or feminine. These, if they are names of living beings, are said to be of the *common* gender; if of things without life, of the *doubtful* gender.

Number.

§ 14. *Number* is the variation of form which shows whether one thing is meant, or more than one.

The *singular* number is the form which denotes one thing: as, *stell-a*, a star; the *plural* is the form which denotes more than one: as, *stell-æ*, stars.

Case.

§ 15. *Case* is the variation of form which shows the relation of the noun to other words.

Latin nouns have six cases: viz.

(a) The *nominative*, which answers the question *who?* or *what?* and gives the simple name of the thing spoken of.

(b) The *genitive*, which marks those relations expressed in English by *of*, or the possessive case: as, *umbra*, the shade (*of what?*), *sylvæ*, of the forest.

(c) The *dative*, which denotes that *to* or *for* which, or *with reference to* which, any thing is, or is done.

(d) The *accusative*, which is the object of a transitive verb, or of certain prepositions.

(e) The *vocative*, which is used when a person is addressed.

(f) The *ablative*, which marks those relations expressed in English by *from*, *with*, *in*, *by*.

Person.

§ 16. *Person* means the character which a noun or a pronoun has, according as it represents the *speaker*, the person *spoken to*, or the thing *spoken of*.

A noun or a pronoun representing the *speaker* is of the

first person: as, *I, Darius, make a decree*. Here “*I*” and “*Darius*” are of the first person.

A noun or a pronoun representing the person *spoken to* is of the second person: as, *Do you hear me, Robert?* Here “*you*” and “*Robert*” are of the second person.

Remark.—Things without life are sometimes addressed, and are then said to be *personified*, or treated as persons.

A noun or a pronoun representing the thing spoken of is of the third person: as, *John runs, water freezes*. Here “*John*” and “*water*” are of the third person.

INFLECTION.

§ 17. The changes which words undergo to express their different relations are called *inflection*.

The inflection of nouns is called *declension*; that of verbs, *conjugation*.

There are five declensions in Latin, distinguished by the endings of the genitive singular.

THE FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 18. Latin nouns which have *æ* in the genitive singular are of the first declension. The terminations are—

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom	ă,	æ,
Gen.	æ,	ārŭm,
Dat.	æ,	īs,
Acc.	ăm,	ās,
Voc.	ă,	æ,
Abl.	ā;	īs.

By adding these terminations to the stem *mens-*, which means *a table*, we have the following

PARADIGM.*

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>mens'-ă</i> , a table.	<i>mens'-æ</i> , tables.
Gen. <i>mens'-æ</i> , of a table.	<i>mens-ă'-rŭm</i> , of tables.
Dat. <i>mens'-æ</i> , to or for a table.	<i>mens'-īs</i> , to or for tables.
Acc. <i>mens'-ăm</i> , a table.	<i>mens'-ās</i> , tables.
Voc. <i>mens'-ă</i> , O table!	<i>mens'-æ</i> , O tables!
Abl. <i>mens'-ă</i> , with, from, in, a table.	<i>mens'-īs</i> , with, from, in, by tables.

Remark 1.—The Latin has no article: therefore *mensa* may be rendered *a* table, or *the* table, according to the connection.

Remark 2.—An old genitive in *ăi* sometimes occurs.

Remark 3.—The noun *fămiliă* has *fămiliās* in the genitive after *pătěr*, *mătěr*, *filiŭs*, and *filiă*: as, *pătěr fămiliās*, the father of a family.

Remark 4.—A contracted genitive plural in *um* is sometimes found, especially in words of Greek origin.

Remark 5.—*Deă*, a goddess, *ěquă*, a mare, *filiă*, a daughter, and *mŭlă*, a she-mule, have sometimes *ăbŭs* in the dative and ablative plural.

Rule of Gender.—Latin nouns of the first declension are feminine.

Exc. 1. Names of male beings, rivers, and mountains are masculine by the general rule (§ 13); but a few names of rivers, with *Ossă* and *Ėtă*, names of mountains, are sometimes feminine.

Exc. 2. *Hadriă*, the Adriatic Sea, is masculine; *dămă*, a fallow deer, and *talpă*, a mole, are common.

For Greek nouns of first declension, see Appendix I.

EXERCISE I.

§ 19. Like *mensa* decline the following nouns, and commit to memory their meanings.

* In all paradigms the accented syllable is italicized.

ăquîlă,	eagle.	ëpistolă,	letter.
ăquă,	water.	naută,*	sailor.
cölobă,	dove.	insulă,	island.
cörönă,	crown.	lună,	moon.
ără,	altar.	mëdicină,	medicine.
agricölă,*	farmer.	poetă,	poet.
ălă,	wing.	rëgină,	queen.
ancillă,	maid-servant.	füğă,	flight.
injuriă,	injury.	plumă,	feather.
Belgă,	a Belgian.	filiă,	daughter.

Translate into English.

Cölobæ. Cörönärüm. Arīs. Rëginām. Filiābūs.
 Injuriīs. Belgārüm. Füğă. Alīs. Ancillæ. Ancillīs.
 Injuriārüm. Cölobīs.

Translate into Latin.

Of water. For the farmer. Of the maid-servants.
 To the farmers. By wings. Of feathers. To sailors.
 The letter. By the letters. In the island. Of islands.
 Of the moon.

EXERCISE II.

§ 20. *Rule of Syntax.*—A noun in the genitive limits the meaning of another noun denoting a different thing.

Thus, *pluma* means a feather, any feather; but when the genitive *columbæ* is added, the application of *pluma* is limited or confined to the dove: *columbæ pluma* means a dove's feather, and no other sort. Observe that the feather and the dove are different things.

Rule of Position.—The emphatic word, whether limiting or limited, stands first. Thus, *filiă rëginæ*, the daughter (not the son) of the queen; *rëginæ filiă*, the queen's (not the king's) daughter.

* See § 18, Exc. 1.

Translate into English.

Cöľumbæ plūmā. Cöľumbārūm plūmā. Cöľumbæ āľis.
 Fīľiā agricōľæ. Agricōľæ fīľiā. Agricōľārūm fīľiābūs.
 Rēgīnārūm cōrōnæ. Cōrōnæ rēgīnārūm. Nautæ ĕpistōľā.
 Injūriā poētæ. Insūľā Belgārūm. Fūgā ancillæ. Ancil-
 lārūm fūgā.

Translate into Latin.

(Emphatic words are in italics.)

In the island of the Belgians. For the altars of the Belgians. A *sailor's* letter. The *queen's* letter. By the *flight* of the farmer. The flight of the farmer's doves. The injury of the queen's maid-servants. O daughters of the queen's maid-servants! The water of the island.

EXERCISE III.

Subject and Predicate. Partial Conjugation of Verbs.

§ 21. I. A *proposition* is a thought expressed in words: as, *snow melts*.

A *simple sentence* consists of a single proposition; a *compound sentence* consists of several propositions combined.

1. Every proposition consists of—

(a) A *Predicate*; i.e. that which is *declared*;

(b) A *Subject*; i.e. that of which the declaration is made.

In the proposition "*snow melts*," the predicate is "*melts*," because "*melts*" is what is declared or asserted about "*snow*;" the subject is "*snow*," because it is the thing about which the declaration is made. What *melts*? *snow*.

2. The *Predicate* consists of a verb alone (as, *melts* in the above example), or the verb *to be* with a noun, adjective, or participle: as, *snow is cold*.

3. The *Subject* consists of a noun, or some word or phrase used as a noun, and may be known by asking the question *who?* or *what?* with the predicate: as, *John runs.* (*Who runs? John.*) *To play is pleasant.* (*What is pleasant? To play.*)

4. The subject and predicate may stand alone, or each may have other words limiting its meaning: as, *boys run; some boys run fast.*

II. A verb is a word which declares or affirms something.

1. Verbs have—

(a) *Moods*, or different forms which express different *kinds* of affirmation.

(b) *Tenses*, or different forms to show the *time* when the thing declared takes place, and whether the action is complete or incomplete.

(c) *Voices*, or different forms which show whether the subject acts (as, *John strikes*) or is acted upon (as, *John is struck*).

(d) *Persons* and *Numbers*, or different forms which correspond to the person and number of the subject.

2. These various forms are distinguished from one another by certain endings; and the adding of these endings to the *stem* is called *Conjugation*.

MOODS.

III. 1. The *Infinitive* mood expresses the action of the verb *simply*, without limiting it to any subject: as, *ăm-ărě, to love.*

2. The *Indicative* mood declares a thing as a fact, or asks a question: as, *ămăt, he loves; ămat-ně? does he love?*

TENSES.

IV. 1. The *Present* tense expresses incomplete action in present time: as, *āmo*, *I love*, *I am loving*.

2. The *Imperfect* tense expresses incomplete action in past time: as, *āmābām*, *I was loving*.

3. The *Future* tense expresses incomplete action in future time: as, *āmābo*, *I will love*, *I will be loving*.

CONJUGATIONS.

V. 1. There are four Conjugations, distinguished from one another by the termination of the Infinitive Present Active. The Infinitive Present Active of the First Conjugation ends in *-ārē*.

Rule.—To find the stem of a verb, strike off the *Infinitive ending*.

ACTIVE TERMINATIONS.*

INFINITIVE, *ā'-rē*.

INDICATIVE.

	Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
	<i>Singular.</i>		
1st Person,	ō,	<i>ā'-bām</i> ,	<i>ā'-bō</i> ,
2d “	<i>ās</i> ,	<i>ā'-bās</i> ,	<i>ā'-bīs</i> ,
3d “	<i>āt</i> ;	<i>ā'-bāt</i> ;	<i>ā'-bīt</i> ;
	<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Person,	<i>ā'-mūs</i> ,	<i>ā-bā'-mūs</i> ,	<i>āb'-ī-mūs</i> ,
2d “	<i>ā'-tīs</i> ,	<i>ā-bā'-tīs</i> ,	<i>āb'-ī-tīs</i> ,
3d “	<i>ānt</i> .	<i>ā'-bant</i> .	<i>ā'-bunt</i> .

* Accented syllables are italicized.

By adding these terminations to the stem *ām-* of *āmārě*, to love, we have the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.

INFINITIVE PRESENT, *ă-mā'-rě*, to love.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ă'-mǔ</i> ,	<i>I love, or am loving,</i>
<i>ă'-mās</i> ,	<i>thou lovest, or art loving,</i>
<i>ă'-măt</i> ,	<i>he loves, or is loving,</i>
<i>Plur.</i> <i>ă-mā'-mūs</i> ,	<i>we love, or are loving,</i>
<i>ă-mā'-tīs</i> ,	<i>ye or you love, or are loving,</i>
<i>ă'-mant</i> ,	<i>they love, or are loving.</i>

Imperfect.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ă-mā'-bām</i> ,	<i>I was loving,</i>
<i>ă-mā'-bās</i> ,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>
<i>ă-mā'-băt</i> ,	<i>he was loving,</i>
<i>Plur.</i> <i>ăm-ā-bā'-mūs</i> ,	<i>we were loving,</i>
<i>ăm-ā-bā'-tīs</i> ,	<i>ye or you were loving,</i>
<i>ă-mā'-bant</i> ,	<i>they were loving.</i>

Future.

<i>Sing.</i> <i>ă-mā'-bǔ</i> ,	<i>I shall love,</i>
<i>ă-mā'-bīs</i> ,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>
<i>ă-mā'-bīt</i> ,	<i>he will love,</i>
<i>Plur.</i> <i>ă-māb'-ī-mūs</i> ,	<i>we shall love,</i>
<i>ă-māb'-ī-tīs</i> ,	<i>ye or you will love,</i>
<i>ă-mā'-bunt</i> ,	<i>they will love.</i>

(The *principal parts* of a verb are the indicative present, the infinitive present, the indicative present-perfect, and the supine. These will be given in the vocabularies, thus :

ămǔ, ămārě, ămāvī, ămătŭm, to love.)

Form the present, imperfect, and future indicative of

völ-o,	völ-ārě,	völ-āvī,	völ-ātüm,	to fly.
salt-o,	salt-ārě,	salt-āvī,	salt-ātüm,	to dance.
cant-o,	cant-ārě,	cant-āvī,	cant-ātüm,	to sing.
dēlect-o,	dēlect-ārě,	dēlect-āvī,	dēlect-ātüm,	to delight.
pār-o,	pār-ārě,	pār-āvī,	pār-ātüm,	to prepare.
laud-o,	laud-ārě,	laud-āvī,	laud-ātüm,	to praise.
vōc-o,	vōc-ārě,	vōc-āvī,	vōc-ātüm,	to call.
occūp-o,	occūp-ārě,	occūp-āvī,	occūp-ātüm,	to seize.
arm-o,	arm-ārě,	arm-āvī,	arm-ātüm,	to arm.
ædific-o,	ædific-ārě,	ædific-āvī,	ædific-ātüm,	to build.

EXERCISE IV.

1. A *Transitive* verb is one which requires an object to complete the sense: as, *poētā rēgīnām laudāt*, the poet praises the queen.

2. An *Intransitive* verb is one which does not require an object to complete the sense: as, *āquīlā vōlāt*, the eagle flies.

3. *Rule of Syntax*.—The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative.

4. *Rule of Syntax*.—The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative. (*Rēgīnām*, above, is the *direct object* of *laudāt*; i.e. the thing to which the praising is directed.)

5. *Rule of Syntax*.—The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

6. *Rule of Position*.—The subject usually stands at the beginning of the sentence.

7. *Rule of Position*.—The direct object precedes the verb.

8. To *analyze* a sentence is to separate it into its parts and show their relation to each other.

9. To *analyze* or parse a word is to tell its properties, and its relation to other words.

ANALYSIS OF THE SENTENCE.

Poetă rēgînăm laudăt, *the poet praises the queen.*

This is a simple sentence, because it consists of but one proposition.

The predicate is *laudăt*, because it is that which is *declared* or asserted about the poet.

The subject is *poetă*, because it is that of which the *praising* is *declared*. (Who *praises*? The *poet*.)

The predicate is limited by *rēgînăm*, the direct object (*i.e.* the thing upon which the *praising* is *directly exerted*).

ANALYSIS OF THE WORDS.

Poetă is a common noun, masculine, first declension (here decline it), found in the nominative singular, subject of *laudăt*. Rule, *The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative*. (Here let the teacher ask, “Why called a noun? Why a common noun? Why masculine? Why of the first declension? Why accented on the penult?” &c.)

Rēgînăm is a common noun, feminine, first declension (here decline it), found in the accusative singular, direct object of *laudăt*. Rule, *The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative*.

Laudăt is a verb, transitive, first conjugation, *laudo*, *laudārē*, *laudāvī*, *laudātūm*, found in the Indicative-Present active, third person singular (here inflect the tense), agreeing with *poetă* as its subject. Rule, *The verb agrees with its subject in number and person*. (Here let the teacher ask, “Why called a verb? Why transitive? Why of first conjugation? Why indicative?” &c.)

Translate into English and analyze.

§ 22. Agricolă poetămăm. Aquilă vōlăbăt. Ancillă

mēdicinām pārābunt. Belgæ ārās ædificābant. Nautæ insulām occüpābunt. Cōrōnā rēginām dēlectābīt. Agrīcōlā filiām vōcābāt.

Translate into Latin.

The maid-servants are preparing the table. The queen was calling the farmer's daughter. The poets will praise the queen. The sailor's daughter will sing. The farmers are building an altar. The moon delights the poet. We love the queen. You were calling the maid-servants.

EXERCISE V.

§ 23. *Vocabulary.*

umbrā, -æ, *shadow.*

terrā, -æ, *earth.*

incōlā, -æ, *inhabitant.*

insidiæ, -ārūm { *ambush,*

(used only in plural), { *snares.*

puellā, -æ, *girl.*

cōpiæ, -ārūm, *forces.*

(cōpiā, in the singular, means *abundance*; in the plural, *forces*.)

obscur-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to obscure.*

1. The subject, as well as the predicate, may have words limiting its meaning.

2. The pronouns *I, thou, we, you*, are not usually expressed in Latin, as the endings of the verb show the person and number.

3. The words *my, thy, his, their, &c.* are not expressed in Latin, where the relation is obvious. Thus, *The queen loves her daughter*, Rēginā filiām āmāt.

Translate into English and analyze.

(In analysis of sentences, give the predicate with its limiters, then the subject with its limiters.)

Ancillā rēginæ agrīcōlæ filiām vōcābīt. Terræ umbrā

lūnām obscūrāt. Fūgā nautārūm incōlās insūlæ dēlectāt. Cōpiæ Belgārūm insūlām occūpābant. Nautæ puellās vōcant. Plūmæ cōlumbārūm rēgīnæ ancillās dēlectābunt.

Translate into Latin.

The flight of the queen delights the Belgians. Farmers love (their) daughters. The sailor loves the queen's maid-servant. The farmer's daughter will prepare the queen's table. A dove's feather delights the *sailor's* daughter; a crown delights the *queen's* daughter. An eagle's feather delights the queen's *maid-servant*; a crown delights the queen's *daughter*.

THE SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 24. Latin nouns whose genitive ending is *i* are of the second declension.

Those which have *ūm* in the nominative are neuter; the rest are masculine.

ENDINGS.

<i>Masculine.</i>			<i>Neuter.</i>		
	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>		<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>
Nom.	ūs,	ī,	Nom.	ūm,	ă,
Gen.	ī,	ōrūm,	Gen.	ī,	ōrūm,
Dat.	ō,	īs,	Dat.	ō,	īs,
Acc.	ūm,	ōs,	Acc.	ūm,	ă,
Voc.	ě,	ī,	Voc.	ūm,	ă,
Abl.	ō;	īs.	Abl.	ō;	īs.

By adding these endings to the stem *dōmīn-*, *master*, and the stem *regn-*, *kingdom*, we obtain the following

PARADIGMS.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nũs, a master.</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nĩ,</i>	<i>masters.</i>
Gen.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nĩ, of a master.</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nõ'-rũm,</i>	<i>of masters.</i>
Dat.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nõ, to or for a master.</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nĩs,</i>	<i>to or for masters.</i>
Acc.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nũm, a master.</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nõs,</i>	<i>masters.</i>
Voc.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-ně, O master!</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nĩ,</i>	<i>O masters!</i>
Abl.	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nõ, with, &c. a master.</i>	<i>dõm'-ĩ-nĩs,</i>	<i>with, &c. masters.</i>

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	<i>reg'-nũm, a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg'-nă,</i>	<i>kingdoms.</i>
Gen.	<i>reg'-nĩ, of a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg'-nõ'-rũm,</i>	<i>of kingdoms.</i>
Dat.	<i>reg'-nõ, to or for a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg'-nĩs,</i>	<i>to or for king- doms.</i>
Acc.	<i>reg'-nũm, a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg'-nă,</i>	<i>kingdoms.</i>
Voc.	<i>reg'-nũm, O kingdom!</i>	<i>reg'-nă,</i>	<i>O kingdoms!</i>
Abl.	<i>reg'-nõ, with, &c. a kingdom.</i>	<i>reg'-nĩs,</i>	<i>with, &c. king- doms.</i>

Remark 1.—Names of trees, plants, &c. are feminine by the general rule. *Alvũs, belly*; *carbāsũs, linen*; *cõlũs, distaff*; *hũmũs, ground*; and *vannũs, fan*, are feminine.

Virũs, juice, and *pělāgũs, sea*, are neuter. *Vulgũs, common people*, is neuter,—rarely masculine.

Remark 2.—In proper names in *iũs*, with *filiũs, son*, and *gēniũs, guardian spirit*, the vocative ending *ẽ* is absorbed: as, *Tulliũs*, voc. *Tullĩ*. But adjectives and national names in *iũs* retain *ẽ* in the vocative: as, *Helvētiũs, Helvētiẽ*.

Remark 3.—*Meũs* has *mĩ* in the vocative,—rarely *meũs*. *Deus*, a god, has *deũs* in the vocative, and in the plural nominative and vocative *dĩ* or *dĩ*; genitive *deõrũm*; dative and ablative *dũs, deĩs, dĩa*; accusative *deõs*.

Remark 4.—The ending *õrũm* of the genitive plural is sometimes contracted into *ũm*, and *ĩ* in the genitive singular is

sometimes contracted into *i*: as, *nummūm* for *nummōrūm*; *ingēnū* for *ingēnū*.

Remark 5.—Neuter nouns of *all declensions* have the nominative, accusative, and vocative alike; and these cases in the plural end always in *ā*.

EXERCISE VI.

§ 25. Vocabulary.

dōmīnūs, -ī, { master (of a family), lord.	Gallūs, -ī, a Gaul. auxiliūm, -ī, aid.
servūs, -ī, slave.	lēgātūs, -ī, { ambassador, lieutenant.
nuntiūs, -ī, messenger.	
Tulliūs, -ī, Tully.	vīcūs, -ī, village.
Crassūs, -ī, Crassus.	hortūs, -ī, garden.
captīvūs, -ī, captive.	lūpūs, -ī, wolf.
Helvētiūs, -ī, a Helvetian.	Germānūs, -ī, a German.
rē-vōc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to call back, recall. (re- means back.)	
con-vōc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to call together. (con- means together.)	
rōg-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to entreat, ask for.	
ūlūl-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to howl.	
nēc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, rarely nectūm, to murder, to kill (usually by poison, hunger, &c., sometimes with a weapon).	

Translate into English and analyze.

Lūpī ūlūlānt. Dōmīnūs servōs āmāt. Rēgīnæ filiōs āmānt. Crassūs nuntiōs Gallōrūm convōcābīt. Tulliūs agrīcōlæ hortūm occūpābāt. Crassūs vīcōs Helvētiōrūm occūpābīt. Gallī Germānōrūm lēgātōs nēcābūnt. Germānī captīvōs nēcānt. Helvētīi lēgātōs rēvōcānt. Belgæ insulārūm incōlās nēcābānt. Tulliūs servūm vōcāt.

Translate into Latin.

Tully's slaves love (their) master. The master calls together (his) slaves. The slaves of Crassus will call the queen's maid-servants. The inhabitants of the island are

killing the captives. We will call together the sons of Crassus. Tully's son loves the sailor's daughter. The ambassadors of the Helvetians praise the queen. He will call together the farmer's sons. The messengers ask-for aid. The Belgians will ask-for aid.

Stems in ěr.

§ 26. Nouns whose stems end in *ěr* drop the endings *ūs* of the nominative and *ě* of the vocative: as, *gěněr*, not *gěněrūs*. Most of them likewise drop the *ě* of the stem in the oblique cases: as, *ăgěr*, genitive *agrĩ*, not *ăgěr-ĩ*.

PARADIGMS.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>(A son-in-law.)</i>		<i>(A field.)</i>	
N. <i>gě'-něr</i> ,	<i>gě'n'-ě-rĩ.</i>	N. <i>ă'-gěr</i> ,	<i>ă'-grĩ.</i>
G. <i>gě'n'-ě-rĩ</i> ,	<i>gě'n-ě-rō'-rũm.</i>	G. <i>ă'-grĩ</i> ,	<i>ă-grō'-rũm.</i>
D. <i>gě'n'-ě-rō</i> ,	<i>gě'n'-ě-rĩs.</i>	D. <i>ă'-grō</i> ,	<i>ă'-grĩs.</i>
Ac. <i>gě'n'-ě-rũm</i> ,	<i>gě'n'-ě-rōs.</i>	Ac. <i>ă'-grũm</i> ,	<i>ă'-grōs.</i>
V. <i>gě'-něr</i> ,	<i>gě'n'-ě-rĩ.</i>	V. <i>ă'-gěr</i> ,	<i>ă'-grĩ.</i>
Ab. <i>gě'n'-ě-rō</i> ,	<i>gě'n'-ě-rĩs.</i>	Ab. <i>ă'-grō</i> ,	<i>ă'-grĩs.</i>

Remark 1.—The following nouns retain *ě* of the stem in all the cases: *ădultěr*, *adulterěr*; *gěněr*, *son-in-law*; *Liběr*, *Bacchus*; *liběrĩ*, *children*; *puěr*, *boy*; *sōcěr*, *father-in-law*; *vespěr*, *evening*; and compounds of *fěr* and *gěr*; also, the national names *Iběr* and *Celtiběr*.

Remark 2.—The solitary noun *věr*, *man*, is declined like *gěněr*: nom. *věr*; gen. *věrĩ*, &c.

For Greek nouns of the second declension, see Appendix II.

EXERCISE VII.

§ 27. *Vocabulary.*puēr, -ī, *boy.*vīr, -ī, *man.*sōcēr, -ī, *father-in-law.*gēnēr, -ī, *son-in-law.*māgistēr, -ī, *master (of a school).*āgēr, -ī, *field.*libērī, -ōrūm, *children.*ēquūs, -ī, *horse.*bellūm, -ī, *war.*fōliūm, -ī, *leaf.*ōvūm, -ī, *egg.*āpēr, -ī, *wild boar.*infrēn-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to bridle.*lāni-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to tear in pieces.**Translate into English and analyze.*

Agrīcōlā ēquūm filiāe infrēnāt. Aprī gēnērūm rēgīnāe lāniābunt. Fōliā silvā ancillām rēgīnāe dēlectant. Māgistēr puērōs convōcābāt. Puērī māgistrūm āmant. Tullīi filiā sōcērūm āmābit. Germānī Gallōrūm āgrōs occūpābant. Cōlumbārūm ōvā libērōs dēlectant. Vīrī ēquōs infrēnābunt. Bellūm Germānōs dēlectāt. Sōcēr gēnērūm āmāt. Servūs dōminī ēquūm infrēnāt. Nautā libērōs āmāt.

Translate into Latin.

The poet's children love the queen. Crassus praises the fields of the Helvetians. The Germans love war. The wolves will tear in pieces the farmer's children. Wild boars love the shade of the forest. The master will call back the boys. Tully's horse loves his master. The farmer's slaves are bridling the horses.

EXERCISE VIII.

§ 28. *The Dative Case.*

1. The Dative expresses that *to* or *for* which, or *with* reference to which, any thing is, or is done.

2. *Rule of Syntax.*—The *indirect object* of a verb is

in the Dative: as, *servūs dōmīnō mēdicīnām pārāt*, the servant prepares medicine for his master.

Remark.—The *indirect object* of a verb is the thing towards which its action *tends* without necessarily *reaching* it. Thus, in the above example, the action expressed by *parat* is exerted directly upon *the medicine*,—*medicinam*,—and the point to which it *tends* is *the master*,—*domino*,—though it does not necessarily *reach* that point, since it is not implied that the master *receives* or *uses* the medicine prepared for him.

3. *Rule of Position.*—The *indirect object* precedes the *direct*.

Vocabulary.

lībēr, -ī, *book*.

viā, -æ, *way*.

taurūs, -ī, *bull*.

agnūs, -ī, *lamb*.

hædūs, -ī, *kid*.

monstr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to show*.

mact-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to sacrifice*.

d-ō, dārē, dēdī, dātūm, *to give*. (The only verb of the first conjugation having *ā* in the infinitive present.)

Translate into English and analyze.

Māgistēr puērō librūm dāt. Puellā Crassō viām monstrābāt. Agrīcōlā diīs ārām ædīfīcābīt. Gallī diīs taurōs mactant. Servi rēgīnæ hædūm pārant. Lūpī agnōs lāniābunt. Agrīcōlæ filiūs puellæ ōvūm dāt. Gallī Germānīs insīdiās pārābunt. Crassūs cōpiīs Gallōrūm insīdiās pārāt. Rēgīnā agrīcōlæ ēquūm dāt. Gallī nautīs insulām monstrant. Rēgīnæ ancillā Gallīs Germānōrūm insīdiās monstrāt.

Translate into Latin.

The queen's father-in-law will give (to) the poet a field. The queen of the Helvetians is preparing snares for Tully's forces. The inhabitants of the island were sacrificing a lamb to the gods. The master is preparing a book for the

boys. The slaves are preparing a way for their master. The master gives (to) his slave a kid. The slave gives (to) the farmer's son a dove's egg.

EXERCISE IX.

The Ablative Case.

§ 29. 1. *Rule of Syntax.*—The Ablative expresses the *cause, manner, means, or instrument*: as,

Cæcūs ā rārītiā, Blinded by avarice. (*Cause.*)

Hōc mōdō fēcīt, He did it in this manner. (*Manner.*)

Aquillā ā.īs vō'āt, The eagle flies with his wings. (*Means.*)

Captivūm glād.ō occīdīt, He kills the captive with a sword. (*Instrument.*)

2. *Rule of Syntax.*—The Ablative (usually with the preposition *in*) expresses the *place where*.

3. *Rule of Position.*—Expressions of *cause, manner, means, instrument, time, and place* precede the predicate. Expressions of *manner, means, and instrument* are placed after the direct object; while those of *cause, time, and place* usually precede it.

Vocabulary.

in (preposition with abl.), *in.*

terrā, -æ, *the earth, ground.*

tūbā, -æ, *trumpet.*

signūm, -ī, *signal, sign.*

vēnēnūm, -ī, *poison.*

glādiūs, -ī, *sword.*

Marcūs, -ī, *Mark.*

cultēr, -trī, *knife.*

ār-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to plough.*

vex-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to annoy, to trouble.*

vulnēr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to wound.*

ambul-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to walk.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Marcī filiūs Gallīs signūm tūbā dāt. (*The predicate is*

here limited by *Gallis*, the indirect object; *signum*, the direct object; and *tubā*, the ablative of the instrument.) *Agricola terram equis arat. Captivus Tullium cultro vulnerabit. Poeta in silvis ambulat. Marcus Helvetios injuriis vexabit. Nauta reginae generum gladio necabit. Germani captivos gladiis necant. Aquilae alis volant. Regina filio regnum dat. Ancilla reginae Crassum veneno necabit. Umbram silvae amamus. Dominus servos tuba convocat. Reginae socer filium Tullii injuriis vexat.*

Translate into Latin.

The farmer's sons will plough the fields with horses. The girls are dancing in the forest. The poet was walking in the garden. The slaves of Tully are preparing snares for the ambassadors of the Helvetians in the forest. The inhabitants of the islands will kill the ambassadors with their swords. The Germans were annoying the Gauls with injuries. Doves fly with their wings. The farmer will give the sailor's daughter a lamb. Wolves are howling in the forest.

THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 30. Nouns whose genitive-ending is *is* are of the third declension.

CASE-ENDINGS.

	<i>Masc. and Fem.</i>		<i>Neuter.</i>	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	s,	ēs,	— (ě),	ă (iă),
G.	is,	um (iŭm),	is,	um (iŭm).
D.	ī,	ibŭs,	ī,	ibŭs,
Ac.	em (im),	ēs,	— (ě),	ă (iă),
V.	s,	ēs,	— (ě),	ă (iă),
Ab.	ě (ī);	ibŭs.	ě (ī);	ibŭs.

Remark 1.—Many masculine and feminine nouns have no ending in the nominative, but present the simple stem: as, *hōnōr*. The regular ending of the accusative singular is *ēm*; that of the ablative, *ē*; of the genitive plural, *ūm*.

Remark 2.—But few neuter nouns have a nominative-ending, most of them presenting the stem alone in the nominative. The regular endings are given in the first column; the others are occasional only.

Remark 3.—An old accusative-ending *īs* or *ēīs* is found with stems that take *iūm* in the genitive plural: as, *vallis* or *vallēīs*.

CLASSES.

Nouns of the third declension are divided into six classes, according to the formation of the nominative singular: three classes having the nominative-ending *s*; one, the nominative-ending *ē*; and two having no nominative-ending at all, but presenting the simple stem.

CLASS I.—Nouns which add the nominative-ending *s* to the stem without any vowel change: as, *urb-s*. (*Feminine*.)

CLASS II.—Nouns which add the nominative-ending *s* to the stem with a connecting vowel *e* or *i*: as, stem *rūp-*, nominative *rūp-e-s*, *rūpēs*; stem *vall-*, nominative *vall-i-s*, *vallis*. (*Feminine*.)

CLASS III.—Nouns which change the stem-vowel *ī* into *ē*, and add *s*: as, stem *mīlīt-*, nominative *mīlēt-s*, *mīlēš*. (*Masculine*.)

CLASS IV.—Nouns which have the nominative-ending *ē*: as, *mār-ē*. (*Neuter*.)

CLASS V.—Nouns which have no nominative-ending, but present the *unchanged* stem: as, *hōnōr*, *consūl*, *calcār*. (*Masculine and neuter*.)

CLASS VI.—Nouns which have no nominative-ending, but present the stem *changed* in the nominative: as, stem *virġin-*, nominative *virgō*. (*Māsculine, feminine, and neuter.*)

Rule of Euphony.—A *c* sound with *s* makes *x*: as, *leg-s*, *lex*; *arc-s*, *arx*. A *t* sound with *s* is dropped: as, *font-s*, *fons*.

CLASS I.

§ 31. Nouns which add the nominative-ending *s* to the stem without vowel change.

PARADIGMS.

<i>Singular.</i>					
	<i>City.</i>	<i>Law.</i>	<i>Praise.</i>	<i>Art.</i>	<i>Citadel.</i>
N.	Urb-s,	Lex (leg-s),	Laus (laud-s),	Ars (art-s),	Arx (arc-s),
G.	ur'-bīs,	lē'-gīs,	lau'-dīs,	ar'-tīs,	ar'-cīs,
D.	ur'-bī,	lē'-gī,	lau'-dī,	ar'-tī,	ar'-cī,
Ac.	ur'-bēm,	lē'-gēm,	lau'-dēm,	ar'-tēm,	ar'-cēm,
V.	urbs,	lex,	laus,	ars,	arx,
Abl.	ur'-bē.	lē'-gē.	lau'-dē.	ar'-tē.	ar'-cē.
<i>Plural.</i>					
N.	ur'-bēs,	lē'-gēs,	lau'-dēs,	ar'-tēs,	ar'-cēs,
G.	ur'-bi-ūm,	lē'-gūm,	lau'-dūm,	ar'-ti-ūm,	ar'-ci-ūm,
D.	ur'-bi-būs,	lē'-gī-būs,	lau'-dī-būs,	ar'-tī-būs,	ar'-cī-būs,
Ac. & V.	ur'-bēs,	lē'-gēs,	lau'-dēs,	ar'-tēs,	ar'-cēs,
Abl.	ur'-bi-būs.	lē'-gī-būs.	lau'-dī-būs.	ar'-tī-būs.	ar'-cī-būs.

Rule 1.—Stems ending in two consonants, with *dōs*, *līs*, *fraus*, *vīs*, *fauz* (nom. obs.), *nix*, *compēs*, *strix*, have *iūm* in the genitive plural.

Rule 2.—Stems of more than one syllable in *nt* and *rt* (adding *s*), with names of nations in *ās*, have *iūm* and sometimes *ūm*: as, *cliens*, *clientiūm* or *clientūm*.

Remark 1.—Other nouns in *ās*, with *fornax* and *pālūs*, sometimes have *iūm*. *Quīrīs* and *Samnīs* have *iūm*.

Remark 2.—*Pars*, part, and *lens*, lentil, have sometimes *im* in the accusative; and the same, with *sors*, lot, and *trīdens*, trident, have *ē* or *ī* in the ablative. *Partim* is usually an adverb.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which add the nominative-ending *s* to the stem without vowel change, are feminine; except—

Masculines.

1. *Dens*, tooth, and its compounds; *fons*, fountain; *pons*, bridge; *mons*, mountain; *cliens*, client; *rūdēns*, rope (rarely feminine); and compounds of *ās*; *pārīēs*, wall; *pēs*, foot; *lāpīs*, stone.

2. *Grex*, flock; Greek nouns in *ax* and *ix*, with *cālix*, cup; *fornix*, arch; *perdix*, partridge; *trādux*, vine-branch.

Masculine or Feminine.

Many nouns denoting living beings, with *scrobs*, ditch; *stirps*, trunk of a tree; *calx*, heel; *calx*, lime.

EXERCISE X.

§ 32. 1. The ablative is used with prepositions which imply *rest in* a place: as, *in urbē hābitāt*, he lives in the city; or *motion from* a place: as, *ex urbē ēquitāt*, he rides out of the city.

2. The accusative (the *whither* case) is used with prepositions implying *motion to* a place: as, *in urbēm vēnit*, he comes into the city; *ād rēgēm vēnit*, he comes to the king.

3. *Caution.*—*To*, when it implies motion, must be translated by *ād* with the accusative.

4. *Rule of Position.*—A preposition with its case precedes the predicate.

Vocabulary.

in (with acc.), <i>into</i> ; (with abl.), <i>in</i> .	dens, dent- <i>is</i> , <i>tooth</i> .
ād (prep. with acc.), <i>to, towards</i> .	pēs, pēd- <i>is</i> , <i>foot</i> .
ē, <i>out of</i> (prep. with abl., used only with words beginning with a consonant).	calx, calc- <i>is</i> , <i>heel</i> .
ex, <i>out of</i> (prep. with abl., used before vowels and consonants).	rex, rēg- <i>is</i> , <i>king</i> .
rūdēns, rūdent- <i>is</i> , <i>rope</i> .	plebs, plēb- <i>is</i> , <i>common people</i> .
antennā, - <i>æ</i> , <i>sail-yard</i> .	grex, grēg- <i>is</i> , <i>flock</i> .
pīlūm, - <i>i</i> , <i>javelin</i> .	ferrūm, - <i>i</i> , <i>iron, the sword</i> .
Galliā, - <i>æ</i> , <i>Gaul</i> .	cliens, client- <i>is</i> , <i>client</i> .
Germaniā, - <i>æ</i> , <i>Germany</i> .	lāpis, lāpid- <i>is</i> , <i>a stone</i> .
	mālūs, - <i>i</i> , <i>mast</i> .
	libertās, libertāt- <i>is</i> , <i>liberty</i> .
	nōbilitās, nōbilitāt- <i>is</i> , <i>nobility</i> .
	Orgētōrix, Orgētōrig- <i>is</i> , <i>Orgetorix</i> .
ēquīt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to ride on horseback</i> .	
hiēm-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to winter, spend the winter</i>	
serv-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to preserve, protect</i> .	
viōl-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to dishonor, violate, break (a law, &c.)</i> .	
hābit-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to dwell, live</i> .	
mand-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to intrust</i> .	
destin-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to fasten</i> .	

ā or āb, *from, by* (prep. with abl., ā being used only before consonants, āb before vowels and consonants).

Translate into English and analyze.

Orgētōrix lēgēs Helvētiōrūm violābāt. Plebs libertātē ferrō servābīt. Nautae antennās ād mālōs rūdentībūs destinant. Puēr calcēm servī lāpidē vulnerāt. Crassūs ex urbē ād vīcūm ēquītāt. Cōpiæ Germānōrūm īn Galliā hiēmābunt. Gallī īn Galliā hābitant. Rex nōbilitātī urbēm mandāt. Crassī filiūs clientēs ex agrīs īn urbēm convōcāt. Lūpī dentībūs agnōs lāniant. Gallī Crassūm pīlīs nēcābunt. Germānī Gallōs bellīs vexant.

Translate into Latin.

The boys are riding from the village to the city. The farmer's sons live in the forest. The doves will fly out of

the fields into the forest. The king was calling together the common people out of the village into the city. The king will give the kingdom to his son. Crassus will break the laws of Gaul. The king's son will preserve the liberty of the common people. The boys are wounding the king's messengers with stones. The inhabitants of Germany will winter in the island of the Belgians. Horses walk with (their) feet. A flock of doves is flying out of the forest. The sailor will fasten the yard to the mast with ropes. The king was slaying the nobility with the sword.

CLASS II.

§ 33. Nouns which add the nominative-ending *s* to the stem with a connecting vowel (*e* or *i*): as, *rŭp-ĕ-s*, *vall-ĭ-s*.

PARADIGMS.

Singular.

Nom.	<i>rŭ'-pĕs</i> , a rock.	<i>val'-lĭs</i> , a valley.
Gen.	<i>rŭ'-pĭs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĭs</i> ,
Dat.	<i>rŭ'-pĭ</i> ,	<i>val'-lĭ</i> ,
Acc.	<i>rŭ'-pĕm</i> ,	<i>val'-lĕm</i> ,
Voc.	<i>rŭ'-pĕs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĭs</i> ,
Abl.	<i>rŭ'-pĕ</i> ;	<i>val'-lĕ</i> ;

Plural.

Nom.	<i>rŭ'-pĕs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĕs</i> ,
Gen.	<i>rŭ'-pĭ-ŭm</i> ,	<i>val'-lĭ-ŭm</i> ,
Dat.	<i>rŭ'-pĭ-bŭs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĭ-bŭs</i> ,
Acc.	<i>rŭ'-pĕs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĕs</i> ,
Voc.	<i>rŭ'-pĕs</i> ,	<i>val'-lĕs</i> ,
Abl.	<i>rŭ'-pĭ-bŭs</i> .	<i>val'-lĭ-bŭs</i> .

Remark 1.—The following nouns have *īm* in the accusative:—

(a) Names of *places, rivers, and gods* in *īs*: these sometimes also have *īn* in the accusative. *Scaldīs* has *īn* and *īm*; *Līrīs* has *īm*, *īn*, and *ēm*; and *Līgēr* has *Līgērīm*.

(b) Amussīs, a mason's rule.	Rāvīs, hoarseness.
Būrīs, a plough-tail.	Sēcūrīs, an axe.
Cannābīs, hemp.	Sīnāpīs, mustard.
Cūcūmīs (gen. -īs), a cucumber.	Sītīs, thirst.
Mēphītīs, foul air.	Tussīs, a cough.
Pelvīs, a basin.	Vis, strength.

Remark 2.—The following have *īm*, and sometimes *ēm*:—

Febrīs, a fever.	Restīs, a rope.
Puppīs, the stern.	Turrīs, a tower.

Remark 3.—The following have *ēm*, and rarely *īm*:—

Bipeannīs, a battle-axe.	Messīs, a harvest.	Præsēpīs, a stall.
Clāvīs, a key.	Nāvīs, a ship.	Sēmentīs, a sowing.
		Strīgīlīs, a flesh-brush.

Remark 4.—Nouns which have *īm* in the accusative, with names of months in *ēr* and *īs*, have *ī* in the ablative: as, *vīs*, *vīm*, *vī*; *Aprīlīs*, *Aprīlī*.

But *Boetīs*, *cannābīs*, and *sīnāpīs* have *ē* or *ī*.

Remark 5.—Nouns which have *ēm* or *īm* in the accusative have *ē* or *ī* in the ablative: as, *turrīs*, *turrē* or *turrī*.

But *restīs* has *ē* only.

Remark 6.—The following have only *ēm* in the accusative, but have *ē* or *ī* in the ablative:—

Amnīs,	Cānālīs,	Convallīs,	Ignīs,	Postīs,
Anguīs,	Cīvīs,	Corbīs,	Mūgīlīs,	Sordēs,
Avīs,	Classīs,	Fīnīs,	Orbīs,	Unguīs,
Bīlīs,	Collīs,	Fustīs,	Ovīs,	Vectīs.

Remark 7.—Nouns of this class (adding *s* with connecting vowel *e* or *i*) have *iūm* in the genitive plural.

Exc. *Cānīs*, *dog*; *jūvēnīs*, *young man*; *fōrīs*, *door*; *mūgīlīs*, *mullet*; *prōlēš*, *offspring*; *struēs*, *pile*; *vātēs*, *prophet*, have *ūm*; also, generally, *āpīs*, *bee*; *strīgīlīs*, *flesh-brush*; *vōlūcrīs*, *bird*; sometimes *mensīs*, and *cædēs*.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns of this class are feminine.

Exc. 1. *Pāľumbēs, vātēs, veprēs*, are masculine or feminine.

Exc. 2. The following in *īs* are masculine or feminine :—

Amnīs, <i>river.</i>	Cānīs, <i>dog.</i>	Fūnīs, <i>rope.</i>
Anguīs, <i>snake.</i>	Clūnīs, <i>haunch.</i>	Serōbīs, <i>ditch.</i>
Callīs, <i>path.</i>	Corbīs, <i>basket.</i>	Tigrīs, <i>tiger.</i>
Cānālīs, <i>pipe.</i>	Finīs (<i>end, f.; boundary, m.</i>).	Torquīs, <i>chain.</i>

Finēs, *boundaries*, is always masculine.

Exc. 3. The following are masculine :—

Aquālīs, <i>water-pot.</i>	Follīs, <i>bellows.</i>	Piscīs, <i>fish.</i>
Axīs, <i>axle.</i>	Fustīs, <i>club.</i>	Postīs, <i>post.</i>
Cassīs, <i>net.</i>	Ignīs, <i>fire.</i>	Sentīs, <i>brier.</i>
Caulīs, <i>stalk.</i>	Mānēs, <i>pl., shades.</i>	Sōdālīs, <i>companion.</i>
Collīs, <i>hill.</i>	Mensīs, <i>month.</i>	Torrīs, <i>firebrand.</i>
Crīnīs, <i>hair.</i>	Mūgilīs, <i>mullet.</i>	Unguīs, <i>nail.</i>
Ensīs, <i>sword.</i>	Orbīs, <i>circle.</i>	Vectīs, <i>lever.</i>
Fascīs, <i>bundle.</i>	Pānīs, <i>bread.</i>	Vermīs, <i>worm.</i>

EXERCISE XI.

§ 34. 1. Conjunctions connect words which are in the same construction: as, *Cæsār ēt Brūtūs*, Cæsar and Brutus; *glādīūs pīlisquē*, with swords and javelins.

N.B.—*Et* connects things which are separate and distinct, and of equal importance; *quē* (always written at the end of a word) connects one thing closely to another as an appendage, the two making one complete idea. Thus, the “swords and javelins” above constitute together *offensive armor*. *Atquē* generally introduces something of greater importance.

2. If the subject consists of more than one thing, the verb must be plural. Hence—

Rule of Syntax.—A collective noun *may* have a plural verb: as, *plebs clāmant*, the people shout.

Vocabulary.

ignīs, -īs, *fire.*

vallīs, -īs, *valley.*

pars, part-īs, *part.*

pax, pāc-īs, *peace.*

Athēnæ, -ārūm, <i>Athens</i> .	hostīs, -īs, <i>enemy</i> (§ 13, R. 4).
cūm, <i>with, in company with</i> (prep. with ablative).	cīvīs, -īs, <i>citizen</i> (§ 13, R. 4).
īn (prep. with abl.), <i>on, in; (with acc.), upon, into</i> .	āvīs, -īs, <i>bird</i> .
pēr (prep. with acc.), <i>through</i> .	ovīs, -īs, <i>sheep</i> .
Græciā, -æ, <i>Greece</i> .	classīs, -īs, <i>fleet</i> .
Cēcrops, Cēcrops-īs, <i>Cecrops</i> .	collīs, -īs, <i>hill</i> .
Cadmūs, -ī, <i>Cadmus</i> .	lītērā, -æ, <i>letter (of the alphabet)</i> .
	āmīcitiā, -æ, <i>friendship</i> .
	sītīs, -īs, <i>thirst</i> .

port-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to carry*.
im-port-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to carry in, import*.
formīd-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dread*.
vīgīl-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to watch*.
festīn-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hasten*.
confirm-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to establish*.
vast-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to lay waste*.
nīdific-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to build a nest*.
lēv-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to relieve*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Cadmūs īn Græciām lītērās importāt. Avēs īn silvīs nīdīficant. Aquā sītīm lēvāt. Fons īn vallē poētām dēlectāt. Helvētīi agrōs Germānōrūm ferrō ignīquē vastābunt. Gallī cūm Germānīs pācēm ēt āmīcitiām confirmant. Crassūs ex agrō īn urbēm festīnāt. Plebs īn urbē nōbilitātēm nēcāt. Crassūs cōpiās glādiīs pīlisquē armābāt. Cīvēs Cēcropsī clāvēs urbīs dant. Lūpī ovēs ēt hādōs lāniant. Crassūs īn collē turrīm ædīficāt. Gallī nāvēs ēt cōpiās Germānōrūm formīdant. Crassūs partēm plēbīs cultrīs lāpīdibusquē armābīt. Cōlumbæ pēr silvām vōlant. Cēcrops Athēnās ædīficābīt. Cānēs ēt lūpī ovēs lāniant. Rex ēt rēgīnā īn hortō ambulant. Cīvēs īn urbē vīgīlant.

Translate into Latin.

Crassus will lay waste the fields of the Belgians with fire and sword (*ferrō ignīquē*). The nobility dread the fleet of Tullius. The nobility will preserve the liberty of

the citizens with the sword. The maid-servant is preparing a mullet for her master. The queen will walk in the garden with her daughters. The farmer's sons will carry sheep and kids to the city. The nobility will arm their slaves with stones and knives. The farmer's son will show (to) the ambassadors of the Belgians the way through the forest. Tullius will take possession of the hill. Medicine will relieve fevers.

CLASS III.'

§ 35. Nouns which change the stem-vowel *ĩ* into *ě*, and add *s*.

PARADIGMS.

Milēs (milet-s), *soldier*. Princeps (princep-s), *chief*.

Singular.

Nom. <i>mĩ'-lěs</i> ,	Nom. <i>prin'-ceps</i> ,
Gen. <i>mĩl'-ĩ-tĩs</i> ,	Gen. <i>prin'-cĩ-pĩs</i> ,
Dat. <i>mĩl'-ĩ-tĩ</i> ,	Dat. <i>prin'-cĩ-pĩ</i> ,
Acc. <i>mĩl'-ĩ-těm</i> ,	Acc. <i>prin'-cĩ-pěm</i> ,
Voc. <i>mĩ'-lěs</i> ,	Voc. <i>prin'-ceps</i> ,
Abl. <i>mĩl'-ĩ-tě</i> ;	Abl. <i>prin'-cĩ-pě</i> ;

Plural.

Nom. <i>mĩl'-ĩ-těs</i> ,	Nom. <i>prin'-cĩ-pěs</i> ,
Gen. <i>mĩl'-ĩ-tům</i> ,	Gen. <i>prin'-cĩ-pům</i> ,
Dat. <i>mĩl'-ĩ-těbūs</i> ,	Dat. <i>prin'-cĩp'-ĩbūs</i> ,
Acc. <i>mĩl'-ĩ-těs</i> ,	Acc. <i>prin'-cĩ-pěs</i> ,
Voc. <i>mĩl'-ĩ-těs</i> ,	Voc. <i>prin'-cĩ-pěs</i> ,
Abl. <i>mĩl'-ĩ-těbūs</i> .	Abl. <i>prin'-cĩp'-ĩbūs</i> .

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change the stem-vowel *ĩ* into *ě*, and add *s*, are masculine.

Exc. 1. Feminine, *mergěs*, *mergũĩs*, sheaf.

Exc. 2. Masculine or feminine, *ădęps*, *ădĩpĩs*, grease; *cortex*, *cortĩcĩs*, bark; *forceps*, *forcĩpĩs*, pincers.

EXERCISE XII.

§ 36. 1. A noun limiting another, and denoting the same thing, is said to be in *apposition* with it.

2. *Rule of Syntax*.—Nouns in apposition agree in case: as, *Jūgurthā rex*, Jugurtha the king.

Remark.—A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is put in the plural: as, *Jūgurthā ēt Bocchūs, rēgēs*, Jugurtha and Bocchus, kings.

Vocabulary.

virtūs, virtūt-īs, *valor*.
 ā, or āb, *from* (prep. with abl.).
 proeliūm, -ī, *battle*.
 Nūmīdiā, -æ, *Numidia*.
 nūmērūs, -ī, *number*.
 vēlēš, vēlīt-īs, *a light-armed soldier, a skirmisher*.
 Dāvūs, -ī, *Davus*.
 Balbūs, -ī, *Balbus*.
 Jūgurthā, -æ, *Jugurtha*.

hospēs, hospīt-īs, *guest*.
 obsēs, obsīd-īs, *hostage*.
 ēquēs, ēquīt-īs, *horseman*.
 pēdēs, pēdīt-īs, *footman*.
 horreūm, -ī, *granary*.
 mergēs, mergīt-īs, *sheaf*.
 cōmēs, cōmīt-īs, *companion*.
 cæspēs, cæspīt-īs, *turf*.
 trāmēs, trāmīt-īs, *by-path*.

sēc-ō, sēc-ārē, sēc-uī, sectūm and sēc-ātūm, *to cut*.
 postūl-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to demand*.
 viōl-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to maltreat, violate*.
 dūplic-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to double*.
 rēdintēgr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to renew*.
 explōr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to explore, search out*.
 crēm-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to burn*.
 proflīg-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dash to pieces, to rout*.
 fūg-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to put to flight, to rout*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Militēs glādiūs cæspītēm sēcābant. Agrīcōlā īn horreūm mergītēs portābīt. Tulliūs ā Germānīs obsīdēs postūlāt. Jūgurthā, rex Nūmīdiæ, Crassō obsīdēs dāt. Dāvūs ēt Balbūs, servī agrīcōlæ, dōmīnī libērōs āmant. Orgētōrix, princeps Helvētiōrūm, āb Œduīs obsīdēs postūlābīt. Hel-

vētiī Orgētōrīgēm ignī crēmābunt. Equītēs ēt pēdītēs
 prœliūm rēdintēgrābunt. Poētā virtūtēm Jūgurthæ, rēgīs
 Nūmīdiæ, laudāt. Cōpiæ Crassī ēquītēs pēdītesquē hostiūm
 prōfligābant. Vēlītēs Tulliī trāmītēs pēr silvām explōrant.
 Cōmītēs Orgētōrīgīs, principīs Helvētiōrūm, agrōs Gal-
 lōrūm ferrō ignīquē vastant. Jūgurthā nūmērūm obsīdūm
 dūplicāt.

Translate into Latin.

The farmer is walking with his sons, Davus and Balbus, in the forest. The Gauls dread the ships of Crassus. Davus, the king's slave, will show (to) the boys the way through the forest. Part of the skirmishers will occupy the hill. The Germans will maltreat their guests. Tully will give the signal to the king's horsemen with the trumpet. The horsemen are bridling their horses.

CLASS IV.

§ 37. Nouns which add *ē* to the stem to form the nominative.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom., Acc., and Voc.	<i>mār'-ē, the sea,</i>	<i>mār'-i-ā,</i>
Gen.	<i>mār'-īs,</i>	<i>mār'-i-ūm,</i>
Dat. and Abl.	<i>mār'-ī ;</i>	<i>mār'-ī-būs.</i>

Remark.—Nouns of this class have *ī* in the ablative singular, *iā* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural, and *iūm* in the genitive plural.

Exc. Names of towns in *ē* have *ē* in the ablative. *Rētē*, a net, has *ē* or *ī* in the ablative.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which have the nominative-ending *ē* are neuter.

EXERCISE XIII.

*Vocabulary.*terrā mārīquē, *by sea and land.*cēlērītās, cēlērītāt-īs, *swiftness.*crūdēlītās, crūdēlītāt-īs, *cruelty.*Marcūs, -ī, *Marcus, Mark.*Lūciūs, -ī, *Lucius.*Cassiūs, -ī, *Cassius.*Sŷphax, Sŷphācis, *Syphax.*cūbīlē, cūbīl-īs, *couch.*oppīdūm, -ī, *town.*rētē, rēt-īs, *net.*nāvālē, nāvāl-īs, *dock-yard.*sēdīlē, sēdīl-īs, *seat.*mōnīlē, mōnīl-īs, *necklace.*Rōmānūs, -ī, *Roman.*Carthāgīniensīs, -īs, *Carthaginian.*dux, dūc-īs, *leader.*Māriūs, -ī, *Marius.*Caiūs, -ī, *Caius.*dormītō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to fall asleep.*expugnō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to storm.**Translate into English and analyze.*

Rēgīnæ filiā in cūbīlī dormitābīt. Deūs cervīs ēt cānībūs cēlērītātēm dāt. Marcūs ēt Lūciūs, agrīcōlæ filiī (§ 36, *Remark*), āgrōs ēquīs ārābunt. Cassiūs in nāvālībūs nāvēs ædīfīcāt. Dux Caiō aurūm dāt. Sŷphax, dux Carthāgīnīensīūm, Rōmānīs insīdiās pārābāt. Gallī crūdēlītātēm Germānōrūm formīdant. Māriūs, dux Rōmānōrūm, oppīdā Jūgurthæ expugnābīt. Lūciūs, Rōmānōrūm dux, terrā mārīquē cōpiās hostiūm fūgābīt. Rēgīnā filiābūs mōnīliā dābīt. Servi in silvā dōmīnō sēdīlē pārant. Dāvūs aprīs rētiā pārābīt.

Translate into Latin.

Syphax, the leader of the Carthaginians, will build ships in the dock-yards. The forces of the Gauls will storm the city. Jugurtha, king of Numidia, will rout the forces of the Romans by sea and by land. Lucius and Balbus, slaves of Marius, will prepare seats for their master. The queen's daughter gives (to) the poet a necklace. Marius will lay waste the fields of Numidia with fire and sword. The foot-soldiers are bridling the horses of the horsemen. Orgetorix dreads the cruelty of the Helvetians.

CLASS V.

§ 38. Nouns which have no nominative-ending, but present the unchanged stem in the nominative.

MASCULINE FORMS.

Höñör, *honor* (masc.).Pătër, *father* (masc.).*Singular.**Plural.*

N.	<i>hõ'-nõr,</i>	<i>hõ-nõ'-rēs,</i>
G.	<i>hõ-nõ'-rīs,</i>	<i>hõ-nõ'-rüm,</i>
D.	<i>hõ-nõ'-rī,</i>	<i>hõ-nõr'-ī-būs,</i>
Ac.	<i>hõ-nõ'-rēm,</i>	<i>hõ-nõ'-rēs,</i>
V.	<i>hõ'-nõr,</i>	<i>hõ-nõ'-rēs,</i>
Ab.	<i>hõ-nõ'-rě;</i>	<i>hõ-nõr'-ī-būs.</i>

*Singular.**Plural.*

<i>pă'-těr,</i>	<i>pă'-trēs,</i>
<i>pă'-trīs,</i>	<i>pă'-trüm,</i>
<i>pă'-trī,</i>	<i>păť'-rī-būs,</i>
<i>pă'-trēm,</i>	<i>pă'-trēs,</i>
<i>pă'-těr,</i>	<i>pă'-trēs,</i>
<i>pă'-trě;</i>	<i>păť'-rī-būs.</i>

Remark 1.—Nouns in *těr* and *běr* drop *ě* in the oblique cases: as, *imběr, imbrīs; pătěr, păťrīs.*

Remark 2.—*Imběr, pügil,* and *vespěr* have *ě* or *ī* in the ablative; *imběr, lintěr, ventěr, ūtěr,* have *iüm* in the genitive plural; and *rěn* has *üm* or *iüm*.

Remark 3.—Some names of towns, when denoting *the place where,* have *ī* in the ablative: as, *Anxūrī.*

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which present the unchanged stem in the nominative (except stems in *ăl, ăr,* and *űr*) are masculine.

Exc. 1. (OR.) *Arbör, tree,* is feminine. *Adör, spelt, æquör, sea,* and *marmör, marble,* are neuter. Masculines in *ör* have *ö* long in the oblique cases; neuters have *ö* short: as, *hõñörīs, marmörīs.*

Exc. 2. (ER.) *Lintěr, boat,* is feminine. *Cădăvěr, corpse; spinthěr, clasp; tûběr, swelling; ūběr, udder; věr, spring; verběr, lash;* and names of trees and plants in *er,* are neuter. But *lavěr* and *tûběr,* names of trees, are feminine, and *sīsěr* is masculine in the plural.

Exc. 3. *Alēc, ălēc-īs, brine,* and *vās, vās-īs, vessel,* are neuter.

EXERCISE XIV.

Vocabulary.

Cæsār, Cæsār-īs, <i>Cæsar.</i>	lintēr, lintr-īs, <i>boat.</i>
impērātōr, -ōr-īs, <i>commander.</i>	imbēr, imbr-īs, <i>rain.</i>
consūl, consūl-īs, <i>consul.</i>	conjux, conjūg-īs, <i>husband or wife.</i>
ansēr, ansēr-īs, <i>goose.</i>	sāgittāriūs, -ī, <i>archer.</i>
frātēr, fratr-īs, <i>brother.</i>	fundītōr, -ōr-īs, <i>slinger.</i>
mātēr, matr-īs, <i>mother.</i>	pastōr, -ōr-īs, <i>shepherd.</i>
sōrōr, sōrōr-īs, <i>sister.</i>	vēnātōr, -ōr-īs, <i>hunter.</i>
hībernā, -ōrūm, <i>winter quarters.</i>	mercātōr, -ōr-īs, <i>merchant.</i>
īn hībernā collōcārē, <i>to put into</i>	tēlūm, -ī, <i>dart.</i>
<i>winter quarters.</i>	
collōc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to place, put together.</i>	
dēfens-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to defend.</i>	

Translate into English.

Plebs libertatēm ferrō servābit. Impērātōr equitēs peditēsque convōcābāt. Cæsār āb urbē īn Galliām festinābāt. Agrīcōlā conjūgēm libērosque āmāt. Pastōr grēgēm ā lūpō dēfensābit. Crassūs consūl īn nāvālibūs nāvēs ēt lintrēs aedificāt. Agrīcōlæ ansērēs īn hortō hābitant. Milītēs impērātōrēm ā glādiīs tēlisque hostiūm dēfensābunt. Cæsār cōpiās īn hībernā collōcāt. Vēnātōr īn silvā aprīs rētiā pārāt. Cæsār cūm sāgittāriīs fundītōribusque ād montēm festināt. Rex mercātōrēs convōcāt. Balbūs, Lūciī gēnēr, fratrēs sōrōresque āmāt. Imbrēs agrīcōlās dēlectant.

Translate into Latin.

The horsemen will rout the archers and slingers of the enemy. The shepherds are sacrificing bulls and sheep to the gods. The geese are flying into the forest. The sisters of Orgetorix are dancing in the garden. The brother of Lucius was defending his mother and sisters with (his)

sword. The common people intrust their liberty to the consul. The hunter will show (to) the shepherd a by-path through the forest. Cæsar will hasten from the winter-quarters into the city. The slingers are wounding the horsemen of the enemy with stones.

NEUTER FORMS.

§ 39. Nouns which present the unchanged stem in *ăl*, *ăr*, *ūr*.

Animă^l, *an animal* (neuter).

Calcăr, *a spur* (neuter).

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N.	ăn'-î-măl,	ăn-î-mă'-li-ă,	cal'-căr,	cal-că'-ri-ă,
G.	ăn-î-mă'-lîs,	ăn-î-mă'-li-ŭm,	cal-că'-rîs,	cal-că'-ri-ŭm,
D.	ăn-î-mă'-lî,	ăn-î-mă'-î-bŭs,	cal-că'-rî,	cal-căr'-î-bŭs,
Ac.	ăn'-î-măl,	ăn-î-mă'-li-ă,	cal'-căr,	cal-că'-ri-ă,
V.	ăn'-î-măl,	ăn-î-mă'-li-ă,	cal'-căr,	cal-că'-ri-ă,
Ab.	ăn-î-mă'-lî;	ăn-î-mă'-î-bŭs.	cal-că'-rî;	cal-căr'-î-bŭs.

NOTE.—Nouns in *ăl*, *ăr*, were originally adjectives, the adjective-ending of those in *ăl* and *ăr* having been dropped. Thus, *ănim-ă*, breath; neuter adjective *ănim-ălě* (*ănimăl*), a thing having breath, an animal; *calc-s* (*calx*), the heel; *calc-ărě* (*calc-ăr*), a thing pertaining to the heel, a spur.

Remark 1.—Nouns ending in *ăl* and *ăr* have *î* in the ablative singular, *iŭm* in the genitive plural, and *iă* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural.

Remark 2.—*Baccăr*, *făr*, *jŭbăr*, *nectăr*, *păr*, and *săl* have *ě* in the ablative singular; and *făr* and *lăr* have *ŭm* or *iŭm* in the genitive plural.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which present in the nominative the unchanged stem in *ăl*, *ăr*, *ūr*, are neuter.

Exc. *Săl*, *salt*, is masculine or neuter in the singular, and always masculine in the plural. *Făr*, *thief*, *furfăr*, *bran*, *sălăr*, *trout*, *turtăr*, *dove*, *vultăr*, *vulture*, are masculine.

EXERCISE XV.

§ 40. *Vocabulary.*

jūmentūm, -ī, <i>work-horse, beast of burden.</i>	furfūr, furfūr-īs, <i>bran.</i>
jūbār, jūbār-īs, <i>sunshine.</i>	stīmūlūs, -ī, <i>goad.</i>
vultūr, vultūr-īs, <i>vulture.</i>	tempestās, tempestāt-īs, <i>tempest.</i>
templūm, -ī, <i>temple.</i>	templūm dē marmōrē, <i>a temple of marble.</i>
marmōr, marmōr-īs, <i>marble.</i>	dē (prep. with abl.), <i>from, of.</i>
dīc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to dedicate.</i>	
concīt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to urge on, stir up, arouse.</i>	
rapt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to snatch away, carry off.</i>	

Translate into English and analyze.

Crassūs diis templūm dē marmōrē dīcābīt. Vultūrēs agnōs et hādōs raptant. Jūbār nautās dēlectāt. Agrīcōlā jūmentā stīmūlō concītāt. Cecrops, rex Græciæ, ēquūm calcārībūs concītāt. Rēgīnā īn insulā ārām dē marmōrē ædificāt. Agrīcōlæ jūmentīs furfūrēm dant. Vēlītēs Cæsārīs hostiūm sīgittāriōs fundītōresquē fūgābunt. Tempestātēs mārīs hostiūm classēm proflīgābunt.

Translate into Latin.

The boys love the master. Cæsar will lay waste the fields of the Gauls with fire and sword. Tully will rout the forces of the enemy by sea and land. Tully's foot-soldiers occupy the hill. Farmers plough their fields with work-horses. Eagles and vultures build nests in the rocks. Cæsar's skirmishers will search out the by-paths through the forests. Jugurtha, king of Numidia, was storming his brother's towns. Sailors dread tempests. Horsemen urge on their horses with spurs.

CLASS VI.

§ 41. Nouns which have no nominative-ending, but present the stem *changed* in the nominative.

I.—MASCULINE FORMS OF CLASS VI.

<i>n</i> of stem dropped.	<i>ēr</i> changed into <i>īs</i> .	<i>r</i> changed into <i>s</i> .
Sermo, <i>speech</i> (m.).	Pulvīs, <i>dust</i> (m.).	Flōs, <i>flower</i> (m.).
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
N. ser'-mō,	pul'-vīs,	flōs,
G. ser-mō'-nīs,	pul'-vē-rīs,	flō'-rīs,
D. ser-mō'-nī,	pul'-vē-rī,	flō'-rī,
Ac. ser-mō'-nēm,	pul'-vē-rēm,	flō'-rēm,
V. ser'-mō,	pul'-vīs,	flōs,
Ab. ser-mō'-ně;	pul'-vē-rě;	flō'-rě;
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. ser-mō'-nēs,	pul'-vē-rēs,	flō'-rēs,
G. ser-mō'-nūm,	pul'-vē-rūm,	flō'-rūm,
D. ser-mōn'-ī-būs,	pul'-vēr'-ī-būs,	flōr'-ī-būs,
Ac. ser-mō'-nēs,	pul'-vē-rēs,	flō'-rēs,
V. ser-mō'-nēs,	pul'-vē-rēs,	flō'-rēs,
Ab. ser-mōn'-ī-būs.	pul'-vēr'-ī-būs.	flōr'-ī-būs.

Remark 1.—Two nouns, *sanguīs*, *sanguīn-īs*, blood, and *pollis*, *pollīn-īs*, fine flour, change *n* of the stem into *s*.

Remark 2.—Some nouns of the fifth class, whose stems end in *ēr*, have an old form of the nominative in *ōs*: as, *hōnōs*, *arbōs*, for *hōnōr*, *arbōr*.

Remark 3.—*Mās*, *mār-īs*, and *glīs*, *glīr-īs*, have *iūm* in the genitive plural; and *mūs*, *mūr-īs*, has *ūm* and *iūm*; *rūs*, *rūr-īs*, has *ē* or *ī* in the ablative singular.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which drop *n* of the stem in the nominative are masculine.

Exc. Abstracts in *io* (mostly formed by adding *io* to the supine stem of verbs) are feminine. *Būbo* is masculine and feminine.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change *er* of the stem into *is*, *r* into *s*, or *n* into *s*, are masculine.

Exc. 1. *Crūs*, *jūs*, *pūs*, *rūs*, *tūs*, and *ōs*, mouth, are neuter. *Tellūs* is feminine. (Stems changing *ur* into *us* are mostly neuter.)

Exc. 2. *Cinīs* is masculine or feminine in the singular; *cīnērēs*, ashes of the dead, is always masculine. *Pulvis*, dust, is very rarely feminine.

EXERCISE XVI.

Vocabulary.

mōs, mōr-īs, *manner, custom.*

centūriō, -ōn-īs, *centurion.*

leō, -ōn-īs, *lion.*

mons, mont-īs (§ 31, Exc. 1),
mountain.

latrō, -ōn-īs, *robber.*

pīrātā, -æ, *pirate.*

Cātō, -ōn-īs, *Cato.*

rēbelliō, -ōn-īs, *rebellion.*

Varrō, -ōn-īs, *Varro.*

ōrātiō, -ōn-īs, *speech, oration.*

Cicērō, -ōn-īs, *Cicero.*

ōrātōr, -ōr-īs, *orator.*

mōrē rēgīs, *after the manner of a king,*

āpūd, *among, with (prep. with ac.).*

āpūd Helvētiōs, *among the Helvetians.*

āpūd Cātōnēm, *at the house of Cato,*
with Cato.

trūcid-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to slay.*

cōen-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to sup.*

rēbelliōnēm concītārē, *to excite, raise a rebellion.*

NOTE.—*Rēbelliō* and *ōrātiō*, being abstracts in *io*, are feminine; but *centūrio* is the name of a male being, and is, therefore, masculine.

Translate into English and analyze.

Cæsār, mōrē rēgīs, obsidēs āb Helvētiīs postulāt. Centūriō turrēs (§ 33, Remark 2) ædificāt. Varrō consūl īn silvīs mōrē latrōnīs hābitāt. Orgētōrix āpūd Helvētiōs rēbelliōnēm concītābīt. Cicērō ōrātōr plēbēm ōrātiōnē dēlectāt. Ōrātiō Cātōnīs nōbilitātēm dēlectāt. Pars nōbilitātīs āpūd rēgēm cōenant. Leōnēs īn montībūs ēt silvīs hābitant. Latrōnēs īn silvā filiūm rēgīnæ trūcidābant. Rex latrōnēs pīrātasquē trūcidābīt. Rēgīs filiæ āpūd agrīcōlām cōenant. Nōbilitās rēbelliōnēm āpūd plēbēm formīdāt. Cēcrops nōbilitātēm concītāt. Nautæ pīrātās formīdant.

Translate into Latin.

The conversation (*sermo*) of the poet delights the queen. A lion will tear in pieces the children of Cadmus. The daughter of Cecrops gives flowers to her father-in-law. The common people are breaking the laws of the city. Marcus, the brother of Marius, was building a tower upon a hill. Crassus will sup at the house of Cicero. Cæsar dreads a rebellion among the Gauls. Cæsar demands hostages of (*from*) the Germans. The Gauls, after the manner of the Germans, burn pirates with fire. Kings slay robbers and pirates. Part of the nobility dread Cato. The poet loves Cato's daughter.

II.—FEMININE FORMS OF CLASS VI.

§ 42. Nouns which change *in* of the stem into *ō* to form the nominative.

Virgo, *a virgin* (feminine; stem *virgin*).

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	<i>vir'-gō,</i>	<i>vir'-gī-nēs,</i>
Gen.	<i>vir'-gī-nīs,</i>	<i>vir'-gī-nūm,</i>
Dat.	<i>vir'-gī-nī,</i>	<i>vir-gīn'-ī-būs,</i>
Acc.	<i>vir'-gī-nēm,</i>	<i>vir'-gī-nēs,</i>
Voc.	<i>vir'-gō,</i>	<i>vir'-gī-nēs,</i>
Abl.	<i>vir'-gī-nē;</i>	<i>vir-gīn'-ī-būs.</i>

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change *in* of the stem into *o* are feminine.

Exc. *Ordo*, *cardo*, and *turbo* are masculine. *Nēmō*, *hōmo*, and *margō* are masculine or feminine.

Remark.—*Cāro*, flesh, has *carnīs*, &c., contracted for *cārīnīs*, and has *iūm* in the genitive plural.

EXERCISE XVII.

§ 43. *Rule of Position.*—Adverbs usually stand immediately before the words they limit.

Rule of Position.—A genitive limiting the object of a preposition usually stands between the preposition and its case: as, *in Cæsaris hortō.*

Rule of Syntax.—Adverbs limit verbs, adjectives, and other adverbs.

Vocabulary.

multitūdō, -īn-īs, *multitude.*

turbō, turbīn-īs, *whirlwind.*

ōrīgō, ōrīgīn-īs, *origin.*

ordō, ordin-īs, *rank.*

consuetūdō, -īn-īs, *custom, habit.*

magnitūdō, -īn-īs, *greatness.*

immortālītās, -āt-īs, *immortality.*

nōn (adverb), *not.*

dē (prep. with abl.), *concerning.*

pēriculūm, -ī, *danger.*

ānimūs, -ī, *soul, mind.*

ex consuetudinē, *according to custom.*

dispūt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to discuss, debate, dispute.*

turb-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to confuse, disorder.*

per-turb-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to throw into great confusion, to confound.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Orātiō Cæsaris multitūdīnēm dēlectāt. Equitēs Crassī multitūdīnēm hostiūm fūgābunt. Cātō dē ānimī ōrīgīnē cūm Cīcērōnē dispūtāt. Magnitūdō pēriculī consulēm per-turbāt. Equitēs cōpiās hostiūm turbābunt. Rex ex consuetudinē in Crassī hortō ambulābāt. Cīcērō dē ānimī immortālītātē dispūtābāt. Peditēs ordinēs nōn servābant. Nautæ pīrātās ēt turbīnēs formīdant. Rex captīvōs nōn nēcābit. Lūciūs ex agrīcōlæ agrō in vicūm festīnāt. Consul multitūdīnēm hostiūm nōn formīdāt. Vēlītēs in Helvētiōrūm agrīs proeliūm rēdintēgrābunt.

Translate into Latin.

The Gauls sacrifice virgins to the gods. The poet, ac-

cording to custom, was walking in Tully's field. The king of the Belgians is sacrificing bulls and sheep in the queen's garden. The Gauls do not debate concerning the origin of the soul. The Helvetians will not burn Orgetorix with fire. Cæsar will not arm the skirmishers with javelins. Cæsar rides into the city after the manner of a king. Tully, according to custom, demands hostages from the Belgians. The soldiers will confuse the ranks of the enemy. Cæsar does not dread the whirlwind.

III.—NEUTER FORMS OF CLASS VI.

§ 44. Nouns which form the nominative by changing *in* of the stem into *en*, *or* into *ür*, *er* or *ör* into *üs*, or which change the stem otherwise than as stated under masculine and feminine forms of Class VI.

NOTE.—Thus, *căpüt*, *căpüt-ïs*, forms the nominative by changing *üt* into *üt*; *cör*, *cord-ïs*; *fěl*, *fell-ïs*; *lăc*, *lact-ïs*; *měl*, *mell-ïs*; *ös*, *oss-ïs*; and *äs*, *ass-ïs*, drop the last letter of the stem.

PARADIGMS.

Verse.	Work.	Head.
<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>
N. <i>car'-mën</i> ,	ö'-püs,	că'-püt,
G. <i>car'-mī-nīs</i> ,	öp'-ë-rīs,	căp'-ī-tīs,
D. <i>car'-mī-nī</i> ,	öp'-ë-rī,	căp'-ī-tī,
Ac. <i>car'-mën</i> ,	ö'-püs,	că'-püt,
V. <i>car'-mën</i> ,	ö'-püs,	că'-püt,
Ab. <i>car'-mī-ně</i> ;	öp'-ë-rě;	căp'-ī-tě;
<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. <i>car'-mī-nă</i> ,	öp'-ë-ră,	căp'-ī-tă,
G. <i>car'-mī-nüm</i> ,	öp'-ë-rüm,	căp'-ī-tüm,
D. <i>car-mīn'-ī-büs</i> ,	ö-për'-ī-büs,	că-pīt'-ī-büs,
Ac. <i>car'-mī-nă</i> ,	öp'-ë-ră,	căp'-ī-tă,
V. <i>car'-mī-nă</i> ,	öp'-ë-ră,	căp'-ī-tă,
Ab. <i>car-mīn'-ī-büs</i> .	ö-për'-ī-büs.	că-pīt'-ī-bus.

Remark.—*Occipūt* has *ī* in the ablative singular; and *mēl* has *ē*, sometimes *ī*. *Os*, bone, has *ossiūm* in the genitive plural.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns which change *in* into *en*, *or* into *ūr*, *ēr* or *ōr* into *ūs*, &c., are neuter.

Exc. *As*, *ass-īs*, pound; *lēpūs*, *lēpōr-īs*, hare; and *pectēn*, *pectīn-īs*, comb, are masculine.

EXERCISE XVIII.

Vocabulary.

rōbūr, *rōbōr-īs*, *strength*.

corpūs, *corpōr-īs*, *body*.

jūs, *jūr-īs*, *justice*, *law* (generally *unwritten law*, as opposed to *lex*, *written law*).

mūs, *mūr-īs*, *mouse*.

port-ārē, *to carry*.

nātūrā, *-æ*, *nature*.

tard-ārē, *to hinder*.

mūnūs, *mūnēr-īs*, *gift*.

lēpūs, *lēpōr-īs*, *hare*.

foedūs, *foedēr-īs*, *treaty*.

ōnūs, *ōnēr-īs*, *burden*.

flūmēn, *flūmīn-īs*, *river*.

trān-ārē, *to swim across*.

Tībērīs, *-īs*, *the Tiber* (§ 33, *Rem.* 1).

nēmūs, *nēmōrīs*, *grove*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Dōmīnūs rōbūr servī laudāt. Rēgīnā ancillis mūnērā dābit. Belgæ foedūs nōn violābunt. Lēpōrēs ēt mūrēs īn agrīs hābitant. Servī rēgīnæ īn oppīdūm ōnērā portant. Carminā poētæ impērātōrēm dēlectant. Crassūs Tībērīm trānābit. Rōbūr corpōrīs multītūdīnēm dēlectāt. Rōbūr ānīmī Cātōnēm dēlectāt. Equītēs flūmēn trānant. Cīcērō dē jūrē lēgībusquē dispūtāt. Poētā Cæsārī carminā dīcābit. Magnītūdō ōpērīs consulēm nōn tardābit. Puellæ īn Cæsārīs nēmōrē saltant. Cīcērō dē ānīmī ēt corpōrīs nātūrā dispūtāt.

Translate into Latin.

The poet was walking with the king in Cæsar's garden. The boys and girls are dancing in Tully's grove. The soldiers of Orgetorix will swim across the river. Whirl-

winds will dash in pieces the fleet of the enemy. The commander praises the valor of the soldiers. The consul is building ships and boats in the dock-yards of Gaul. The enemy violates the treaty. The nature of the work hinders the forces of the enemy. Davus and Balbus, Tully's slaves, will carry burdens into the city.

§ 45. IRREGULAR NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>Jū'-pī-tēr,</i>	<i>vīs,</i>	<i>vī'-rēs,</i>
Gen. <i>Jō'-vīs,</i>	<i>vīs,</i>	<i>vīr'-i-ŭm,</i>
Dat. <i>Jō'-vī,</i>	—	<i>vīr'-ī-bŭs,</i>
Acc. <i>Jō'-vēm,</i>	<i>vīm,</i>	<i>vī'-rēs,</i>
Voc. <i>Jū'-pī-tēr,</i>	<i>vīs,</i>	<i>vī'-rēs,</i>
Abl. <i>Jō'-vē.</i>	<i>vī;</i>	<i>vīr'-ī-bŭs.</i>

Itēr, a journey (neuter).

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom. <i>ī'-tēr,</i>	<i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-ră,</i>
Gen. <i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-rīs,</i>	<i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-rŭm,</i>
Dat. <i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-rī,</i>	<i>īt-ī-nĕr'-ī-bŭs.</i>
Acc. <i>ī'-tēr,</i>	<i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-ră,</i>
Voc. <i>ī'-tēr,</i>	<i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-ră,</i>
Abl. <i>ī-tīn'-ĕ-rĕ;</i>	<i>īt-ī-nĕr'-ī-bŭs.</i>

Jus-jŭrandŭm, oath (neuter).

Nom. <i>jus-jŭ-ran'-dŭm,</i>	<i>jŭ-ră-jŭ-ran'-dă,</i>
Gen. <i>jŭ-ris-jŭ-ran'-dī,</i>	_____
Dat. <i>jŭ-rī-jŭ-ran'-dō,</i>	_____
Acc. <i>jus-jŭ-ran'-dŭm,</i>	<i>jŭ-ră-jŭ-ran'-dă,</i>
Voc. <i>jus-jŭ-ran'-dŭm,</i>	<i>jŭ-ră-jŭ-ran'-dă.</i>
Abl. <i>jŭ-rĕ-jŭ-ran'-dō;</i>	_____

Māterfāmiliās, mother of a family.

Singular.

Nom.	mā-ter-fă-mīl'-i-ās,
Gen.	ma-tris-fă-mīl'-i-ās,
Dat.	ma-trī-fă-mīl'-i-ās,
Acc.	ma-trem-fă-mīl'-i-ās,
Voc.	mā-ter-fă-mīl'-i-ās,
Abl.	ma-trē-fă-mīl'-i-ās.

Plural.

N. ma-tres-fă-mīl-i-ās or -fāmiliārūm, &c.

In the same manner decline *pāterfāmiliās*. See § 18, *Remark 3*.

Sūpellex, furniture (fem.).

Nom.	sū-peł'-lex,
Gen.	sūpel-lec'-tī-līs,
Dat.	sūpel-lec'-tī-lī,
Acc.	sūpel-lec'-tī-lēm,
Voc.	sū-peł'-lex,
Abl.	sūpel-lec'-tī-lē or -ī.

Jēcūr, liver (neuter).

N.	jě'-cūr,
G.	jě-cīn'-ō-rīs or jěc'-ō-rīs,
D.	jě-cīn'-ō-rī or jěc'-ō-rī,
Ac.	jě'-cūr,
V.	jě'-cūr,
Ab.	jě-cīn'-ō-rē or jěc'-ō-rē, &c.

Bōs, an ox or cow (masculine or feminine).

Nom.	bōs,	bōv'-ēs,
Gen.	bōv'-īs,	bō'-ūm,
Dat.	bōv'-ī,	bō'-būs or bū'-būs,
Acc.	bōv'-ēm,	bōv'-ēs,
Voc.	bōs,	bōv'-ēs,
Abl.	bōv'-ē;	bō'-būs or bū'-būs.

EXERCISE XIX.

Vocabulary.

cōmēdō, -ōn-īs, *glutton*.
 prōvinciā, -æ, *province*.
 aurūm, -ī, *gold*.
 argentūm, -ī, *silver*.
 cībūs, -ī, *food*.

tent-ārē, *to attempt*.
 pēr vīm, *by force*.
 dēcōr-ārē, *to adorn*.
 vōr-ārē, *to devour, gulp down*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Helvētiī jūrējūrandō fœdūs confirmant. Păterfămiliās servōs tūbā convōcāt. Impĕrătōr Jōvī ōvēs taurosquē mactāt. Jūgurthă, rex Nūmīdiæ, Jōvī templūm dē marmōrē dicābīt. Helvētiī itĕr pĕr prōvinciām pĕr vīm tentābant. Jēcīnōră ansĕrūm cōmēdōnēs dēlectant. Leōnēs incōlās insūlæ vōrābunt. Cōmēdō cībūm mōrē cānīs vōrāt. Gallī templă deōrūm aurō ēt argentō dēcōrant. Măterfămiliās ancillis cībūm dāt. Agrīcōlă gĕnĕrō sūpellectilēm dăbīt. Agrīcōlă agrōs būbūs ārāt.

Translate into Latin.

The king will not violate his oath. Farmers plough their fields with horses and oxen. Gluttons love the liver of the goose. The queen of the Belgians will sacrifice a flock of sheep to Jupiter. Dumnorix, the chief of the Æduans, will attempt a journey through the province by force. The Gauls will bring sheep and oxen to (*ad*) Cæsar. The mother of the family will give food to her children. Farmers urge on their oxen with the goad. Robbers dread the power (*vīs*) of kings. The soldiers of Marius were cutting turf with their swords. The merchants will import swords into the villages of the Helvetians.

§ 46. SUMMARY OF THE RULES OF GENDER, AND PECULIAR ENDINGS.

I.—MASCULINES.

1. Nouns which change stem-vowel (*i* into *e*) and add *s*: as, *mīlēs* (stem *mīlit*), *prīnceps* (stem *prīncip*).
Class III.

Exc. *Mergēs*, feminine; *ādeps*, *cortex*, and *forceps*, masculine or feminine.

2. Nouns which present the stem unchanged in the nominative: as, *hõnõr*, *consül*, *ansër*. Class V.

Exc. 1. Unchanged stems in *äl*, *är*, *ür*, with *ädör*, *æquör*, *mar-mör*, neuter.

Exc. 2. *Arbör* and *lintër*, feminine. *Cädävër*, *spinthër*, *tübër*, *übër*, *vër*, *verbër*, with names of trees and plants in *ër*, are neuter. But *lavër* and *tübër* (names of trees) are feminine; and *sīsër* is masculine, in the plural. *Alēc* and *vās*, *vāsīs*, are neuter.

3. Nouns which drop *n* of the stem in the nominative, without adding *s*: as, *sermo*, *sermõnīs*. Class VI.

Exc. Abstracts in *-io*, all feminine. *Būbo*, masculine or feminine

4. Nouns which change *ër* of the stem into *īs*, *r* into *s*, *n* into *s*: as, *pulvīs*, *pulvër-is*; *flōs*, *flōr-is*.

Exc. *Crūs*, *jūs*, *pūs*, *rūs*, *tūs*, *ōs* (*ōr-īs*), neuter; *tellūs*, feminine. *Cīnīs*, masculine or feminine in singular, always masculine in plural; *pulvīs*, masculine, rarely feminine.

II.—FEMININES.

1. Nouns which add *s* to the stem without vowel change: as, *urbs*, *lex* (*lěg-s*), *ars* (*art-s*), *arx* (*arc-s*). Class I.

Exc. 1. Masculine, *dens* and its compounds, *fons*, *pons*, *mons*, *cliens*, *rūdēns* (rarely feminine), and compounds of *ās*, *pārēs*, *pēs*, *lāpīs*, *grex*, Greek nouns in *ax* and *ix*, with *cālix*, *fornīx*, *perdīx*, *trādux*.

Exc. 2. Masculine or feminine, many nouns denoting living beings, with *scrobs*, *stīrps*, *calx*.

2. Nouns which insert a vowel (*e* or *i*) before adding *s*: as, *vall-ī-s*, *rūp-ē-s*. Class II.

Exc. 1. Masculine and feminine, *pālumbēs*, *vātēs*, *veprēs*, *amnīs*, *anguīs*, *callīs*, *cānālīs*, *cānīs*, *clūnīs*, *corbīs*, *fīnīs* (always masculine in plural), *fūnīs*, *scrōbīs*, *tigrīs*, *torquīs*.

Exc. 2. Masculine, *axis, aquālis, caulis, cassis, collis, crīnis, ensis, fascis, follis, fustis, ignis, mănēs, mensis, mūgilis, orbis, pānis, piscis, postis, sentis, sōdālis, torris, unguis, vectis, vermīs*.

3. Nouns which change *in* into *o* : as, *virgo, virgin-is*.
Class VI.

Exc. *Ordo, cardo, turbo*, masculine. *Nēmo, hōmo, margo*, masculine or feminine.

III.—NEUTERS.

1. Nouns which add *e* to the stem ; as, *māre, mār-is*.

2. Nouns which present the unchanged stem in *āl, ār, ūr* : as, *ānimāl, ānimāl-is ; calcār, calcār-is ; fulgūr, fulgūr-is*. Class V.

Exc. *Sāl*, masculine or neuter in the singular, always masculine in the plural. Masculine, *fūr, furfūr, sālār, turtūr, vultūr*.

3. Nouns changing *in* into *ēn* ; *ōr* into *ūr* ; *ēr, ōr*, into *ūs, &c.* Class VI.

Exc. Masculine, as, *lēpus, pectēn*.

N.B.—Many nouns, on account of their meaning, vary from these rules. See § 13, Rules.

IV.—PECULIAR CASE-ENDINGS.

Accusative Singular : regular ending ēm.

CLASS I.—*Pars* and *lens* have *ēm* or *īm*.

CLASS II.—Names of places, rivers, and gods, in *īs* have *īm*, sometimes *īn*. *Scaldīs* has *īn, īm* ; *Lirīs* has *īm, īn, ēm* ; *Līgēr* has *īm*. *Amussīs, būrīs, cannābīs, cūcūmīs, mēphītīs, pelvīs, rāvīs, sēcūrīs, sīnāpīs, sītīs, tussīs, vīs*, have *īm*.

Febrīs, restīs, puppīs, turris, have *īm*, and sometimes *ēm*.

Bīpennīs, clāvīs, messīs, nāvīs, præsēpīs, sēmentīs, strīgīlīs, have *ēm*, sometimes *īm*.

Ablative Singular; regular ending ě.

CLASS I.—*Pars, lens, sors, trīdens*, have ě or ī.

CLASS II.—Nouns which have *īm* in the accusative, with names of months in *ēr* and *īs*, have ī in the ablative. But *Bætīs, canābīs, sīnāpīs*, have ě or ī.

Nouns which have *ēm* or *īm* in the accusative, have ě or ī in the ablative. But *restīs* has ě only.

The following have ě or ī: *amnīs, anguīs, āvis, bilīs, cīvīs, classīs, collīs, convallīs, corbīs, fīnīs, fustīs, cānālīs, ignīs, mūgīlīs, orbīs, ōvīs, postīs, sordēs, unguīs, vectīs*.

CLASS IV.—Nouns of this class have ī in the ablative; but names of towns have ě, and *rēlē* has ě or ī.

CLASS V.—*Imbēr, pūgīl, vespēr*, have ě or ī.

Nouns in *āl* and *ār* have ī; but *baccār, fār, jūbār, nectār, pār*, and *sāl*, have ě.

CLASS VI.—*Occipūt* has ī, and *mēl* and *rūs* have ě or ī. Names of towns denoting the *place where* have sometimes ī; as, *Carthāgīnī, Anxūrī*. These are probably datives.

Genitive Plural; regular ending ům.

CLASS I.—Stems ending in two consonants, with *dōs, līs, frauš, vis, faux, nix, compēs, strix*, have iům.

Stems of more than one syllable in *nt* and *rt*, with national names in *ās*, have iům, and sometimes ům. Other nouns in *ās*, with *fornax* and *pālūs*, have ům, sometimes iům. *Quīrīs* and *Samnīs* have iům.

CLASS II.—Nouns of this class have iům; but *cānīs, jūvēnīs, fōrīs, mūgīlīs, prōlēš, struēs, vātēs*, have ům; also, generally, *āpīs, strīgīlīs, vōlūcrīs*; sometimes *mensīs* and *cædēs*.

CLASS IV.—Nouns of this class have iům.

CLASS V.—*Imbēr, lintēr, ventēr, ūtēr*, have iům; *rēn, fūr*, and *lūr*, have ům or iům.

Neuters in *āl* and *ār* have iům.

CLASS VI.—*Mūs, glīs*, and *ōs*, bone, have iům; *mūs* has ům or iům. *Cāro* has *carniům*.

Accusative Plural; regular ending ēs, neuter ā.

Nouns which have *iŭm* in the genitive plural have an old form of the accusative in *ēis*; and neuters in *ě, āl*, and *ār* have *iā* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural.

TENSES EXPRESSING COMPLETED ACTION.

§ 47. I. The tenses which express *incomplete* action are the *present*, *imperfect*, and *future*; those which express *completed* action are the *present-perfect* (*perfect*), *past-perfect* (*pluperfect*), and *future-perfect*. These three tenses are always formed on the same stem, called the *perfect-stem*.

II. The *perfect-stem* in the first conjugation is formed by adding *-āv-* to the *present-stem*: as, present-stem, *ām-*; perfect-stem, *ām-āv-*.

III. The *present-perfect* tense expresses completed action in *present* time: as, *pres. cœnŏ, I sup*; *pres. perf. cœnāvī, I have supped*. The same form of the verb is also used to express an action *indefinitely* as past, without reference to its continuance or completion. This is called the *aorist-perfect*, or *indefinite-perfect*; as, *cœnāvī, I supped* (at some indefinite past time).

IV. The *past-perfect* tense expresses completed action in *past* time: as, *imp. cœnābām, I was supping*; *past-perf. cœnāv-ěram, I had supped*.

V. The *future-perfect* tense expresses action completed in *future* time: as, *fut. cœnābŏ, I shall sup*; *future-perf. cœnāv-ěro, I shall have supped*.

ENDINGS, INDICATIVE MOOD.

	Present-Perf.	Past-Perf.	Future-Perf.
	<i>Singular.</i>		
1st Person,	ī,	ě-rām,	ě-rō,
2d “	is'-tī,	ě-rās,	ě-rīs,
3d “	it;	ě-rāt;	ě-rīt;
	<i>Plural.</i>		
1st Person,	ī-mūs,	ě-rā'-mūs,	ěr'-ī-mūs,
2d “	is'-tīs,	ě-rā'-tīs,	ěr'-ī-tīs,
3d “	ě'-runt or ě'-rě.	ě-rant.	ě-rint.

By adding these endings to the perfect stem, *ām-āv-*, of *āmārě*, we obtain the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.—INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present-Perfect, *have loved* (Aorist-Perfect, *loved*).

Singular.

ă-mā'-vī,	<i>I have loved,</i>
ăm-ă-vis'-tī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>
ă-mā'-vīt,	<i>he has loved.</i>

Plural.

ă-māv'-ī-mūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
ăm-ā-vis'-tīs,	<i>ye have loved,</i>
ăm-ā-vě'-runt or -rě,	<i>they have loved.</i>

Past-Perfect, *had*.

Singular.

ă-māv'-ě-rām,	<i>I had loved,</i>
ă-māv'-ě-rās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>
ă-māv'-ě-rāt,	<i>he had loved.</i>

Plural.

ă-māv-ě-rā'-mūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
ă-māv-ě-rā'-tīs,	<i>ye had loved,</i>
ă-māv'-ě-rant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

Future-Perfect, *shall or will have.*

Singular.

ǎ-māv'-ě-rǒ,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
ǎ-māv'-ě-rīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
ǎ-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>he will have loved.</i>

Plural.

ām-ā-věr'-ī-mūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
ām-ā-věr'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye will have loved,</i>
ām-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

Remark 1.—A few verbs of the first conjugation form the perfect by adding *u* to the present-stem; as, *sēc-āt*, he cuts; *sēc-u-īt*, he has cut;—or by lengthening the present-stem; as, *jūv-āt* (*u* short), he helps; *jūv-īt* (*u* long), he has helped.

Remark 2.—The *supine-stem* is generally formed in the first conjugation by adding *-āt* to the present-stem; as, *āmo*, *ām-āt-ūm*. The ending of the supine is *-ūm*.

EXERCISE XX.

Vocabulary.

dō, dārē, dēd-i, dāt-ūm, *to give.*

nēc-ō, nēc-ārē, nēc-āvī, nēc-ātūm (*rarely* nectūm), *to kill.*

sēc-ō, sēc-ārē, sēc-u-i, sect-ūm *and* sēc-ātūm, *to cut.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Germānī in flūminībūs lāvānt. Rex filiō regnūm dēdīt. Princeps captīvōs vēnēnō nēcāvīt. Milītēs cāspītēs glādiīs sēcuerunt. Orgētōrix lēgēs Helvētiōrūm violāvīt. Helvētīi itēr pēr prōvinciām pēr vīm tentāvērunt. Princīpēs Gallōrūm Cēsārī obsidēs dēdērānt. Cēsār cūm Gallīs fōdūs jūrējūrandō confirmāvērāt. Lūpī ēt leōnēs incōlās insulāe vōrāvērunt. Jūgurthā mōrē rēgis ā Rōmānīs obsidēs postūlāvērāt. Servi ēquōs infrenāvērint. Crassī cōpiāe in Gallōrūm agrīs hiēmāvērānt. Latrōnēs trāmītēs pēr

silvām explōrāvērunt. Equītēs Cæsārīs hostiūm fundī-tōrēs fūgāvērant, ēt īn vīcūm festīnābant. Māriūs nūmērūm obsidūm dūplicāvit. Māgistēr puērō librūm dēdīt.

Translate into Latin.

Cicero disputed concerning the origin of the soul. The consul had routed the forces of the enemy by land and sea. The brother of Cicero the orator called together the common people. Balbus, Tully's slave, brought burdens into the city. The queen had walked in the farmer's garden. The king's son had given (to) his sister a necklace. The boys loved the master's children. The ambassadors of the Æduans had asked aid. The nobility dreaded a rebellion among the common people. Cæsar hastened into Gaul. The Gauls prepared snares for Crassus.

THE FOURTH DECLENSION.

§ 48. Nouns whose genitive-ending is *ūs* (long) are of the fourth declension. The nominative-endings are *ūs* and *ū*.

Remark 1.—These nouns were originally of the third declension, the termination *ūs* of the genitive being contracted from *uīs*.

Masculine Endings.

Neuter Endings.

	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. and V.	ūs,	ūs,	ū,	uā,
Gen.	ūs,	uūm,	ūs,	uūm,
Dat.	uī,	ībūs (ūbūs),	ū,	ībūs (ūbūs),
Acc.	ūm,	ūs,	ū,	uā,
Abl.	ū ;	ībūs (ūbūs).	ū ;	ībūs (ūbūs).

PARADIGM.

Fructūs, *fruit* (masc.).Cornū, *a horn* (neut.).*Singular.**Plural.**Singular.**Plural.*N. *fruc'-tūs, fruc'-tūs,**cor'-nū, cor'-nu-ă,*G. *fruc'-tūs, fruc'-tu-ŭm,**cor'-nūs, cor'-nu-ŭm,*D. *fruc'-tu-ī, fruc'-tī-būs,**cor'-nū, cor'-nī-būs,*Ac. *fruc'-tŭm, fruc'-tūs,**cor'-nū, cor'-nu-ă,*V. *fruc'-tūs, fruc'-tūs,**cor'-nū, cor'-nu-ă,*Ab. *fruc'-tū; fruc'-tī-būs.**cor'-nū; cor'-nī-būs.*

Remark 2.—Some nouns of this declension have likewise the inflection of the second declension, especially in the genitive singular: as, *sĕnātūs, sĕnātī*.

Remark 3.—A contracted form of the dative in *ū* sometimes occurs.

Remark 4.—The following nouns have *ŭbūs* in the dative and ablative plural:—

Acūs, *a needle.*Artūs, *a joint.*Partūs, *a birth.*Spēcūs, *a den.*Arcūs, *a bow.*Lēcūs, *a lake.*Pēcū, *a flock.*Tribūs, *a tribe.*

Gĕnū, *a knee*; *portūs*, *a harbor*; *tŏnĭtrūs*, *thunder*; and *vĕrū*, *a spit*, have *ībūs* or *ŭbūs*.

Remark 5.—*Dŏmūs*, *a house*, is thus declined:—

*Singular.**Plural.*Nom. *dŏ'-mūs,**dŏ'-mūs,*Gen. *dŏ'-mūs or dŏ'-mī,**dŏm'-u-ŭm or dŏ-mŏ'-rŭm,*Dat. *dŏm'-u-ī or dŏ'-mŏ,**dŏm'-ī-būs,*Acc. *dŏ'-mŭm,**dŏ'-mūs or dŏ'-mŏs,*Voc. *dŏ'-mūs,**dŏ'-mūs,*Abl. *dŏ'-mŏ;**dŏm'-ī-būs.*

Dŏmūs in the genitive singular generally means *of a house*; *domī*, *at home*. The ablative *domū* is found. *Domŏrŭm* and *domŏs* are the most common forms of the genitive and accusative plural.

Rule of Gender.—Nouns of the fourth declension in *ūs* are masculine; those in *ū*, neuter.

Exc. 1. The following are feminine:—

Acūs, <i>needle.</i>	Idūs, <i>Ides.</i>	Mānūs, <i>hand.</i>	Tribūs, <i>tribe.</i>
Dōmūs, <i>house.</i>	Fīcūs, <i>fig.</i>	Porticūs, <i>gallery.</i>	

Exc. 2. *Pēnūs*, storehouse, is masculine or feminine. *Sēcūs*, sex, is neuter. *Spēcūs*, den, is masculine, rarely feminine or neuter.

Remark 6.—Names of female beings, etc., are feminine by the general rule (§ 13, Rule 2). But *myrtūs*, a myrtle-tree, is sometimes masculine.

Remark 7.—*Cornūs*, *fīcūs*, *laurūs*, and *myrtūs*, are also of the second declension; and *pēnūs* is of the second, third, and fourth; *pēnūs*, -ūs or -ī, masculine and feminine; *pēnūs*, -ōris, neuter.

EXERCISE XXI.

Vocabulary.

fluctūs, -ūs, <i>wave.</i>	Rhēnūs, -ī, <i>Rhine.</i>
hōmō, -in-īs, <i>man.</i>	exercitūs, -ūs, <i>army.</i>
Lēmānūs, -ī, <i>Lemannus.</i>	adventūs, -ūs, <i>arrival.</i>
expect-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to await.</i>	
cre-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to create.</i>	

Translate into English and analyze.

Agrīcōlā īn pēnūm mergītēs portāvērāt. Deūs fructūs arbōrūm creāvit. Poētā īn dōmō ambūlāt. Agrīcōlā dōmūm ædīfīcāt. Deūs taurīs cornuā dēdīt. Deūs hōmīnībūs ānīmōs dēdīt. Agrīcōlā īn dōmūm fructūs terræ portāt. Vēnātōr arcūm sāgittasquē pārāt. Nautæ fluctūs nōn formīdant. Cæsār ā lacū Lēmānō ād flūmēn Rhēnūm festīnāvīt. Cæsār adventūm lēgātōrūm expectāvērāt. Impērātōrīs adventūs exercitūm dēlectāt. Leōnēs īn spēcūbūs hābītant.

Translate into Latin.

The soldiers bathed in the lake. The consul will hasten with the army to Lake Lemannus. The master will build houses for his slaves in the field. Marcus gave (to) his

son Lucius a bow and arrows. The boys awaited their father's arrival. The waves will dash in pieces the enemy's ships. The sailors fastened the yards to the masts with ropes. Lions do not dread the horns of bulls. The chief of the Germans lives in a cave. A hunter wounded the consul's son-in-law in the king's forest.

THE FIFTH DECLENSION.

§ 49. Nouns which have *ēi* in the genitive from *ēs* of the nominative are of the fifth declension. They are all feminine except *diēs*, day (masc. or fem. in the singular, and always masculine in the plural), and *mēridiēs*, midday (masculine).

ENDINGS.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
N. and V.	<i>ēs</i> ,	<i>ēs</i> ,
Gen.	<i>ēī</i> ,	<i>ērŭm</i> ,
Dat.	<i>ēī</i> ,	<i>ēbŭs</i> ,
Acc.	<i>ēm</i> ,	<i>ēs</i> ,
Abl.	<i>ē</i> ;	<i>ēbŭs</i> ,

PARADIGM.

<i>Rēs, a thing.</i>			<i>Diēs, a day.</i>	
	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
Nom.	<i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēs</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēs</i> ,
Gen.	<i>rē'-ī</i> ,	<i>rē'-rŭm</i> ,	<i>di-ē'-ī</i> ,	<i>di-ē'-rŭm</i> ,
Dat.	<i>rē'-ī</i> ,	<i>rē'-bŭs</i> ,	<i>di-ē'-ī</i> ,	<i>di-ē'-bŭs</i> ,
Acc.	<i>rēm</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēm</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēs</i> ,
Voc.	<i>rēs</i> ,	<i>rēs</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēs</i> ,	<i>dī'-ēs</i> ,
Abl.	<i>rē</i> ;	<i>rē'-bŭs</i> .	<i>dī'-ē</i> ;	<i>di-ē'-bŭs</i> .

NOTE.—A vowel before another vowel is short: as, *rēi*. But *e* between two *i*'s is long: as, *di-ē-ī*.

Remark 1.—*Diēs*, day, is rarely feminine, and thus only when it denotes a fixed day.

Remark 2.—The genitive and dative singular sometimes end in *ē* or *ī* instead of *ēī*.

Remark 3.—There are only about eighty nouns of the fifth declension, and but two of these, *rēs* and *diēs*, are complete in the plural. *Acīēs*, *effigiēs*, *elūvīēs*, *fāciēs*, *glāciēs*, *prōgēniēs*, *sēriēs*, *spēcīēs*, *spēs*, are not found in the genitive, dative, and ablative plural; and the rest are not found in the plural at all.

Remark 4.—All nouns of this declension, except *fīdēs*, faith; *rēs*, a thing; *spēs*, hope; and *plēbēs*, the common people, end in *iēs*; and all nouns in *iēs* are of this declension, except *ābiēs*, *āriēs*, *pāriēs*, *quiēs*, and *rēquiēs*, which are of the third declension.

Remark 5.—The noun *respublicā*, the commonwealth, is compounded of the noun *rēs* and the adjective *publicā*, and is thus declined:—

Singular.		Plural.	
Nom. and Voc.	res-pub'-lī-cā,	N. and V.	res-pub'-lī-cæ,
Gen. and Dat.	re-ī-pub'-lī-cæ,	Gen.	rē-rum-pub-lī-cā'-rūm,
Accusative,	rem-pub'-lī-cām,	Dat.	rē-bus-pub'-lī-cīs,
Ablative,	rē-pub'-lī-cā;	Acc.	res-pub'-lī-cās.

EXERCISE XXII.

sēnātūs, -ūs, *senate* (§ 48, *Remark 2*).

plēbēs, -ēī, *common people*.

tribūnūs, -ī, *tribune*.

āciēs, -ēī, *edge, point*; also *line of battle*.

pārens, -ent-īs, *parent*.

fāciēs, -ēī, *face*.

vultūs, -ūs, *countenance*.

sālūs, salūt-īs, *safety, health*.

nox, noct-īs, *night*.

currūs, -ūs, *chariot*.

fīdēs, -ēī, *faith, promise*.

spēs, -ēī, *hope*.

victōriā, -æ, *victory*.

prōgēniēs, -ēī, *offspring*.

effigiēs, -ēī, *likeness, image*.

præda, -æ, *booty*.

scēlūs, -ēr-īs, *crime*.

dictātōr, -ōr-īs, *dictator*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Sēnātūs dictātōrī sālūtēm urbīs mandāverāt. Anīmālīā prōgēniēm āmant. Leōnēs fāciēm vultumquē hōmīnīs

formidant. Spēs prædæ latrōnēs ād scēlērā concitāt. Lūciūs, tribūnūs plēbīs, centūriōnēs convōcāvīt. Marcūs filiūm āciē glādiī vulnērāvīt. Spēs victōriæ exercitūm dēlectāvīt. Jūgurthā, rex Nūmīdiæ, fidēm nōn servāvīt. Tribūnī libertatēm plēbēi servāvērunt. Crassūs consūl īn templō effīgiēm Jōvis collōcāvīt. Helvētiī exercitūm Cassiī consūlis fūgāvērē. Pārentēs prōgēniēm āmant. Rēginā poētæ currūm ēquosquē dēdīt. Turbinēs classēm hostiūm profīgāvērē.

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar put his army into winter quarters. The dictator will slay robbers and pirates. Crassus the tribune will not violate his promise. The hope of victory and booty urges the chiefs to (*ad*) war. The queen's daughter will set-up (*collocare*) an image of Jupiter in the king's garden. The queen adorned the image of Jupiter with silver and gold. The boy wounded his brother's foot with the point of a knife. The senate committed to the tribunes the liberty of the common people. God created day and night. The waves of the sea dashed in pieces the ships of the enemy. The poet's children loved their parents.

VARIABLE NOUNS.

§ 50. Nouns which vary in gender are called *heterogeneous*; those which vary in declension are called *heteroclites*.

1.—HETEROGENEOUS NOUNS.

(*a.*) Masculine in the singular, and neuter in the plural: as,
 Avernūs, *a hill in Campania.* Pangæūs, *a promontory in Thrace.*
 Dindŷmūs, *a hill in Phrygia.* Tœnārūs, *a promontory in Laconia.*
 Ismārūs, *a hill in Thrace.* Tartārūs, *hell.*
 Mænālūs, *a hill in Arcadia.* Taygētūs, *a hill in Laconia.*

(b.) Masculine in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural: as, *jōcūs*, a jest, plural *jōcī* and *jōcā*; *lōcūs*, a place, plural *lōcī*, passages in books, places; *lōcā*, places; *sībīlūs*, a hissing, plural *sībīlā*, rarely *sībīlī*.

(c.) Feminine in the singular, neuter in the plural: as, *carbāsūs*, a sail, plural *carbāsā*; *Pergāmūs*, the citadel of Troy, plural *Pergāmā*.

(d.) Neuter in the singular, masculine in the plural: as, *Argōs*, Argos, a city in Greece, plural *Argī*; *Elḡsiūm*, the Elysian fields, plural *Elḡsū*; *cælūm*, heaven, plural *cælī*.

NOTE.—*Argōs*, in the singular, is used only in the nominative and the accusative.

(e.) Neuter in the singular, masculine and neuter in the plural: as, *frēnūm*, a bridle, plural *frēnī* and *frēnā*; *rastrūm*, a rake, plural *rastrī* and *rastrā*.

(f.) Neuter in the singular, feminine in the plural: as, *balneūm*, a bath, plural *balneæ*, seldom *balneā*; *ēpūlūm*, a banquet, plural *ēpūlæ*.

(g.) Feminine or neuter in the singular, and feminine in the plural: as, *dēliciā* or *dēliciūm*, plural *dēliciae*.

2.—HETEROCLITES.

(a.) Second and third declension in the singular, and third in the plural: as, *jūgērūm*, an acre; gen. *jūgērī* or *jūgērīs*; abl. *jūgērē* or *jūgērō*; plural nom. and acc. *jūgērā*; gen. *jūgērūm*; abl. *jūgērīs*, and *jūgērībūs* from the obsolete *jūgūs* or *jūgēr*.

(b.) Third declension in the singular, and second in the plural: as, *vās*, *vāsīs*, a vessel, plural *vāsā*, *-ōrūm*.

DEFECTIVE NOUNS.

§ 51. Defective nouns want some of their cases. The following list contains such nouns as are most defective.

Accītū, abl.; a calling for.

Admōnītū, abl.; admonition.

Ambāgē, abl.; a winding stair;—pl. entire.

Arcessītū, abl.; a sending for.

Astūs, nom.; *astū*, abl.; craft;—*astūs*, acc. pl.

Chaōs, nom., acc.; *chaō*, abl.; chaos.

Cassĕm, *acc.*; cassē, *abl.*; a net;—
pl. entire.
 Coactū, *abl.*; constraint.
 Compēdīs, *gen.*; a fetter; *nom.* and
dat. not used;—*pl. compēdēs,*
-iūm, -ībūs.
 Concessū, *abl.*; permission.
 Daps, *nom.*; scarcely used; dāpīs,
gen. &c.; a feast;—wants *gen. pl.*
 Dātū, *abl.*; a giving.
 Despīcātui, *dat.*; contempt.
 Dīcīs, *gen.*; as, dīcīs grātiā, *for*
form's sake.
 Ditiōnīs, *gen.*; -ī, *dat.*; -ēm, *acc.*;
 -ē, *abl.*; power.
 Diū, *abl.*; in the daytime.
 Dīvisui, *dat.*; a dividing.
 Ebūr, *ivory*;—not used in the plural.
 Efflāgītātū, *abl.*; importunity.
 Epōs, *nom.* and *acc.*; an epic poem.
 Ergō, *abl.* (or *adv.*); for the sake.
 Essēdās, *acc. pl.*; war-chariots.
 Fās, *nom.*, *acc.*; right.
 Faucē, *abl.*; the throat;—*pl. en-*
tire.
 Fēmīnīs, *gen.*; -ī, *dat.*; -ē, *abl.*; the
 thigh;—*pl. fēmīnā, -ībūs.*
 Fōrīs, *nom.* and *gen.*; -ēm, *acc.*; -ē,
abl.; a door;—*pl. entire.*
 Grātēs, *nom.* and *acc. pl.*;—grātī-
 būs, *abl.*; thanks.
 Hebdomādām, *acc.*; a week.
 Impētīs, *gen.*; -ē, *abl.*; a shock.
 Infītiās, *acc. pl.*; a denial.
 Ingrātiīs, *abl. pl.* (used adverbially); against one's will.

Injussū, *abl.*; without command.
 Instār, *nom.*, *acc.*; a likeness.
 Invītātū, *abl.*; an invitation.
 Jūgēris, *gen.*; -ē, *abl.*; an acre;—
pl. jūgērā, -ūm, -ībūs.
 Jussū, *abl.*; command.
 Mandātū, *abl.*; a command.
 Nātū, *abl.*; by birth.
 Naucī, *gen.*, with nōn; rarely nau-
 cō, *dat.*; a trifle.
 Nēfās, *nom.*, *acc.*; wickedness.
 Nēmō, nobody, wants the *pl.*; *gen.*
 and *abl.* rarely used.
 Nīhīl, or nīhīlūm, *nom.* and *acc.*; -ī,
gen.; -ō, *abl.*; nothing.
 Noctū, *abl.*; by night.
 Opīs, *gen.*; ōpī, *dat.*; ōpēm, *acc.*;
 ōpē, *abl.*; help;—*pl. entire.*
 Oppōsītū, *abl.*; an opposing;—*pl.*
 oppōsītūs, *acc.*
 Opūs, *nom.*, *acc.*; need.
 Os, the month, wants the *gen. pl.*
 Pondō, *abl.*; in weight.
 Prēcī, *dat.*; -ēm, *acc.*; -ē, *abl.*;
 prayer;—*pl. entire.*
 Promptū, *abl.*; readiness.
 Rōgātū, *abl.*; a request.
 Rōs, dew, wants *gen. pl.*
 Rūs, the country, wants *gen.*, *dat.*,
 and *abl. pl.*
 Spontīs, *gen.*; -ē, *abl.*; will, accord.
 Vēnuī and -ō, *dat.*; -ūm, *acc.*; -ō,
abl.; sale.
 Vīcīs, *gen.*; -ī, *dat.*; -ēm, *acc.*; -ē,
abl.; change;—*pl. entire*, except
gen.

VERBS OF THE SECOND CONJUGATION.

§ 52. 1. All verbs that have ērĕ (penult long) in the Infinitive-Present are of the second conjugation.

2. The perfect-stem in verbs of this conjugation is usually formed by adding *ũ*, and the supine-stem by adding *ĩt*, to the present-stem: as, *mõn-eo*, I advise; *mõn-u-ĩ*, I have advised, supine *mõn-ĩt-ũm*.

ENDINGS OF THE INDICATIVE ACTIVE ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

Singular.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
<i>Present.</i>	eõ,	ēs,	ēt,
<i>Imperfect.</i>	ẽ'-bām,	ẽ'-bās,	ẽ'-bāt,
<i>Future.</i>	ẽ'-bõ;	ẽ'-bĩs;	ẽ'-bĩt;

Plural.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
<i>Present.</i>	ẽ'-mūs,	ẽ'-tĩs,	ent,
<i>Imperfect.</i>	ẽ-bā'-mūs,	ẽ-bā'-tĩs,	ẽ'-bant,
<i>Future.</i>	ẽb'-ĩ-mūs.	ẽb'-ĩ-tĩs.	ẽ'-bunt.

ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

Singular.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
<i>Present-perf.</i>	ĩ,	is'-tĩ,	ĩt,
<i>Past-perf.</i>	ẽ-rām,	ẽ-rās,	ẽ-rāt,
<i>Future-perf.</i>	ẽ-rõ;	ẽ-rĩs;	ẽ-rĩt;

Plural.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
<i>Present-perf.</i>	ĩ-mūs,	is'-tĩs,	ẽ'-runt or ẽ'-rě,
<i>Past-perf.</i>	ẽ-rā'-mūs,	ẽ-rā'-tĩs,	ẽ-rant,
<i>Future-perf.</i>	ẽr'-ĩ-mūs.	ẽr'-ĩ-tĩs.	ẽ-rint.

PARTIAL PARADIGM ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

Present.

Imperfect.

Future.

I advise.

I was advising.

I shall or will advise.

Sing. mǒ'-neō,
mǒ'-nēs,
mǒ'-nēt;

S. mǒ-nē'-bām,
mǒ-nē'-bās,
mǒ-nē'-bāt;

S. mǒ-nē'-bō,
mǒ-nē'-bīs,
mǒ-nē'-bīt;

Plur. mǒ-nē'-mūs,
mǒ-nē'-tīs,
mǒ'-nent.

P. mǒn-ē-bā'-mūs,
mǒn-ē-bā'-tīs,
mǒ-nē'-bant.

P. mǒ-nēb'-ī-mūs,
mǒ-nēb'-ī-tīs,
mǒ-nē'-bunt.

ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

Present-perfect.

Past-perfect.

Future-perfect.

I advised or have advised.

I had advised.

I shall have advised.

S. mǒn'-u-ī,
mǒn-u-is'-tī,
mǒn'-u-īt;

S. mǒ-nu'-ē-rām,
mǒ-nu'-ē-rās,
mǒ-nu'-ē-rāt;

S. mǒ-nu'-ē-rō,
mǒ-nu'-ē-rīs,
mǒ-nu'-ē-rīt;

P. mǒ-nū'-ī-mūs,
mǒn-u-is'-tīs,
mǒn-u-ē'-runt or
-ē'-rē.

P. mǒn-u-ē-rā'-mūs,
mǒn-u-ē-rā'-tīs,
mǒ-nu'-ē-rant.

P. mǒn-u-ēr'-ī-mūs,
mǒn-u-ēr'-ī-tīs,
mǒ-nu'-ē-rint.

EXERCISE XXIII.

§ 53. Vocabulary.

impētūs, -ūs, *attack.*

frumentū, -ī, *corn.*

lēgiō, -ōnis (f.), *legion.*

hāb-eō, hāb-ērē, hābu-ī, hābīt-ū, *to have, hold.*

præb-eō, (for præ-habeo), præb-ērē, præbu-ī, præbīt-ū, *to furnish, to offer.*

lāt-eō, lāt-ērē, lātu-ī (no sup.), *to lie hid.*

terr-eō, terr-ērē, terru-ī, terrīt-ū, *to frighten.*

per-terr-eō, -ērē, -uī, -ītū, *to frighten thoroughly, terrify.*

tīm-eō, tīm-ērē, tīmu-ī (no sup.), *to fear.*

mōv-eō, mōv-ērē, mōv-ī, mōt-ū, *to move.*

mān-eō, mān-ērē, mans-ī, mans-ū, *to remain.*

mord-eŏ, mord-ērĕ, mŏmord-ī, mors-ŭm, *to champ, bite.*

tond-eŏ, tond-ērĕ, tŏtond-ī, tons-ŭm, *to shear.*

vīd-eŏ, vīd-ērĕ, vīd-ī, vīs-ŭm, *to see.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Plebs nŏbilitātēm tīmuīt. Puēr taurŭm cornībŭs hābēbāt. Impētŭs ĕquītŭm hostēs terrēt. Puēr librŭm īn mănŭ hābēt. Agrīcŏlæ ōvēs tŏtondērant. Cānīs ancillām mordēbīt. Rex Germānŏrŭm castrā mōvērāt. Plebs īn rēgīs hortŏ rēgīnām vīdīt. Leōnēs īn spēcŭbŭs (§ 48, *Remark 4*) lātent. Magnītūdŏ pĕricŭlī servŏs perterrēbīt. Nautæ fluctŭs turbīnesquē nŏn timent. Exercītŭs Crassī īn hībernīs mansīt. Gallī Cæsārīs exercītŭi frŭmentŭm prābēbunt. Equī frēnā mŏmordērē. Hostēs impētŭm ĕquītŭm tīmēbant. Māriŭs consŭl castrā ād collēm mōvērāt.

Translate into Latin.

The chief of the Æduans feared the cruelty of the Helvetians. The attack of the cavalry thoroughly frightened the enemy's archers and slingers. The skirmishers lay hid in the forest. The works of Cicero the orator delight the poet. The farmers had not sheared their sheep. The horses were champing their bits. The king and queen remained in the temple. The Helvetians had moved their camp from the hill to the river. The Gauls furnished corn to Cæsar's army.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 54. 1. An adjective is a word which qualifies or limits the meaning of a noun.

2. Adjectives are declined like nouns; they are either of the first and second declension, or of the third only.

CLASS I.—ADJECTIVES OF THE FIRST AND SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 55. Adjectives of this class have their masculine and neuter endings of the second declension, their feminine endings of the first.

PARADIGM.

Bõn-üş, bõn-ă, bõn-ũm, *good*.

Singular.

Masc.		Fem.		Neut.
bõ'-nüş,		bõ'-nă,		bõ'-nũm,
bõ'-nī,	.	bõ'-næ,		bõ'-nī,
bõ'-nō,		bõ'-næ,		bõ'-nō,
bõ'-nũm,		bõ'-năm,		bõ'-nũm,
bõ'-ně,		bõ'-nă,		bõ'-nũm,
bõ'-nō;		bõ'-nā;		bõ'-nō;

Plural.

bõ'-nī,	bõ'-næ,	bõ'-nă,
bõ'-nõ'-rũm,	bõ'-nā'-rũm,	bõ'-nõ'-rũm,
bõ'-nīs,	bõ'-nīs,	bõ'-nīs,
bõ'-nōs,	bõ'-nās,	bõ'-nă,
bõ'-nī,	bõ'-næ,	bõ'-nă,
bõ'-nīs.	bõ'-nīs.	bõ'-nīs.

Remark 1.—Participles and pronouns in *ūs* are declined like *bōnūs*.

Remark 2.—Adjectives whose stems end in *ēr* (short) generally drop the ending *ūs* in the nominative, and *ē* in the vocative; and most of them drop *ē* of the stem in inflection: as,

pulchēr, pulchrā, pulchrūm,
pulchrī, pulchræ, pulchrī, &c.

Remark 3.—The following retain *ē* of the stem:—

Aspēr, *rough*; extēr, *foreign*; gibbēr, *crook-backed*; lācēr, *torn*; libēr, *free*; mīśēr, *wretched*; prospēr, *prosperous*; tēnēr, *tender*; and compounds of *fer* and *gēr*: as, cornīgēr, *horned*. Thus,

tēnēr, tēnērā, tēnērūm,
tēnērī, tēnēræ, tēnērī, &c.

Remark 4.—Altēr, *the other of two*, has altērā, altērūm; and dextēr, *right*, has sometimes dextērā, dextērūm; sātūr, *full*, has sātūrā, sātūrūm.

§ 56. 1. Six adjectives in *ūs*, and three in *ēr*, have their genitive singular in *īūs*, and their dative in *ī*, in all the genders:—

Aliūs, <i>another</i> (of several).	Tōtūs, <i>whole</i> .
Nullūs, <i>no</i> .	Ullūs, <i>any</i> .
Sōlūs, <i>alone</i> .	Unūs, <i>one</i> .
Altēr, -tērā, -tērūm, <i>another</i> (of two).	
Utēr, -trā, -trūm, <i>which of the two</i> .	
Neutēr, -trā, -trūm, <i>neither</i> .	

2. In the same way are declined the other compounds of *ūtēr*,—namely, *ūterquē*, each of two; *ūtercumquē*, *ūterlibet*, and *ūtervis*, which of the two you please, genitive *utriusquē*, &c.; also *altērūtēr*, one of two, genitive *altērutrīūs*, and sometimes *altērīus utrīus*; dative *altērutrī*. So *altērūterquē* and *ūnusquisquē*.

3. The following pronominal genitives end in *ius*:—*illius*, *istius*, *ipsius*, *ejus* (*eius*), *cujus* (*cuius*), *hujus* (*huius*).

4. *Nullūs, sölūs, tötūs, ullūs*, and *ūnūs* are thus declined :—

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ū'-nūs,	ū'-nā,	ū'-nūm,
Gen.	ū-nī'-ūs,	ū-nī'-ūs,	ū-nī'-ūs,
Dat.	ū'-nī,	ū'-nī,	ū'-nī,
Acc.	ū'-nūm,	ū'-nām,	ū'-nūm,
Voc.	ū'-nē,	ū'-nā,	ū'-nūm,
Abl.	ū'-nō.	ū'-nā.	ū'-nō.

The plural is regular, like that of *bönūs*.

Remark 1.—*Aliūs* has *āliūd* in the nominative and the accusative singular neuter, and in the genitive *ālīūs* contracted for *ālīūs*.

Remark 2.—When *ālīūs* is repeated, the first means *one*; the second, *another*: as, *ālīūd dīcīt, āliūd fācīt*, he says *one thing*, he does *another*. *Aliūs* is often repeated with a single predicate, where in English we use two propositions: as, *ālīūs āliūd clāmītābāt*, one shouted one thing, another another. *Altēr* is repeated where only *two* things are referred to: as, *altēr lēgīt, altēr scrībīt*, one reads, *the other* writes.

Remark 3.—Some of these adjectives occasionally form their genitive and dative regularly.

EXERCISE XXIV.

§ 57. Vocabulary.

alt-ūs, -ā, -ūm, *high, deep*.

long-ūs, -ā, -ūm, *long*.

lāt-ūs, -ā, -ūm, *broad*.

magn-ūs, -ā, -ūm, *great, large*.

mult-ūs, -ā, -ūm, *much, many*.

dens-ūs, -ā, -ūm, *thick*.

bēnign-ūs, -ā, -ūm, *kind*.

fīd-ūs, -ā, -ūm, *faithful*.

imprōb-ūs, -ā, -ūm, *wicked*.

inīqu-ūs, -ā, -ūm, *unjust*.

jūdex, jūdīc-īs, *judge*.

Thrax, Thrācīs, *Thracian*.

1. *Rule of Position.*—The adjective, unless emphatic, usually follows the noun which it limits; as, *puēr bönūs*, a good boy.

2. *Rule of Syntax*.—Adjective words agree with the nouns which they limit, in gender, number, and case: as, *puēr bōnūs, a good boy; puellā pulchrā, a beautiful girl; flūmēn lātūm, a broad river.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Rex Thrācūm in collē turrēs altās ædificāt. Fīliūs imprōbūs patrēm lāpidē vulnērāvērāt. Silvæ densæ nunciōs rēgīnæ terruērunt. Vēnātōr cānēs fīdōs āmāt. Imprōbī hōmīnēs faciēm vultumquē jūdīcīs timent. Plēbēs īnīquūm jūdīcēm formīdāt. Nūbēs densæ lūnām obscurāvērant. Equitēs hostiūm flūmēn lātūm trānābunt. Agrīcōlæ filiī bōbūs magnīs agrōs ārāvērē. Cæsār multā oppīdā expugnāvīt. Puēr cultrū longūm in mănū hābuīt. Puērī bōnī pārentēs āmant. Māgīstēr bēnīgnūs bōnīs puērīs librōs dēdīt.

Translate into Latin.

The consul slew many robbers. The kind mother gives food to her children. The wicked consul killed the tribunes of the people. The chief of the Thracians lay hid in the king's grove. The shepherd armed his sons with long knives. The enemy's skirmishers swam across a broad river. The faithful servants defended their master with knives and stones. The attack of the enemy did not frighten the general. The great commander slew many captives. The hunter saw many wolves in the forest. Wicked men do not fear the countenance of an unjust judge. The kind master, according to custom, was advising the boys.

EXERCISE XXV.

§ 58. 1. *Rule of Position*.—When a noun is limited

by an adjective and a genitive, the adjective is often put first: as, *fīdūs Tullī servūs*, *Tully's faithful slave*.

Remark.—The genitive usually follows *pars*, *nūmērūs*, *multitudo*, etc.: as, *magnā pars nobilitātis*.

2. *Rule of Position.*—An adjective limiting the object of a preposition is often put before the preposition: as, *magnō in praeliō*, in a great battle.

3. *Rule of Syntax.*—With words expressing a part, the genitive is used to denote the whole: as, *ūnūs militūm*, one of the soldiers; *multī equitūm*, many of the horsemen.

Remark.—This is usually called the *partitive genitive*. The partitive word, if an adjective, agrees in gender with the word denoting the whole. *Unūs militūm* is equivalent to *ūnūs milēs militūm*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Magnæ hostiūm cōpiæ in silvā lātuērunt. Magnā pars nobilitātis apūd Crassūm cōenābant. Cīvēs multī magnā in urbē hābitant. Consūl in hostiūm castrīs multōs militēs vīdit. Pastōr oves multosquē agnōrūm tōtōndērāt. Impērātōr magnūs unō in praeliō cōpiās hostiūm fūgāvit. Altēr fratrūm magnūm ad oppidūm festināt. Unā Rōmānōrūm lēgiō tōtūm hostiūm exercitūm perterrūt. Neutrā ancillārūm cānēs tīmēt. Germānī in praeliō nullūm ordinē servant. Rex Thrācūm nullām reipublicælēgēm violāvērāt. Unā in urbē hōmīnēs multī hābitant. Impētūs hostiūm nulliūs lēgiōnis ordinēs turbāvit.

Translate into Latin.

The Thracians will furnish corn to the consul's great army. One of the skirmishers saw the enemy's horsemen

in the dense forest. The shepherd's faithful dog defended the sheep from (ā) the wolves. The general, after the manner of a king, demanded a great number of hostages. The whole army dreaded the cruelty of the general. The inhabitants of the whole village feared the farmer's big bull. Cæsar feared no danger. A great multitude of footmen hastened to the camp.

CLASS II.—ADJECTIVES OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 59. *Adjectives having two endings in the nominative.*

Adjectives of this class have *īs* in the masculine and feminine, and *ě* in the neuter, and are of the third declension.

PARADIGM.

Brěv-īs, short.

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>	
	M. & F.	N.	M. & F.	N.
N., V.	<i>brěv'-īs,</i>	<i>brěv'-ě,</i>	<i>brěv'-ēs,</i>	<i>brěv'-iā,</i>
Gen.	<i>brěv'-īs,</i>	<i>brěv'-īs,</i>	<i>brěv'-iŭm,</i>	<i>brěv'-iŭm,</i>
Dat.	<i>brěv'-ī,</i>	<i>brěv'-ī,</i>	<i>brěv'-ībŭs,</i>	<i>brěv'-ībŭs,</i>
Acc.	<i>brěv'-ēm,</i>	<i>brěv'-ě,</i>	<i>brěv'-ēs,</i>	<i>brěv'-iā,</i>
Abl.	<i>brěv'-ī.</i>	<i>brěv'-ī.</i>	<i>brěv'-ībŭs.</i>	<i>brěv'-ībŭs.</i>

Remark 1.—Comparatives may be considered as belonging to this class.

Remark 2.—Adjectives which have *ě* in the nominative neuter have *ī* in the ablative singular, *iŭm* in the genitive plural, and *iā* in the nominative, accusative, and vocative plural neuter. Comparatives have *ŭm* and *ā*.

Remark 3.—The following have also *ěr* in the nominative singular masculine: as, *ācěr* or *acrīs*, *acrīs*, *acrě*.

ācēr, <i>sharp.</i>	cēlēbēr, <i>famous.</i>	silvestēr, <i>woody.</i>
ālācēr, <i>cheerful.</i>	ēquestēr, <i>of a horse.</i>	terrestēr, <i>of the earth.</i>
campestēr, <i>of the plain.</i>	pālustēr, <i>marshy.</i>	vōlūcēr, <i>winged.</i>
cēlēr, <i>swift.</i>	pēdestēr, <i>on foot.</i>	sālūbēr, <i>wholesome.</i>
	pūtēr, <i>rotten.</i>	

Remark 4.—Cēlēr and vōlūcēr have ūm in the genitive plural.

EXERCISE XXVI.

§ 60. Vocabulary.

fort-īs, -ē, <i>brave.</i>	adventūs, -ūs, <i>arrival.</i>
āgil-īs, -ē, <i>active.</i>	fātīg-ārē, <i>to weary.</i>
crūdēl-īs, -ē, <i>cruel.</i>	cīvītās, cīvītāt-īs, <i>state.</i>
grāv-īs, -ē, <i>heavy, severe.</i>	lēcūs, -ī (pl. -ī and -ā), <i>place.</i>
omn-īs, -ē, <i>all, every.</i>	lēvis, -ē, <i>light, slight.</i>
nōbīl-īs, -ē, <i>noble.</i>	pīgēr, -grā, -grūm, <i>lazy.</i>

Remark.—The adjective is often used as a noun, the noun with which it agrees being omitted: as, bōnī, *the good*; bōnā, *good things, property*. Masculine adjectives thus used express persons; neuter adjectives, things.

Translate into English and analyze.

Impērātōr fortīs centūriōnēs omnēs convōcāvīt. Māgistēr bōnūs omnēs puērōs mōnuērāt. Servi āgilēs taurūm cornībūs hābēbant. Onērā grāviā magnōs agrīcōlāe bōvēs fātīgant. Māterfāmiliās libērīs servisquē omnībūs cībūm sālubrēm dābīt. Puēr mănūm cultrō sēcūt. Pēdestrēs Carthāgīniēsiūm cōpiāe ēquitēs fortēs fūgāvērant. Bellā longā multās cīvītātēs ferrō ignīquē vastāvērē. Princeps nōbīlis āpūd rēgēm cōnāvērāt. Deūs omniā creāvīt. Bōnī grāviā bellā formīdant. Latrōnēs imprōbī multōs cīvēs trūcīdāvērunt. Vēlītēs āgilēs multōs silvārūm trāmītēs explōrābunt. Cānis fīdūs pēr tōtām noctēm vīgīlāt. Equitēs pālūstriā lēcā timent.

Translate into Latin.

The cruel chief has slain all the captives with the sword. All the citizens dreaded the great cruelty of the wicked king. Lazy slaves love short days and light work. One of the swift horsemen is hastening to (*ad*) the camp of Cæsar. The active sailors were fastening the yards to the masts with long ropes. The arrival of the brave consul thoroughly frightened all the chiefs of the Gauls. Lazy boys do not love their books. Cæsar's army laid waste many states of Gaul. The farmer's lazy son loves the shade of the thick trees. The brave general fears no danger. Cæsar put all the legions into winter quarters.

§ 61. *Adjectives of the Third Declension, having masculine, feminine, and neuter alike in the nominative.*

1.—PARADIGMS.

Fēlix, *happy*.*Singular.*

	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>fē'-lix,</i>	<i>fē'-lix,</i>
Gen.	<i>fē-lī'-cīs,</i>	<i>fē-lī'-cīs,</i>
Dat.	<i>fē-lī'-cī,</i>	<i>fē-lī'-cī,</i>
Acc.	<i>fē-lī'-cēm,</i>	<i>fē'-lix,</i>
Voc.	<i>fē'-lix,</i>	<i>fē'-lix,</i>
Abl.	<i>fē-lī'-cī (or -ě) ;</i>	<i>fē-lī'-cī (or -ě) ;</i>

Plural.

	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>fē-lī'-cēs,</i>	<i>fē-līc'-iǎ,</i>
Gen.	<i>fē-līc'-iūm,</i>	<i>fē-līc'-iūm,</i>
Dat.	<i>fē-līc'-ībūs,</i>	<i>fē-līc'-ībūs,</i>
Acc.	<i>fē-lī'-cēs,</i>	<i>fē-līc'-iǎ,</i>
Voc.	<i>fē-lī'-cēs,</i>	<i>fē-līc'-iǎ,</i>
Abl.	<i>fē-līc'-ībūs,</i>	<i>fē-līc'-ībūs.</i>

Prūdēns, *prudent*.*Singular.*

	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>prū'-dens,</i>	<i>prū'-dens,</i>
Gen.	<i>prū-dent'-īs,</i>	<i>prū-dent'-īs,</i>
Dat.	<i>prū-dent'-ī,</i>	<i>prū-dent'-ī,</i>
Acc.	<i>prū-dent'-ēm,</i>	<i>prū'-dens,</i>
Voc.	<i>prū'-dens,</i>	<i>prū'-dens,</i>
Abl.	<i>prū-dent'-ě (or -ī);</i>	<i>prū-dent'-ě (or -ī);</i>

Plural.

	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>prū-den'-tēs,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tiā,</i>
Gen.	<i>prū-den'-tiŭm,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tiŭm,</i>
Dat.	<i>prū-den'-tībŭs,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tībŭs,</i>
Acc.	<i>prū-den'-tēs,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tiā,</i>
Voc.	<i>prū-den'-tēs,</i>	<i>prū-den'-tiā,</i>
Abl.	<i>prū-den'-tībŭs.</i>	<i>prū-den'-tībŭs.</i>

2. Present participles are declined like *prūdēns*. When used as participles, they have *ě* rather than *ī* in the ablative singular; but when used as adjectives, they have *ī* rather than *ě*. Comparatives, also, have oftener *ě* than *ī*.

3. Adjectives of the third class have either *ě* or *ī* in the ablative.

Exc. 1. The following have only *ě* in the ablative:—

Bīcorpŏr, bīpēs, cælebs, compŏs, dēsēs, discŏlŏr, hospēs, impŏs, impŭbēs, jŭvĕnīs, lŏcŭplēs, paupĕr, princeps, pŭbĕr or pŭbēs, sĕnex, sospēs, sŭperstēs, trīcorpŏr, trīcuspīs, and trīpēs.

Exc. 2. The following have only *ī* in the ablative:—

Anceps, concors, discors, hĕbēs, immēmŏr, ĩners, ĩgens, ĩnops, mēmŏr, pār, præceps, rĕcens, rĕpens, vīgīl, and most adjectives in x, especially those in plex.

Remark 1.—*Inertě, rěcentě, and præcĭpě* sometimes occur.

Remark 2.—*Præsens*, when applied to things, makes the ablative in *ī*; when used of persons, it has *ě*.

4. The neuter of the nominative and accusative plural ends in *ia*, and the genitive plural of all genders in *iūm*; but *vētūs*, old, and *ūbēr*, fertile, have *ā* and *ūm*.

Exc. 1. Those adjectives that have only *ě* in the ablative singular have *ūm* in the genitive plural.

Exc. 2. Compounds of *fācio* and *cāpio*, and of such nouns as make *ūm* in their genitive plural, with *compār*, *cĭcūr*, *divēs*, *mēmōr*, *immēmōr*, *præpēs*, *supplex*, and *vĭgĭl*, make their genitive plural in *ūm*.

Exc. 3. *Dīs*, *lōcūplēs*, sons, and *insons* have either *ūm* or *iūm*; and other adjectives have sometimes *ūm* instead of *iūm* in the poets and later prose writers.

EXERCISE XXVII.

§ 62. Vocabulary.

divēs, *divīt-īs*, *rich*.

fērax, *āe-īs*, *fertile*.

innōcens, *-ent-īs*, *innocent*.

paupēr, *paupēr-īs*, *poor*.

vetūs, *vētēr-īs*, *ancient*; pl. *vētērēs*,

the ancients.

ingens, *-ent-īs*, *huge*.

fērox, *fērōe-īs*, *warlike*, *fierce*.

atrox, *atrōe-īs*, *terrible*, *cruel*, *savage*.

rēcens, *-ent-īs*, *recent*.

cīvilīs, *-ē*, *civil*.

aug-eō, *-ērē*, *aux-ī*, *auc-tum*, *to swell*, *increase*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Imbrēs rēcētēs flūmīnā omniā auxērunt. Vĭr bōnūs paupērībūs cĭbūm dābīt. Pastōr prūdēns ōvēs agnosquē ā lūpīs dēfēnsābīt. Orgētōrix, princeps Helvētiōrūm, cōpiās auxērāt. Vētērēs Jōvī taurōs ingentēs mactābant. Agrīcōlæ prūdētēs īn pēnūm mergītēs omnēs portant. Cæsār fortēs centūriōnēs laudābāt. Māriūs, Rōmānōrūm

impĕrātōr, fĕrācēs Nūmīdiæ āgrōs ferrō ignīquē vastāvīt. Princeps crūdēlīs innōcentēm plēbēm trūcīdāvīt. Bellā cīviliā nōbilitātēm ēt cīvēs dīvītēs perterruērānt. Princīpēs fĕrōcēs atrōciā bellā āmant. Rex fĕrox nōbilitātēm ād bellūm magnūm ēt atrox concītāvīt.

Translate into Latin.

No prudent (man) will give his sheep to the wolves. The happy mother loves her children. The innocent do not fear the face and countenance of a judge. The consul will preserve the ancient laws of the commonwealth. The prudent shepherds had sheared their sheep. A terrible lion tore in pieces all the inhabitants of the village. The enemy's soldiers had laid waste the whole city with fire and sword. The rich dread civil wars. The recent rains have swelled the great river. The poor (man) does not fear the robber.

NUMERAL ADJECTIVES.

§ 63. 1. Adjectives expressing number are called *numerals*, and are divided into three classes, viz. :—

(a.) *Cardinals*, which answer the question "*How many?*" as, ūnūs, *one*; duō, *two*.

(b.) *Ordinals*, which express order or rank: as, prīmūs, *first*; sĕcundūs, *second*.

(c.) *Distributives*, which answer the questions "*How many to each?*"—" *How many apiece?*" as, singŭlī, *one to each, one at a time, one apiece*; bīnī, *two apiece*.

2. To these may be added numeral adverbs, which answer the question "*How many times?*" as, sēmĕl, *once*; bīs, *twice*.

CARDINAL.	ORDINAL.	DISTRIBUTIVE.	ADVERBIAL.
<i>One, two, &c.</i>	<i>First, second, &c.</i>	<i>One by one, &c.</i>	<i>Once, twice, &c.</i>
1 Unūs,	Prīmūs,	Singūlī,	Sēmēl,
2 Duō,	Sēcundūs,	Binī,	Bīs,
3 Trēs,	Tertiūs,	Ternī,	Tēr,
4 Quātuōr,	Quartūs,	Quāternī,	Quātēr,
5 Quīnquē,	Quintūs,	Quīnī,	Quīnquīēs,
6 Sex,	Sextūs,	Sēnī,	Sexiēs,
7 Septēm,	Septimūs,	Septēnī,	Septiēs,
8 Octo,	Octāvūs,	Octōnī,	Octiēs,
9 Nōvēm,	Nōnūs,	Nōvēnī,	Nōviēs,
10 Dēcēm,	Dēcīmūs,	Dēnī,	Dēciēs,
11 Undēcīm,	Undēcīmūs,	Undēnī,	Undēciēs,
12 Duōdēcīm,	Duōdēcīmūs,	Duōdēnī,	Duōdēciēs,
13 Trēdēcīm,	Tertius dēcīmūs,	Ternī dēnī,	Trēdēciēs,
14 Quātuordēcīm,	Quartus dēcīmūs,	Quāternī dēnī,	Quātuordēciēs,
15 Quīndēcīm,	Quintus dēcīmūs,	Quīnī dēnī,	Quīndēciēs,
16 Sexdēcīm,	Sextus dēcīmūs,	Sēnī dēnī,	Sēdēciēs,
17 Septēdēcīm,	Septimus dēcīmūs,	Septēnī dēnī,	Dēciēs ēt septiēs,
18 Octōdēcīm,	Octavus dēcīmūs,	Octōnī dēnī,	Duōdēviciēs,
19 Nōvendēcīm,	Nōnus dēcīmūs,	Nōvēnī dēnī,	Undēviciēs,
20 Vīgintī,	Vicēsīmūs,	Vicēnī,	Viciēs,
30 Trīgintā,	Tricēsīmūs,	Tricēnī,	Triciēs,
40 Quadrāgintā,	Quadrāgēsīmūs,	Quadrāgēnī,	Quadrāgiēs,
50 Quīnquāgintā,	Quīnquāgēsīmūs,	Quīnquāgēnī,	Quīnquāgiēs,
60 Sexāgintā,	Sexāgēsīmūs,	Sexāgēnī,	Sexāgiēs,
70 Septuāgintā,	Septuāgēsīmūs,	Septuāgēnī,	Septuāgiēs,
80 Octōgintā,	Octōgēsīmūs,	Octōgēnī,	Octōgiēs,
90 Nōnāgintā,	Nōnāgēsīmūs,	Nōnāgēnī,	Nōnāgiēs,
100 Centūm,	Centēsīmūs,	Centēnī,	Centiēs,
200 Dūcentī,	Dūcentēsīmūs,	Dūcentēnī,	Dūcentiēs,
300 Trēcentī,	Trēcentēsīmūs,	Trēcentēnī,	Trēcentiēs,
400 Quadrīngentī,	Quadrīngentēsīmūs,	Quadrīngentēnī,	Quadrīngentiēs,
500 Quīngentī,	Quīngentēsīmūs,	Quīngentēnī,	Quīngentiēs,
600 Sexcentī,	Sexcentēsīmūs,	Sexcentēnī,	Sexcentiēs,
700 Septīngentī,	Septīngentēsīmūs,	Septīngentēnī,	Septīngentiēs,
800 Octīngentī,	Octīngentēsīmūs,	Octīngentēnī,	Octīngentiēs,
900 Nongentī,	Nongentēsīmūs,	Nongentēnī,	Nongentiēs,
1000 Mille;	Millēsīmūs;	Millēnī;	Milliēs,

§ 64. *Cardinals.*

Remark 1.—The first three cardinal numbers are declined. From four to a hundred they are indeclinable; those denoting hundreds are declined like the plural of *bōnūs*: as, *dūcentī*, -æ, -ā; -ōrūm, -ārūm, -ōrūm, &c.

Remark 2.—For the declension of *unūs*, see § 56. *Trēs* is

declined like the plural of *brěvīs*; nominative *trēs*, *triā*; genitive *triūm*; dative *tribūs*, &c. *Duō* is thus declined:—

Plural.

Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. <i>du'-ō</i> ,	<i>du'-æ</i> ,	<i>du'-ō</i> ,
Gen. <i>du-ō'-rūm</i> ,	<i>du-ā'-rūm</i> ,	<i>du-ō'-rūm</i> ,
Dat. <i>du-ō'-būs</i> ,	<i>du-ā'-būs</i> ,	<i>du-ō'-būs</i> ,
Acc. <i>du'-ōs</i> or <i>du'-ō</i> ,	<i>du'-ās</i> ,	<i>du'-ō</i> ,
Voc. <i>du'-ō</i> ,	<i>du'-æ</i> ,	<i>du'-ō</i> ,
Abl. <i>du-ō'-būs</i> .	<i>du-ā'-būs</i> .	<i>du-ō'-būs</i> .

Remark 3.—*Duōrūm* and *duārūm*, especially when compounded with another word, or when joined with *millium*, are frequently contracted into *duūm*: as, *duūmvīr*, *duūm millium*. *Ambo*, both, is declined like *duō*.

Remark 4.—*Unūs* has a plural form—

(a.) With nouns which have no singular: as, *ūnæ nuptiæ*, one marriage.

(b.) With nouns which denote several things considered as one whole: as, *ūnā vestimentā*, one suit of clothes.

(c.) In the sense of *alone* or the *same*: as, *ūni Ubī*, the Ubians alone; *ūnis mōribūs*, with the same manners.

Remark 5.—From thirteen to nineteen, inclusive, instead of the compound forms (*trēdecim*, &c.), the simple numerals are used, with or without *ēt*: as, *dēcēm ēt trēs*, or *dēcēm trēs*.

Remark 6.—From twenty to one hundred the greater number precedes without *ēt*, or the smaller number with *ēt*: as, *vīgintī ūnūs*, or *ūnūs ēt vīgintī*. Above one hundred the greater number is put first, with or without *ēt*; but *ēt* is not twice used in designating the same number: as, *dūcentī quadrāginta quinque*, or *dūcentī ēt quadrāginta quinque*, two hundred and forty-five.

Remark 7.—Subtractive forms are more commonly used for eighteen, twenty-eight, &c., and for nineteen, twenty-nine, &c.: as *duōdvīgintī*, *duōdetrīginta*, *duōdēquadrāginta*, &c.; *undēvīgintī*, *undetrīginta*, &c. *Duō* is not declined in these combinations.

Remark 8.—Thousands are usually expressed by the smaller numbers with *milliā*: as, *dēcēm milliā*, ten thousand; sometimes

by the numeral adverbs with *millē*: as, *dēciēs millē*, ten times a thousand, ten thousand.

Remark 9.—*Millē* is either an adjective or a noun. As an adjective it is indeclinable and plural, and limits the name of the things numbered: as, *millē hōmīnēs*, a thousand men; *cūm bīs millē hōmīnībūs*, with two thousand (*twice a thousand*) men. As a noun it is indeclinable in the singular, and in the plural has *milliā*, *milliūm*, *millībūs*, and is limited by the name of the things numbered in the partitive genitive; as, *millē hōmīnūm*, a thousand (of) men; *triā milliā hōmīnūm*, three thousand men (*three thousand of men*). But if a declined numeral comes between, the genitive is not used: as, *triā milliā ēt trēcentōs ēquītēs circūm sē hābēbāt*, he had three thousand three hundred horsemen around him.

Remark 10.—The poets sometimes use the numeral adverb to express smaller numbers; as, *bīs dēcēm* for *vīgintī*.

Remark 11.—Millions are expressed by combinations of *centēnā milliā* (a hundred thousand): as, *dēciēs centēnā milliā*, one million; *centiēs centēnā milliā*, ten millions.

§ 65. *Ordinals, Distributives, and Adverbs.*

1. *Priōr* is used instead of *prīmūs* when only two things are spoken of. *Altēr* is often used for *sēcundūs*.

2. Between twelfth and twentieth the smaller number is usually put first; but the greater sometimes precedes, with or without *ēt*: as, *dēcimūs ēt tertiūs*, or *dēcimūs tertiūs*.

3. In the other intermediate numbers, twenty-first, twenty-second, &c., the larger precedes without *ēt*, or the smaller with *ēt*: as, *quadrāgēsīmūs prīmūs*, or *prīmūs ēt quadrāgēsīmūs*: but instead of *prīmūs* and *sēcundūs*, *ūnūs* and *duo* are often used, *duo* being undeclined: as, *ūnūs ēt vīcēsīmūs*, one-and-twentieth; *duo ēt vīcēsīmō annō*, in the twenty-second year.

4. For *eighths* and *ninths* in the intermediate numerals, the subtractive forms are often used: as, *duōdēvīcēsīmūs*, *undetrīcēsīmūs*. So, also, in the distributives, and sometimes in the adverbs: as,
duōdēvīcēnī, *undēvīcēnī*;
duōdetrīciēs, *undēquadrāgiēs*.

5. The poets sometimes use the distributives for cardinals: as, *bīnā spīcūlā*, two darts. They are used in the same way in prose with nouns which have no singular: as, *bīnæ nuptiæ*.

6. Some of the distributives have a singular form with a multiplicative meaning: as, *bīnūs*, twofold.

7. In the numeral adverbs the intermediate numbers are expressed—

(a.) Either by putting the smaller first with *ēt*: as, *sēmēl ēt vīciēs*,

(b.) Or by putting the larger number first, with or without *ēt*: as, *vīciēs sēmēl*, or *vīciēs ēt sēmēl*.

EXERCISE XXVIII.

§ 66. 1. *Rule of Syntax*.—The point of time at which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative: as, *tertiā hōrā*, at the third hour. (*Ablative of time*.)

2. *Rule of Syntax*.—Duration of time, and extent of space, are expressed by the accusative, sometimes by the ablative: as, *trēs hōrās mansīt*, he remained three hours; *fossā dūos pēdēs lātā*, a ditch two feet wide.

3. *Rule of Position*.—Designations of time and place usually stand near the beginning of the sentence. See § 29, 3.

Vocabulary.

fossā, -æ, ditch.

hōrā, -æ, hour.

mensīs, -īs (§ 33, Exc. 3), month.

diēs, -ēī, day.

annūs, -ī, year.

ūnā ex partē, on one side.

hiems, *hiēm-īs*, winter.

passūs, -ūs, pace.

tempūs, -ōr-īs, time.

nostēr, -ā, -ūm, our.

æstās, *æstāt-īs*, summer.

contīn-eō, -ēřē, *contīnu-ī*, content-ūm, to keep, hold in, restrain.

sustīn-eō, -ēřē, *sustīnu-ī*, sustent-ūm, to sustain, to bear.

Translate into English and analyze.

Servī fīdī hōrās multās vīgīlāvērant. Nullūs agrīcōlā

prūdēns ōvēs hiēmē tondēbīt. Cēsār, Rōmānōrūm impērātōr, trēs lēgiōnēs īn hībernīs* collōcāvīt. Consūl multōs annōs īn urbē hābītāvērāt. Mons altūs ūnā ex partē Helvētiōs continūit. Equītēs nostrī hostiūm impētūm duās hōrās sustīnuērunt. Pastōr prūdēns aēstātē ōvēs omnēs tōtōndīt. Lēgātūs fortīs dēcēm diēs Cēsārīs adventūm expectābāt. Impērātōr tertiō diē castrā mōvīt. Princeps atrox multōs mensēs cīvītātēm perterrēbāt. Consūl fortīs nullō annī tempōrē adventūm hostiūm tīmēbāt. Rex latrōnēs omnēs brēvī tempōrē trūcīdāvīt. Crassūs triā milliā passuūm ēquītāvīt. Consūl millē passūs castrā mōvīt.

Translate into Latin.

The great rains had kept our soldiers in the camp many months. In one summer Cæsar laid waste many states of Gaul with fire and sword. For many years (*acc.*) the Romans routed all their enemies by sea and land. Cæsar moved his camp ten thousand paces from the city. The soldiers of the tenth legion had carried heavy burdens for many hours (*acc.*). Our skirmishers sustained the attack of the Germans three hours. Lake Lemannus held-in the Helvetians on one side. The farmer had a ditch three feet wide in his field. The farmer will have in his fields five ditches, each-three (*ternos*) feet wide. The master gave (to) the boys four books apiece. A ditch twelve feet wide and six feet deep had hindered the attack of the enemy many days.

* *In hibernis* refers to the *resting* of troops in winter quarters; *in hiberna*, to the *motion* of going thither.

EXERCISE XXIX.

§ 67. 1. PARTIAL PARADIGM OF *ESSĚ*, to be.—INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present tense.

Pers. *Singular.**Plural.*

- | | |
|-------------------------|--------------------------------|
| 1. sŭm, <i>I am,</i> | sŭ'-mŭs, <i>we are,</i> |
| 2. ěs, <i>thou art,</i> | es'-tĭs, <i>ye or you are,</i> |
| 3. est, <i>he is ;</i> | sunt, <i>they are.</i> |

Imperfect.

- | | |
|------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. ě'-ram, <i>I was,</i> | ě-rā'-mŭs, <i>we were,</i> |
| 2. ě'-rās, <i>thou wast,</i> | ě-rā'-tĭs, <i>ye or you were,</i> |
| 3. ě'-rāt, <i>he was ;</i> | ě'-rant, <i>they were.</i> |

Future, *shall*, or *will*.

- | | |
|---------------------------------|--------------------------------------|
| 1. ě'-rŏ, <i>I shall be,</i> | ěr'-ĭ-mŭs, <i>we shall be,</i> |
| 2. ě'-rĭs, <i>thou wilt be,</i> | ěr'-ĭ-tĭs, <i>ye or you will be,</i> |
| 3. ě'-rĭt, <i>he will be ;</i> | ě'-runt, <i>they will be.</i> |

*Present-perfect, *have been*, or *was*.

- | | |
|--------------------------------------|---|
| 1. fu'-ĭ, <i>I have been,</i> | fu'-ĭ-mŭs, <i>we have been,</i> |
| 2. fu-is'-tĭ, <i>thou hast been,</i> | fu-is'-tĭs, <i>ye have been,</i> |
| 3. fu'-ĭt, <i>he has been ;</i> | fu-ě'-runt or -rě, <i>they have been.</i> |

Past-perfect.

- | | |
|------------------------------------|-----------------------------------|
| 1. fu'-ě-ram, <i>I had been,</i> | fu-ě-rā'-mŭs, <i>we had been,</i> |
| 2. fu'-ě-rās, <i>thou hadst</i> | fu-ě-rā'-tĭs, <i>ye had been,</i> |
| <i>been,</i> | |
| 3. fu'-ě-rāt, <i>he had been ;</i> | fu'-ě-rant, <i>they had been.</i> |

* The aorist-perfect is translated, *I was, thou wast, he was, we were, etc.*

Future-perfect, *shall or will have.*

Pers.	Singular.	Plural.
1.	<i>fu'-ě-rō, I shall have been,</i>	<i>fu-ěr'-ī-mūs, we shall have been,</i>
2.	<i>fu'-ě-rīs, thou wilt have been,</i>	<i>fu-er'-ī-tīs, ye will have been,</i>
3.	<i>fu'-ě-rīt, he will have been;</i>	<i>fu'-ě-rint, they will have been.</i>

2. A noun or an adjective may limit the predicate as well as the subject: thus, we may say, *Cicēro ōrātōr, Cicero the orator*, and *Cicēro ōrātōr fuīt, Cicero was an orator*; *ăgěr fěrax, a fertile field*, and *ăgěr fěrax est, the field is fertile*.

PREDICATE NOMINATIVE.

3. *Rule of Syntax.*—A noun in the predicate denoting the same thing as the subject, agrees with it in case, and is called the *predicate nominative*: as, *Cicēro ōrātōr fuīt, Cicero was an orator*.

Remark 1.—If the subject consists of more than one thing, the *predicate nominative* is plural.

Remark 2.—Adjectives in the predicate agree with the subject. See § 57, 2.

EXERCISE XXX.

Vocabulary.

<i>intěgěr, -gră, -grŭm, untouched, unhurt, fresh.</i>	<i>vulnŭs, vulněr-īs, wound.</i>
<i>hŭmānŭs, -ă, ūm, human.</i>	<i>vītă, -ă, life.</i>
<i>incertŭs, -ă, -ŭm, uncertain.</i>	<i>vēlox, vēlōc-īs, swift.</i>
<i>vērŭs, -ă, -ŭm, true.</i>	<i>căcŭs, -ă, -ŭm, blind.</i>
<i>turpīs, -ě, base.</i>	<i>mendăciŭm, -ī, lie.</i>
<i>ingens, -ent-īs, huge.</i>	<i>cornīgěr, -ă, -ŭm, horned.</i>
<i>duplex, duplēc-īs, double.</i>	<i>prăclărŭs, -ă, -ŭm, distinguished.</i>
<i>triplex, triplēc-īs, triple.</i>	<i>ăciēs, -ēī, line of battle.</i>
	<i>rěnunciătiō, -ōn-īs, report.</i>

Translate into English and analyze.

Nōn omniā animāliā cornīgērā sunt. Aquilārū ālæ magnæ sunt. Nōn omnēs homīnēs sāpientēs sunt. Rēs hūmānæ incertæ sunt. Vitā hōmīnū incertā est. Unūs ēquōrū cæcūs fuit. Cæsāris milītēs vėlōcēs fortesquē fuērunt. Cæsār fuit impērātōr magnūs. Māriūs dux fuit Rōmānōrū. Rēgis filiūs rex ērit. Rēnunciātiō lēgātōrū vērā fuit. Apēr ingens in silvā hābitāt. Impērātōr in prēliō intēgēr fuit. Vulnērā milītū sunt grāviā. Consul annōs multōs cæcūs fuērāt. Cæsāris āciēs triplex fuit. Omnēs dēcimæ lēgiōnis milītēs intēgrīs vīribūs (§ 45) prēliū rēintegrāvērāt. Mendāciā turpiā sunt. Cīcērō fuit ōrātōr præclārūs. Imprōbōrū (§ 60, *Rem.*) vitā ōnūs est grāvē. Gallōrū āciēs est duplex.

Translate into Latin.

The farmer's oxen are large. Many bulls are horned. All generals are not wise. The inhabitants of the villages dread the huge lion. Cicero was a wise consul and a great man. The wounds of the brave soldiers were severe. Many of the swift horsemen were unhurt. Davus, Cæsar's slave, has been blind many years. Our soldiers in a triple line renew the battle. All human things are uncertain. The shade of the dense forest will frighten the king's swift messenger.

COMPARISON OF ADJECTIVES.

§ 68. 1. The change which adjectives undergo to express different degrees of quality is termed comparison.

2. Grammarians-generally give three degrees of comparison,—the *positive*, the *comparative*, and the *superlative*.

3. The simple form of the adjective is usually called the *positive*: as, *altūs*, *high*.

4. The *comparative* expresses a higher degree of the quality in one of *two* things, or sets of things, than in the other: as, *mons arbōrē altiōr est*, *a mountain is higher than a tree*.

5. The *superlative* expresses a higher degree of the quality in one of *several* things, or sets of things, than in any of the rest: as, *triūm montiūm altissimūs*, *the highest of the three mountains*.

Remark 1.—The comparative does not express a higher degree of quality than the positive, but represents one thing as having more of a given quality than another. Thus, in the example *mons est arbōrē altiōr*, we mean, not that the mountain is higher than a *high* mountain, but higher than a tree; *i.e.* there is *more height* in a mountain than in a tree.

Remark 2.—When two qualities of the same thing are compared, the comparative is used: as, *Aristidēs justiōr quām sāpientiōr fuit*, *Aristides was more just than wise*.

Remark 3.—The comparative may often be translated by *too* or *rather* with the positive, especially when one of the things compared is omitted: as, *rex clēmantiōr est*, *the king is too merciful*.

Remark 4.—The superlative often expresses a high degree of a quality: as, *mons altissimūs*, *a very high mountain*.

FORMATION OF COMPARATIVE AND SUPERLATIVE.

§ 69. 1. The comparative is formed by adding *iōr*, and the superlative by adding *issimūs*, to the stem of the adjective: as, *alt-ūs*, *high*, *alt-iōr*, *higher*, *alt-issimūs*, *highest*.

2. Superlatives are of the first and second declensions. Comparatives are of the third declension, and are thus declined:—

Singular.

	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>dū'-ri-ōr,</i>	<i>dū'-ri-ūs,</i>
Gen.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rīs,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rīs,</i>
Dat.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rī,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rī,</i>
Acc.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rēm,</i>	<i>dū'-ri-ūs,</i>
Voc.	<i>dū'-ri-ōr,</i>	<i>dū'-ri-ūs,</i>
Abl.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rē or -rī;</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rē or -rī;</i>

Plural.

	Masc. & Fem.	Neuter.
Nom.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rēs,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rā,</i>
Gen.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rūm,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rūm,</i>
Dat.	<i>dū-ri-ōr'-ī-būs,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ōr'-ī-būs,</i>
Acc.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rēs,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rā,</i>
Voc.	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rēs,</i>	<i>dū-ri-ō'-rā,</i>
Abl.	<i>dū-ri-ōr'-ī-būs.</i>	<i>dū-ri-ōr'-ī-būs.</i>

EXERCISE XXXI.

§ 70. 1. That with which any thing is compared (the *complement* of the comparative) is connected by the conjunction *quam*, than, in the same case, or in the nominative, subject of *est*, *fuit*, etc., understood: *as, fortiōrēm vīdī nēmīnēm quam Māriūm, I have seen no braver man than Marius; or, fortiōrēm vīdī nēmīnēm quam Māriūs (est), I have seen no braver man than Marius is.*

2. *Quam* is sometimes omitted; then—

Rule of Syntax.—The ablative is used with the comparative degree, when *quam* is omitted, to express that with which something is compared: as, *mons est arbore altior, a mountain is higher than a tree.*

Vocabulary.

sanctūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>sacred</i> ; (of a man, <i>pure</i>).	fīdēs, -eī, <i>faith, promise.</i>
dūrūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>hard.</i>	nīhīl (indeclinable), <i>nothing.</i>
nēmō, nēmīn-īs, <i>no man.</i>	rēgiō, -ōn-īs, <i>region.</i>
	gens, gent-īs, <i>race, nation.</i>

Translate into English and analyze.

Prudentiōrēm vidī nēmīnēm quām Māriūm, Rōmānōrūm dūcēm. Lūpī sunt cānībūs fērōciōrēs. Nullā rēgiō est Galliā fērāciōr. Nīhīl est jūrējūrāndō (§ 45) sanctiūs. Equūs est bōvē vėlōciōr. Germānī fuērunt Gallīs fērōciōrēs. Nullūm bellūm est bellō cīvīlī atrōciūs. Nēmō Rōmānōrūm sanctiōr fuit quām Cātō. Consul gentēm fērōciōrēm nullām vidēbīt quām Helvētiōs. Cēsār in exercitū fortiōrēm hābēt nēmīnēm quām Lūciūs. Aurūm grāviūs est quām argentūm. Ferrūm est aurō dūriūs. Nīhīl incertiūs est quām vitā hūmānā. Agrīcōlā cānēm quām lūpūm fērōciōrēm hābuīt. Equītēs quām pēdītēs sunt vėlōciōrēs.

Translate into Latin.

The general is braver than the soldiers. The consul's son will be more prudent than his father. No nation was braver than the Helvetians. The king's messengers are swifter than horses. Lions are fiercer than dogs. Nothing is more sacred than the oath of a good man. A good man's promise is more sacred than a wicked man's oath.

The Belgians were a braver race than the Gauls. No general was more prudent than Cæsar. The king's garden is more fertile than the farmer's field. Iron is harder than silver. Silver is not heavier than gold. The general is not more prudent than the centurion.

EXERCISE XXXII.

§ 71. The *partitive genitive* is used with comparatives and superlatives: as, *fortiōr duōrūm fratrūm*, the braver of the two brothers; *fortissimūs militūm*, the bravest of the soldiers.

Vocabulary.

Jūră, -æ, (masc.) <i>Jura</i> (a mountain).	īră, -æ, <i>anger, wrath.</i>
Ităliă, -æ, <i>Italy.</i>	nostr̃, -tră, -trūm, <i>our.</i>
Rōmă, -æ, <i>Rome.</i>	

Translate into English and analyze.

Jūră, mons altissimūs (§ 68, *Rem. 3*), Helvētiōs unā ex partē continēt. Impērātōr fortissimōs militūm laudāvīt. Jūdex inīquūs quām latrō est turpiōr. Vēlītūm vēlōcissimī omnēs silvārūm trāmītēs explōrāverant. Prudentiōr duōrūm impērātōrūm cōpiās hostiūm fūgābīt. Fortissimī centūriōnūm magnitūdīnēm pēricūlī tīmēbant. Orgētōrix fuit Helvētiōrūm nōbilissimūs. Nostrōrūm (§ 60, *Rem.*) impētūs fortissimōs hostiūm perterruerāt. Jūgurthă, hōmō improbissimūs, fratrēs trucidāvīt. Vulnēră militūm fuerunt grāvissimă.

Translate into Latin.

The bravest of the enemy did not sustain the attack of our horsemen. The Rhine, a very broad river, keeps in

the Helvetians on one side. The wicked king had slain the noblest of the hostages. The consul will lay waste the most fertile states of Gaul. On the third day the general moved his camp into the most fertile part of the province. The most wicked of men fear the wrath of God. The greatness of the danger frightened the bravest of our soldiers. The general is wiser than the king's ambassadors. One of the enemy wounded Lucius, a very brave man, with a stone. Davus is the most faithful of all the slaves. Rome is the noblest city of Italy.

IRREGULAR COMPARISON.

§ 72. 1. Adjectives whose stems end in *ēr* form the superlative by adding *rīmūs*: as, *pulchēr*, beautiful, *pulchriōr*, *pulcherrīmūs*.

2. Six adjectives in *līs* form their superlative by adding *līmūs* to the stem:—

Fācīlīs,	fācīliōr,	fācillīmūs,	<i>easy.</i>
Diffīcīlīs,	diffīcīliōr,	diffīcillīmūs,	<i>difficult.</i>
Grācīlīs,	grācīliōr,	grācillīmūs,	<i>slender.</i>
Hūmīlīs,	hūmīliōr,	hūmillīmūs,	<i>low.</i>
Sīmīlīs,	sīmīliōr,	sīmillīmūs,	<i>like.</i>
Dissīmīlīs,	dissīmīliōr,	dissīmillīmūs,	<i>unlike.</i>

Imbēcillūs or *imbēcillīs*, weak, has two forms, *imbēcillissīmūs* and *imbēcillīmūs*.

3. Compound adjectives ending in *dīcūs*, *fīcūs*, and *vōlūs* form the comparative and superlative by adding *entiōr* and *entissīmūs* to the stem: as, *bēnēvōlūs*, benevolent, *bēnēvōlentiōr*, *bēnēvōlentissīmūs*.

4. The following have regular comparatives, but irregular superlatives:—

Dextēr,	dextēriōr,	dextīmūs,	<i>right.</i>
Extēr,	extēriōr,	extrēmūs or extīmūs,	<i>outward.</i>
Postērūs,	postēriōr,	postrēmūs or postūmūs,	<i>hind.</i>
Infērūs,	infēriōr,	infīmūs or īmūs,	<i>below.</i>
Supērūs,	supēriōr,	suprēmūs or summūs,	<i>above.</i>

Remark.—The adjectives *extēr* and *postērūs* are very rarely found in the nominative singular masculine.

5. The following form the comparative and superlative on a different stem from that of the positive :—

Bōnūs,	mēliōr,	optīmūs,	<i>good,</i>	<i>better,</i>	<i>best.</i>
Mālūs,	pējōr,	pessīmūs,	<i>bad,</i>	<i>worse,</i>	<i>worst.</i>
Magnūs,	mājōr,	maxīmūs,	<i>great,</i>	<i>greater,</i>	<i>greatest.</i>
Parvūs,	mīnōr,	mīnīmūs,	<i>little,</i>	<i>less,</i>	<i>least.</i>
Multūs,	———	plūrīmūs,	<i>much,</i>	<i>more,</i>	<i>most.</i>
Multā,	———	plūrīmā,			
Multūm,	plūs,	plūrīmūm,			

6. *Nēquām*, worthless, has *nēquiōr*, *nēquissīmūs*; and *frūgī*, frugal, has *frūgāliōr*, *frūgālissīmūs*.

7. *Plus*, more, is thus declined :—

	<i>Singular.</i>		<i>Plural.</i>
	Neut.	Masc. & Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	plūs,	plū'-rēs,	plū'-rā, rarely plū'-ri-ā,
Gen.	plū'-rīs,	plū'-ri-ūm,	plū'-ri-ūm,
Dat.	———	plū'-rī-būs,	plū'-rī-būs,
Acc.	plūs,	plū'-rēs,	plū'-rā, rarely plū'-ri-ā,
Voc.	———	———	———
Abl.	plū'-rē (obs.).	plū'-rī-būs;	plū'-rī-būs.

Complūrēs, a great many, is found only in the plural, and is declined like *plūrēs*.

EXERCISE XXXIII.

§ 73. The *partitive genitive* is frequently used with

neuter adjectives, such as *multūm*, *plūs*, *mīnīmūm*, *plūrīmūm*, etc. : as, *multūm aurī*, much gold.

Translate into English and analyze.

Prīncipēs Gallōrūm Cæsārīs exercitūi plūrīmūm frūmentī præbuērunt. Cīvēs īn dōmībūs multūm aurī hābent. Mīnīmūm virtūtīs est īn jūdīcē īnīquō. Agrīcōlæ plūs frūmentī hābent quā́m aurī. Itēr pēr Alpēs difficillīmūm est. Māgistēr optīmōs puērōrūm laudābit. Cæsār maxīmus fuīt impērātōrūm Rōmānōrūm. Multūm cībī cōmēdōnem dēlectāt. Rēgīnæ filiā est pulcherrīmā. Agrīcōlæ bōvēs pīgerrīmī sunt. Pastōr mīnīmōs agnōrūm nōn tōtondīt.

Translate into Latin.

The great whirlwinds will dash in pieces very many of the ships. The poet's daughter is the most beautiful of all the girls. The greatest city in Italy is Rome. The soldiers will bring much corn into the city. The commander will remain in the camp the whole winter. The consul's soldiers demanded gold from the citizens. The citizens gave (to) the consul's soldiers more (of) wounds than (of) gold. The general called together the greatest of the chiefs. Cæsar was a greater general than Crassus.

DEFECTIVE COMPARISON.

§ 74. 1. The following adjectives want the positive :—

Cītēriōr, cītīmūs, *nearer*.

Dētēriōr, dētērrīmūs, *worse*.

Intēriōr, intīmūs, *inner*.

Ociōr, ōcīssīmūs, *swifter*.

Priōr, prīmūs, *former*.

Prōpiōr, proxīmūs, *nearer*.

Ultēriōr, ultimūs, *further*.

2. The following have no terminational comparative, but prefix *māgīs*, more :—

Consūltūs, consūltissimūs, <i>skilful</i> .	Pār, pārissimūs (very rare), <i>equal</i> .
Inclūtūs, inclūtissimūs, <i>renowned</i> .	Persuāsūs, persuāsissimūm (neuter),
Invictūs, invictissimūs, <i>invincible</i> .	<i>persuaded</i> .
Invītūs, invītissimūs, <i>unwilling</i> .	Sācēr, sācerimūs, <i>sacred</i> .
Mēritūs, mēritissimūs (very rare),	
<i>deserving</i> .	

3. The following have no terminational superlative, but for the most part prefix *maxīmē*, most :—

Adōlescens, ādōlescentiōr, <i>young</i> .	Proclivīs, procliviōr, <i>sloping</i> .
Agrestīs, āgrestiōr, <i>rustic</i> .	Prōnūs, prōniōr, <i>bending down</i> .
Alācēr, ālāceriōr, <i>active</i> .	Prōpinquūs, prōpinquiōr, <i>near</i> .
Atēr, atriōr, <i>black</i> .	Prōtervūs, prōtēriōr, <i>violent</i> .
Cēcūs, cēciōr, <i>blind</i> .	Salūtārīs, salūtāriōr, <i>salutary</i> .
Dēsēs, dēsīdiōr, <i>inactive</i> .	Sātīs, <i>sufficient</i> ; sātiūs, <i>preferable</i> .
Diūturnūs, diūturniōr, <i>lasting</i> .	Sātūr, sātūriōr, <i>full</i> .
Infinitūs, infinitiōr, <i>unlimited</i> .	Sēnex, sēniōr, <i>old</i> .
Ingens, ingentiōr, <i>great</i> .	Silvestrīs, silvestriōr, <i>woody</i> .
Jējūnūs, jējūniōr, <i>hungry</i> .	Sīnistēr, sīnistēriōr, <i>left</i> .
Jūvēnīs, jūniōr, <i>young</i> .	Sūpīnūs, sūpīniōr, <i>lying on the back</i> .
Līcens, līcentiōr, <i>unrestrained</i> .	Surdūs, surdiōr, <i>deaf</i> .
Longinquūs, longinquiōr, <i>distant</i> .	Tērēs, tērētiōr, <i>round</i> .
Opīmūs, ōpīmiōr, <i>rich</i> .	

Remark 1.—The superlative of *jūvēnīs* and *ādōlescens* is supplied by *mīnīmūs nātū*, youngest; and that of *sēnex* by *maxīmūs nātū*, oldest. The comparatives of *mīnōr nātū* and *mājōr nātū* sometimes also occur.

4. Many adjectives form the comparative and superlative by prefixing *māgīs*, more, and *maxīmē*, most: as, *piūs, māgīs piūs, maxīmē piūs*, pious, more pious, most pious. This is especially the case with adjectives in *bundūs, īmūs, īnūs, ōrūs, īvūs*, and *ūs* with a vowel before it.

THIRD AND FOURTH CONJUGATION OF VERBS.

§ 75. 1. Verbs of the third conjugation have *ērĕ* (short) in the infinitive present; those of the fourth conjugation, *īrĕ*.

2. INDICATIVE ENDINGS, THIRD CONJUGATION.

Singular.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
Present,	-ō,	-īs,	-īt,
Imperfect,	-ē'-bām,	-ē'-bās,	-ē'-bāt,
Future,	-ām;	-ēs;	-ēt;

Plural.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
Present,	-ī-mūs,	-ī-tīs,	-unt,
Imperfect,	-ē-bā'-mūs,	-ē-bā'-tīs,	-ē'-bant,
Future,	-ē'-mūs.	-ē'-tīs.	-ent.

3. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Singular.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
Present,	-iō,	-īs,	-īt,
Imperfect,	-i-ē'-bām,	-i-ē'-bās,	-i-ē'-bāt,
Future,	-i-ām;	-i-ēs;	-i-ēt;

Plural.

	1st Person.	2d Person.	3d Person.
Present,	-ī'-mūs,	-ī'-tīs,	-i-unt,
Imperfect,	-i-ē-bā'-mūs,	-i-ē-bā'-tīs,	-i-ē'-bant,
Future,	-i-ē'-mūs.	-i-ē'-tīs.	-i-ent.

4. By adding these endings to the stems *rĕg-*, *rule*, and *aud-*, *hear*, we have the following

PARTIAL PARADIGM.—INDICATIVE MOOD,
THIRD CONJUGATION.

Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
<i>I rule.</i>	<i>I was ruling.</i>	<i>I shall or will rule.</i>
<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>rě'-gŏ,</i>	<i>rě-gě'-bām,</i>	<i>rě'-gām,</i>
<i>rě'-gīs,</i>	<i>rě-gě'-bās,</i>	<i>rě'-gēs,</i>
<i>rě'-gīt ;</i>	<i>rě-gě'-bāt ;</i>	<i>rě'-gēt ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>rěg'-ī-mūs,</i>	<i>rěg-ē-bā'-mūs,</i>	<i>rě-gě'-mūs,</i>
<i>rěg'-ī-tīs,</i>	<i>rěg-ē-bā'-tīs,</i>	<i>rě-gě'-tīs,</i>
<i>rě'-gunt.</i>	<i>rě-gě'-bant.</i>	<i>rě'-gent.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD, FOURTH CONJUGATION.

Present.	Imperfect.	Future.
<i>I hear.</i>	<i>I was hearing.</i>	<i>I shall or will hear.</i>
<i>Singular.</i>		
<i>au'-di-ŏ,</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-bām,</i>	<i>au'-di-ām,</i>
<i>au'-dīs,</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-bās,</i>	<i>au'-di-ēs,</i>
<i>au'-dīt ;</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-bāt ;</i>	<i>au'-di-ēt ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>		
<i>au-di'-mūs,</i>	<i>au-di-ē-bā'-mūs,</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-mūs,</i>
<i>au-di'-tīs,</i>	<i>au-di-ē-bā'-tīs,</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-tīs,</i>
<i>au'-di-unt.</i>	<i>au-di-ē'-bant.</i>	<i>au'-di-ent.</i>

5. The endings of the perfect tenses are the same in all conjugations. The perfect-stem is variously formed in the third conjugation ; in the fourth it is formed by adding *-īv* to the present-stem : as, *aud-io*, I am hearing ; *aud-ī-vī*, I have heard. See § 47.

6. The supine-stem is generally formed, in the third conjugation, by adding *-t* to the present-stem; in the fourth, by adding *-it*: as, *dūc-ērē, duct-ūm; aud-irē, aud-īt-ūm*.

EXERCISE XXXIV.

§ 76. *Vocabulary.*

vallūm, -ī, rampart.

castellūm, -ī, tower.

fūr, fūr-is, (§ 39, Rem. 2), thief.

fīnīs, -īs, (§ 33, Rem. 6, Exc. 2),

boundary, end.

vīgīliā, -æ, watch.

tertiūs, -ā, -ūm, (§ 63, 1, b), third.

dē (prep. with abl.), about, concerning;

of time, at, after; dē tertiā vīgīliā,

at or after the third watch.

tergūm, -ī, back.

rēg-ō, rēg-ērē, rex-ī, rect-ūm, to rule.

dūc-ō, dūc-ērē, dux-ī, duct-ūm, to lead.

ē-dūc-ō, ē-dūc-ērē, ē-dux-ī, ē-duct-ūm, to lead out.

rē-dūc-ō, rē-dūc-ērē, rē-dux-ī, rē-duct-ūm, to lead back.

vert-ō, vert-ērē, vert-ī, vers-ūm, to turn.

mūn-iō, mūn-irē, mūnīv-ī, mūn-ītūm, to fortify.

pūn-iō, pūn-irē, pūnīv-ī, pūnīt-ūm, to punish.

sc-iō, sc-irē, scīv-ī, scīt-ūm, to know.

Translate into English and analyze.

Deūs omniā rēgīt. Impērātōr magnūs cīvītātēs multās rexīt. Consūl annōs multōs (§ 66, 2) prōvinciām rexērāt. Consūlīs frātēr exercītūs reipublicæ dūcēt. Princeps fērox plēbēm omnēm ād bellūm dūcēbāt. Cēsār dē tertiā vīgīliā ē castrīs exercītūm ēduxīt. Mariūs nostrōs ād victōriām duxērāt. Hostēs tergā vertērē. Fūrēs latrōnesquē vultūm rēgīs timent. Impērātōr castrā vallō fossāquē mūnīvīt. Princeps prūdēns omniā Helvētiōrūm oppidā mūniēt. Mariūs consūl exercītūm ād urbēm rēduxīt. Principēs Thrācūm castellā multā mūnient. Rex fūrēs latrōnesquē pūniēbāt. Dōmīnūs pigrōs servōs pūnīt. Dāvūs nīhīl scīt dē lēgībūs reipublicæ.

Translate into Latin.

The centurion has led back many of the brave soldiers. All the horsemen of the enemy are turning their backs. The boy rules his horse with the bridle. Our men knew nothing about the journey of the enemy. Cæsar was leading the whole army through the boundaries of the Æduans. The consul will lead out the army from the town after the third watch. The great king will punish many thieves and robbers. The prudent general had fortified his camp with a rampart and ditch. One of the consuls has led the Romans to victory.

PRONOUNS.

§ 77. 1. A pronoun is a word used instead of a noun.

2. There are eighteen simple pronouns :—

Ėgō, <i>I.</i>	Qui, <i>who.</i>
Tū, <i>thou.</i>	Meūs, <i>my.</i>
Suī, <i>of himself, etc.</i>	Tuūs, <i>thy.</i>
Illē, <i>that, the former.</i>	Suūs, <i>his, hers, its, etc.</i>
Ipsē, <i>himself.</i>	Cūjūs? <i>whose?</i>
Istē, <i>that, that of yours.</i>	Nostēr, <i>our.</i>
Hīc, <i>this, the latter.</i>	Vestēr, <i>your.</i>
Ės, <i>that or he.</i>	Nostrās, <i>of our country.</i>
Quīs? <i>who?</i>	Cūjās? <i>of what country?</i>

3. Of these, *ēgo*, *tū*, and *suī* are called *substantive*, because they are used as nouns; and *personal*, because *ēgo* always denotes the *speaker*; *tū*, the person *spoken to*; and *suī*, the person *spoken of*.

4. From *ěgo*, *tū*, and *suī* are derived *meūs*, *tuūs*, *suūs*, *noštēr*, *vestēr*, and *nostrūs*, which are adjective words.

5. *Illě*, *ipsě*, *istě*, *hic*, and *is*, are formed on the same pronominal root, *ī*; and *quīs* and *quī*, on the pronominal root *ū*.

SUBSTANTIVE PERSONAL PRONOUNS.

§ 78. The substantive personal pronouns are thus declined:—

Singular.

N.	ě'-gŏ, <i>I</i> .	tū, <i>thou</i> .	_____
G.	me'-ī, <i>of me</i> .	tu'-ī, <i>of thee</i> .	{ <i>su'-ī</i> , <i>of himself, herself, itself</i> .
D.	mĭ'-hĭ, <i>to me</i> .	tĭb'-ĭ, <i>to thee</i> .	<i>sĭb'-ĭ</i> , <i>to himself, etc</i> .
Ac.	mē, <i>me</i> .	tē, <i>thee</i> .	<i>sē</i> , <i>himself, etc</i> .
V.	_____	tū, <i>O thou</i> .	_____
Ab.	mē, <i>with me</i> .	tē, <i>with thee</i> .	<i>sē</i> , <i>with himself, etc</i> .

Plural.

N.	nōs, <i>we</i> .	vōs, <i>ye or you</i> .	_____
G.	{ <i>nos'-trŭm</i> } <i>of us</i> .	{ <i>ves'-trŭm</i> } <i>of you</i> .	<i>su'-ī</i> , <i>of themselves</i> .
	{ <i>or nos'-trĭ</i> , }	{ <i>or ves'-trĭ</i> , }	
D.	nŏ'-bĭs, <i>to us</i> .	vŏ'-bĭs, <i>to you</i> .	<i>sĭb'-ĭ</i> , <i>to themselves</i> .
Ac.	nōs, <i>us</i> .	vōs, <i>you</i> .	<i>sē</i> , <i>themselves</i> .
V.	_____	vōs, <i>O ye or you</i> .	_____
Ab.	nŏ'-bĭs, <i>with us</i> .	vŏ'-bĭs, <i>with you</i> .	<i>sē</i> , <i>with themselves</i> .

Remark 1.—The nominatives *ěgo*, *tū*, *nōs*, *vōs*, are expressed with the verb only for the sake of emphasis or contrast: as, *ěgo ěquĭto*, *tū ambŭlās*, *I am riding, you are walking*; *nōs vŏcābāmŭs*, *respondistĭs vōs*, *we were calling, ye answered*.

Remark 2.—The syllable *mēt* is annexed, for emphasis, to all the forms of the substantive personal pronouns, except *tū*, *nostrŭm*,

and *vestrūm*; *sēsē* is frequently used for *sē*, being more emphatic; also *tūtē*, and *tūtēmēt*, for *tū*.

Remark 3.—The forms *nostrī* and *vestrī* are properly the genitive singular neuter of the possessives *nostēr* and *vestēr*, and denote one whole, without reference to its parts: they are almost always objective: as, *ōdiūm vestrī*, hatred of you. *Nostrūm* and *vestrūm* are generally partitive genitives: as, *quīs vestrūm*? They are sometimes objective, like *nostrī* and *vestrī*; as, *cūpīdūs vestrūm*, desirous of you; and sometimes subjective, especially with *omniūm*; as, *nostrūm omniūm pārens*, the parent of us all,—not *nostrī omniūm*.

Remark 4.—*Suī* is also called *reflexive*, because it refers to the leading subject: as, *puēr sēsē laudāt*, the boy praises himself. But where no ambiguity can arise, *suī* sometimes refers to some other word than the leading subject: as, *prædicant consūlēm sēsē laudārē*.

Remark 5.—The substantive personals take the gender of the nouns for which they stand.

EXERCISE XXXV.

§ 79. 1. *Rule of Syntax.*—If the subject consist of more than one, the verb is plural. If the nominatives be of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third: as, *ēgo ēt tū* (= *nōs*) *vālēmūs*, I and you are well; *tū ēt Cicerō* (= *vōs*) *vālētīs*, you and Cicero are well.

2. *Rule of Position.*—The preposition *cūm* is always put after the ablative of the substantive personal pronouns: as, *mēcūm*, with me.

3. *Rule of Position.*—The substantive personal pronouns, when connected by conjunctions to other words, stand first: as, *tū ēt rex*, you and the king.

Ego always precedes: as, *ēgo ēt rex*, the king and I; *ēgo ēt tū*, you and I.

4. *Rule of Position.*—Contrasted words are put as near together, or as far apart, as possible. *Nōs* *ēquītā-mūs, ambūlātīs vōs*; or, *ēquītāmūs nōs, vōs ambūlātīs*.

5. *Omnēs in vicō puērī*, all the boys in the village. (Observe that *in vicō* is placed between *omnēs* and *puērī*.)

Translate into English and analyze.

Nōs *ēquītābīmūs, ambūlābītīs vōs*. In urbē magnā multītūdīnē hōmīnū vīdēbīs. *Egō* ēt pātēr in rēgīs hortō cōnābīmūs. *Tū* ēt Lūciūs nōbiscū mănēbītīs. *Egō* ēt Cīcērō puērīs librōs dābāmūs. Rex Thrācū tībī multū aurī dābīt. Rēgīnā nunciūs mīhī viām monstrābīt. *Tū* ēt Tulliūs mēcū ambūlābātīs. Ancillā sībī mēdicīnā pārāvērāt. Impērātōr fortīs multōs captīvōs sēcū dūcēt. Consul mercātōrēs omnēs ād sē convōcāvērāt. Poētā carminā audiēmūs. Sāpiens sēsē nōn laudāt. *Egō* ēt *tū* āpūd Tulliū cōnābāmūs. Imprōbī sēsē timent. Puēr bōnūs in urbē nōs dūcēt. Dāvūs, Cātōnīs servūs, sēsē cultrō vulnērāvīt.

Translate into Latin.

In a great city we see many men. (My) father and I sustained the attack of the enemy many hours (§ 66, 2). In a short time Lucius and I will have given books to all the boys. I rode, you* walked. You and Tully will remain many days with us. The general has given (to) one of the soldiers much silver and gold. Wise men do not praise themselves. We shall hear the songs of the great poet. We have punished all the thieves in the province. I have held the fierce bull by the horns. The wicked king does not rule himself. Ye have walked five thousand paces (§ 66, 2).

* *You* will be translated by *tū* when it refers to one; by *vōs* when it means more than one.

ADJECTIVE-PERSONAL, OR POSSESSIVE, PRONOUNS.

§ 80. From the substantive pronouns are derived the *adjective-personal*, or *possessive*, pronouns, so called because they are *adjectives* and denote *possession*. They are—

From *meī*, *meūs, meā, meŭm, my, mine.*

(voc. *masc. mī*, rarely *meūs*.) (Like *bŏnŭs*.)

From *tuī*, *tuŭs, tuā, tuŭm, thy, thine, your.* (Like *bŏnŭs*.)

From *suī*, *suŭs, suā, suŭm, his, her, its, their, his own, her own, its own, their own.*

From *nostrī*, *nostēr, nostrā, nostrŭm, our, ours.* (Like *pulchēr*.)

From *vestrī*, *vestēr, vestrā, vestrŭm, your, yours.* (Like *pulchēr*.)

Remark 1.—The emphatic suffixes *mēt* and *ptē* are sometimes added to the possessive pronouns, especially in the ablative singular: as, *meāmēt mănŭ*, with my own hand.

Remark 2.—*Suŭs*, like *suī*, is always reflexive, referring to the subject of the sentence in which it stands. But a sentence may be so constructed that the natural subject becomes the object: thus, instead of *hic ā civibŭs suis ex urbē ejectŭs est* (this man was expelled from the city by his own citizens), we find *hunc civēs suī ex urbē ejēcērunt* (his own citizens expelled this man from the city).

Remark 3.—While *suī* refers to the *leading* subject, *suŭs* refers to the subject of the sentence in which it stands. *Arivistŭs respondīt nēmīnēm sēcŭm sinē suā pernīciē contendissē*, Ariovistus replied that no one had contended with him without his own destruction. (Here *sēcŭm* refers to *Arivistus*, and *suā* to *nēmīnēm*.)

EXERCISE XXXVI.

§ 81. 1. Questions expecting the answer *yes* or *no* are

asked in Latin by means of the interrogative particles *nē*, *nonnē*, *nūm*.

2. (a.) The enclitic *nē* asks for information, and is placed after the verb, usually standing with it at the beginning of the sentence. It is not translated. *Scrībīt-nē Caiūs?* *is Caius writing?* *Pătēr tuūs tībī ēquūm dēdīt-nē?* *has your father given you a horse?*

(b.) *Nē* stands with any especially emphatic word at the beginning of the sentence. *Tū-nē scrībīs?* *are you writing?*

3. *Nūm* stands at the beginning of the sentence, and expects the answer *no*. It is not translated. *Nūm tū pătřēm tuūm nēcāvistī?* *have you murdered your own father?*

4. *Nonnē* (placed at or near the beginning of the sentence) expects the answer *yes*. *Nonnē ēpistōlām scripsistī?* *have you not written the letter?*

5. The answer *yes* is expressed in Latin by repeating the predicate: as, "Have you seen the king? Yes." *Vīdistī-nē rēgēm?* *Vīdī.* *No* is expressed by repeating the predicate with *nōn*: "Have you seen the king? No." *Vīdistī-nē rēgēm?* *Nōn vīdī.* Hence questions expecting the answer *yes* or *no* are called *predicative questions*.

Vocabulary.

cūbiculūm, -ī, *bedchamber.*

cantūs, -ūs, *singing.*

vox, vōc-īs, *voice.*

sālūs, sālūtīs, *safety.*

tuā sālūtīs causā, *for the sake of your own safety.*

scrīb-ō, -ērē, scrips-ī, script-ūm, *to write.*

con-scrīb-ō, -ērē, conscrips-ī, conscript-ūm, *to levy, enroll.*

rēlinqu-ō, -ērē, rēliqu-ī, rēlict-ūm, *to leave.*

vēn-iō, -irē, vēn-ī, vent-ūm, *to come.*

dorm-iō, -irē, dormiv-ī, dormit-ūm, *to sleep.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Audīs-nē vōcēm patrīs meī? Nonnē magnitūdō ōpērīs consulēm sapiētem tardābit? Nonnē filiī impērātōrīs in castrīs dormiēbant? Nūm servūs tuūs tōtām noctēm in silvā mansit? Vidistī-nē magnūm ōviūm grēgēm in āgrō meō? Tū-nē rēgēm nostrūm vidistī. Nostrī (§ 60, *Rem.*) tōtūm diēm impētūm hostiūm sustinuerant. Vestræs sālūtīs causā vōs mōnuī. Tuæ sālūtīs causā in urbēm tē duxī. Audiēs-nē cantūm āviūm? Nūm consūl trēs lēgiōnēs parvō in vicō conscripsit? Pulchrā puellā mănū suā ēpistolām scribēt. Vēniēt-nē in urbēm impērātōr magnūs cūm omnībūs copiīs? Conscripsit-nē Cēsār lēgiōnēs duās in prōvinciā? Mātēr imprōbā suām filiām vēnēnō nēcāvit. Māriūs, dux Rōmānūs, omnēs cōpiās suās ex hibernīs ēduxērāt.

Translate into Latin.

Will the beautiful queen write the whole letter with her own hand? Will a kind father murder his own children? No. Will a wise king break the laws of the state? Shall we sup with (*āpūd*) Tully's son-in-law? Will not the brave general lead the forces of the republic to victory? Yes. Has your father seen my slave in his garden? Were your slaves carrying heavy burdens through the city? Our kind brother will advise us for the sake of our own safety. Will not the good shepherd defend all his own sheep from dogs and wolves? Yes. Thou shalt sleep in the little bedchamber. Will a brave general leave his army in the boundaries of the enemy? We shall hear the voice of the general.

DEMONSTRATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 82. 1. Demonstratives are so called because they are used to *point out* things: as, *illě puěr*, *that boy*; *hæc silvǎ*, *this forest*.

2. They are *illě*, *istě*, *hěc*, *ěs*, and their compounds, and are thus declined:—

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>iľ'-lě</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lǎ</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lŭd</i> ,
Gen.	<i>il'-lě'-us</i> ,	<i>il'-lě'-us</i> ,	<i>il'-lě'-us</i> ,
Dat.	<i>iľ'-lĭ</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lĭ</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lĭ</i> ,
Acc.	<i>iľ'-lŭm</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lǎm</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lŭd</i> ,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>iľ'-lō</i> ;	<i>iľ'-lǎ</i> ;	<i>iľ'-lō</i> ;

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>iľ'-lĭ</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lǎe</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lǎ</i> ,
Gen.	<i>il'-lō'-rŭm</i> ,	<i>il'-lǎ'-rŭm</i> ,	<i>il'-lō'-rŭm</i> ,
Dat.	<i>iľ'-lĭs</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lĭs</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lĭs</i> ,
Acc.	<i>iľ'-lōs</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lǎs</i> ,	<i>iľ'-lǎ</i> ,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>iľ'-lĭs</i> .	<i>iľ'-lĭs</i> .	<i>iľ'-lĭs</i> .

Istě is declined like *illě*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>hěc</i> ,	<i>hæc</i> ,	<i>hōc</i> ,
Gen.	<i>hŭ'-jŭs</i> ,	<i>hŭ'-jŭs</i> ,	<i>hŭ'-jŭs</i> ,
Dat.	<i>huĭc</i> ,	<i>huĭc</i> ,	<i>huĭc</i> ,
Acc.	<i>hunc</i> ,	<i>hanc</i> ,	<i>hōc</i> ,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	<i>hōc</i> ;	<i>hāc</i> ;	<i>hōc</i> ;

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	hī,	hæ,	hæc,
Gen.	hō'-rŭm,	hā'-rŭm,	hō'-rŭm,
Dat.	hīs,	hīs,	hīs,
Acc.	hōs,	hās,	hæc,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	hīs,	hīs.	hīs.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	īs,	e'-ă,	īd,
Gen.	ē'-jūs,	ē'-jūs,	ē'-jūs,
Dat.	e'-ī,	e'-ī,	e'-ī,
Acc.	e'-ŭm,	e'-ăm,	īd,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	e'-ō ;	e'-ā ;	e'-ō ;

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ī'-ī,	e'-æ,	e'-ă,
Gen.	e-ō'-rŭm,	e-ā'-rŭm,	e-ō'-rŭm,
Dat.	ī'-īs or e'-īs,	ī'-īs or e'-īs,	ī'-īs or e'-īs,
Acc.	e'-ōs,	e'-ās,	e'-ă,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	ī'-īs or e'-īs.	ī'-īs or e'-īs.	ī'-īs or e'-īs.

3. *Istīc* (sometimes written *isthīc*) and *illīc* are compounded of *istĕ hic* and *illĕ hic*, and are more emphatic than *istĕ* and *illĕ*. *Istīc* is thus declined :—

*Singular.**Plural.*

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.		Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	is'-tīc,	is'-tæc,	is'tōc or is'-tūc,	Nom.	— is'-tæc,	—	—
Acc.	is'-tunc,	is'-tanc,	is'tōc or is'-tūc,	Acc.	— —	is'-tæc.	—
Abl.	is'-tōc ;	is'-tāc ;	is'-tōc ;				

Illīc is declined in the same manner.

4. The suffix *dēm* is annexed to *īs*, forming *īdēm*, “the same,” which is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>ī'-dēm,</i>	<i>e'-ā'-dēm,</i>	<i>ī'-dēm,</i>
Gen.	<i>ē-jus'-dēm,</i>	<i>ē-jus'-dēm,</i>	<i>ē-jus'-dēm,</i>
Dat.	<i>e-ī'-dēm,</i>	<i>e-ī'-dēm,</i>	<i>e-ī'-dēm,</i>
Acc.	<i>e-un'-dēm,</i>	<i>e-an'-dēm,</i>	<i>ī'-dēm,</i>
Voc.	—————	—————	—————
Abl.	<i>e-ō'-dēm ;</i>	<i>e-ā'-dēm ;</i>	<i>e-ō'-dēm ;</i>
<i>Plural.</i>			
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>
Nom.	<i>i-ī'-dēm,</i>	<i>e-æ'-dēm,</i>	<i>e'-ā'-dēm,</i>
Gen.	<i>e-ō-run'-dēm,</i>	<i>e-ā-run'-dēm,</i>	<i>e-ō-run'-dēm,</i>
Dat.	<i>e-is'-dēm or i-is'- dēm,</i>	<i>e-is'-dēm or i-is'- dēm,</i>	<i>e-is'-dēm or i-is'- dēm,</i>
Acc.	<i>e-os'-dēm,</i>	<i>e-as'-dēm,</i>	<i>e'-ā'-dēm,</i>
Voc.	—————	—————	—————
Abl.	<i>e-is'-dēm or i-is'- dēm.</i>	<i>e-is'-dēm or i-is'- dēm.</i>	<i>e-is'-dēm or i-is'- dēm.</i>

EXERCISE XXXVII.

IS, IDEM.

§ 83. 1. *Is*, that, is very often used as a substantive-personal pronoun (*he, she, it, they, them*, etc.) of the same gender with the noun for which it stands: as, *Cicero multōs librōs scripsit*; *eōs* (i.e. *librōs*) *libentē lēgo*; Cicero has written many books; I read *them* (i.e. *the books*) with pleasure.

2. (a.) *His, her, its, their*, will be translated by *suūs* when they refer to the subject; (b.) if they refer to any other word in the sentence, they will be translated by the genitive of the demonstrative, *īs, eā, id*.

(a.) Rex filiū suū ad sē vocāt,

The king calls his (own) son to him.

(b.) Rex agricolām et filiū ejūs
ad sē vocāt,

*The king calls the farmer and his
(the farmer's) son to him.*

Helvētīi in Æduōrūm finēs cōpiās
suās transduxerant, eōrumquē
āgrōs pōpūlābantūr,

*The Helvetians had led over their
forces into the country of the
Æduans, and were laying waste
their (the Æduans') fields.*

Remark 1.—An idea is repeated emphatically by *et is* or *nec is*: as, *unā in dōmō, et eā angustā*, in one house, and that a small one; *unū praeliū, nec id difficīle*, one battle, and that not a hard one.

Remark 2.—*Idēm* is often equivalent to *also* in English: as, *Cicēro erat orator idemquē philosophus*, Cicero was an orator, and also a philosopher (*literally*, and the same was a philosopher).

Remark 3.—The demonstratives are adjectives, and can properly be called *pronouns* only when they *stand* for nouns.

Vocabulary.

scriptor, -or-is, *writer.*

præstans, -ant-is, *excellent, distinguished.*

Ovidius, -i, *Ovid.*

Virgilius, -i, *Virgil.*

libent(er) (adv.), *gladly, with pleasure.*

Platō, -on-is, *Plato.*

Dumnorix, -ig-is, *Dumnorix.*

gerō, gēr-ērē, gess-i, gest-um, *to wage, carry on.*

contendō, contend-ērē, contend-i, content-um, *to strive, to fight, to contend.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Cæsar hostēs fūgāvit, et ab iis obsidēs multōs postulāvit. Rōmānī cū Gallīs contendērunt, atquē in eōrū finībūs bellū gessērunt. Rex mercatōrēs omnēs ad sē convōcāvit, atquē iis multū aurī (§ 73) dedit. Consulis filiā pulcherrimā est; eā in urbē vidī. Dumnorix eō (*that*) tempore (§ 66, 1) in Germaniā bellū gerēbat. In eodēm oppidō multī milites fuerunt. Tullius eundem servum ad sē vocabit. Eodēm diē imperator clarus ad castrā venit. Ovidius et Virgilius sunt poetæ clarissimi; opera eorum libenter legimus. Cæsar Labienum et ejus filium in Galliā reliquerat. Poetæ opera sua laudant.

Poētā clārūs impērātōrēm āmāt, ēt ējūs virtūtēm laudābīt.
Pāter tuūs filiām suām āmāt, ēt ējūs libērīs multūm
argentī (§ 73) dābīt.

Translate into Latin.

Cicero is a very distinguished orator; we shall hear him with pleasure. Plato is an excellent writer; have you read all his works? Will the queen see her son and his daughter in our city? The king will not leave Tully and his (Tully's) son in the city. A wise man does not carry all his gold with him. In one day Cæsar led the whole army through the boundaries of the Helvetians to Lake Lemannus; on the same day he routed very great forces of the enemy. At that time the rains had swollen all the rivers, and were keeping (*continēre*) the Germans in their own boundaries. The king loved his faithful slave, and gave him a golden necklace. Have you seen the centurion's beautiful daughter? I saw her in the king's grove. Cæsar was a famous general, and also (*Rem. 2*) a distinguished writer.

HIC, ISTE, ILLE.

§ 84. 1. HIC, HÆC, HŌC, *this*, points out a thing near the speaker in place or time, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the *first person*: as, *hic liber*, this book (near me); *hoc diē*, on this day.

2. ISTĒ, ISTĀ, ISTŪD, *this, that*, points out a thing near the person spoken to, and is sometimes called the demonstrative of the *second person*: as, *istē liber*, that book (of yours).

3. ILLĒ, ILLĀ, ILLŪD, *that*, points out a thing remote from the speaker, and is often called the demonstrative of the *third person*: as, *illē liber*, that book (yonder).

Remark 1.—*Hic* — *illē*, and *illē* — *hic*, are translated *the former* — *the latter, the one* — *the other*, etc.: as, *Cæsār ērāt Cicerōnī æquālis: hic impērātōr clārūs; illē præstans ērāt ōrātōr; Cæsar was contemporary with Cicero: the former was a famous general; the latter, a distinguished orator.*

Remark 2.—*Hic* and *illē* are sometimes used like *is*, as substantive personals (he, him, etc.), though generally more emphatic.

Remark 3.—*Hic* often refers to what follows: as, *Gallōrūm oppugnatio est hæc*, the mode of attack among the Gauls is as follows. *Illē* is sometimes used in the same way.

Remark 4.—*Istē* often expresses contempt: as, *istē hōmo*, that fellow.

Remark 5.—*Illē* often points out something well known or distinguished: as, *illē Pittācūs*, the well-known Pittacus.

Remark 6.—The emphatic suffix *cē* is added to some of the cases of *hic*: as, *hūjuscē, hoscē*.

EXERCISE XXXVIII.

Translate into English and analyze.

Hīc servūs dōmīnūm amat. Hæc epistolā sorōrēm meām delectābit. Hęc bellūm civīlē grāvissimūm et atrōcissimūm est. Hīc puēr bōnūs, illē est imprōbūs. Hīc milēs omniūm est fortissimūs. Istē tuūs equūs pulchrūm animāl est. Istā tuā ōrātiō rempublicām servāvit. Istē-nē nōs pūniēt? Illē bōs magnā cornuā hābēt. Illōs milītēs in castrā dūcēmūs. Equītēs omnēs ad illūd oppidūm festīnant. Hīc pastōr bōnūs grēgēm servābit.

Translate into English.

This good master gives food to all his slaves. That dove of yours will fly through the thick woods. Those dogs of yours will frighten all the boys in the village. That fierce lion has torn in pieces many sheep and cows. This excellent orator will delight the common people with his speech.

That maid-servant of yours will prepare medicine for the queen and her (the queen's) daughters. Will you give that beautiful horse to my father? Has the king punished all the thieves and robbers in this city? These horsemen will urge on their horses with spurs.

INTENSIVE PRONOUN.

§ 85. The pronoun IPSE, IPSA, IPSUM, *himself, herself, itself*, is called *intensive*, because it makes the word to which it is added more emphatic: as, *rēgēm ipsūm vīdī, I have seen the king himself*; *in ipsīs flūmīnīs rīpīs, on the very banks of the river*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>ip'-sě,</i>	<i>ip'-sǎ,</i>	<i>ip'-sūm,</i>
Gen.	<i>ip-sǐ'-us,</i>	<i>ip-sǐ'-us,</i>	<i>ip-sǐ'-us,</i>
Dat.	<i>ip'-sī,</i>	<i>ip'-sī,</i>	<i>ip'-sī,</i>
Acc.	<i>ip'-sūm,</i>	<i>ip'-sām,</i>	<i>ip'-sūm,</i>
Voc.	<i>ip'-sě,</i>	<i>ip'-sǎ,</i>	<i>ip'-sūm,</i>
Abl.	<i>ip'-sō;</i>	<i>ip'-sā;</i>	<i>ip'-sō;</i>

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	<i>ip'-sī,</i>	<i>ip'-sǣ,</i>	<i>ip'-sǎ,</i>
Gen.	<i>ip-sō'-rūm,</i>	<i>ip-sā'-rūm,</i>	<i>ip-sō'-rūm,</i>
Dat.	<i>ip'-sīs,</i>	<i>ip'-sīs,</i>	<i>ip'-sīs,</i>
Acc.	<i>ip'-sōs,</i>	<i>ip'-sās,</i>	<i>ip'-sǎ,</i>
Voc.	<i>ip'-sī,</i>	<i>ip'-sǣ,</i>	<i>ip'-sǎ,</i>
Abl.	<i>ip'-sīs.</i>	<i>ip'-sīs.</i>	<i>ip'-sīs.</i>

Remark 1.—*Ipsě*, when used reflexively, agrees with the subject if that is to be made especially prominent: as, *ēgo mē ipsē laudo* (literally), I myself praise me (*i.e.* I do the praising *myself*; others do not do it). On the other hand, *ipsě* agrees with

the object if that is to be made especially prominent: as, *mē ipsūm laudo*, I praise *myself*' (i.e. I do not praise other people).

Remark 2.—The oblique cases of *ipsē* are used reflexively for the forms of *suī* and *suūs*, to avoid ambiguity, or for the sake of emphasis: as, *quī in ipsōrūm linguā Celtæ appellantūr*, who in their own language are called Celts.

EXERCISE XXXIX.

§ 86. 1. *Rule of Syntax.*—The infinitive is often used as a neuter noun in the nominative or accusative, and may be the subject of a verb: as, *grātū est tecū ambulārē*, it is pleasant to walk with you. (*Subject Infinitive.*)

2. *Rule of Syntax.*—The infinitive is used as a complement (filling up) with certain verbs and adjectives expressing an incomplete idea: as, *pārāt bellū gērērē*, he is preparing to wage war. (*Complementary Infinitive.*)

Vocabulary.

dē (prep. with abl.), <i>about, concerning.</i>	vinculūm, -ī, <i>chain.</i>
dē sē ipsō, <i>about one's self, about himself.</i>	ferreūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>of iron, iron.</i>
Alexandēr, -drī, <i>Alexander.</i>	irācundiā, -æ, <i>hasty temper.</i>
Mācēdōniā, -æ, <i>Macedonia.</i>	orbīs, -īs, (§ 33), <i>circle.</i>
intēr (prep. with acc.), <i>between, among.</i>	orbīs terrārūm, <i>the world (the circle of the countries).</i>
intēr sē, <i>among themselves, with one another.</i>	sempēr (adv.), <i>always.</i>
	fācīnūs, -ōr-īs, <i>deed, crime.</i>
	suā (§ 60, Rem.), <i>his (own) things, his (own) property.</i>
prædic-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to tell, to boast.</i>	
instru-ō, -ērē, instrux-ī, instruct-ūm, <i>to draw up.</i>	
constitu-ō, -ērē, constitu-ī, constitūt-ūm, <i>to determine.</i>	
ascend-ō, -ērē, ascend-ī, ascens-ūm, <i>to ascend.</i>	
vinc-iō, -irē, vinx-ī, vinct-ūm, <i>to bind.</i>	
vinc-ō, -ērē, vic-ī, vict-ūm, <i>to conquer.</i>	

Translate into English and analyze.

Egō ipsē tōtām noctēm vīgīlāvī. Rex ipsē exercītūm triplīcī āciē instruxērāt. Nonnē rēgīnā ipsā īn hāc dōmō dormīvīt? Dēcīmā ipsā lēgiō magnītūdīnēm pēricūlī tīmēbāt. Tū-nē tē ipsē laudābīs? Mē ipsē nōn laudābō. Poētā sē ipsē laudābāt. Turpē est dē sē ipsō prædicārē. Pātēr ipsē ēt filiūs suūs dē āgrī fīnībūs contendunt. Alexandēr magnūs, rex Măcēdōniā, orbēm terrārūm vincērē pārāvērāt. Alexandēr sē ipsūm nōn rexīt. Impērātōr magnūs suām īrăcundiām nōn rēgīt. Diffīcillīmūm (§ 67, *Rem.* 2) est montēm altūm ascendērē. Făcīnūs (§ 67, 3) est cīvēm Rōmānūm vincīrē. Săpiens sempēr sē ipsē rēgīt. Helvētīi suā omniā sēcūm portābant.

Translate into Latin.

Our king has determined to conquer the whole world. Your king is a boy. The common people have bound our king with chains. These soldiers are always boasting about themselves. It is not very difficult to ascend a hill. Nothing is more difficult than to rule a hasty temper. Have you read the works of Cicero, the distinguished orator? Will a father and a son contend with one another about an eagle's wing? No. Am I myself praising myself? Has not this fellow (§ 84, *Rem.* 4) always praised himself? It is a great crime to kill (one's) father. The wicked judge is preparing to bind Roman citizens. The common people will bind the judge himself. The greatness of this work will hinder Cæsar himself. The general has determined to put three legions into winter quarters.

RELATIVE PRONOUNS.

§ 87. 1. The pronoun *qui*, *quæ*, *quod* (*who*, *which*) is called *relative*, because it refers to some word or phrase going before, called the *antecedent*.

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	qui,	quæ,	quod,
Gen.	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,
Dat.	cui,	cui,	cui,
Acc.	quem,	quām,	quod,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	quō ;	quā ;	quō ;

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	qui,	quæ,	quæ,
Gen.	quō'-rūm,	quā'-rūm,	quō'-rūm,
Dat.	qui'-būs,	qui'-būs,	qui'-būs,
Acc.	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	qui'-būs.	qui'-būs.	qui'-būs.

2. The other relatives are *quōt*, *quālīs*, *quantūs*, *quōtūs*, and their compounds; with *quicumquē* or *quicunquē*, and *quisquīs*, compounds of *qui*.

3. The suffix *cunquē* (derived from *quisquē*) means *ever* or *soever*. *Quicumquē*, *whoever*, *whosoever*, *whatsoever*, is declined like *qui*.

quicumquē,	quæcunquē,	quodcunquē,
cūjuscunquē,	cūjuscunquē,	cūjuscunquē,
cūcunquē,	cūcunquē,	cūcunquē, etc.

4. *Quisquīs*, *whoever*, is thus declined :—

<i>Singular.</i>		
Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom. <i>quis'</i> - <i>quīs</i> ,	<i>quis'</i> - <i>quīs</i> ,	<i>quid'</i> - <i>quīd</i> or <i>quic'</i> - <i>quīd</i> ,
Acc. <i>quem'</i> - <i>quēm</i> ,	—————	<i>quid'</i> - <i>quīd</i> or <i>quic'</i> - <i>quīd</i> ,
Abl. <i>quō'</i> - <i>quō</i> ,	<i>quā'</i> - <i>quā</i> ,	<i>quō'</i> - <i>quō</i> .

Plural.

Masc.
Nom. <i>quī'</i> - <i>quī</i> ,
Dat. <i>quī-būs'</i> - <i>quī-būs</i> .

Remark 1.—The demonstratives, when used as pronouns at all (*i.e.* when they stand for a noun), have antecedents, with which they agree in gender and number: as, *Cicēro multōs librōs scripsit*; *eōs* (*i.e.* *librōs*) *libentēr lēgo*. *Puellā est pulcherrimā*; *eām* (*i.e.* *puellām*) *in hortō vidī*.

Remark 2.—*Quī* is sometimes used for the ablative singular of all genders, and rarely for the ablative plural.

Remark 3.—*Quēis* (monosyllable) and *quīs* are sometimes used for *quībūs*.

EXERCISE XL.

1. Propositions are either principal or dependent. A principal proposition makes complete sense when standing alone; a dependent proposition does not make complete sense alone, but must be connected with another proposition.

2. A proposition introduced by a relative pronoun is called a *dependent relative* proposition.

3. Every relative proposition is an adjective, limiting the antecedent. Thus, "The boy *who studies*" is equivalent to "The *studious* boy."

4. *Rule of Syntax.*—The relative pronoun agrees with the antecedent in gender, number, and person; but the case depends upon the construction of the relative proposition: as, *ēgo quī scribo*, *I who write*; *vōs quī scribitis*, *you who write*; *puellā quā vidī*, *the girl whom I saw*.

(Here *quām* is singular, feminine, third person, because *puellā* is the same; but accusative, because it is the object of the transitive verb *vīdī*.)

Remark 1.—The relative takes the case which the antecedent would have in the same circumstances, and frequently agrees with the antecedent repeated: as, *puellā quam puellām vīdī*, the girl which girl I saw.

5. *Rule of Position.*—The preposition *cūm* is annexed to the ablative plural of the relative *quī*, and sometimes also to the ablative singular: as, *quībuscūm*.

6. *Rule of Position.*—The relative generally stands at the beginning of the relative sentence, after the antecedent, and as near the latter as possible; but for the sake of emphasis the relative sentence is often placed first.

7. In general expressions the forms of *is* are often used merely as the antecedent of a relative clause: as, *Is stultus est quī dē sē ipsō prædicāt*, he is foolish who boasts of himself. *Hic* is often used in the same way. *Is* is emphatic when it stands at the beginning of the principal sentence.

8. When the antecedent is *indefinite*, it is often omitted altogether: as, *quī tertiām partēm incolunt Gallī appellantūr*, (those) who inhabit the third part are called Gauls. (Compare the English, “*Who steals my purse steals trash*,” *i.e.* any one who, etc.)

9. As an adjective, when the noun it limits is omitted, becomes a noun (§ 60, *Rem.*), so an adjective proposition becomes a noun when the antecedent is omitted. *Quī — incolunt*, above, is the subject of *appellantūr*.

Vocabulary.

incol-ō, -ērē, *incolu*-ī, *incult*-ūm, to inhabit.

dīvid-ō, -ērē, *dīvīs*-ī, *dīvīs*-ūm, to separate, divide.

continētēr (adv.), continually.

trans (prep. with acc.), across, over, beyond.

Translate into English and analyze.

Omnīs Galliæ sunt partēs trēs, quārū ūnā incōlunt Belgæ. Trans Rhēnū incōlunt Germānī, quībuscū Belgæ continentēr bellū gērunt. Flūmē Rhēnūs, quī āgrū Helvētiū ā Germānīs dividit, lātissimū est atquē altissimū. Jūrā, quī ūnā ex partē, Helvētiōs continēt, mons est altissimū. Cæsār lēgiōnēs duās, quæ in Galliā hiēmābant, ex hibernis ēduxit. Puellæ pulchræ, quās in hortō vidistī, filiæ sunt Cicerōnis. Rēcentēs imbrēs, quī flūminā omniā auxērunt, ōpūs nostrū tardābunt. Puēr cui māgistēr librū dēdit, optimū est puērōrū. Agrīcōlā cūjūs cānis ancillā terruit, in urbē vēnit. Helvētī eōs quī lēgēs reipublicæ violant ignī crēmant. Quī suā omniā sēcūm portāt nōn sapiens est. Quī sēsē nōn rēgit, est-nē is vīr magnū?

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar will hasten into the province with three legions which he has levied in Gaul. The centurion has divided his field into three parts, one of which he will give to his son. Have you showed to your father the letter which the queen wrote with her own hand? The general had placed in winter quarters the legions which he had levied in the province. The great river which we saw is the Rhine. Will not the general slay the robber who lives in the forest? Is not he (*is*) a fool who holds (*tēnērē*) a fierce bull by the horns? The fields through which we were walking are very fertile. (He) who boasts about himself is a fool. (He) who conquers himself is a brave man.

INTERROGATIVES.

§ 88. 1. The interrogatives are used in asking questions. Though always called *pronouns*, they are

not properly such, as they do not stand for nouns. They are—

Quīs? } Who? Which? What?
 Quī? }

Quisnām? } (Stronger than *quīs* and *quī*.)

Quīnām? } Who then? Which then? What then? Who pray? etc.

Utēr? Which of the two? (§ 56.)

Quōt? How many? (Indeclinable.)

Quōtūs, -ā, -ūm? What? (in number: as, *Quōtā hōrā*? What o'clock?

Quālīs, -ē? Of what kind?

Quantūs, -ā, -ūm? How great? How large?

Quantūlūs, -ā, -ūm? How small? (Diminutive.)

Cūjūs? Whose?

Cūjās (*cūjātīs*?) Of what country?

Remark 1.—*Quī* and *quīnām* are declined like the relative *quī*. They are almost always adjectives, but sometimes substantives.

Remark 2.—*Quīs* and *quisnām* are usually substantives, but sometimes adjectives. *Quīd* is always a substantive.

2. *Quīs* is thus declined:—

Singular.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quīs,	quæ,	quīd,
Gen.	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,
Dat.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī,
Acc.	quēm,	quām,	quīd,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	quō;	quā;	quō;

Plural.

	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī,	quæ,	quæ,
Gen.	quō'-rūm,	quā'-rūm,	quō'-rūm,
Dat.	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,
Acc.	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
Voc.	—	—	—
Abl.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.

3. The genitive *cūjūs, whose?* is sometimes used as an adjective, agreeing with the noun which it limits in gender, number, and case: as, *cūjūm pēcūs est hōc? whose flock is this?* It is thus declined:—

	<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Plural.</i>
	<i>Masc.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>	<i>Neut.</i>	<i>Fem.</i>
Nom.	<i>cū'-jūs,</i>	<i>cū'-jā,</i>	<i>cū'-jūm,</i>	<i>cū'-jæ,</i>
Acc.	<i>cū'-jūm,</i>	<i>cū'-jām,</i>	————	<i>cū'-jās.</i>
Abl.	————	<i>cū'-jā.</i>	————	

EXERCISE XLI.

Translate into English and analyze.

Quis tēcūm in hortō ambulābāt? Quæ rēgiō est Galliā (§ 70, 2) fērāciōr? Quī consūl est Cīcērōnē prūdentiōr? Quēm hōmīnē vidistī quām Balbūm (§ 70, 1) turpiōrē? Quā in terrā est poētā Virgiliō pręstantiōr? Cūjā ancillā est hęc? Rēgīnæ. Quī puēr calcēm Dāvī lāpidē vulnērāvīt? Quid argentī (§ 73) āpūd tē hābēs? Quīnām rex tībī aurūm dābīt, Dāvē? Quisnām tē vocāvīt, Tullī? (§ 24, *Rem.* 2.) Quī pastōr prūdēns ōvēs hiēmē tondēbīt? Cūjūs cānis bōvēm meūm mōmordīt? Quā in civitātē impērātōr lēgiōnēs in hībernīs collōcābīt? Utēr puērōrūm Balbūm lāpidē vulnērāvīt?

Translate into Latin.

Who, pray, will show (to) us the way through the king's forest? What enemy will sustain the attack of our warlike soldiers? What is baser than a lie? Who gave (to) you that (§ 83, 2) beautiful horse of yours? What citizens were with (āpūd) Cicero? Who, pray, has called together all these merchants? Which of you slept in the little bedchamber? What general will leave his army in

the enemy's country (*fīnīs*)? How great a war will the king wage with the nearest states? How many legions are (there) in the province?

INDEFINITES.

§ 89. 1. The indefinites are adjective words, frequently used as nouns (§ 60, *Rem.*), but not properly pronouns, as they do not stand for nouns. They are—

Aliquīs (as a noun), *some one* (I do not know who); *any one*; neuter, *something, any thing*.

(as an adjective), *some* (I do not know what); *any*:—stronger than the simple *quīs*.

Quidā (as a noun), *some one, a certain one* (implying that I know who, though I may not wish to say); plural, *some*; neuter, *something*.

(as an adjective), *a certain, some*.

Quispiā (nearly equivalent to *aliquīs*), *some one, any one, some, any*.

Quīvis, } (as a noun), *any one* (where all are included), *any one you*
Quilibēt } *please*; neuter, *any thing you please*.

(as an adjective), *any, any you please*.

Quisquā, *any one* (where all are excluded); neuter, *any thing*. Almost always a substantive, and used in negative sentences, or sentences implying a negative. *Any* (where all are excluded) is expressed adjectivally by *ullūs*.

Quis, quī (as an adjective), *any, some*; (as a noun), *any one, some one*; neuter, *any thing, something*:—used especially after relatives, and *sī, nē*, and the interrogative prefixes *ec-* and *num-*, forming *ecquis* and *numquis*. *Aliquīs* after *ne, sī*, or a relative, is more emphatic than *quīs*.

Quisque (as an adjective), *each*; (noun), *each one, every one*.

Unusquisque (stronger than *quisque*), *each, each one, every one*.

Aliquōt (indeclinable), *some, a considerable number*.

Aliquantūs, -ā, -ūm, *somewhat great, considerable*.

2. All these (except *quisquā*, *aliquōt*, and *aliquantūs*) have *quōd* and *quid* in the neuter: the *quod* forms are adjectives; the *quid* forms, nouns.

3. The indefinite *quīs* is thus declined:—

<i>Singular.</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quīs or quī,	quā or quæ,	quīd or quōd,
Gen.	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,	cū'-jūs,
Dat.	cuī,	cuī,	cuī,
Acc.	quēm,	quām,	quīd or quōd,
Voc.	_____	_____	_____
Abl.	quō;	quā;	quō;

<i>Plural.</i>			
	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	quī,	quæ,	quæ,
Gen.	quō'-rūm,	quā'-rūm,	quō'-rūm,
Dat.	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,	quī'-būs,
Acc.	quōs,	quās,	quæ,
Voc.	_____	_____	_____
Abl.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.	quī'-būs.

4. *Aliquīs* is declined in the same way, except that it has no *quæ* in the nominative singular feminine:—

āliquīs, āliquā, āliquīd or āliquōd;
ālicūjūs, etc.

The nominative form *āliquī* is rarely used.

5. *Quīlibēt*, *quīvīs*, and *quīdām* are declined like the relative *quī*, with the addition of the *quid* form in the neuter:—

quīlibēt, quælibēt, quodlibēt or quidlibēt;
cūjuslibēt, etc.

In the forms of *quīdām*, *m* passes into *n* before *d*: as, *quendām*, *quandām*, *quorundām*.

6. *Quisquē*, *quispiām*, and *quisquām* are declined like the interrogative *quīs*, the first two having the *quod* form:—

quisquē, quæquē, quodquē *or* quidquē;
cūjusquē, etc.

quispiām, quæpiām, quodpiām, quidpiām, *and*
cūjuspiām, etc. [quippiām.

Quisquām, being almost invariably a substantive, wants the feminine, as the masculine includes the feminine; but *quamquām* is found in Plautus:—

quisquām, quidquām *or* quicquām,
cūjusquām, etc.

7. *Unusquisquē* is used only in the singular, and both *ūnūs* and *quisquē* are declined:—

ūnusquisquē, ūnāquæquē, ūnumquodquē *or* -quidquē,
ūnūscūjusquē, etc.

EXERCISE XLII.

§ 90. 1. After *quīdām*, *ex* with ablative is generally used instead of a partitive genitive: as, *quīdām ex milītībūs*, *a certain one of the soldiers*.

Vocabulary.

In urbem pervēnīrē, to reach the city.	Cātīlinā, -æ, Catiline (a Roman nobleman).
nēquē (conj.), neither, nor.	ālīquīd nōvī (gen. sing. neut. of nōvūs), some news (§ 73).
occāsūs, -ūs, setting.	hērēdītās, -tāt-īs, an inheritance.
sōl, sōl-īs, sun.	pēcūniā, -æ, money.
sōlīs occāsū (§ 66, 1), at sunset.	

mitt-ō, -ērē, mīs-ī, miss-ūm, to send.

per-vēn-iō, -īrē, pervēn-ī, pervent-ūm, to come through, arrive, come in.

dēfend-ō, -ērē, dēfend-ī, dēfens-ūm, to defend.

discēd-ō, -ērē, discess-ī, discess-ūm, to depart.

occīd-ō, -ērē, occīd-ī, occīs-ūm, to kill, cut down.

rēlinquō, rēlinquērē, rēliquī, rēlictūm, to leave.

Translate into English and analyze.

Cicērō quendā Gallū ad Cēsārē mīsīt. Alīquīs sōlis occāsū in dōmū tuā vēnit. Quidā ex milītībūs sē suāquē (§ 60, *Rem.*) āb hostībūs dēfendēbant. Mātēr bēnignā ūnīcuiquē libērōrū (§ 58, 3) suōrū dāt cībū. Nostri copiās hostiūm fūgāvērē, nēquē quisquām omniū (§ 58, 3) in oppidūm pervēnit. Lūciūs in urbē ālīquid nōvī audiēt. Rex filiābūs suis ālīquām partē regnī dābit. Milītēs Cātīlīnæ exercitū reipublicæ nōn tīmērunt, nēquē quisquām ex castrīs discessīt. Nonnē quisquē sēsē dēfendīt? Quodvis ānīmāl cōr hābēt. Hērēditās est pēcūniā, quæ mortē (§ 66, 1) ālīcūjūs ad quēmpiām pervēnit jūrē.

Translate into Latin.

The faithful slaves will watch all night, nor will any one leave his place. Some one has wounded one of our horsemen with a javelin. Cæsar sent a certain one of the Gallic (*Gallus*) horsemen to Cicero's camp. The cruel chiefs will kill some of the prisoners at sunset. The general will hear some news at sunset. The master gave (to) each of the boys a beautiful book. Not every one (*any one you please*) will see our king.

CORRELATIVES.

§ 91. 1. Among the pronouns are usually classed the following adjectives, called *correlative*, because they answer to each other. Each set is formed on a single root, *t-* being the demonstrative prefix, *qu-* the interrogative and relative, and *āl-* the indefinite. Thus, *t-antūs*, *qu-antūs*, *āl-quantūs*.

DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	COMPOUND REL.	INTERROGATIVE.	INDEFINITE.
<p>tālīs, -ē, <i>such.</i></p>	<p>quālīs, -ē, <i>as.</i></p>	<p>{ quālīs-quālīs, quālisceunquē, of whatever kind.</p>	<p>quālīs, -ē? of what kind?</p>	<p>{ quālīslibēt, of whatever kind you please.</p>
<p>tantūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>so great.</i> tantusdēm, <i>just so great.</i></p>	<p>quantūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>as.</i></p>	<p>{ quantus-quantūs, quantusceunquē, however great.</p>	<p>quantūs, -ā, -ūm? how great?</p>	<p>{ āliquantūs, -ā, -ūm, some what great. quantuslibēt, as great as you please.</p>
<p>tōt, <i>so many.</i> tōtidēm, <i>just so</i> <i>many.</i></p>	<p>quōt, <i>as.</i></p>	<p>{ quotquot, quotceunquē, however many.</p>	<p>quōt, <i>how many?</i></p>	<p>{ āliquōt, <i>some.</i> quōtlibēt, as many as you please.</p>
<p>tōtūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>that</i> (of number or order). Very rare.</p>	<p>quōtūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>which</i> (of num- ber or order).</p>	<p>quōtusceunquē, <i>whatever</i> (in num- ber or order).</p>	<p>quōtūs, -ā, -ūm? <i>what?</i> (in num- ber or order).</p>	
<p>tantūlūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>so small.</i></p>	<p>quantūlūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>as small.</i></p>	<p>quantulusceunquē, <i>however small.</i></p>	<p>quantūlūs, -ā, -ūm? <i>how small?</i></p>	<p>āliquantūlūs, <i>little.</i></p>

EXERCISE XLII.

§ 92. *Vocabulary.*

vōluptās, vōluptāt-īs, *pleasure.*

præmiūm, -ī, *reward.*

tīmōr, -ōr-īs, *fear, panic.*

ālīquantūm āgrī, *a considerable piece of ground.*

sententiā, -æ, *opinion.*

ōpērā, -æ, *labor, pains.*

tantā ōpērā, *so great labor.*

tantūm ōpēræ, *so much (of) labor.* *Tantūs*, meaning *so great*, agrees with the noun; meaning *so much*, it is neuter, and followed by the partitive genitive. *Quantūs* is used in the same way.

Quālīs est dōmīnūs, tālīs est servūs, *as is the master, so is the slave.* Or, *est* being omitted,

Quālīs dōmīnūs, tālīs servūs, *the slave is such as the master is.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Quantūm vōluptātīs virtūs præbēt? Tantūs tīmōr centūrionēs occūpāvit. Quōt hōmīnēs, tōt sententiæ. Quantūs est āgrīcōlæ taūrūs? Quantā sunt hūjūs bōvis cornuā? Quōt lēgiōnēs in castrīs sunt? Quōt hōmīnēs, tōtīdēm ānimī. Quālīs est impērātōr, tālēs sunt mīlītēs. Quantā præmiā virtūs hābēt? Quantūm ōpēræ poētæ carminībūs suīs dant! Rex huic servō ālīquantūm aurī dēdit.

VERBS.

§ 93. 1. A verb is a word which declares or affirms something.

2. That of which the declaration is made is called the *subject*.

3. Verbs have—

(a.) *Moods*, or different forms which express different kinds of affirmation: as, *āmo*, I love; *āmārēm*, I might love.

(b.) *Tenses*, or different forms to show the *time* when the thing declared takes place, and whether the action is complete or incomplete: as, *āmo*, I love, I *am* loving; *āmābām*, I *was* loving; *āmāvī*, I have loved; *āmāvērām*, I had loved.

(c.) *Voices*, or different forms which show whether the subject *acts* (as, John *strikes*), or is *acted upon* (as, John *is struck*).

(d.) *Persons* and *Numbers*, or different forms which correspond with the person and number of the subject.

4. These various forms are distinguished from one another by certain endings; and the adding of these endings to the stem is called CONJUGATION.

5. In respect to meaning, verbs are either *transitive* or *intransitive*.

6. A transitive verb is one which requires an object to complete the sense: as, *poētā rēgīnām laudāt*, the poet praises the queen.

7. An intransitive verb is one which does not require

an object to complete the sense: as, *ăquîlă vîlăt*, the eagle flies.

8. In respect to form, verbs are either *regular* or *irregular*. Irregular verbs vary, in some of their parts, from the usual rule of formation.

MOODS.

§ 94. 1. There are three moods,—the *indicative*, the *subjunctive*, and the *imperative*.

2. The indicative mood declares a thing as a *fact*, or asks a question: as, *ămăt*, he loves; *ămat-ně?* does he love?

3. The subjunctive mood represents a thing not as a *fact*, but as *simply conceived in the mind*: as, *ămărēm*, I would love.

4. The imperative mood is used in *commanding*, *exhorting*, or *entreating*: as, *hîc vĕnî*, come hither.

5. The indicative, subjunctive, and imperative are called by grammarians the *finite* verb, because they limit the action to some particular subject. The *infinitive*, *participles*, *gerund*, and *supine* are called the *indefinite* verb, because they express action indefinitely, without reference to any subject.

TENSES.

§ 95. There are three divisions of time,—the *present*, the *past*, and the *future*. In each division there are two tenses: one expressing *incomplete* action; the other, *completed* action. There are, therefore, six tenses: three for incomplete action, viz.: the *present*, the *imperfect*, and the *future*; and three for completed action, viz.: the *present-perfect*, the *past-perfect*, and the *future-perfect*.

<i>Time.</i>	<i>Incomplete Action.</i>		<i>Name.</i>
<i>Pres. Time.</i>	ămǎ,	<i>I am loving.</i>	<i>Present.</i>
<i>Past Time.</i>	ămābăm,	<i>I was loving.</i>	<i>Imperfect.</i>
<i>Future Time.</i>	ămābǎ,	<i>I shall love.</i>	<i>Future.</i>

<i>Time.</i>	<i>Completed Action.</i>		<i>Name.</i>
<i>Pres. Time.</i>	ămāvī,	<i>I have loved.</i>	<i>Pres. Perf.</i>
<i>Past Time.</i>	ămāvērăm,	<i>I had loved.</i>	<i>Past Perf.</i>
<i>Future Time.</i>	ămāvērǎ,	<i>I shall have loved.</i>	<i>Fut. Perf.</i>

I. The present tense expresses *incomplete* action in *present* time: as, *ămo*, I love, I am loving.

Remark 1.—This tense also expresses an existing custom or general truth: as, *Rōmānī signūm tūbā dant*, the Romans give the signal with a trumpet.

Remark 2.—The present tense is often used for a past to give greater animation to the narrative. This is called the *historical present*.

Remark 3.—This tense may also express what has existed and still exists: as, *tōt annōs bellă gěro*, for so many years I have waged war, and am still waging it; or, for so many years I have been waging war.

II. The imperfect tense expresses *incomplete* action in *past* time: as, *ămābăm*, I was loving.

Remark 4.—This tense expresses—

(a.) A customary past action: as, *ămābăm*, I used to love.

(b.) What had existed and was still existing in past time: as, *tōt annōs bellă gěrēbăm*, for so many years I had been carrying on war.

(c.) The *beginning* or *attempting* of a thing in past time.

(d.) In letters, this tense is sometimes used (in reference to their being read) for a present.

III. The future tense expresses *incomplete* action in *future* time: as, *ămābo*, I shall love.

IV. The present-perfect tense expresses *completed* action in *present* time : as, *āmāvī*, I have loved.

The same form of the verb is used to express an action *indefinitely* as past, without reference to its continuance or completion. This is called the *aorist-perfect*, or *indefinite-perfect* : as, *coenāvī*, I supped (at some indefinite past time).

V. The past-perfect tense expresses *completed* action in *past* time : as, *āmāvērām*, I had loved.

VI. The future-perfect tense expresses *completed* action in *future* time : as, *āmāvēro*, I shall have loved.

VOICES.

§ 96. 1. There are two voices, the *active* and the *passive*.

2. The active voice represents the subject as acting : as, *āmo*, I love.

3. The passive voice represents the subject as *acted upon* : as, *āmōr*, I am loved.

Remark 1.—The same idea may be expressed both in the active and the passive form : as, *puēr librūm lēgit*, the boy reads the book ; or, *libēr ā puērō lēgītūr*, the book is read by the boy. The object in the active becomes the subject in the passive, and the subject in the active is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *āb*.

Remark 2.—As intransitive verbs have no object in the active, they have no personal passive form. (See § 114, 4.)

Remark 3.—The passive voice frequently represents the agent as acting upon himself : as, *fērōr*, I carry myself, I go. This use of the passive is common with the poets.

PERSONS AND NUMBERS.

§ 97. Verbs have three persons, the first, the second, and the third ; and two numbers, the singular and the

plural. These either correspond to, or indicate, the person and number of the subject.

THE INDEFINITE VERB.

§ 98. 1. The *infinitive*, *participles*, *gerund*, and *supine* are called the *indefinite verb*, because they express action *indefinitely*, without reference to any subject. The participle is the *adjective-verb*; the infinitive, gerund, and supine, the *noun-verb*.

2. The *infinitive* expresses the action of the verb simply, without limiting it to any subject. It is an abstract noun in the nominative and accusative, the simple name of the action.

NOTE.—The infinitive has no idea of time connected with it, but represents the action as *incomplete* or *completed* at the time of the leading verb.

<i>Dīcīt mē scrībērē,</i>	He represents me to be writing; <i>i.e.</i> He says that I am writing.
---------------------------	---

<i>Dixīt mē scrībērē,</i>	He represented me to be writing; <i>i.e.</i> He said that I was writing.
---------------------------	---

<i>Dīcīt mē scrīpsissē,</i>	He represents me to have written; <i>i.e.</i> He says that I have written.
-----------------------------	---

<i>Dixīt mē scrīpsissē,</i>	He represented me to have written; <i>i.e.</i> He said that I had written.
-----------------------------	---

The infinitive present and perfect of *essē*, with the future active participle, form what grammarians call the *future* and *future-perfect* infinitive; but the futurity is expressed by the participle, not by the infinitive.

<i>Dīcīt mē essē scriptūrū,</i>	He represents me to be about to write; <i>i.e.</i> He says that I am about to write; <i>i.e.</i> He says that I will write.
---------------------------------	---

3. Transitive verbs have two participles in the active, viz.: the *present* and the *future*: as, *āmans*, loving, *āmātūrūs*, about to love; and two in the passive, viz.: the *perfect* and the *future*: as, *āmātūs*, loved, having been

loved; *āmandūs*, to be loved. The future passive participle is also called the *gerundive*.

4. The *gerund* is a verbal noun of the second declension, in the genitive, dative, accusative, and ablative, (the nominative being supplied by the infinitive): as, *mōdūs ōpĕrandī*, the manner of working.

5. The *supine* is a verbal noun of the fourth declension, in the accusative and ablative: as, *āmātūm*, to love; *āmātū*, to be loved, or to love.

CONJUGATION.

§ 99. 1. There are four conjugations, distinguished from each other by the ending of the infinitive-present active.

The infinitive-present active of the 1st conj. ends in *ā'-rĕ*.

"	"	"	"	"	2d	"	"	<i>ē'-rĕ</i> .
"	"	"	"	"	3d	"	"	<i>ĕ-rĕ</i> .
"	"	"	"	"	4th	"	"	<i>ī'-rĕ</i> .

EXCEPTION.—*Dāre*, to give, has *āre* (*ā* short).

2. Every verb-form consists of two parts, the *stem* and the *ending*.


3. The *present-stem*, or *general-stem*, is found in every part of the verb, and may always be obtained by striking off the ending of the infinitive-present active or passive.

4. Besides this general stem, there is also a *perfect-stem*, on which the perfect tenses in the active voice are formed; and a *supine-stem*, on which the supines, the future active participle, and the perfect passive participle, are formed.

5. The perfect-stem is formed, for the most part—

In the first conjugation, by adding *-āv* to the present-stem.


"	second	"	"	<i>-ū</i>	"	"
"	third	"	"	<i>-s</i>	"	"
"	fourth	"	"	<i>-īv</i>	"	"

 For other modes of formation, see Appendix VII.

6. The supine-stem is generally formed—

In the first conjugation, by adding *-āt* to the present-stem.

"	second	"	"	<i>-īt</i>	"	"
"	third	"	"	<i>-t</i>	"	"
"	fourth	"	"	<i>-īt</i>	"	"

 For other modes of formation, see Appendix VII.

§ 100. ESSĚ, *to be*.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	<i>Indic. Perf.</i>	<i>Fut. Part.</i>
sŭm,	es'-sě,	fŭ'-ī,	fŭ-tŭ'-rŭs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Person.</i>	1. sŭm, <i>I am,</i>	sŭ'-mŭs, <i>we are,</i>
	2. ěs, <i>thou art,</i>	es'-tĭs, <i>ye are,</i>
	3. est, <i>he is;</i>	sunt, <i>they are.</i>

Imperfect.

1. ě'-rām, <i>I was,</i>	ě'-rā'-mŭs, <i>we were,</i>
2. ě'-rās, <i>thou wast,</i>	ě'-rā'-tĭs, <i>ye were,</i>
3. ě'-rāt, <i>he was;</i>	ě'-rant, <i>they were.</i>

Future, *shall or will*.

1. ě'-rō, <i>I shall be,</i>	ěr'-ĭ-mŭs, <i>we shall be,</i>
2. ě'-rĭs, <i>thou wilt be,</i>	ěr'-ĭ-tĭs, <i>ye will be,</i>
3. ě'-rĭt, <i>he will be;</i>	ěr'-runt, <i>they will be.</i>

Present-Perfect, *have been*; Aorist-Perfect, *was*.

Singular.

Plural.

1. *fu'-ī, I have been, or was,* *fu'-ŷ-mūs, we have been, or were,*
2. *fu-is'-tī, thou hast been, or wast,* *fu-is'-tīs, ye have been, or were,*
3. *fu'-īt, he has been, or was;* *fu-ē'-runt or -ē'-rě, they have been, or were.*

Past-Perfect.

1. *fu'-ě-rām, I had been,* *fu-ě-rā'-mūs, we had been,*
2. *fu'-ě-rās, thou hadst been,* *fu-ě-rā'-tīs, ye had been,*
3. *fu'-ě-rāt, he had been;* *fu'-ě-rant, they had been.*

Future-Perfect, *shall or will have*.

1. *fu'-ě-rō, I shall have been,* *fu-ēr'-ī-mūs, we shall have been,*
2. *fu'-ě-rīs, thou wilt have been,* *fu-ēr'-ī-tīs, ye will have been,*
3. *fu'-ě-rīt, he will have been;* *fu'-ě-rint, they will have been.*

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present, *may*.

1. *sīm, I may be,* *sī'-mūs, we may be,*
2. *sīs, thou mayst be,* *sī'-tīs, ye may be,*
3. *sīt, he may be;* *sint, they may be.*

Imperfect, *might, would, or should*.

1. *es'-sēm, I would be,* *es-sē'-mūs, we would be,*
2. *es'-sēs, thou wouldst be,* *es-sē'-tīs, ye would be,*
3. *es'-sēt, he would be;* *es'-sent, they would be.*

Perfect.

Singular.

Plural.

1. *fu'-ě-rīm, I may have been,* *fu-ěr'-ĩ-mūs, we may have been,*
2. *fu'-ě-rīs, thou mayst have been,* *fu-ěr'-ĩ-tīs, ye may have been,*
3. *fu'-ě-rīt, he may have been;* *fu'-ě-rint, they may have been.*

Past-Perfect, *might, would, or should have.*

1. *fu-is'-sēm, I would have been,* *fu-is-sě'-mūs, we would have been,*
2. *fu-is'-sēs, thou wouldst have been,* *fu-is-sě'-tīs, ye would have been,*
3. *fu-is'-sēt, he would have been;* *fu-is'-sent, they would have been.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

- Present.* 2. *ěs, be thou,* *es'-tě, be ye,*
Future. 2. *es'-tō, thou shalt be,* *es-tō'-tě, ye shall be,*
 3. *es'-tō, he shall be;* *sun'-tō, they shall be.*

INFINITIVE.

- Present.* *es'-sě, to be.*
Perfect. *fu-is'-sě, to have been.*
Future. *fũ-tũ'-rūs (-ă, -ŭm) es'-sě, or fŏ'-rě, to be about to be.*

PARTICIPLE.

- Future.* *fũ-tũ'-rūs, -ă, -ŭm, about to be.*

§ 101. FIRST CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	<i>Infin. Pres.</i>	<i>Indic. Perf.</i>	<i>Supine.</i>
<i>ă'-mō,</i>	<i>ă-mă'-rě,</i>	<i>ă-mă'-vī,</i>	<i>ă-mă'-tŭm.</i>

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present, *love, do love, am loving.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă'-mǎ,	<i>I love,</i>
	ă'-mās,	<i>thou lovest,</i>
	ă'-măt,	<i>he loves;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mă'-mūs,	<i>we love,</i>
	ă-mă'-tīs,	<i>ye love,</i>
	ă'-mant,	<i>they love.</i>

Imperfect, *was loving, loved, did love.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-bām,	<i>I was loving,</i>
	ă-mă'-bās,	<i>thou wast loving,</i>
	ă-mă'-băt,	<i>he was loving;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ă-bă'-mūs,	<i>we were loving,</i>
	ăm-ă-bă'-tīs,	<i>ye were loving,</i>
	ă-mă'-bant,	<i>they were loving.</i>

Future, *shall or will love.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-bǎ,	<i>I shall love,</i>
	ă-mă'-bīs,	<i>thou wilt love,</i>
	ă-mă'-bīt,	<i>he will love;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-măb'-ī-mūs,	<i>we shall love,</i>
	ă-măb'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye will love,</i>
	ă-mă'-bunt,	<i>they will love.</i>

Present-Perfect, *have loved.* Aorist-Perfect, *loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-vī,	<i>I have loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-vis'-tī,	<i>thou hast loved,</i>
	ă-mă'-vīt,	<i>he has loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-măv'-ī-mūs,	<i>we have loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-vis'-tīs,	<i>ye have loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-vē'-runt or -rě,	<i>they have loved.</i>

Past-Perfect, *had loved*.

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-rām,	<i>I had loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rās,	<i>thou hadst loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-răt,	<i>he had loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-rā'-mūs,	<i>we had loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rā'-tīs,	<i>ye had loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rant,	<i>they had loved.</i>

Future-Perfect, *shall or will have loved*.

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-rō,	<i>I shall have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rīs,	<i>thou wilt have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>he will have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-vēr'-ī-mūs,	<i>we shall have loved,</i>
	ăm-ā-vēr'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye will have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>they will have loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present, *may love*.

<i>Sing.</i>	ă'-mēm,	<i>I may love,</i>
	ă'-mēs,	<i>thou mayst love,</i>
	ă'-mět,	<i>he may love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mē'-mūs,	<i>we may love,</i>
	ă-mē'-tīs,	<i>ye may love,</i>
	ă'-ment,	<i>they may love.</i>

Imperfect, *might, would, or should love*.

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-rēm,	<i>I would love,</i>
	ă-mā'-rēs,	<i>thou wouldst love,</i>
	ă-mā'-rět,	<i>he would love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ā-rē'-mūs,	<i>we would love,</i>
	ăm-ā-rē'-tīs,	<i>ye would love,</i>
	ă-mā'-rent,	<i>they would love.</i>

Present-Perfect, *may have loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-māv'-ě-rīm,	<i>I may have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rīs,	<i>thou mayst have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rīt,	<i>he may have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ă-věr'-ī-mūs,	<i>we may have loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-věr'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye may have loved,</i>
	ă-māv'-ě-rint,	<i>they may have loved.</i>

Past-Perfect, *might, would, or should have loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ăm-ă-vis'-sēm,	<i>I would have loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-vis'-sēs,	<i>thou wouldst have loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-vis'-sēt,	<i>he would have loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ă-vis-sē'-mūs,	<i>we would have loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-vis-sē'-tīs,	<i>ye would have loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-vis'-sent,	<i>they would have loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i>	ă'-mā,	<i>love thou ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mā'-tě,	<i>love ye.</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i>	ă-mā'-tǒ,	<i>thou shalt love,</i>
	ă-mā'-tǒ,	<i>he shall love ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ă-tǒ'-tě,	<i>ye shall love,</i>
	ă-man'-tǒ,	<i>they shall love.</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	ă-mā'-rě,	<i>to love, to be loving.</i>
<i>Perfect,</i>	ăm-ă-vis'-sě,	<i>to have loved.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	ăm-ă-tǔ'-rūs (-ă, -ŭm) es'-sě,	<i>to be about to love.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	ăm-ă-tǔ'-rūs fu-is'-sě,	<i>to have been about to love.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present,</i>	ă'-mans,	<i>loving,</i>
<i>Future,</i>	ăm-ă-tǔ'-rūs, -ă, -ŭm,	<i>about to love.</i>

GERUND.

Gen.	ă-man'-dī,	<i>of loving,</i>
Dat.	ă-man'-dǎ,	<i>for loving,</i>
Acc.	ă-man'-dŭm,	<i>loving,</i>
Abl.	ă-man'-dǎ,	<i>by loving.</i>

SUPINE.

ă-mă'-tŭm,	<i>to love.</i>
ă-mă'-tŭ,	<i>to love, to be loved.</i>

§ 102. PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Indic. Pres.</i>	<i>Infin. Perf.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>
ă'-mǎr,	ă-mă'-rī,	ă-mă'-tŭs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present, *am loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă'-mǎr,	<i>I am loved,</i>
	ă-mă'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou art loved,</i>
	ă-mă'-tŭr,	<i>he is loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ă-mă'-mŭr,	<i>we are loved,</i>
	ă-mām'-ī-nī,	<i>ye are loved,</i>
	ă-man'-tŭr,	<i>they are loved.</i>

Imperfect, *was loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ă-mă'-băr,	<i>I was loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-bă'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou wast loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-bă'-tŭr,	<i>he was loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ăm-ă-bă'-mŭr,	<i>we were loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-bām'-ī-nī,	<i>ye were loved,</i>
	ăm-ă-ban'-tŭr,	<i>they were loved.</i>

Future, *shall or will be loved.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-bör,	<i>I shall be loved,</i>
ă-măb'-ě-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou wilt be loved,</i>
ă-măb'-ī-tūr,	<i>he will be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-măb'-ī-mūr,	<i>we shall be loved,</i>
ăm-ă-bīm'-ī-nī,	<i>ye will be loved,</i>
ăm-ă-bun'-tūr,	<i>they will be loved.</i>

Present-Perfect, *have been or was loved.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tūs sūm or fu'-ī,	<i>I have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs ēs or fu-is'-tī,	<i>thou hast been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs est or fu'-īt,	<i>he has been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mă'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs,	<i>we have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī es'-tīs or fu-is'-tīs,	<i>ye have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rě,	<i>they have been loved.</i>

Past-Perfect, *had been loved.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tūs ế'-rām or fu'-ế'-rām,	<i>I had been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs ế'-rās or fu'-ế'-rās,	<i>thou hadst been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs ế'-rāt or fu'-ế'-rāt,	<i>he had been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mă'-tī ế'-rā'-mūs or fu-ế'-rā-	
mūs,	<i>we had been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī ế'-rā'-tīs or fu-ế'-rā'-tīs,	<i>ye had been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī ế'-rant or fu'-ế'-rant,	<i>they had been loved.</i>

Future-Perfect, *shall have been loved.*

<i>Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tūs ế'-rō or fu'-ế'-rō,	<i>I shall have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs ế'-rīs or fu'-ế'-rīs,	<i>thou wilt have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tūs ế'-rīt or fu'-ế'-rīt,	<i>he will have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mă'-tī ế'-r'-ī-mūs or fu-ế'-r'-ī-	
mūs,	<i>we shall have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī ế'-r'-ī-tīs or fu-ế'-r'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye will have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tī ế'-runt or fu'-ế'-rint,	<i>they will have been loved.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present, *may be loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ'-mēr,	<i>I may be loved,</i>
	ǎ-mě'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou mayst be loved,</i>
	ǎ-mě'-tūr,	<i>he may be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎ-mě'-mūr,	<i>we may be loved,</i>
	ǎ-mēm'-ī-nī,	<i>ye may be loved,</i>
	ǎ-men'-tūr,	<i>they may be loved.</i>

Imperfect, *might, would, or should be loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-mā'-rēr,	<i>I would be loved,</i>
	ām-ā-rē'-rīs or -rě,	<i>thou wouldst be loved,</i>
	ām-ā-rē'-tūr,	<i>he would be loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ām-ā-rē'-mūr,	<i>we would be loved,</i>
	ām-ā-rēm'-ī-nī,	<i>ye would be loved,</i>
	ām-ā-ren'tūr,	<i>they would be loved.</i>

Past-Perfect, *may have been loved.*

<i>Sing.</i>	ǎ-mā'-tūs sīm or fu'-ě-rīm,	<i>I may have been loved,</i>
	ǎ-mā'-tūs sīs or fu'-ě-rīs,	<i>thou mayst have been loved,</i>
	ǎ-mā'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt,	<i>he may have been loved ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	ǎ-mā'-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ēr'-ī-	
	mūs,	<i>we may have been loved,</i>
	ǎ-mā'-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ēr'-ī-tīs,	<i>ye may have been loved,</i>
	ǎ-mā'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint,	<i>they may have been loved.</i>

Past-Perfect, *might, would, or should have been loved.*

Singular.

ǎ-mā'-tūs es'-sēm or fu-is'-sēm,	<i>I would have been loved,</i>
ǎ-mā'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,	<i>thou wouldst have been loved,</i>
ǎ-mā'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt,	<i>he would have been loved ;</i>

Plural.

ă-mă'-tî es-sě'-mûs or fu-is-sě'-mûs,	<i>we would have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tî es-sě'-tîs or fu-is-sě'-tîs,	<i>ye would have been loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tî es'-sent or fu-is'-sent,	<i>they would have been loved.</i>

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

<i>Pres. Sing.</i> ă-mă'-rě,	<i>be thou loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> ă-mām'-î-nî,	<i>be ye loved.</i>
<i>Fut. Sing.</i> ă-mă'-tör,	<i>thou shalt be loved,</i>
ă-mă'-tör,	<i>he shall be loved;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> (ăm-ă-bîm'-î-nî,	<i>ye shall be loved),</i>
ă-man'-tör,	<i>they shall be loved.</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present,</i> ă-mă'-rî,	<i>to be loved.</i>
<i>Perfect,</i> ă-mă'-tûs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě,	<i>to have been loved.</i>
<i>Future,</i> ă-mă'-tûm î'-rî,	<i>to be about to be loved.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.,</i> ă-mă'-tûs fô'-rě,	<i>to be about to have been loved.</i>

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Perfect,</i> ă-mă'-tûs,	<i>loved, or having been loved.</i>
<i>Future,</i> ă-man'-dûs,	<i>to be loved.</i>

State the mood, tense, voice, person, number, and meaning of the following.

ămās, ămēs, ămā, ămans, ămant, ămēr, ămō, ămēt, ămăt, ămör, ămārē, ămătîs, ămārî, ămābās, ămārēr, ămārēs, ămētîs, ămābant, ămābîs, ămābăt, ămābunt, ămērîs, ămătűr, ămătē, ămārîs, ămāvî, ămando, ămantîs, ămārent, ămābătîs, ămārentűr, ămătôtē, ămābîtîs, ămāműr, ămābîműr, ămārē-

mūs, āmāvistīs, āmāvērīs, āmāvissēm, āmāmīnī, āmābīmīnī, āmātī ērātīs, āmāvērant, āmābāmīnī, āmāvissētīs, āmārēmūs, āmāvissē, essē āmātūrūs, āmātūs sīm, āmēmīnī, āmāvērās, āmārēmīnī, āmātī ērunt, āmātūs sīt, āmātūs essē.

Translate into Latin.

We are loved, ye might be loved, they have loved, thou wouldst have loved, ye will love, we were loving, ye loved, I may have been loved, he shall be loved, be ye loved, to have loved, to be about to love, they had loved, he would have loved, we have been loved, we shall love, ye might be loved, they might love, he would have loved, I would have been loved, of loving, to love, ye were loved, he is loved.

§ 103. SECOND CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>mō'-ne-ō,</i>	<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>mō'-ne-ōr,</i>
<i>Inf. Pres.</i>	<i>mō-nē'-rē,</i>	<i>Inf. Pres.</i>	<i>mō-nē'-rī,</i>
<i>Ind. Perf.</i>	<i>mōn'-u-ī,</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>mōn'-ī-tūs.</i>
<i>Supine.</i>	<i>mōn'-ī-tum.</i>		

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

	<i>I advise.</i>		<i>I am advised.</i>
<i>Sing.</i>	<i>mō'-ne-ō,</i> <i>mō'-nēs,</i> <i>mō'-nēt,</i>	<i>Sing.</i>	<i>mō'-ne-ōr,</i> <i>mō-nē'-rīs or -rē,</i> <i>mō-nē'-tūr ;</i>
<i>Plur.</i>	<i>mō-nē'-mūs,</i> <i>mō-nē'-tīs,</i> <i>mō'-nent.</i>	<i>Plur.</i>	<i>mō-nē'-mūr,</i> <i>mō-nēm'-ī-nī,</i> <i>mō-nen-tūr.</i>

ACTIVE VOICE.



PASSIVE VOICE.

Imperfect.

I was advising.
Sing. mǒ-ně'-bām,
 mǒ-ně'-bās,
 mǒ-ně'-bāt;
Plur. mǒn-ē-bā'-mūs,
 mǒn-ē-bā'-tīs,
 mǒ-ně'-bant.

I was advised.
Sing. mǒ-ně'-bār,
 mǒn-ē-bā'-rīs or -rě,
 mǒn-ē-bā'-tūr;
Plur. mǒn-ē-bā'-mūr,
 mǒn-ē-bām'-ī-nī,
 mǒn-ē-ban'-tūr.

Future.

I shall or will advise.
Sing. mǒ-ně'-bǒ,
 mǒ-ně'-bīs,
 mǒ-ně'-bīt;
Plur. mǒ-nēb'-ī-mūs,
 mǒ-nēb'-ī-tīs,
 mǒ-ně'-bunt.

I shall or will be advised.
Sing. mǒ-ně'-bör,
 mǒ-nēb'-ě-rīs or -rě,
 mǒ-nēb'-ī-tūr;
Plur. mǒ-nēb'-ī-mūr,
 mǒn-ē-bīm'-ī-nī,
 mǒn-ē-bun'-tūr.

Present-Perfect.

I advised or have advised.
S. mǒn'-u-ī,
 mǒn-u-is'-tī,
 mǒn'-u-īt;
P. mǒ-nu'-ī-mūs,
 mǒn-u-is'-tīs,
 mǒn-u-ě'-runt or -rě.

I was or have been advised.
S. mǒn'-ī-tūs sūm or fu'-ī,
 mǒn'-ī-tūs ēs or fu-is'-tī,
 mǒn'-ī-tūs est or fu'-īt;
P. mǒn'-ī-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs,
 mǒn'-ī-tī es'-tīs or fu-is'-tīs,
 mǒn'-ī-tī sunt, fu-ě'-runt or -rě.

Past-Perfect.

I had advised.
S. mǒ-nu'-ě-rām,
 mǒ-nu'-ě-rās,
 mǒ-nu'-ě-rāt;
P. mǒn-u-ě-rā'-mūs,
 mǒn-u-ě-rā'-tīs,
 mǒ-nu'-ě-rant.

I had been advised.
S. mǒn'-ī-tūs ě'-rām or fu'-ě-rām,
 mǒn'-ī-tūs ě'-rās or fu'-ě-rās,
 mǒn'-ī-tūs ě'-rāt or fu'-ě-rāt;
P. mǒn'-ī-tī ě-rā'-mūs or fu-ě-rā'-
 mūs,
 mǒn'-ī-tī ě-rā'-tīs or fu-ě-rā'-tīs,
 mǒn'-ī-tī ě'-rant or fu'-ě-rant.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Future-Perfect.

I shall have advised.

- S.* mǒ-nu'-ě-rǒ,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rīs,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rīt;
P. mǒn-u-ěr'ī-mūs,

mǒn-u-ěr'-ī-tīs,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rint.

I shall have been advised.

- S.* mǒn'-ī-tūs ě'-rǒ or fu'-ě-rǒ,
mǒn'-ī-tūs ě'-rīs or fu'-ě-rīs,
mǒn'-ī-tūs ě'-rīt or fu'-ě-rīt;
P. mǒn'-ī-tī ěr'-ī-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-mūs,

mǒn'-ī-tī ěr'-ī-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,
mǒn'-ī-tī ě'-runt or fu'-ě-rint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may advise.

- S.* mǒ'-ne-ām,
mǒ'-ne-ās,
mǒ'-ne-āt;
P. mǒ'-ne-ā'-mūs,
mǒ'-ne-ā'-tīs,
mǒ'-ne-ant.

I may be advised.

- S.* mǒ'-ne-ār,
mǒ'-ne-ā'-rīs or -rě,
mǒ'-ně-ā'-tūr;
P. mǒ'-ne-ā'-mūr,
mǒ'-ne-ām'-ī-nī,
mǒ'-ne-an'-tūr.

Imperfect.

*I might, would, or
should advise.*

- S.* mǒ-ně'-rēm,
mǒ-ně'-rēs,
mǒ-ně'-rēt;
P. mǒn-ē-rě'-mūs,
mǒn-ē-rě'-tīs,
mǒ-ně'-rent.

*I might, would, or should
be advised.*

- S.* mǒ-ně'-rēr,
mǒn-ē-rě'-rīs or -rě,
mǒn-ē-rě'-tūr;
P. mǒn-ē-rě'-mūr,
mǒn-ē-rēm'-ī-nī,
mǒn-ē-ren'-tūr.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present-Perfect.

*I may have advised.**I may have been advised.*

S. mǒ-nu'-ě-rīm,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rīs,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rīt ;

S. mǒn'-ĭ-tūs sīm or fu'-ě-rīm,
mǒn'-ĭ-tūs sīs or fu'-ě-rīs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt ;

P. mǒn-u-ěr'-ĭ-mūs,
mǒn-u-ěr'-ĭ-tīs,
mǒ-nu'-ě-rint.

P. mǒn'-ĭ-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ěr'-ĭ-mūs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ěr'-ĭ-tīs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint.

Past-Perfect.

*I might, would, or should have advised.**I might, would, or should have been advised.*

S. mǒn-u-is'-sēm,
mǒn-u-is'-sēs,
mǒn-u-is'-sēt ;

S. mǒn'-ĭ-tūs es'-sēm or fu-is'-sēm,
mǒn'-ĭ-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt ;

P. mǒn-u-is-sē'-mūs,
mǒn-u-is-sē'-tīs,
mǒn-u-is'-sent.

P. mǒn'-ĭ-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,
mǒn'-ĭ-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. mǒ'-nē, *advise thou ;**Pres. S.* mǒ-nē'-rě, *be thou advised ;**P.* mǒ-nē'-tě, *advise ye.**P.* mǒ-nēm'-ĭ-nī, *be ye advised.**Fut. S.* mǒ-nē'-tǒ, *thou shalt advise.**Fut. S.* mǒ-nē'-tǒr, *thou shalt be advised.**mǒ-nē'-tǒ, he shall advise.**mǒ-nē'-tǒr, he shall be advised.**• P.* mǒn-ē-tǒ'-tě, *ye shall advise.**P.* (mǒn-ē-bīm'-ĭ-nī, *ye shall be advised.*)*mǒ-nen'-tǒ, they shall advise.**mǒ-nen'-tǒr, they shall be advised.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Pres.</i> mǝ-ně'-rě, to advise.	<i>Pres.</i> mǝ-ně'-rī, to be advised.
<i>Perf.</i> mǝn-u-is'-sě, to have advised.	<i>Perf.</i> mǝn'-ĭ-tūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě, to have been advised.
<i>Fut.</i> mǝn'-ĭ-tū'-rūs es'-sě, to be about to advise.	<i>Fut.</i> mǝn'-ĭ-tūm ĭ'-rī, to be about to be advised.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i> mǝn'-ĭ-tū'-rūs fu-is'-sě, to have been about to advise.	<i>Fut. Perf.</i> mǝn'-ĭ-tūs fǝ'-rě, to have been about to be advised.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i> mǝ'-nens, advising.	<i>Perf.</i> mǝn'-ĭ-tūs, advised.
<i>Fut.</i> mǝn'-ĭ-tū'-rūs, about to advise.	<i>Fut.</i> mǝ-nen'-dūs, to be advised.

GERUND.

Gen. mǝ-nen'-dī, of advising.
 Dat. mǝ-nen'-dǝ, for advising.
 Acc. mǝ-nen'-dūm, advising.
 Acc. mǝ-nen'-dǝ, by advising.

SUPINE.

mǝn'-ĭ-tūm, to advise. | mǝn'-ĭ-tū, to be advised, to advise.

State the mood, tense, voice, person, number, and meaning of the following.

mǝnent, mǝnens, mǝnēs, mǝnē, mǝnēt, mǝneās, mǝnēmūs, mǝnētūr, mǝnētīs, mǝnērīs, mǝnītīs, mǝnērē, mǝnēbāt, mǝneăt, mǝnērēm, mǝnuī, mǝnentūr, mǝnendī, mǝnuistī, mǝnuērāmūs, mǝneāmūs, mǝnētē, mǝnērī, mǝnuissě, mǝnītū, mǝnītūm ĭrī, mǝnītūrūs fuissě, mǝnītī ěrātīs,

mõnēbīmīnī, mõnuērītīs, mõnuistīs, mõnētōtē, mõnuērīnt,
mõnuissēmūs, mõneāmīnī, mõnēbāmīnī, mõnītī fuērīmūs,
mõnītūs fuissēt.

Translate into Latin.

I advise, thou wast advising, thou wast advised, he shall advise, we have been advised, ye are advising, they had advised, ye shall have advised, we advised, he has been advised, I shall be advised, thou mayest advise, he may be advised, we may have advised, ye might have advised, they would have been advised, advise thou, be ye advised, to have been advised, to advise, advising, about to advise, to be advised, of advising. The girls have been advised. The boys may have been advised.

§ 104. THIRD CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>rě'-gõ.</i>	<i>Ind. Pres.</i>	<i>rě'-gõr.</i>
<i>Inf. Pres.</i>	<i>rěg'-ě-rě.</i>	<i>Inf. Pres.</i>	<i>rě'-gī.</i>
<i>Ind. Perf.</i>	<i>rex'-ī.</i>	<i>Perf. Part.</i>	<i>rec'-tūs.</i>
<i>Supine.</i>	<i>rec'-tūm.</i>		

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

<i>I rule.</i>	<i>I am ruled.</i>
<i>Sing.</i> <i>rě'gõ,</i> <i>rě'-gīs,</i> <i>rě'-gīt;</i>	<i>Sing.</i> <i>rě'-gõr,</i> <i>rěg'-ě-rīs or -rě,</i> <i>rěg'-ī-tūr;</i>
<i>Plur.</i> <i>rěg'-ī-mūs,</i> <i>rěg'-ī-tīs,</i> <i>rě'-gunt.</i>	<i>Plur.</i> <i>rěg'-ī-mūr,</i> <i>rě-gīm'-ī-nī,</i> <i>rě-gun'-tūr.</i>

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Imperfect.

I was ruling.

I was ruled.

Sing. rě-gě'-bām,
rě-gě'-bās,
rě-gě'-bāt ;
Plur. rěg-ē-bā'-mūs,
rěg-ē-bā'-tīs,
rě-gě'-bant.

Sing. rě-gě'-bār,
rěg-ē-bā'-rīs or -rě,
rěg-ē-bā'-tūr ;
Plur. rěg-ē-bā'-mūr,
rěg-ē-bām'-ī-nī,
rěg-ē-ban'-tūr.

Future.

I shall or will rule.

I shall or will be ruled.

Sing. rě'-gām,
rě'-gēs,
rě'-gēt ;
Plur. rě-gě'-mūs,
rě-gě'-tīs,
rě'-gent.

Sing. rě'-gār,
rě-gě'-rīs or -rě,
rě-gě'-tūr ;
Plur. rě-gě'-mūr,
rě-gēm'-ī-nī,
rě-gen'-tūr.

Present-Perfect.

I ruled or have ruled.

I was or have been ruled.

Sing. rex'-ī,
rex-is'-tī,
rex'-īt ;
Plur. rex'-ī-mūs,
rex-is'-tīs,
rex-ě'-runt or -rě.

S. rec'-tūs sūm or fu'-ī,
rec'-tūs ēs or fu-is'-tī,
rec'-tūs est or fu'-īt ;
P. rec'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs,
rec'-tī es'-tīs or fu-is'-tīs,
rec'-tī sunt, fu-ě'-runt or -rě.

Past-Perfect.

I had ruled.

I had been ruled.

Sing. rex'-ě-ram,
rex'-ě-rās,
rex'-ě-rāt ;
Plur. rex'-ě-rā'-mūs,
rex'-ě-rā'-tīs,
rex'-ě-rant.

S. rec'-tūs ě'rām or fu'-ě-rām,
rec'-tūs ě'-rās or fu'-ě-rās,
rec'-tūs ě'-rāt or fu'-ě-rāt ;
P. rec'-tī ě-rā'-mūs or fu-ě-rā'-mūs,
rec'-tī ě-rā'-tīs or fu-ě-rā'-tīs,
rec'-tī ě'-rant or fu'-ě-rant.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Future-Perfect.

I shall have ruled.

Sing. rex'-ě-rō,
 rex'-ě-rīs,
 rex'-ě-rīt;

Plur. rex-ěr'-ī-mūs,
 rex-ěr'-ī-tīs,
 rex'-ě-rint.

I shall have been ruled.

Sing. rec'-tūs ě'-rō or fu'-ě-rō,
 rec'-tūs ě'-rīs or fu'-ě-rīs,
 rec'-tūs ě'-rīt or fu'-ě-rīt;

Plur. rec'-tī ěr'-ī-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-mūs,
 rec'-tī ěr'-ī-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,
 rec'-tī ě'-runt or fu'-ě-rint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may rule.

Sing. řě'-gām,
 řě'-gās,
 řě'-gāt;

Plur. řě-gā'-mūs,
 řě-gā'-tīs,
 řě'-gant.

I may be ruled.

Sing. řě'-gār,
 řě-gā'-rīs or -řě,
 řě-gā'-tūr;

Plur. řě-gā'-mūr,
 řě-gām'-ī-nī,
 řě-gan'-tūr.

Imperfect.

I might, would, or should rule.

Sing. řěg'-ě-řēm,
 řěg'-ě-řēs,
 řěg'-ě-řēt;

Plur. řěg-ě-řě'-mūs,
 řěg-ě-řě'-tīs,
 řěg'-ě-rent.

I might, would, or should be ruled.

Sing. řěg'-ě-řēr,
 řěg-ě-řě'-rīs or -řě,
 řěg-ě-řě'-tūr;

Plur. řěg-ě-řě'-mūr,
 řěg-ě-řēm'-ī-nī,
 řěg-ě-ren'-tūr.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Present-Perfect.

I may have ruled.

I may have been ruled.

*Sing. rex'-ě-rīm,
rex'-ě-rīs,
rex'-ě-rīt ;*

*S. rec'-tūs sīm or fu'-ě-rīm,
rec'-tūs sīs or fu'-ě-rīs,
rec'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt ;*

*Plur. rex-ěr'-ī-mūs,
rex-ěr'-ī-tīs,
rex'-ě-rint.*

*P. rec'-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-mūs,
rec'-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,
rec'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint.*

Past-Perfect.

*I might, would, or
should have ruled.*

*I might, would, or should have
been ruled.*

*Sing. rex-is'-sēm,
rex-is'-sēs,
rex-is'-sēt ;*

*S. rec'-tūs es'-sēm or fu-is'-sēm,
rec'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,
rec'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt ;*

*Plur. rex-is-sē'-mūs,
rex-is-sē'-tīs,
rex-is'-sent.*

*P. rec'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-mūs,
rec'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tīs,
rec'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. rě'-gě, rule thou ;

*Pres. S. rěg'-ě-rě, be thou
ruled ;*

P. rěg'-ī-tě, rule ye.

*P. rě-gīm'-ī-nī, be ye
ruled.*

*Fut. S. rěg'-ī-tō, thou shalt
rule,
rěg'-ī-tō, he shall
rule ;*

*Fut. S. rěg'-ī-tōr, thou shalt
be ruled,
rěg'-ī-tōr, he shall
be ruled ;*

*P. rěg'-ī-tō'-tě, ye shall
rule,
rě-gun'-tō, they shall
rule.*

*P. (rě-gīm'-ī-nī, ye shall
be ruled),
rě-gun'-tōr, they
shall be ruled.*

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

INFINITIVE.

*Pres. rĕg'-ĕ-rĕ, to rule.**Pres. rĕ'-gĭ, to be ruled.**Perf. rex-is'-sĕ, to have ruled.**Perf. rec'-tŭs es'-sĕ or fu-is'-sĕ, to have been ruled.**Fut. rec-tŭ'-rŭs es'-sĕ, to be about to rule.**Fut. rec'-tŭm ĭ'-rĭ, to be about to be ruled.**Fut. Perf. rec-tŭ'-rŭs fu-is'-sĕ, to have been about to rule.**Fut. Perf. rec'-tŭs fŏ'-rĕ, to have been about to be ruled.*

PARTICIPLES.

*Pres. rĕ'-gens, ruling.**Perf. rec'-tŭs, ruled.**Fut. rec-tŭ'-rŭs, about to rule.**Fut. rĕ-gen'-dŭs, to be ruled.*

GERUND.

*Gen. rĕ-gen'-dĭ, of ruling.**Dat. rĕ-gen'-dŏ, for ruling.**Acc. rĕ-gen'-dŭm, ruling.**Abl. rĕ-gen'-dŏ, by ruling.*

SUPINE.

*rec'-tŭm, to rule.**| rec'-tŭ, to be ruled, to rule.*

State the mood, tense, voice, person, number, and meaning of the following.

Rexĭt, rĕgĭs, rĕgĭt, rĕgunt, rĕgĕt, rĕgĭt, rĕgĕs, *rĕgĕ*, *rĕgĕs*, rĕgĭ, rĕgant, rĕgĭs, rĕgent, rĕgens, rexĭ, rĕgĕ-rĕs, rĕgĕrĕ, rĕgĕrĕ, rĕgĭtĕ, rĕgĭmĭnĭ, rĕgĕmĭnĭ, rĕgĕmĭnĭ, rĕgentŭr, rĕguntŭr, rĕgantŭr, rĕgĕtur, rĕgĭtur, rĕgĕtŭr, rĕgĭtis, rĕgĕtis, rĕgĕtis, rĕgentĭs, rĕgendĭ, rĕgendŏ, rĕgĭ-mŭs, rĕgĕmŭr, rĕgĕmŭs, rĕgĕtis, rĕgĕrĕrĭs, rĕgĕrĭs, rexĕrĭs, rexĕrĭtis, rexissĕs, rexissĕtis, rĕgĕbĕmĭnĭ, rĕgĭmĭnĭ, rĕgĕmĭnĭ, rĕgĕrĕmĭnĭ, rectĭ ĕrĕmŭs, rectĭ fuissĕtis, rectŭrŭs fuissĕ, rectŏs, rectŭ, rĕgĭtŏtĕ, rexistĭs, rexĕrĕmŭs.

Translate into Latin.

They may be ruled, ye are ruled, we may rule, he rules, I may rule, thou mayst be ruled, they were ruling, ye would be ruled, we might be ruled, ye were ruled, he was ruling, thou wouldst be ruled, I was ruled, thou ruledst, thou art ruled, thou hast ruled, he has been ruled, the king will rule, we had ruled, ye had been ruled, they shall be ruled, he will have ruled, ye might have ruled, ye had ruled, rule ye, to be ruled, to have ruled, having been ruled, for ruling, he would have ruled.

§ 105. FOURTH CONJUGATION.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

PRINCIPAL PARTS.

Ind. Pres. au'-di-ō,
Inf. Pres. au-dī'-rě,
Ind. Perf. au-dī'-vī,
Supine. au-dī'-tūm.

Ind. Pres. au'-di-ōr.
Inf. Pres. au-dī'-rī.
Perf. Part. au-dī'-tūs.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

Present.

I hear.
Sing. au'-di-ō,
au'-dīs,
au'-dīt;
Plur. au-dī'-mūs,
au-dī'-tīs,
au'-di-unt.

I am heard.
Sing. au'-di-ōr,
au-dī'-rīs or -rě,
au-dī'-tūr;
Plur. au-dī'-mūr,
au-dīm'-ī-nī,
au-di-un'-tūr.

Imperfect.

I was hearing.
Sing. au-di-ē'-bām,
au-di-ē'-bās,
, au-di-ē'-bāt;

I was heard.
Sing. au-di-ē'-bār,
au-di-ē-bā'-rīs or -rě,
au-di-ē-bā'-tūr;

ACTIVE VOICE.

Plur. au-di-ē-bā'-mūs,
au-di-ē-bā'-tīs,
au-di-ē'-bant.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Plur. au-di-ē-bā'-mūr,
au-di-ē-bām'-ī-nī,
au-di-ē-ban'-tūr.

Future.

I shall or will hear.

Sing. au'-di-ām,
au'-di-ēs,
au'-di-ēt ;

Plur. au-di-ē'-mūs,
au-di-ē'-tīs,
au'-di-ent.

I shall or will be heard.

Sing. au'-di-ār,
au-di-ē'-rīs or -rě,
au-di-ē'-tūr ;

Plur. au-di-ē'-mūr,
au-di-ēm'-ī-nī,
au-di-en'-tūr.

Past-Perfect.

*I heard or have
heard.*

S. au-dī'-vī,
au-dī-vis'-tī,
au-dī'-vīt ;

P. au-dīv'-ī-mūs,
au-dī-vis'-tīs,
au-dī-vē'-runt or -rě.

I have been or was heard.

S. au-dī'-tūs sūm or fu'-ī,
au-dī'-tūs ěs or fu-is'-tī,
au-dī'-tūs est or fu'-īt ;

P. au-dī'-tī sū'-mūs or fu'-ī-mūs,
au-dī'-tī es'-tīs or fu-is'-tīs,
au-dī'-tī sunt, fu-ē'-runt or -rě.

Past-Perfect.

I had heard.

S. au-dīv'-ě-rām,
au-dīv'-ě-rās,
au-dīv'-ě-rāt ;

P. au-dīv'-ě-rā'-mūs,
au-dīv'-ě-rā'-tīs,
au-dīv'-ě-rant.

I had been heard.

S. au-dī'-tūs ě'-rām or fu'-ě-rām,
au-dī'-tūs ě'-rās or fu'-ě-rās,
au-dī'-tūs ě'-rāt or fu'-ě-rāt ;

P. au-dī'-tī ě-rā'-mūs or fu-ě-rā'-mūs,
au-dī'-tī ě-rā'-tīs or fu-ě-rā'-tīs,
au-dī'-tī ě'-rant or fu'-ě-rant.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.
Future-Perfect.

I shall have heard.

S. au-dīv'-ě-rō,
au-dīv'-ě-rīs,
au-dīv'-ě-rīt;
P. au-dī-věr'-ī-mūs,
au-dī-věr'-ī-tīs,
au-dīv'-ě-rint.

I shall have been heard.

S. au-dī'-tūs ě'-rō or fu'-ě-rō,
au-dī'-tūs ě'-rīs or fu'-ě-rīs,
au-dī'-tūs ě'-rīt or fu'-ě-rīt;
P. au-dī'-tī ěr'-ī-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-mūs,
au-dī'-tī ěr'-ī-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,
au-dī'-tī ě'-runt or fu'-ě-rint.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

Present.

I may hear.

Sing. au'-di-ām,
au'-di-ās,
au'-di-āt;
Plur. au-di-ā'-mūs,
au-di-ā'-tīs,
au'-di-ant.

I may be heard.

Sing. au'-di-ār,
au-di-ā'-rīs or -rě,
au-di-ā'-tūr;
Plur. au-di-ā'-mūr,
au-di-ām'-ī-nī,
au-di-an'-tūr.

Imperfect.

*I might, would, or should
hear.*

Sing. au-dī'-rēm,
au-dī-rēs,
au-dī'-rēt;
Plur. au-dī-rě'-mūs,
au-dī-rě'-tīs,
au-dī'-rent.

*I might, would, or should
be heard.*

Sing. au-dī'-rěr,
au-dī-rě'-rīs or -rě,
au-dī-rě'-tūr;
Plur. au-dī-rě'-mūr,
au-dī-rēm'-ī-nī,
au-dī-ren'-tūr.

Present-Perfect.

I may have heard.

S. au-dīv'-ě-rīm,
au-dīv'-ě-rīs,
au-dīv'-ě-rīt;
P. au-dī-věr'-ī-mūs,
au-dī-věr'-ī-tīs,
au-dīv'-ě-rint.

I may have been heard.

S. au-dī'-tūs sīm or fu'-ě-rīm,
au-dī'-tūs sīs or fu'-ě-rīs,
au-dī'-tūs sīt or fu'-ě-rīt;
P. au-dī'-tī sī'-mūs or fu-ěr'-ī-mūs,
au-dī'-tī sī'-tīs or fu-ěr'-ī-tīs,
au-dī'-tī sint or fu'-ě-rint.

ACTIVE VOICE.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Past-Perfect.

*I might, would, or should
have heard.*

*S. au-dī-vis'-sēm,
au-dī-vis'-sēs,
au-dī-vis'-sēt;*

*P. au-dī-vis-sē'-mūs,
au-dī-vis-sē'-tīs,
au-dī-vis'-sent.*

*I might, would, or should have been
heard.*

*S. au-dī'-tūs es'-sēm or fu-is'-sēm,
au-dī'-tūs es'-sēs or fu-is'-sēs,
au-dī'-tūs es'-sēt or fu-is'-sēt;*

*P. au-dī'-tī es-sē'-mūs or fu-is-sē'-
mūs,
au-dī'-tī es-sē'-tīs or fu-is-sē'-tis,
au-dī'-tī es'-sent or fu-is'-sent.*

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

Pres. S. au'-dī, hear thou;

P. au-dī'-tē, hear ye.

*Fut. S. au-dī'-tō, thou shalt
hear,*

*au-dī'-tō, he shall
hear;*

*P. au-dī-tō'-tē, ye shall
hear,*

*au-di-un'-tō, they
shall hear.*

*Pres. S. au-dī'-rē, be thou
heard;*

*P. au-dīm'-ī-nī, be ye
heard.*

*Fut. S. au-dī'-tōr, thou shalt
be heard,*

*au-dī'-tōr, he shall
be heard;*

*P. (au-di-ēm'-ī-nī, ye
shall be heard),
au-di-un'-tōr, they
shall be heard.*

INFINITIVE.

Pres. au-dī'-rē, to hear.

*Perf. au-dī-vis'-sē, to have
heard.*

*Fut. au-dī-tū'-rūs es'-sē, to
be about to hear.*

*Fut. P. au-dī-tū'-rūs fu-is'-sē,
to have been about
to hear.*

Pres. au-dī'-rī, to be heard.

*Perf. au-dī'-tūs es'-sē or fu-
is'-sē, to have been
heard.*

*Fut. au-dī'-tūm ī'-rī, to be
about to be heard.*

ACTIVE.

PASSIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Pres.</i>	<i>au'-di-ens, hearing.</i>		<i>Perf.</i>	<i>au-dī'-tūs, heard.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>au-dī-tū'-rūs, about to hear.</i>		<i>Fut.</i>	<i>au-di-en'-dūs, to be heard.</i>

GERUND.

<i>Gen.</i>	<i>au-di-en'-dī, of hearing.</i>
<i>Dat.</i>	<i>au-di-en'-dō, for hearing.</i>
<i>Acc.</i>	<i>au-di-en'-dūm, hearing.</i>
<i>Abl.</i>	<i>au-di-en'-dō, by hearing.</i>

SUPINE.

<i>au-dī'-tūm, to hear.</i>		<i>au-dī-tū, to be heard, to hear.</i>
-----------------------------	--	--

Tell where found, and the meaning.

Audīs, audiāt, audiens, audient, audiant, audītīs, audītūs, audītē, audīrē, audīrī, audīrīs, audīrēs, audīvistī, audīvērē, audīmūr, audiēmīnī, audītōtē, audīvissētīs, audīvērīnt, audīvissent, audīrēmīnī, audītī fuissent, audītūrūs essē, audītūs fuissē, audiēbāmūr, audīrēmūs, audiēbāmīnī, audiuntōr, audiuntūr, audientūr, audientīs, audiātīs, audiantūr, audīvērīmūs, audīvērunt, audītī fuissētīs.

Translate into Latin.

We shall hear, he has been heard, they have heard, thou mightest have been heard, ye were heard, ye were hearing, they shall hear, ye have heard, he may have been heard, ye would have been heard, we might have been heard, be ye heard, to hear, to have been heard, by hearing, about to hear, to be heard, we hear, they are heard, they are hearing. The beautiful girl has been heard. Many songs had been heard.

TABLE OF ENDINGS.

TERMINATIONS ADDED TO THE PRESENT STEM.
 ACTIVE VOICE. PASSIVE VOICE.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

				Present tense.							
				Singular.		Plural.		Singular.		Plural.	
				1st Per.	2d Per.	3d Per.	1st Per.	3d Per.	1st Per.	2d Per.	3d Per.
CONJUGATION.	1. ǫ,	ā,	ǎ,	1. ǫr,	ǎ'-rīs	or ǎ'-rē,	1. ǫr,	ǎ'-tūr;	ǎ'-mūr,	ān'-īnī,	an'-tūr.
	2. ǫǫ,	ēs,	ǣ;	2. ǫǫr,	ǣ'-rīs	or ǣ'-rē,	2. ǫǫr,	ǣ'-tūr;	ǣ'-mūr,	ēn'-īnī,	en'-tūr.
	3. ǫ,	īs,	ī;	3. ǫr,	ērīs	or ērē,	3. ǫr,	ēr-tūr;	īmūr,	īm'-īnī,	un'-tūr.
	4. ǫ,	īs,	ī;	4. ǫr,	ērīs	or ērē,	4. ǫr,	ēr-tūr;	ēr-mūr,	īm'-īnī,	i-un'-tūr.
Imperfect.											
1.	ǎ'-bām,	ǎ'-bās,	ǎ'-bāt;	1. ǎ'-bār,	ǎ-bǎ'-rīs	or ǎ-bǎ'-rē,	1. ǎ'-bār,	ǎ-bǎ'-tūr;	ǎ-bǎ'-mūr,	ǎ-bǎn'-īnī,	ǎ-ban'-tūr.
2.	ǣ'-hām,	ǣ'-bās,	ǣ'-bāt;	2. ǣ'-bār,	ǣ-bǎ'-rīs	or ǣ-bǎ'-rē,	2. ǣ'-bār,	ǣ-bǎ'-tūr;	ǣ-bǎ'-mūr,	ǣ-bǎn'-īnī,	ǣ-ban'-tūr.
3.	ǣ'-bām,	ǣ'-bās,	ǣ'-bāt;	3. ǣ'-bār,	ǣ-bǎ'-rīs	or ǣ-bǎ'-rē,	3. ǣ'-bār,	ǣ-bǎ'-tūr;	ǣ-bǎ'-mūr,	ǣ-bǎn'-īnī,	ǣ-ban'-tūr.
4.	i-ǣ'-bām,	i-ǣ'-bās,	i-ǣ'-bāt;	4. i-ǣ'-bār,	iǣ-bǎ'-rīs	or iǣ-bǎ'-rē,	4. i-ǣ'-bār,	iǣ-bǎ'-tūr;	iǣ-bǎ'-mūr,	iǣ-bǎn'-īnī,	iǣ-ban'-tūr.
Future.											
1.	ǎ'-bǫ,	ǎ'-bīs,	ǎ'-bīt;	1. ǎ'-bǫr,	ǎb'-ǣrīs	or ǎb'-ǣrē,	1. ǎ'-bǫr,	ǎb'-tūr;	ǎb'-mūr,	ǎ-bǣn'-īnī,	ǎ-ban'-tūr.
2.	ǣ'-bǫ,	ǣ'-bīs,	ǣ'-bīt;	2. ǣ'-bǫr,	ǣb'-ǣrīs	or ǣb'-ǣrē,	2. ǣ'-bǫr,	ǣb'-tūr;	ǣb'-mūr,	ǣ-bǣn'-īnī,	ǣ-ban'-tūr.
3.	ām,	ēs,	ēt;	3. ār,	ǣ'-rīs	or ǣ'-rē,	3. ār,	ǣ'-tūr;	ǣ'-mūr,	ēn'-īnī,	en'-tūr.
4.	iām,	iēs,	iēt;	4. iār,	i-ǣ'-rīs	or i-ǣ'-rē,	4. iār,	i-ǣ'-tūr;	i-ǣ'-mūr,	i-ēn'-īnī,	i-en'-tūr.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

				Present Tense.			
				1st Per.	2d Per.	3d Per.	1st Per.
1.	ēm,	ēs,	ēt;	1. ǣr,	ǣ'-rīs	or ǣ'-rē,	ǣ'-mūr,
2.	eām,	eās,	eāt;	2. ǣr,	e-ǣ'-rīs	or e-ǣ'-rē,	e-ǣ'-mūr,
3.	ām,	ās,	āt;	3. ār,	ā'-rīs	or ā'-rē,	ā'-mūr,
4.	iām,	iās,	iāt;	4. iār,	i-ā'-rīs	or i-ā'-rē,	i-ā'-mūr,

Imperfect.

1. <i>ā'-rēm</i> , <i>ā'-rēs</i> , <i>ā'-rēt</i> ;	1. <i>ā'-rē</i> , <i>ā'-rē-rīs</i> or <i>ā'-rē-rē</i> , <i>ā'-rē-tūr</i> ;	<i>ā'-rē-mūr</i> , <i>ā'-rē-m'īnī</i> , <i>ā'-rē-m'tūr</i> .
2. <i>ē'-rēm</i> , <i>ē'-rēs</i> , <i>ē'-rēt</i> ;	2. <i>ē'-rē</i> , <i>ē'-rē-rīs</i> or <i>ē'-rē-rē</i> , <i>ē'-rē-tūr</i> ;	<i>ē'-rē-mūr</i> , <i>ē'-rē-m'īnī</i> , <i>ē'-rē-m'tūr</i> .
3. <i>ērēm</i> , <i>ērēs</i> , <i>ērēt</i> ;	3. <i>ērēr</i> , <i>ēr'-rīs</i> or <i>ēr'-rē</i> , <i>ēr'-tūr</i> ;	<i>ēr'-mūr</i> , <i>ēr'-m'īnī</i> , <i>ēr'-m'tūr</i> .
4. <i>ī'-rēm</i> , <i>ī'-rēs</i> , <i>ī'-rēt</i> ;	4. <i>ī'-rē</i> , <i>ī'-rē-rīs</i> or <i>ī'-rē-rē</i> , <i>ī'-rē-tūr</i> ;	<i>ī'-rē-mūr</i> , <i>ī'-rē-m'īnī</i> , <i>ī'-rē-m'tūr</i> .

IMPERATIVE MOOD.

1. <i>ā</i> ;	1. <i>ā'-tē</i> .	1. <i>ā'-rē</i> , <i>ām'-īnī</i> .	1. <i>ā'-tōr</i> , <i>ā'-tōr</i> , (<i>ā-bām'-īnī</i>) <i>am'-tōr</i> .
2. <i>ē</i> ;	2. <i>ē'-tē</i> .	2. <i>ē'-rē</i> , <i>ēm'-īnī</i> .	2. <i>ē'-tōr</i> , <i>ē'-tōr</i> , (<i>ē-bām'-īnī</i>) <i>em'-tōr</i> .
3. <i>ēr</i> ;	3. <i>ērē</i> .	3. <i>ērē</i> , <i>im'-īnī</i> .	3. <i>ītōr</i> , <i>ītōr</i> , (<i>īm'-īnī</i>) <i>im'-tōr</i> .
4. <i>ī</i> ;	4. <i>ī'-tē</i> .	4. <i>ī'-rē</i> , <i>im'-īnī</i> .	4. <i>ī'-tōr</i> , <i>ī'-tōr</i> , (<i>i-ēm'-īnī</i>) <i>i-am'-tōr</i> .
INFINITIVE.	1. <i>āns</i> .	1. <i>an'-dī</i> .	1. <i>ān'-dūs</i> .
<i>Present</i> .	2. <i>ēns</i> .	2. <i>en'-dī</i> .	2. <i>ēn'-dūs</i> .
	3. <i>ēns</i> .	3. <i>en'-dī</i> .	3. <i>ī</i> .
	4. <i>iōns</i> .	4. <i>i-en'-dī</i> .	4. <i>ī-rī</i> .
			<i>Future</i> .
			<i>Participle</i> .

TERMINATIONS ADDED TO THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

The terminations of the tenses which are formed from the perfect and supine stems are the same in all the conjugations. Thus:—

ACTIVE VOICE.—PERFECT STEM.

PASSIVE VOICE.—SUPINE STEM.

INDICATIVE MOOD.

<i>Singular</i> .	<i>Plural</i> .
<i>Perfect</i> . <i>ī</i> , <i>is'-tī</i> , <i>īt</i> ;	<i>Perfect</i> . <i>ūs sūm</i> or <i>fu'-ī</i> , <i>ūs ēs</i> or <i>fu-is'-tī</i> , etc.
<i>Past-Perf</i> . <i>ērām</i> , <i>ērās</i> , <i>ērāt</i> ;	<i>Past-Perf</i> . <i>ūs ē-rām</i> or <i>fu'-ērām</i> , <i>ūs ē'-rās</i> or <i>fu'-ērās</i> , etc.
<i>Fut-Perf</i> . <i>ērō</i> , <i>ērīs</i> , <i>ērīt</i> ;	<i>Fut-Perf</i> . <i>ūs ē-rō</i> or <i>fu'-ērō</i> , <i>ūs ē'-rīs</i> or <i>fu'-ērīs</i> , etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE MOOD.

<i>Perfect</i> . <i>ērīm</i> , <i>ērīs</i> , <i>ērīt</i> ;	<i>Perfect</i> . <i>ūs sīm</i> or <i>fu'-ērīm</i> , <i>ūs sīs</i> or <i>fu'-ērīs</i> , etc.
<i>Past-Perf</i> . <i>is'-sēm</i> , <i>is'-sēs</i> , <i>is'-sēt</i> ;	<i>Past-Perf</i> . <i>ūs is'-sēm</i> or <i>fu-is'-sēm</i> , <i>ūs is'-sēs</i> or <i>fu-is'-ses</i> , etc.
INFINITIVE. <i>Perfect</i> , <i>-is'-sē</i> .	INFINITIVE. <i>Perfect</i> , <i>ūs es'-sē</i> or <i>fu-is'-sē</i> .
SUPINE-STEM. INF. <i>Fut</i> . <i>ū'-rūs es'-sē</i> .	PART. <i>Perf</i> . <i>ūs</i> . INF. <i>Fut</i> . <i>ūm ī-rī</i> .

§ 106. CONJUGATION OF VERBS.— ENDINGS.

The table on pages 164, 165, exhibits the endings of the active and passive voices in all the conjugations.

Remark 1.—On the present-stem are formed all the moods of the present, imperfect, and future tenses (except the infinitive future, active and passive), the gerund, present active participle, and future passive participle.

Remark 2.—On the perfect-stem are formed all the perfect-tenses in the active voice.

Remark 3.—On the supine-stem are formed the supines, and the future active and perfect passive participles.

Remark 4.—The future and future-perfect infinitive active are compound tenses, made up of the future active participle and the infinitive of the verb *sūm*. The future infinitive passive is made up of the supine and the impersonal infinitive *īrī*. The future-perfect infinitive passive is made up of the perfect passive participle and the future infinitive *fōrě*.

Remark 5.—The perfect tenses of the passive are made up of the perfect passive participle with the forms of the verb *sūm*, the latter designating the time, and the participle expressing completion passively: as, *āmātūs ērām*, I existed (at some past time) having been (previously) loved; *i.e.* *I had been loved*. The participle, being an adjective in the predicate, agrees with the subject.

§ 107. VERBS IN *-IO* OF THE THIRD CONJUGATION.

Some verbs of the third conjugation insert *ǐ* before the ending in some of the parts formed on the present stem, as shown in the following paradigm of *cǎpěřě*, to take.

[illegible]

The parts on the perfect and supine stems do not vary from the usual formation.

EXERCISE XLIV.

(Some verbs which insert Ī.)

cāp-i-ō, cāp-ērē, cēp-i, capt-ūm, to take.

rē-cīp-i-ō, rēcīp-ērē, rēcēp-i, rēcept-ūm, to take back.

sē rēcīpērē, to take one's self back, to retreat.

ac-cīp-i-ō, accīp-ērē, accēp-i, accept-ūm, to take to one's self, to receive.

cūp-i-ō, cūp-ērē, cūpīv-i, cūpīt-ūm, to desire.

fāc-i-ō, fāc-ērē, fēc-i, fact-ūm, to do, to make.

con-fīc-i-ō, confīc-ērē, confēc-i, confect-ūm, to finish.

rāp-i-ō, rāp-ērē, rāpu-i, raptūm, to seize, carry off.

dī-rīp-i-ō, dirīp-ērē, dirīp-uī, dirept-ūm, to plunder.

Remark 1.—The imperative present active second singular of *fācio* is *fāc*, and the passive is supplied by the irregular verb *fio* (§ 111, 7). The compounds which change *ā* into *ī* have the regular passive: as, *conficior*, *conficī*, *confectus*: but those which retain the *ā* have the irregular passive: as, *pātēfācio*, passive *pātēfio*, *pātēfieri*, *pātēfactus*. The compounds with prepositions change *ā* into *ī*; those with verb-stems retain the *ā*; compounds with noun-stems are mostly of the first conjugation: as, *ædifico*, *nīdifico*, etc.

Translate into English and analyze.

Germānī ānimāliā (39) quæ bellō cēpērant diīs mac-tābant. Nostri īn hostēs impētūm fēcērunt, atquē eōs (§ 83, 1) īn fūgām dēdērunt. Helvētiī pēr Sēquānōrūm finēs ītēr fāciēbant. Hostēs, quī pēr prōvinciām ītēr ten-tāvērant, īn finēs suōs sē rēcēpērunt. Cēsār āb Helvētiīs obsidēs ēt armā accēpērāt. Impērātōr aurūm quōd ā rēgē accēpērāt, milītībūs dēdīt. Milītēs prōliūm fācērē cūpī-vērunt. Cēsār dēcēm diēbūs pontēm confēcīt. Rōmānī virgīnēs Sābīnōrūm rāpuērunt. Hostēs atrōcēs tōtām urbēm dirīpient.

Translate into Latin.

The enemy will retreat from the mountain to the river. The king will lay waste the country (*āgrōs*) which he has conquered, with fire and sword. Our horsemen had made an attack upon the enemy's footmen. The forces of the enemy, that were making a journey through our province, plundered many villages. The lieutenant, with five legions which he had received from Cæsar, hastened into the boundaries of the Æduans. The consul will not finish the bridge in six days. The general desires to make an end of the war.

For peculiarities of tense-formation and conjugation, and composition of verbs, see Appendix.

EXERCISE XLV.

§ 108. THE PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.

1. The same idea may be expressed both in the active and the passive form: as, *Helvētī lēgātōs mittunt*, the Helvetians send ambassadors; or, *lēgātī āb Helvētīs mittuntūr*, ambassadors are sent by the Helvetians.

2. The *object* in the active becomes the *subject* in the passive; and the *subject* in the active is expressed by the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *āb*. (ABLATIVE OF THE AGENT.)

Remark 1.—If the ablative expresses, not the agent, or *doer* of the action, but only the *cause*, *means*, *instrument*, the preposition will not be used: as, *stīmūlūs bōvēm concītāt*, the goad urges on the ox; passive, *bōs stīmūlō concītātūr*, the ox is urged on with the goad.

Remark 2.—As intransitive verbs have no object in the active, they are not used personally in the passive, except with a cognate or equivalent subject. See § 150, *Remarks 1, 2.*

3. *Rule of Syntax.*—Verbs which in the active take another case in addition to the object-accusative, in the passive retain that other case: as, *māgistēr puērō librūm dāt*; *passive*, *libēr puērō ā māgistrō dātūr*.

Translate into English and analyze.

Rēgīnā āb ancillīs āmātūr. Māgistēr bōnūs āb omnībūs puērīs āmābītūr. Tuæ sālūtīs causā (§ 29, 1) mōnērīs. Pātēr ā filiō suō āmātūs est. Templūm dē marmōrē (§ 40) āb impērātōrē ædificātūm est. Leō quī īn silvā ā servīs vīsūs est, multōs hōmīnēs lāniāvērāt. Galliā est omnīs dīvīsā īn partēs trēs, Helvētīi unā ex partē flūmīnē Rhēnō, altissimō atquē lātissimō, continentūr. Lēgiōnēs quæ īn prōvinciā conscriptæ sunt, ā Cæsārē ex hībernīs ēdūcentūr. Quīdām ex mīlītībūs magnītūdīnē pēricūlī perterrītī sunt. Castrā tribūs diēbūs (§ 66, 2) ā consulē mōvēbītūr. Imprōbī omnēs ā deō pūnientūr. Hæc ā nōbīs audītā sunt.

Translate into Latin.

(Change each of the foregoing exercises from the passive to the active construction.)

DEPONENT VERBS.

§ 109. 1. Deponent verbs are such as have a passive form with an active meaning.

They are called *deponent* (laying aside) because they *lay aside* their active form and passive meaning.

2. They are inflected throughout like passive verbs, and have also the gerund, participles, and supine of the active voice. The perfect and future passive participles, the infinitive-future passive, and the latter supine, have also a passive meaning.

PARADIGMS.

First Conj. mîr-ör, mîr-ārī, mîr-āt-ūs, *to admire.*

Second Conj. făt-eör, făt-ērī, fass-ūs, *to confess.*

Third Conj. { ūt-ör, ūt-ī, ūs-ūs, *to use.*
păt-i-ör, păt-ī, pass-ūs, *to suffer.*

Fourth Conj. mēt-iör, mēt-īrī, mens-ūs, *to measure.*

INDICATIVE.

Present.	mîr-ör, <i>I admire.</i>	făt-eör, <i>I confess.</i>	ūt-ör, <i>I use.</i>	păt-i-ör, <i>I suffer.</i>	mēt-iör, <i>I measure.</i>
Imperf.	mîr-ābăr, <i>I was admiring.</i>	făt-ēbăr, <i>I was confessing.</i>	ūt-ēbăr, <i>I was using.</i>	păt-i-ēbăr, <i>I was suffering.</i>	mēt-iēbăr, <i>I was measuring.</i>
Future.	mîr-ābör, <i>I shall admire.</i>	făt-ēbör, <i>I shall confess.</i>	ūt-är, <i>I shall use.</i>	păt-i-är, <i>I shall suffer.</i>	mēt-iär, <i>I shall measure.</i>
Pres. Perf.	mîrāt-ūs süm, <i>I have admired.</i>	fass-ūs süm, <i>I have confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs süm, <i>I have used.</i>	pass-ūs süm, <i>I have suffered.</i>	mens-ūs süm, <i>I have measured.</i>
Past-Perf.	mîrāt-ūs őrăm, <i>I had admired.</i>	fass-ūs őrăm, <i>I had confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs őrăm, <i>I had used.</i>	pass-ūs őrăm, <i>I had suffered.</i>	mens-ūs őrăm, <i>I had measured.</i>
Fut. Perf.	mîrāt-ūs őrö, <i>I shall have admired.</i>	fass-ūs őrö, <i>I shall have confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs őrö, <i>I shall have used.</i>	pass-ūs őrö, <i>I shall have suffered.</i>	mens-ūs őrö, <i>I shall have measured.</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Present.	mîr-ēr, <i>I may admire.</i>	făt-eär, <i>I may confess.</i>	ūt-är, <i>I may use.</i>	păt-i-är, <i>I may suffer.</i>	mēt-iär, <i>I may measure.</i>
Imperf.	mîr-arēr, <i>I might admire.</i>	făt-ērēr, <i>I might confess.</i>	ūt-ērēr, <i>I might use.</i>	păt-ērēr, <i>I might suffer.</i>	mēt-īrēr, <i>I might measure.</i>
Pres. Perf.	mîrāt-ūs sım, <i>I may have admired.</i>	fass-ūs sım, <i>I may have confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs sım, <i>I may have used.</i>	pass-ūs sım, <i>I may have suffered.</i>	mens-ūs sım, <i>I may have measured.</i>
Past-Perf.	mîrāt-ūs es-sēm, <i>I might have admired.</i>	fass-ūs es-sēm, <i>I might have confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs essēm, <i>I might have used.</i>	pass-ūs es-sēm, <i>I might have suffered.</i>	mens-ūs es-sēm, <i>I might have measured.</i>

IMPERATIVE.					
Present.	mīr-ārē, <i>admire thou.</i>	fāt-ērē, <i>confess thou.</i>	ūt-ērē, <i>use thou.</i>	pāt-ērē, <i>suffer thou.</i>	mēt-īrē, <i>measure thou.</i>
Future.	mīr-ātōr, <i>thou shalt admire.</i>	fāt-ētōr, <i>thou shalt confess.</i>	ūt-ītōr, <i>thou shalt use.</i>	pāt-ītōr, <i>thou shalt suffer.</i>	mēt-ītōr, <i>thou shalt measure.</i>
INFINITIVE.					
Present.	mīr-ārī, <i>to admire.</i>	fāt-ērī, <i>to confess.</i>	ūt-ī, <i>to use.</i>	pāt-ī, <i>to suffer.</i>	mēt-īrī, <i>to measure.</i>
Perfect.	mīrāt-ūs essē, <i>to have admired.</i>	fass-ūs essē, <i>to have confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs essē, <i>to have used.</i>	pass-ūs essē, <i>to have suffered.</i>	mens-ūs essē, <i>to have measured.</i>
Future.	mīrāt-ūrūs es-sē, <i>to be about to admire.</i>	fass-ūrūs es-sē, <i>to be about to confess.</i>	ūs-ūrūs es-sē, <i>to be about to use.</i>	pass-ūrūs es-sē, <i>to be about to suffer.</i>	mens-ūrūs es-sē, <i>to be about to measure.</i>
	mīrāt-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be admired.</i>	fass-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be confessed.</i>	ūs-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be used.</i>	pass-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be suffered.</i>	mens-ūm īrī, <i>to be about to be measured.</i>
Fut. Perf.	mīrāt-ūrūs fu-issē, <i>to have been about to admire.</i>	fass-ūrūs fu-issē, <i>to have been about to confess.</i>	ūs-ūrūs fu-issē, <i>to have been about to use.</i>	pass-ūrūs fu-issē, <i>to have been about to suffer.</i>	mens-ūrūs fu-issē, <i>to have been about to measure.</i>
PARTICIPLES.					
Present.	mīr-ans, <i>admiring.</i>	fāt-ens, <i>confessing.</i>	ūt-ens, <i>using.</i>	pāt-i-ens, <i>suffering.</i>	mēt-i-ens, <i>measuring.</i>
Perfect.	mīrāt-ūs, <i>having admired.</i>	fass-ūs, <i>having confessed.</i>	ūs-ūs, <i>having used.</i>	pass-ūs, <i>having suffered.</i>	mens-ūs, <i>having measured.</i>
Future.	mīrāt-ūrūs, <i>about to admire.</i>	fass-ūrūs, <i>about to confess.</i>	ūs-ūrūs, <i>about to use.</i>	pass-ūrūs, <i>about to suffer.</i>	mens-ūrūs, <i>about to measure.</i>
Fut. Pass.	mīr-andūs, <i>to be admired.</i>	fat-endūs, <i>to be confessed.</i>	ūt-endūs, <i>to be used.</i>	pat-i-endūs, <i>to be suffered.</i>	mēt-iendūs, <i>to be measured.</i>
GERUND.					
	mīr-andī, <i>of admiring.</i>	fāt-endī, <i>of confessing.</i>	ūt-endī, <i>of using.</i>	pāt-i-endī, <i>of suffering.</i>	mēt-iendī, <i>of measuring.</i>
SUPINE.					
	mīrāt-ūm, mīrāt-ū.	fass-ūm, fass-ū.	ūs-ūm, ūs-ū.	pass-ūm, pass-ū.	mens-ūm, mens-ū.

3. The verbs *audeo*, I dare, *fīdo*, I trust, *gaudeo*, I delight, and *sōleo*, I am accustomed, want the perfect stem. The perfect tenses have a passive form, but an active meaning: as, *ausūs sūm*, I have dared; *fīsūs sūm*, I have trusted; *gavīsūs sūm*, I have rejoiced; *sōlītūs sūm*, I have been accustomed.

4. Here may also be observed the verbs *vāpūlo*, I am beaten; *vēneo*, I am sold; and *fīo*, I am made; which have an active form with a passive meaning.

5. Many deponents have a middle force: as, *prōfiscor*, I begin to put myself forward, *i.e.* I set out; *ūtōr*, I employ myself (with a thing), *i.e.* I use (a thing).

EXERCISE XLVI.

§ 110. Vocabulary.

mōr-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, to delay.
cōn-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, to attempt.
pōpūl-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, to plunder.
hort-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, to exhort.
īmīt-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, to imitate.
tu-eōr, -ērī, tūtūs and tūtūs, to protect.
confīt-eōr, -ērī, confess-ūs, to confess.
sēqu-ōr, sēquī, sēcūt-ūs, to follow.
uleisc-ōr, -ī, ultūs, to avenge.
pāt-i-ōr, pāt-ī, pass-ūs, to endure, suffer, permit.
con-grēd-i-ōr, congrēd-ī, congress-ūs, to meet; in a hostile sense, to contend.

frūmentāriūs, -ā, -ūm, of corn.
rēs frūmentāriā, provisions.
publicūs, -ā, -ūm, public.
privātūs, -ā, -ūm, private.
mors, mort-īs, death.
supplicium, -ī, punishment.
peccātum, -ī, fault, sin.
āmōr, -ōr-īs, love.
scēlūs, -ēr-īs, crime, wickedness.
causā, -æ, cause; abl., for the sake of.
paucī, -æ, -ā, few.
ment-iōr, -īrī, -ītūs, to lie.
mēt-iōr, -īrī, mens-ūs, to measure.

Translate into English and analyze.

Cæsār īn hōc oppidō paucōs diēs (§ 66, 2) reī frūmentāriæ causā mōrābātūr. Flūmīnā, quæ rēcentībūs imbrībūs auctā sunt (see *augērē*), multōs diēs consulēm mōrābuntūr.

Helvētiī in Æduōrūm finēs pervēnerant, eōrumquē āgrōs popūlābantūr. Hostēs pēr prōvinciām nostrām itēr facēre cōnātī ērant. Impērātōr fortīs milītēs hortātūs est. Lībērī non sempēr virtūtēm pārentiūm imitantūr. Quī suōs libērōs nōn tuētūr (§ 87, 7), hōmō est turpissimūs. Turpē est mentīrī. Nonnē scēlērā tuā confessūs ēs? Equitēs nostrī hostēs ad flūmēn sēcūtī sunt. Hīc latrō grāvissimūm supplicīūm pātiētūr. Cūm Cīcērōnē sēpē in urbē congressūs sūm. Hāc in rē Cēsār publicās ac prīvātās injūriās ultūs est.

Translate into Latin.

A wise man always confesses his faults. Davus confessed his love for (*use gen.*) the maid-servant. The brave son will avenge his father's death. Our skirmishers delayed the journey of the enemy many hours. The prudent consul will not suffer the enemy to lead their forces through the most fertile part of Gaul. To lie is the basest of all things. The thief had confessed all his crimes. The general on the sixth day measured (out) corn to the soldiers. It is easier to imitate vice than virtue. The Æduans, having contended with Ariovistus, king of the Germans, were conquered. Our men will attempt to follow the enemy through the forest.

IRREGULAR VERBS.

§ 111. 1. Irregular verbs do not use, in some of their parts formed from the present-stem, the endings of either of the four conjugations. The forms called irregular are, for the most part, either syncopated or ancient forms. *The tenses formed on the perfect and the supine stems are alike in all verbs.*

2. The irregular verbs are, *essě*, to be; *vellě*, to be willing; *ferrě*, to bear; *ěděrě* or *essě*, to eat; *fierī*, to be made, to become; *īrě*, to go; *quīrě*, to be able; and their compounds.

3. *Völ-o*, *vel-lě*, *völ-u-ī*, to wish, to be willing.

INDICATIVE.

- Present*, *völ'-ō*, *vīs*, *vult*;
 völ'-ū-mūs, *vul'-tīs*, *völ'-unt*.
Imperfect, *völ'-ě-bām*, *völ'-ě-bās*, etc. (*regular*).
Future, *völ'-ām*, *völ'-ēs*, etc. (*reg.*)
Pres. Perf. *völ'-u-ī*, *-is'-tī*, *-īt*, etc. (*reg.*)
Past Perf. *völ'-u'-ěrām*, *-ěrās*, etc. (*reg.*)
Fut. Perf. *völ'-u'-ěrō*, *-ěrīs*, etc. (*reg.*)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

- Present*, *věl'-īm*, *věl'-īs*, *věl'-īt*;
 věl'-ī'-mūs, *věl'-ī'-tīs*, *věl'-int*.
Imperfect, *vel'-lēm*, *vel'-lēs*, *vel'-lēt*;
 vel'-lē'-mūs, *vel'-lē'-tīs*, *vel'-lent*.
Pres. Perf. *völ'-u'-ěrīm*, *-ěrīs*, *-ěrīt*, etc. (*reg.*)
Past Perf. *völ'-u-is'-sēm*, *-is'-sēs*, (*reg.*)

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLE.

- | | | |
|---|--|--|
| <i>Present</i> , <i>vel'-lē</i> . | | <i>Pres.</i> <i>völ'-ens</i> (<i>reg.</i>) |
| <i>Perfect</i> , <i>völ'-u-is'-sě</i> (<i>reg.</i>) | | |

NOTE.—*Völo* is a verb of the third conjugation, the present-stem being *věl-*, *völ-*, or *vül-*. The forms *vīs*, *vult*, and *vultīs* are synco-pated from *věl-īs*, *völ-īt*, and *völ-ītīs*, interchanging *ū* for *ō*. The ending *ūmūs* is an old form for *īmūs*. *Vellě* and *vellēm* are synco-pated forms of *věl-ěrě* and *věl-ěrēm*, *ě* being elided, and *r* passing into *l* for euphony: *věl-ě-rě*, *vel-rě*, *vel-lě*; *věl-ě-rēm*, *vel-rēm*, *vel-lēm*.

The endings *īm*, *īs*, *īt*, etc. of the subjunctive present are old forms found also in *sīm*, *sīs*, etc., *ědīm*, *ědīs*, etc. (See § 224, 2.)

4. *Nōlo* is compounded of *nē* or *nōn*, and *vōlo*.

Nōl-o, *nol-lě*, *nōl-u-ī*, to be unwilling.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present</i> ,	<i>nōl'-ō</i> , <i>non'-vīs</i> , <i>non'-vult</i> ; <i>nōl'-ŭ-mūs</i> , <i>non-vul'-tīs</i> , <i>nōl'-unt</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	<i>nōl'-ě-bām</i> , <i>-ě'-bās</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Future</i> ,	<i>nōl'-ām</i> , <i>-ēs</i> , <i>-ět</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>nōl'-u-ī</i> , <i>is'-tī</i> , <i>-īt</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>nōl-u'-ěrām</i> , <i>-ěrās</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>nōl-u'-ěrō</i> , <i>-ěrīs</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present</i> ,	<i>nōl'-īm</i> , <i>nōl'-īs</i> , <i>nōl'-īt</i> ; <i>nōl'-ī'-mūs</i> , <i>nōl'-ī'-tīs</i> , <i>nōl'-int</i> .
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	<i>nol'-lēm</i> , <i>nol'-lēs</i> , <i>nol'-lět</i> ; <i>nol-lě'-mūs</i> , <i>nol-lě'-tīs</i> , <i>nol'-lent</i> .
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>nōl-u'-ěrīm</i> , <i>-ěrīs</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>nōl-u-is'-sem</i> , <i>is'-sēs</i> , etc. (<i>reg.</i>)

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Present</i> , 2. <i>nōl'-ī</i> ,	2. <i>nōl'-ī'-tě</i> .
<i>Future</i> , 2. <i>nōl'-ī'-tō</i> ,	2. <i>nōl-ī-tō'-tě</i> ,
3. <i>nōl'-ī'-tō</i> ;	3. <i>nōl-un'-tō</i> .

INFINITIVE.

Present, *nōl'-lě*.
Perfect, *nol-u-is'-sě* (*reg.*)

PARTICIPLE.

Present, *nōl'-ens* (*reg.*)

NOTE.—The same remarks apply to *nōlo* as to its primitive *vōlo*. The *n* and *v* are dropped, a contraction ensues, and hence the first

syllable is always long: *no(n-v)ŏlo, no-ŏlo, nŏlo*. The uncontracted form is retained in the second and third singular and second plural of the indicative present. The imperative endings *ī, ī ē, īlo*, etc. are irregular, belonging properly to the fourth conjugation.

5. *Mālo* is compounded of *mā-* (the root of *māgīs*), more, and *vŏlo*.

Mālo, mal-lě, māl-u-ī, to prefer, to be more willing.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>māl'-ŏ, māl'-vīs, māl'-vult ;</i> <i>māl'-ŭmŭs, māl'-vul'-tīs, māl'-unt.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	<i>māl'-ē'-bām, -ē'-bās, etc. (reg.)</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>māl'-ām, -ēs, -ēt, etc. (reg.)</i>
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>māl'-u-ī, -is'-tī, -īt, etc. (reg.)</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>māl'-u'-ērām, -ērās, etc. (reg.)</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>māl'-u'-ērŏ, -ērīs, etc. (reg.)</i>

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>māl'-īm, māl'-īs, māl'-īt ;</i> <i>māl'-ī'-mŭs, māl'-ī'-tīs, māl'-int.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	<i>mal'-lēm, mal'-lēs, mal'-lēt ;</i> <i>mal'-lē'-mŭs, mal'-lē'-tīs, mal'-lent.</i>
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>māl'-u'-ērīm, -ērīs, -ērīt, etc. (reg.)</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>māl'-u-is'-sēm, -is'-sēs, etc. (reg.)</i>

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present, mal'-lě.</i>		<i>Perfect, māl-u-is'-sě.</i>
--------------------------	--	-------------------------------

NOTE.—*Mālo* is formed in the same manner with *nŏlo*, and its first syllable is long for the same reason.

6. *Fěr-o* is a verb of the third conjugation, which has become irregular by syncopation: as, *fers* for *fěr-īs*; *fer-tis* for *fěr-ī-tis*; *fer-rě* for *fěr-ě-rě*; *fer-rēm* for *fěr-ě-rem*; *fěr* for *fěr-ě*; *fer-tě* for *fěr-ī-tě*; *fer-rěr* for *fěr-*

ě-rěr, etc. The perfect and supine stems are taken from the obsolete *tŭl-o* (whence *tollo*) and *tla-o* (*tla-*, by metathesis *lat-*).

ACTIVE VOICE.

Fěr-o, *fer-rě*, *tŭl-ī*, *lāt-ŭm*, *to carry*.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present</i> ,	<i>fěr'-ō</i> , <i>fers</i> , <i>fert</i> ; <i>fěr'-īmŭs</i> , <i>-tīs</i> , <i>-unt</i> .	<i>fěr'-ām</i> , <i>-ās</i> , etc.
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	<i>fěr'-ě'-bām</i> , <i>-ě'-bās</i> , etc.	<i>fer'-rēm</i> , <i>-rēs</i> , <i>-rět</i> ; <i>fer-rě'-mŭs</i> , <i>rě'-tīs</i> , <i>-rent</i> .
<i>Future</i> ,	<i>fěr'-ām</i> , <i>-ēs</i> , etc.	
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>tŭl'-ī</i> , <i>-is'-tī</i> , etc.	<i>tŭl'-ěrīm</i> , <i>-ěrīs</i> , etc.
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>tŭl'-ěrām</i> , <i>-ěrās</i> , etc.	<i>tŭl-is'-sēm</i> , <i>-is'-sēs</i> , etc.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>tŭl'-ěrō</i> , <i>-ěrīs</i> , etc.	

IMPERATIVE.

INFINITIVE.

<i>Present</i> ,	2. <i>fěr</i> ; 2. <i>fer'-tě</i> .	<i>Perf. fer-rě</i> , <i>Perf. tŭl-is'-sě</i> ,
<i>Future</i> ,	2. <i>fer'-tō</i> , 3. <i>fer'-tō</i> ; 2. <i>-tō'-tē</i> , 3. <i>-un'-tō</i> .	<i>Fut. lāt-ŭr'-ŭs essě</i> .

PARTICIPLES.

GERUND. *fěr-en'-dī*.

Present, *fěr'-ens*,
Future, *lāt-ŭr'-ŭs*.

SUPINE. { *lāt'-ŭm*,
lāt'-ŭ.

PASSIVE VOICE.

Fěr'-ōr, *fer'-rī*, *lāt'-ŭs*, *to be carried*.

INDICATIVE.

<i>Present</i> ,	<i>fěr'-ōr</i> , <i>-rīs or -rě</i> , <i>-tŭr</i> . <i>Pl. fěr'-īmŭr</i> , etc.
<i>Imperfect</i> ,	<i>fěr'-ě'-bār</i> , <i>-ě-bā'-rīs</i> , etc.
<i>Future</i> ,	<i>fěr'-ār</i> , <i>-ě'-rīs</i> , etc.
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>lāt'-ŭs sŭm</i> , etc.
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>lāt'-ŭs ě'-rām</i> , etc.
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>lāt'-ŭs ě'-rō</i> , etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>fēr'-ār, -ā'-rīs, etc.</i>
<i>Imperfect,</i>	<i>fer-rēr, -rē'-rīs or -rē'-rě, -rē'-tūr ;</i> <i>fer-rē'-mūr, -rēm'-īnī, -ren'-tūr.</i>
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>lāt'-ūs sīm, etc.</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>lāt'-ūs es'-sēm, etc.</i>

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	2. <i>fer'-rě ;</i>	<i>Future,</i>	2. <i>fer'-tör, 3. fer'-tör ;</i>
	2. <i>fēr-īm'-īnī.</i>		2. <i>(fer-īm'-īnī), 3. fēr-un'-tör.</i>

INFINITIVE.

PARTICIPLES.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>fer'-rī.</i>	
<i>Future,</i>	<i>lāt'-ūm ī'-rī.</i>	<i>fēr-en'-dūs.</i>
<i>Perfect,</i>	<i>lāt'-ūs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.</i>	<i>lāt'-ūs.</i>

7. *Fī-o* is used as the passive of *fācio*. It is originally an intransitive verb of the fourth conjugation, using only those parts formed from the present-stem. It differs from other verbs of the fourth conjugation only in not absorbing *e* in the infinitive present and subjunctive imperfect.

Fī-o, fī-ērī, fact-ūs, to be done, to be made, to become.

INDICATIVE.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

<i>Present,</i>	<i>fī'-ō, fīs, fīt ;</i> <i>fī'-mūs, fī'-tīs, fī'-unt.</i>	<i>fī'-ām, -ās, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>fī'-ē'-bām, -ē'-bās, etc.</i>	<i>fī'-ērēm, -ērēs, etc.</i>
<i>Future,</i>	<i>fī'-ām, -ēs, etc.</i>	
<i>Pres. Perf.</i>	<i>fact'-ūs sūm, etc.</i>	<i>fact'-ūs sīm, etc.</i>
<i>Past Perf.</i>	<i>fact'-ūs ē'-rām, etc.</i>	<i>fact'-ūs es'-sēm, etc.</i>
<i>Fut. Perf.</i>	<i>fact'-ūs ē'-rō, etc.</i>	

IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLES.
<i>Pres.</i> fī, fī'-tě.	fī'-ěri.	
<i>Fut.</i>	fact'-ŭm ī'-rī.	făc-i-en'-dŭs.
<i>Perf.</i>	fact'-ŭs es'-sě or fu-is'-sě.	fact'-ŭs.

8. *Ed-ěre*, to eat, is a regular verb of the third conjugation ; but, in addition to the regular tense-forms, it has some forms similar to the corresponding tense-forms of *essě*, to be, viz. :—

INDICATIVE PRES.	SUBJUNCTIVE IMPERF.
<i>S.</i> ěd'-ō, ěd'-īs or ěs, ěd'-it or ěd'-ěrem or es'-sem, ěd-ěres est ;	or es'-sēs, ěd'-ěret or es'-set.
<i>P.</i> ěd'-īmŭs, ěd'-ītīs or es'-tīs, ěd-ě-rě'-mŭs or es-sě'-mŭs, ěd-ě-rě'-tīs or es-sě'-tīs, ěd'-ěrent or es'-sent.	

IMPERATIVE.

<i>Pres. S.</i> ěd-ě	<i>P.</i> ěd'-itě or	<i>Fut. S.</i> ěd'-itō	<i>P.</i> ěd-ī-tō'-tě or
or ěs.	es'-tě.	or es'-tō.	es-tō'-tě, ěd-un'-tō.

INFINITIVE PRES.

PASSIVE.

ěd'-ěre or es'-sě.

Indic. Pres. ěd'-itŭr or es'-tŭr.

Subj. Imp. ěd-ě-rě'-tŭr or es-sě'-tŭr.

NOTE.—The irregular forms of this verb are syncopations of the regular ones. Thus, *ěd-īs*, *ed-s* (dropping *d* before *s*), *ēs* ; *ěd-it*, *ěd-t* (changing *d* before *t* into *s*), *est*. In *ěderem*, etc., *ě* is elided, *d* before *r* passes into *s*, and *r* of the ending is assimilated with the last letter of the stem as in *vel-lě* :—*ěd-ě-rēm*, *ed-rēm*, *es-rēm*, *essēm*. The forms *ědīm*, *ědīs*, etc., are found in the subjunctive present. See § 224, 2.

9. *Irě*, to go, in most of its parts has the endings of the fourth conjugation. The radical *i* is replaced by *e*

in the indicative present, first singular and third plural ; in the subjunctive present ; in the oblique cases of the present participle ; and in the gerund.

Eo, irě, ivī, itūm, to go.

	INDICATIVE.	SUBJUNCTIVE.
<i>Pres.</i>	<i>e'-ō, is, it ; ī'-mūs, ī'-tīs, e'-unt.</i>	<i>e'-ām, -ās, -āt ; e-ā'-mūs, etc.</i>
<i>Imperf.</i>	<i>ī'-bām, ī'-bās, ī'-bāt ; ī-bām'-ūs, etc.</i>	<i>ī'-rēm, ī'-rēs, ī'-rēt ; ī-rē'-mūs, etc.</i>
<i>Fut.</i>	<i>ī'-bō, ī'-bīs, ī'-bīt ; ī'-bī-mūs, etc.</i>	
<i>Pres. P.</i>	<i>īv'-ī, iv-is'-tī, -īt ; īv'-īmūs, etc.</i>	<i>īv'-ērīm, -ērīs, -ērīt ; īv-ēr'-īmūs, etc.</i>
<i>Past P.</i>	<i>īv'-ērām, -ērās, -ērāt ; īv-ērā'-mūs, etc.</i>	<i>īv-is'-sēm, -is'-sēs, -is'-sēt ; īv-is-sē'-mūs, etc.</i>
<i>Fut. P.</i>	<i>īv'-ērō, ērīs, etc.</i>	

	IMPERATIVE.	INFINITIVE.	PARTICIPLE.
<i>Pres. ī ;</i>		<i>ī'-rě.</i>	<i>ī'-ens (gen. e-un'-tīs).</i>
	<i>ī'-tě.</i>		
<i>Fut. ī'-tō, ī'-tō ;</i>		<i>īt-ū'-rūs es'-sě. it-ū'-rūs.</i>	
	<i>ī-tō'-tě, e-un'-tō.</i>		
<i>Perf.</i>		<i>īv-is'-sě.</i>	

GERUND.

*e-un'-dī,
e-un'-do, etc.*

SUPINE.

itūm, itū.

10. *Quīrě*, to be able, and *něquīrě*, to be unable, are inflected like *irě*, but they have no imperative or gerund, and their participles are rarely used. The passive forms *quītūr, queuntūr, queātūr, queantūr, quītūs sūm, něquītūr*, and *něquītūm*, occur with a passive infinitive.

11. For the conjugation of *essě*, see § 100.

Like *essě* are conjugated its compounds, except *prō-sŭm* and *possŭm*.

12. *Prōsŭm* inserts a *d*, to relieve the pronunciation, wherever the simple verb begins with *ě*: as,

Ind. Pres. *prō'-sŭm, prōd'-ěs, prōd'-est*, etc.

“ *Imp.* *prōd'-ěram, prōd'-ěrās, prōd'-ěrāt*, etc.

13. *Possŭm* is compounded of *pōt-* (stem of *pōtis*), *able*, and *sŭm*, *t* before *s* passing into *s*. The *pōtis* is sometimes written separately, and is then usually indeclinable.

Possŭm, possě, pōtu-ī, I can, I am able.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. *pos'-sum, pōt'-ěs, pōt'-est;*
pos'-sŭmŭs, pōt-es'-tīs, pos'-sunt.

Imp. *pōt'-ěram, pōt'-ěrās, pōt'-ěrāt;*
pōt-ě-rā'-mŭs, etc.

Fut. *pōt'-ěrō, pōt'-ěrīs, pōt'-ěrīt;*
pōt-ěr'-īmŭs, -ěr'-ītīs, -ěrunt.

Perf. *pōt'-u-ī, -is'-tī, -īt;*
pōt-u'-īmŭs, etc.

Past P. *pōt-u'-ěram, -ěrās, -ěrāt;*
pōtu-ě-rā'-mŭs, etc.

Fut. P. *pōt-u'-ěrō, -ěrīs, -ěrīt;*
pōtu-ěr'-īmŭs, etc.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. *pos'-sīm, pos'-sīs, pos'-sīt;*
pos-sī'-mŭs, pos-sī'-tīs, pos'-sint.

Imp. *pos'-sēm, pos'-sēs, pos'-sēt;*
pos-sē'-mŭs, pos-sē'-tīs, pos'-sent.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Perf. pöt-*u'*-ëřim, -ëřis, -ëřit, etc.

Past Perf. pötu-*is'*-sëm, -*is'*-sës, -*is'*-sët, etc.

INFINITIVE.

Present, pos'-së.

Perfect, pötu-is'-së.

The participial form *pötens* is used only as an adjective.

§ 112. EXERCISE XLVII.

Puëřĩ pëř silvãm densãm ĩbant. Impëřätörës clärĩ captivös vënënö necäre nölunt. Æduĩ crüdëlitätëm Ariövistĩ, Germãnörũm rëgĩs, ferrë nön pötuërunť. Consũl urbëm dëfendëřë nön pötëřit. Cäsär hiëmë öpũs conficëřë cönäbĭťũr. Princeps pëř ämĭcös pötens fiëbät. Cäsär, cũm ĩis lëgiönĭbũs quäs ex hĭbernĭs ëduxëřät, ĩn Galliãm ĩřë contendĭť (*hastened*). In hęc cĭvĭtätë sunt triä milliä (§ 64, *Rem.* 9) hõmĭnũm quĩ armä ferrë possunt. Impëřätör ä milĭtĭbũs rex (§ 67, 3) factũs est. Nëmõ ünö dië säpiens fiëřĩ pötest. Nön quĩvis örätör præstantissimũs fiëřĩ pötest. Poëtä nascĭťũr, nön fĭť. Süperbiä nobĭlĭtätĭs ä plëbë ferrĩ nön pötest.

Translate into Latin.

Who can bear the cruelty of such a king? Can any one (*numquĩs*) bear the insolence (*insõlentiũ*) of this slave? Who is willing to be slain by a robber? We are unwilling to hold the farmer's bull by the horns. The citizens are unwilling to give their gold to that fellow (§ 84, *Rem.* 4). Who is unwilling to become rich and powerful? Some of the citizens will be unwilling to bear arms. The prudent leader will not go into the enemy's country (*finës*). Cicero was made consul by the best of the citizens. This

boy will become a distinguished poet in a few years. Who can suffer so great a punishment?

DEFECTIVE VERBS.

§ 113. 1. Defective verbs are such as want some of their parts.

2. There are many verbs which are not used in all the tenses. The following list contains such as are most defective:—

Odī, <i>I hate.</i>	Fārī, <i>to speak.</i>	Cēdō, <i>tell or give me.</i>
Cœpī, <i>I have begun.</i>	Quæso, <i>I beseech.</i>	Confī, <i>it is done.</i>
Mēmīnī, <i>I remember.</i>	Avē, <i>hail.</i>	Dēfī, <i>it is wanting.</i>
Aiō, <i>I say.</i>	Salvē, <i>hail.</i>	Infī, <i>he begins.</i>
Inquām, <i>I say.</i>	Apāgē, <i>begone.</i>	Ovāt, <i>he rejoices.</i>

Remark 1.—*Odī*, *cœpī*, and *mēmīnī* are used for the most part in the perfect tenses, and hence are sometimes called *preteritive* verbs.

	ōdī,	cœpī,	mēmīnī,
	ōdērām,	cœpērām,	mēmīnērām,
	ōdērō,	cœpērō,	mēmīnērō,
	ōdērīm,	cœpērīm,	mēmīnērīm,
	ōdissēm,	cœpissēm,	mēmīnissēm,
	ōdissē,	cœpissē,	mēmīnissē.
PART.	{ ōsūs,	cœptūs,	
	{ ōsūrūs,	cœptūrūs.	

DEP. FORM. ōsūs sūm.

IMP. mēmentō,
mēmentōtē.

Remark 2.—The passive form of *cœpī* (*cœptūs sūm*, etc.) is preferred with a passive infinitive: as, *urbs oppugnārī cœptā est*, the city began to be besieged.

Remark 3.—The tenses of *ōdī* and *mēmīnī*, though perfect in form, express incomplete action: thus, *ōdērām*, I hated; *ōdēro*, I shall hate; *mēmīnī*, I have kept in mind, *therefore* I remember; *mēmīnērām*, I remembered. The perfects *nōvī* and *consuēvī* have a similar meaning: thus, *nosco*, I find out, *nōvī*, I have

found out, *I know*; *consuesco*, *I accustom myself*, *consuēvī*, *I am accustomed*.

3. Ai-o, *I say*.

Ind. Pres. ai'-ō*, a'-īs, a'-īt; —, —, ai'-unt*.

Ind. Imperf. ai-ē'-bām, ai-ē'-bās, etc.

Subj. Pres. —, ai'-ās, ai'-āt; —, —, ai'-ant.

Imper. Pres. ai'-ī. *Part.* ai'-ens.

4. Inquām, *I say*, used only after one or more words of a quotation.

Ind. Pres. in'-quām, in'-quīs, in'-quīt; in'-quī-mūs, in'-quī-tīs, in'-qui-unt.

Ind. Imperf. —, —, in-qui-ē'-bāt or in-quī'-bāt; —, —, in-qui-ē'-bant.

Ind. Future, —, in'-qui-ēs, in'-qui-ēt; —, —, —.

Ind. Pres. Perf. —, in-quis'-tī, in'-quīt; —, —, —.

Subj. Pres. —, in'-qui-ās, in'-qui-āt; —, in-qui-ā'-tīs, in'-qui-ant.

Imper. —, in'-quē, in'-quī-to.

5. Fārī, *to speak*.

INDICATIVE.

Pres. —, —, fā'-tūr.

Fut. fā'-bōr, —, fāb'-ītūr.

Pres. Perf. fā'-tūs sūm, etc.

Past Perf. fā'-tūs ērām, etc.

IMPERATIVE.

fā'-rē.

INFINITIVE.

fā'-rī.

SUBJUNCTIVE.

Pres. Perf. fā'-tūs sīm, etc.

Past Perf. fā'-tūs es'-sēm, etc.

PARTICIPLES.

fan'-tīs, etc., *without nom.*

fā'-tūs, fan'-dūs.

GERUND, fan'-dī, etc.

SUPINE, fā'-tū.

* i between two vowels is pronounced like y: a'-yo, a'-yunt, a-ye'-bam,

Some other forms are used in the compounds, though all of them are defective.

6. Quæso (*old form of quæro*), *I beseech.*

Ind. Pres. quæso, —, quæs-īt; quæs-ūmūs, —, —.

Inf. Pres. quæs-ērě.

7. Avē, *hail!*

Imperative, avē, avētě, avětō. *Inf.* avērě.

8. Salvē, *hail!*

Imperative, salvē, salvētě, salvětō.

Inf. salvērě. *Ind. Fut.* salvēbīs.

9. Āpāgě, *begone.*

This is an old imperative, used as an interjection.

10. Čědo, *tell thou, give me.*

Imper. 2d Sing. čědō; *pl.* cettě, *contracted from* čědītě.

11. Confīt, *it is done.*

Ind. Pres. confīt. *Fut.* confīět.

Subj. Pres. confīāt. *Imperf.* confīērět. *Inf.* confīērī.

12. Děfīt, *is wanting.*

Indic. Pres. děfīt, děfīunt. *Fut.* děfīět.

Subj. Pres. děfīāt. *Inf.* děfīērī.

13. Infīt, *he begins.*

Indic. Pres. infīt, infīunt.

14. Ovāt, *he rejoices.*

Indic. Pres. ovāt. *Subj. Pres.* ovět. *Imperf.* ovārět.

15. To these may be added,—

fōrēm, fōrēs, fōrět, —, —, fōrent, same as *essēm*.

Inf. fōrě, same as *fūtūrūs essē*.

IMPERSONAL VERBS.

§ 114. 1. Verbs used only in the third person, and not admitting of a *personal* subject, are called *Impersonal*.

2. An infinitive, or a sentence used as a noun, is usually the subject of an impersonal verb in the active voice, and in the passive the verb may agree with the cognate notion understood: as, *ventūm est ā Cæsārē*, (a coming) was come by Cæsar. As the English language abhors a verb without a subject, the pronoun *it* is placed before an impersonal verb.

<i>Latin idiom.</i>	Becomes you to study,	} Dēcēt tē stūdērē.
<i>English idiom.</i>	<i>It</i> becomes you to study,	

3. The various tenses of impersonal verbs are formed by adding the endings of the third person singular to the proper tense-stem.

ENDINGS.

	FIRST CONJ.		SECOND CONJ.		THIRD CONJ.		FOURTH CONJ.	
	<i>Inf. Pres.</i> āř.		<i>Inf. Pres.</i> ěř.		<i>Inf. Pres.</i> ěř.		<i>Inf. Pres.</i> ěř.	
	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.	IND.	SUBJ.
<i>Pres.</i>	-ăt.	-ět.	-ět.	-eăt.	-īt.	-ăt.	-īt.	-iăt.
<i>Imp.</i>	-ābăt.	-ārět.	-ēbăt.	-ērět.	-ēbăt.	-ērět.	-iēbăt.	-irět.
<i>Fut.</i>	-ābīt.		-ēbīt.		-ět.		-iět.	
	<i>Ind. Pres. Perf.</i> -īt;		<i>Past Perf.</i> -ěrăt;		<i>Fut. Perf.</i> -ěrīt.			
	<i>Subj.</i> " " -ěrīt.		" " -issět.		<i>Inf.</i> " -issě.			

The pupil will add these endings to the stem:—

- 1st conj. jŭv-, (*perf.* jŭv-) of jŭv-ăt, *it pleases, delights.*
- 2d " dēc-, (*perf.* dēc-ŭ-) of dēc-ět, *it becomes.*
- 3d " conting-, (*perf.* contĭg-) of conting-īt, *it happens.*
- 4th " ěvĕn-, (*perf.* ěvĕn-) of ěvĕnīt, *it turns out, happens.*

4. Many verbs, not strictly impersonal, are used impersonally: as, *dēlectāt*, it delights.

5. Most *intransitive* and many *transitive* verbs are used impersonally in the passive voice, the agent being either omitted, or put in the ablative with the preposition *ā* or *āb*: as, *Helvētīū fortītēr pugnāvērunt*; passive, *āb Helvētīs fortītēr pugnātūm est*, the Helvetians fought bravely, or, it was fought bravely by the Helvetians.

EXERCISE XLVIII.

§ 115. Vocabulary.

vespēr, -ēr-ī, evening.

cālāmītās, -tāt-īs, disaster.

diū (adv.), a long time, long.

pecūniā, -æ, money, a bribe.

acrītēr (adv.), actively, fiercely.

āb utrisquē, by both parties.

utrimquē (adv.), on both sides.

eō, irē, ivī, itūm (§ 111, 9), to go.

vēn-iō, vēnī-rē, vēn-ī, vent-ūm, to come.

consūl-ō, -ērē, consūlu-ī, consult-ūm, to consult.

in-fērō, in-ferrē, in-tūl-ī, il-lāt-ūm, to bring upon, inflict.

pugn-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to fight.

Remark.—Impersonal verbs which are *transitive* in meaning have a direct object in the accusative.

Translate into English and analyze.

Lībērōs dēcēt părentēs suōs āmārē. Rēgēm nōn dēcēt lēgēs cīvītātīs viōlārē. Bellā magnā gērērē Rōmānōs dēlectābāt. Diū ēt acritēr āb utrisquē pugnātūm¹ est. Ab hōrā septimā ād vespērūm pugnātūm¹ ērāt. Eōdēm diē quō (§ 167) in finēs Sēquānōrūm ventūm est,¹ principēs Galliæ ād eūm convēnērunt. A consūlībūs dē rēpublicā consūltūm est.¹ Cantūm āviūm audirē poētām jūvāt. Tē nōn dēcēt nōbis bellūm inferrē. Dēlectāt-nē tē maxīmās (§ 72, 5) cālāmītātēs reīpublicæ intūlissē?

¹ 114, 5.

Translate into Latin.

It becomes masters to give food to their servants. It becomes no one (*nēmo*) to do an injury. It delights this wicked chief to burn prisoners with fire. It was fought fiercely by both parties from the fourth hour till (*to*) sunset. The noble chief will consult (*express it impersonally*) concerning the safety of the commonwealth. It does not become a judge to receive a bribe. This wicked centurion has brought a great disaster upon the army.

PARTICLES.

§ 116. Those parts of speech which are not inflected are called *particles*. They are *adverbs*, *prepositions*, *conjunctions*, and *interjections*.

ADVERBS.

§ 117. 1. An adverb is a word used to limit the meaning of a verb, adjective, or another adverb. Some adverbs also limit nouns.

2. In respect to form, adverbs are *primitive* or *derivative*.

3. In respect to meaning, adverbs may be divided into several classes: as,—

TEMPORAL, denoting time: as, *hōdiē*, to-day; *crās*, to-morrow.

LOCAL, denoting place: as, *ibi*, there; *indē*, thence.

MODAL, denoting manner: as, *běně*, well; *málně*, badly.

NEGATIVE: as, *nōn*, not; *ně-quiděm*, not even.

4. Some adverbs are also correlative, and such are derived from pronouns:—

DEMONSTRATIVE.	RELATIVE.	INTERROG.	INDEFINITE.
{ <i>ibi</i> , there. <i>Ibidem</i> , just there.	{ <i>ubi</i> , where. <i>ubicunque</i> , wherever.	<i>ubi</i> ? where?	{ <i>alicubi</i> , somewhere. <i>ubique</i> , everywhere <i>ubivis</i> , wherever <i>you please</i> . <i>alicunde</i> , from <i>somewhere</i> . <i>undique</i> , from all <i>sides</i> . <i>undevis</i> , from any- <i>where you please</i> . <i>aliquo</i> , to some <i>place</i> . <i>quovis</i> , <i>quolibet</i> , <i>whithersoever you</i> <i>please</i> .
{ <i>inde</i> , thence. <i>indedem</i> , from the <i>same place</i> .	{ <i>unde</i> , whence. <i>undecumque</i> , whence- <i>soever</i> .	<i>unde</i> ? whence?	
{ <i>eo</i> , to that place. <i>eodem</i> , to the same <i>place</i> .	{ <i>quo</i> , whither. <i>quodquo</i> , } whither- <i>quodcumque</i> , } soever.	<i>quo</i> ? whither?	
<i>tum</i> , then.	<i>cum</i> or <i>quum</i> , when.	_____	
_____	{ <i>quando</i> , when. <i>quandoque</i> , } when- <i>quandocumque</i> , } ever.	<i>quando</i> ? when?	{ <i>aliquando</i> , at some <i>time</i> . <i>quandolibet</i> , in <i>due time</i> .

5. Derivative adverbs are formed for the most part from adjectives and participles by adding *-ē* to the stem if the primitive be of the second declension; and *-itēr* (sometimes *-tēr*), if the primitive be of the third declension: as, *libēr*, free;—adverb, *libēr-ē*, freely; *brēvis*, short; *brēvitēr*, shortly.

6. Some adverbs are derived from nouns by adding *-tūs* or *-tīm* to the stem with a connecting vowel: as, *cæl-ī-tūs* (*cæl-ūm*), from heaven; *grēg-ā-tīm* (*grex*), in flocks.

7. Cases of nouns, adjectives, and pronouns are used as adverbs: as, *noctū*, by night; *multūm*, much; *multō*, by much; *eō* (old accusative, for *eōn*), to that place.

8. The adverbs derived from *aliūs*, when contrasted with themselves or with the forms of *aliūs*, have the same construction as their primitives. See § 56, *Rem*.

2. *Alit̃er* — *alit̃er*, *in one way*, — *in another*; *aliās* — *aliās*, *at one time*, — *at another*; *alit̃er aliīs lōquītūr*, *he talks one way to one, another way to another*.

9. Two negatives destroy each other: *as, non-nullī, some*.

EXERCISE XLIX.

§ 118. 1. *Rule of Syntax*.—Intransitive verbs, though they do not admit of a direct object, may have an indirect object in the dative.

2. *Rule of Syntax*.—The dative expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage any thing is, or is done. (DATIVE OF ADVANTAGE or DISADVANTAGE.)

3. *Rule of Position*.—The adverb usually precedes the word it limits; but *fērē* usually stands between the adjective and the noun: *as, omnēs fērē hōmīnēs*, almost all men.

NOTE.—Many verbs which are transitive in English are intransitive in Latin.

Vocabulary.

fort-ītēr (*fortis*), *bravely*.

cēlēr-ītēr (*cēlēr*), *swiftly*.

audac-tēr (*audax*), *boldly*.

grēg-ā-tīm (*grex*), *in flocks*.

paul-ā-tīm (*paulus*), *by degrees*.

nē-quidēm (the limited word being placed between), *not even*.

gēnēr-ā-tīm (*gēnūs*), *by tribes*.

beāt-ē (*beātus*), *happily*.

bēn-ē (*bōnūs*), *well*.

fēr-ē, *almost*.

fācīl-ē (*fācīlis*), *easily*.

sæpē, *frequently, often*.

rēpent-ē (*rēpens*), *suddenly*.

præcīpu-ē (*præcīpuūs*), *especially*.

phālanx, *phālang-īs* (*acc. sing.*

-ēm and *-ā*; *acc. pl. -ās*), *a phalanx*.

ac-cēd-ō, *accēd-ērē*, *access-ī*, *access-ūm*, *to come up*.

vīv-ō, *-ērē*, *vix-ī*, *vict-ūm*, *to live*.

constitu-ō, *-ērē*, *constitu-ī*, *constitūt-ūm*, *to establish, post*.

curr-ō, *-ērē*, *cūcurr-ī*, *curs-ūm*, *to run*.

prō-curr-ō, -ērē, prōcūcurr-ī and prōcurr-ī, prōcursūm, *to run forward.*

per-fring-ō, -ērē, perfrēg-ī, perfract-ūm, *to break through.*

pār-eō, -ērē, pārū-ī, pārīt-ūm (intr.), *to obey.*

indulg-eō, -ērē, indulg-ī, indult-ūm (intr.), *to indulge.*

nōc-eō, -ērē, nōcu-ī, nōcīt-ūm (intr.), *to hurt, injure.*

crēdō, crēd-ērē, crēdīd-ī, crēdīt-ūm (intr.), *to believe, trust.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Nostrī tōtūm diēm fortītēr pugnāvērant. Hostēs rēpentē cēlērīterquē prōcurrērunt. Quī bēnē vīvīt (§ 87, 7) beātē vīvīt. Omniā fērē ānīmālīā grēgātīm currunt. Impērātōr paulātīm exercītūm īn ūnūm lōcūm condūcēbāt. Nostrī faciļē hostiūm phalangēm perfrēgērunt. Filiūm dēcēt patri suō pārērē. Gallī cūm Germānīs sēpē contēdēbant. Nē Cēsār quīdēm hanc cīvītātēm vincērē pōtest. Milītēs ād mūrōs oppīdī audactēr accessērunt. Tūm Germānī cōpiās suās gēnērātīm constituērunt. Cēsār huic lēgiōnī prēcīpuē indulgērāt. Quīs nostrūm (§ 58, 3) istī (§ 84, *Rem. 4*) crēdīt? Num (81, 3) bōnūm dēlectāt āliīs nōcērē?

Translate into Latin.

To live well is to live happily. Wicked men always injure (*nōcērē*) themselves. Our men ran forward suddenly and swiftly, and easily routed the enemy's footmen. The cavalry of the Thracians came up boldly to the very (*ipsē*) gates of the city. I will not believe even the consul himself. The prudent general was unwilling to lead his army through the by-paths of the forest. This boy can easily swim across a very deep river. The enemy will not attempt to break through our line-of-battle.

COMPARISON OF ADVERBS.

§ 119. Adverbs derived from adjectives are generally compared like their primitives. The comparative is like the neuter comparative of the adjective; the superlative is formed from the superlative of the adjective by changing *ūs* into *e*: as, *fácilē, fáciliūs, fácilissimē; celerit̃er, celerius, celerrimē*.

Remark 1.—The superlative of the adverb sometimes ends in *ō* or *ūm*: as, *mēritissimō, prīmūm*.

Remark 2.—If the comparison of the adjective is irregular or defective, that of the adverb is so likewise: as, *benē, mēliūs, optimē; malē, pējūs, pessimē; pārūm, mīnūs, mīnimē; multūm, plūs, plūrīmūm; priūs, prīmō or prīmūm; ōciūs, ōcissimē; dētēriūs, dētērimē; pōtiūs, pōtissimē or pōtissimūm; mēritō, mēritissimō; sātis, sātiūs. Māgis, maximē, has no positive; and nūpēr, nūperrimē, has no comparative.*

Remark 3.—Notice also the following: *prōpē, prōpiūs, proximē; diū, diūtiūs, diūtissimē; sapē, sapiūs, sapissimē; sēcūs, sēcūs.*

PREPOSITIONS.

§ 120. Prepositions express the relation between a noun or pronoun and some other word.

1. Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative:—

ad, to, towards, at.	contrā, against.	pōnē, behind.
antē, before.	ergā, towards.	post, after, since.
adversūs, } against,	extrā, without, beyond.	prætēr, past, besides.
adversūm, } towards.	infrā, under, beneath.	prōpē, near.
apūd, at, with.	intēr, between, among.	proptēr, on account of.
circā, } around.	intrā, within.	sēcundūm, after, next to,
circūm, } around.	juxtā, next to.	according to.
circit̃er, about, near.	ob, for, on account of.	suprā, above.
cīs, } on this side.	pēnēs, in the power of.	trans, over, beyond.
citrā, } on the other side.	pēr, through.	ultrā, beyond.

2. Twelve prepositions are followed by the ablative:—

ā,	} <i>from, after, by.</i>	cōrām, <i>in presence of.</i>	pālām, <i>in presence of.</i>
āb,		cūm, <i>with.</i>	præ, <i>before, in comparison</i>
abs,	} <i>concerning.</i>	dē, <i>down from, after,</i>	<i>with.</i>
absquē, <i>but for.</i>			prō, <i>before, for, instead of.</i>
clām, <i>without the know-</i>	} <i>out of.</i>	ē,	sīnē, <i>without.</i>
<i>ledge of.</i>		ex,	tēnūs, <i>up to.</i>

3. Four prepositions are followed by the accusative, when *motion to a place* is implied; by the ablative, when *rest in a place* is implied:—

īn, *in, on; into, upon.*

sūpēr, *over, above.*

sūb, *under, near.*

sūbtēr, *under, beneath.*

Remark 1.—Clām is sometimes followed by the accusative.

Remark 2.—Tēnūs is placed after its case; and cūm is annexed to the ablative of the substantive personal and relative pronouns.

Remark 3.—A and ē are used only before consonants; āb and ex, before vowels and consonants.

Remark 4.—A preposition without its case is an adverb: as, ut *antē dictūm est*, *as was said before.*

EXERCISE L.

§ 121. Vocabulary.

*bēnē (adv.), *well.*

ullūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 56), *any.*

*mālē (adv.), *badly, unfortunately.*

nēquē (conj.), *and — not, neither.*

*pārūm (adv.), *little.*

cultūs, -ūs, *civilization.*

*māgīs (adv.), *more.*

hūmānītās, -tāt-īs, *refinement.*

*longē (adv.), *far.*

tēlūm, -ī, *a dart.*

*prōpē (adv.), *near.*

consiliūm, -ī, *wisdom, prudence.*

dūbitātiō, -ōn-īs, *doubt.*

plāc-eō, -ērē, plāc-uī, plācīt-ūm, *to please.*

dis-plīc-eō, -ērē, displicu-ī, displicīt-ūm, *to displease.*

fūg-i-ō, fūg-ērē, fūg-ī, fūgīt-ūm, *to flee.*

comme-ō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to go back and forth.*

dē-sist-ō, -ērē, destīt-ī, destīt-ūm, *to cease.*

ab-sūm, āb-essē, ab-fuī, ab-fūtūrūs, *to be away, distant.*

con-jīc-i-ō, con-jīc-ērē, conjēc-ī, conjēc-ūm, *to hurl.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Omniūm quī in Galliā hābitant, fortissimī sunt Belgæ. A cultū atquē hūmānitātē prōvinciæ longissimē absunt. Ad eōs mercātōrēs mīnimē sēpē commeant. Nōn mīnūs fortēs fuērunt Gallī quām Rōmānī. Hōrās (§ 153) sex acritēr utrimquē pugnātūm ērāt (§ 114, 5), nēquē hostēs nostrōrū impētū diūtius sustinērē pōtuērunt. Equitēs Ariōvistī prōpiūs accessērunt, ac lāpidēs tēlāquē in nostrōs conjēcērunt. Ariōvistūs māgis consiliō quām virtūtē Eduōs vīcīt.

Translate into Latin.

Without any doubt virtue is a more excellent thing (*præstantiūs*) than gold. This song displeases me (*dative*, § 118, 1) more than that (one) pleases me. The Belgians were farther away than the Æduans from the civilization and refinement of the Roman province. Through the whole night the enemy did not cease to flee. The boys came up nearer, and boldly hurled stones and darts upon the fierce wild boar. Which of us can fight without arms? Orgetorix was far the noblest and richest (man) among (*apud*) the Helvetians.

PREPOSITIONS IN COMPOSITION.

§ 122. Most prepositions are used as prefixes, in composition with other words. The following are called *inseparable* prepositions, because they are never found alone:—

ambī, or amb (ambō), around, about.

dī, or dīs, asunder.

rē, or rēd, again, back.

sē, apart, aside.

vē, not.

Remark.—*Cōn*, usually classed among the inseparable prepositions, is only another form of *cūm*.

EXERCISE LI.

Vocabulary.

haud (adv.), <i>not</i> .	Generally used	rēliquūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>remaining</i> .
with adverbs.		Belgæ rēliquī, <i>the rest of the Belgians</i> .
intēr sē, <i>among themselves, with one another, from one another</i> .		āēr, āēr-īs, <i>the air</i> .
Gallīcūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>Gallic</i> .		cœlūm, -ī (<i>pl. -ī or -ā</i>), <i>heaven</i> .
philōsōphūs, -ī, <i>philosopher</i> .		
jūb-eō, -ērē, juss-ī, juss-ūm, <i>to order</i> .		
con-vēn-iō, -īrē, convēn-ī, convent-ūm, <i>to come together</i> .		
con-dūc-ō, -ērē, condux-ī, conduct-ūm, <i>to lead together</i> .		
dif-fēr-ō, differrē, dis-tul-ī, dī-lāt-ūm, <i>to differ</i> .		
dis-sent-iō, -īrē, dissens-ī, dissens-ūm, <i>to differ in opinion, to disagree</i> .		
con-jung-ō, -ērē, conjunx-ī, con-junct-ūm, <i>to join</i> .		
con-jūr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, <i>to swear together, conspire</i> .		
sē-cēd-ō, -ērē, sēcēss-ī, sēcēss-ūm, <i>to secede, go apart</i> .		
sē-cern-ō, -ērē, secrēv-ī, secrēt-ūm, <i>to separate</i> .		

Translate into English and analyze.

Māgistēr hunc puērūm haud mīnūs quām fīliūm suūm āmat. Cæsār omnēs Gallīæ principēs ād sē convēnīrē (§ 86, 2) jussīt. Germānī nōn multūm (§ 66, 2) ā Gallīcā consuētūdīnē diffērunt. Exercītūs ūnūm īn lōcūm ā lēgātō paulātīm condūcēbātūr. Omnēs Belgæ īn armīs sunt, Germānīquē, quī cīs Rhēnūm incōlunt, sēsē cūm hīs conjunxērunt. Rēmī contrā pōpūlūm Rōmānūm cūm Belgīs reliquīs nōn conjūrāvērant. Aēr cœlūm ā terrīs sēcernīt. Philōsōphī dē nātūrā deōrūm intēr sē sempēr dissensērunt.

Translate into Latin.

The general ordered the first line (*āciēs*) to retreat to (*in*) the mountain. The common people frequently

seceded from the nobility. The shepherds had separated the sheep from the kids. The Remians differed in opinion from the rest of the Belgians. These wicked citizens are conspiring against the republic. The Germans will not easily break through our line. The enemy's forces are not far from the town. A lion differs much from a dog. The lieutenant had been ordered to cross the river.

CONJUNCTIONS.

§ 123. Conjunctions connect words and sentences. They are commonly divided into the following classes :

1. COPULATIVE, which connect things that are to be considered together—(*and*) : they are *ět*, *āc*, *atquě*, *něc*, *něquě*, *ětiām*, *quōquě*, *itěm*, and *itěděm*.

Remark 1.—*Et* connects things which are independent of each other, and of equal importance : as, *M. Pīsōně ět M. Messālā consūlibūs*. *Et* — *ět* is to be translated *both* — *and* : as, *ět rex ět rēgīnā*, “*both the king and the queen.*” It sometimes means *also*

Remark 2.—*Quě* (enclitic) introduces a mere appendage, the two constituting but one idea, and is rather adjunctive than copulative : as, *glādiūs pilisquě*—(*offensive armor*).

Remark 3.—*Atquě* (used before vowels or consonants) contracted into *āc* (used before consonants only) is compounded of *ād* and *quě*, and means *and in addition* : it usually introduces something of greater importance : as, *īn hostēs impētūm fēcīt atquě eōs fugāvīt*, “*—— and routed them too.*” *Cognostīně hōs versūs? Ac mēmōritěr*, “*—— and that, too, by heart.*” This peculiar force is often lost in *āc*, and it is used alternately with *ět* ; it is preferred in subdivisions, the main propositions being connected by *ět*. *Difficīlē est tantām causām ět diligentiā consēquī, ět mēmōriā complectī, ět ōrātiōně exprōměřě ět vōcě āc vīribūs sustīněřě*.

Remark 4.—*Něquě* or *něc* (*and not*), compounded of *ně* and *quě*, when repeated, is translated *neither* — *nor*. *Et nōn* is used instead when only one word, and not a whole sentence, is to be negatived : as, *pātiōř ět nōn mōlestě fěro*. *Et nōn* is frequently used also

when *et* precedes. *Nec nōn, nequē nōn*, the two negatives destroying each other, is equivalent to *et*, but is used, in classical prose, only to connect sentences, and the two words are separated.

Remark 5.—*Etiām (et-jam)* (also, even) has a wider meaning than *quōquē*, and adds a new circumstance, while *quōquē* is used when a thing of a similar kind is added.

Remark 6.—The copulative conjunctions are frequently omitted in animated discourse. *Cōpiās suās in proximū collēm subdūcīt, āciēm instruit*. This omission is called *asyndeton* (not-tied-together).

Remark 7.—*Itēm* and *itīdēm* are derived from *is*, and are properly adverbs; *just so, also*.

2. **DISJUNCTIVE**, which connect things that are to be considered separately (*either, or*): they are *aut, vėl, vě, sīvě, seu*, and the interrogative particle *ān*.

Remark 8.—*Aut (either, or)* expresses an essential difference in things, and ordinarily implies that one thing excludes another: as, *aut vivīt aut mortuū est*, “he is *either* living or dead.” *Aut* and *vě* serve to continue a negation, where in English we use *nor*: as, *Verrēs nōn Hōnōrī aut Virtūtī vōtā dēbēbāt*.

Remark 9.—*Věl*, on the other hand (akin to *vellē*), indicates a difference of expression merely, and is used where either of two or more things may be taken indifferently. *Conjunctiō tectōrū oppidū věl urbs appellātūr*,—a town or city (whichever you please). *Věl impērātōrē věl milītē mē ūtīmīnī*, “use me either as a commander or as a soldier.” When one of the alternatives is omitted, *věl* often has the sense of *even*. *Volo ūt oppēriārē sex diēs mōdō*.—*Věl sex mēnsēs oppēribōr*. “I wish you to wait six days only.”—“I will wait *even* six months,” *i.e.* six days or six months, if you choose. *Vě* is merely *věl* apocopated.

Remark 10.—*Sīvě, seu (or if, whether, or)*, is strictly either conditional or interrogative, and when used as a simple disjunctive always implies a doubt, at least in the earlier writers. Thus (Caesar, Bell. Gall.), *Sīvě cāsū, sīvě deōrū immortalīūm prōvidētia*. *Sīvě timōrē perterritī, sīvě spē sālūtis inductī* (“perhaps by one, perhaps by the other,—I do not know by which”).

Remark 11.—*An* (or) is used in double questions, usually after *utrūm* or the enclitic *nē*: as, *utrūm tāceām ān prædicēm?* or, *tāceamnē ān prædicēm?* shall I be silent or speak? But the first part of a double question is often omitted: as, *cūjūm pēcūs est hōc? ān Mēlibæi?* “whose flock is this? (is it somebody else’s or) Melibœus’s?” The later writers use *ān* in indirect questions in the sense of *whether*, without *utrūm* or *nē*; and it is very commonly so used after *nēscio*, *haud scio*, *dūbiūm est*, *dūbito*, *incertūm est*, etc., which may in such cases be translated *perhaps*: as, *contigīt tibi quōd haud scio ān nēmīnī*, “*there has happened to you what has perhaps happened to no one (else).*”

Remark 12.—The enclitic *nē* is sometimes used disjunctively in the latter part of a double question, instead of *ān*: as, *nēquē intēressē ipsosnē interfīciant impēdimentisnē exuant*, “and that it makes no difference whether they kill (the Romans) themselves, or strip them of their baggage.”

3. ADVERSATIVE, which express opposition of thought (*but*): they are *sēd*, *autēm*, *vērūm*, *vēro*, *āt* and its compounds, *tāmēn* and its compounds, and *cētērūm*.

Remark 13.—*Sēd* denotes strong and direct opposition, and usually sets aside what precedes. *Vērā dico, sēd nēquidquām, quōniām nōn vīs crēdērē*, “I speak truth, but to no purpose, since you will not believe me.” *Nōn bestiā, sēd hōmo*, “not a brute, but a man.”

Remark 14.—*Autēm* adds something that is different, without setting aside what precedes (*on the contrary, however, on the other hand, but*). *Gyḡēs ā nullō vīdēbātūr; ipsē autēm omniā vīdēbāt*, “— he himself, however, saw every thing.” Frequently it simply marks a transition, or adds a more important circumstance (*moreover, furthermore*).

Remark 15.—*Vērūm* (as to the truth, in fact, but) is nearly the same in meaning as *sēd*. It is strengthened by *ēnīm*, *vēro*, *ēnīm-vēro* (*but indeed, but in fact, but assuredly*).

Remark 16.—*Vēro* (*in truth, assuredly, but, however*) does not express as strong opposition as *vērūm*, just as *autēm* is weaker than *sēd*. *Ubi pēr explōrātōrēs Cæsār certiōr factūs est trēs jām*

cōpiārūm partēs Helvētiōs id flūmēn transduxissē, quartā vērō partē citrā flūmēn, Arārīm reliquā essē, “— that the fourth part, however,” etc.

Remark 17.—*At* does not, like *sēd*, alter or set aside what precedes, but expresses a contrast, often a strong one. *Brēvis ā nātūrā nōbīs vitā dātā est, āt mēmōriā bēnē reddītā vitæ sempiternā*, “a short life has been given us by nature; but the memory of a well-spent life is eternal.” It frequently follows *sī* in the sense of *at least*; *etsī nōn sāpientissimūs āt āmicissimūs*, though not very wise, *at least* very friendly. It frequently introduces an objection, and *ēnīm* is then often added to assign a reason for the objection: “*āt sūmūs*,” *inquiunt*, “*cīvītātis principēs*.”

Remark 18.—*Atquī* admits what precedes, but opposes something else to it. *Magnūm narrās, vix crēdibīlē: atquī sic hābēt; “— yet such is the fact.”* It is used in hypothetical syllogisms to introduce the minor premise. *Quodsī virtūtēs sunt pārēs intēr sē, pārī ētiām vitā essē nēcessē est: atquī pārēs essē virtūtēs facīlē pōtest perspicī*, “now if the virtues are equal to each other, the vices must also be equal; but it can easily be seen that the virtues are equal.”

Remark 19.—*Cētērūm*, literally, “as to the rest,” is frequently used in the sense of *sēd*.

Remark 20.—*Tāmēn* is properly an adverb.

4. CAUSAL, which express a cause or reason (*for*, *because*): they are *nām*, *namquē*, *ēnīm*, *ētēnīm*, *quīā*, *quōd*, *quōniām*, *quippe*, *quūm*, *quando*, *quandō-quīdē*, *siquīdē*.

Remark 21.—*Nām*, *namquē*, *ēnīm*, and *ētēnīm*, “*for*,” are rather corroborative or confirmatory than causal conjunctions; i.e. they adduce a *proof* rather than state a *cause*.

Nām shows the grounds of a preceding assertion; so, also, *ēnīm*, except that the assertion must frequently be supplied by the mind. *Enīm* is originally only a corroborative adverb, *truly*, *certainly*, *to be sure*, *indeed*. In *namquē* and *ētēnīm*, *quē* and *ēt* repeat the preceding assertion, while *nām* and *ēnīm* introduce the proof.

Remark 22.—*Quōd* (acc. sing. neut. of *qui*) means originally

with respect to what, in what respect, in that; and hence its causal meaning, *inasmuch as, because*. *Quōd omnīs Galliā ād septentrionēm vergit, mātūræ sunt hiēmēs*, because Gaul lies towards the north, the winters are early. It is very often preceded by *propterea, hōc, ōb hanc causām*, and similar causal expressions.

Remark 23.—*Quōd* is very often used merely to connect a sentence with that which precedes, and may be translated “and” or “but,” especially with *sī, nīsī*, etc. In such cases it is a relative pronoun accusative of limitation (§ 155). *Quōd sī vētēris contūmēlie obliviscī vellēt*, “but if he were willing to forget the old insult.” *Quōd sī fūrōrē et āmentīā impulsūs bellū intulissēt*, “but if, impelled by rage and madness, he should bring on a war.”

Remark 24.—*Quiā* (acc. pl. neut. of *quī*) has the same origin as *quōd*, but is purely causal (*because*), and never has the sense of *that* or *in that*, like *quōd*. When contrasted with *quōd*, it expresses a real motive or reason, while *quōd* expresses merely an alleged or pretended reason (*nōn quōd* —, *sēd quiā*).

Remark 25.—*Quōniām* (*quūm — jā*m) introduces a well-known reason, *since then, since as everybody knows*.

Remark 26.—*Quippē* is originally a corroborative adverb (*indeed*), and hence derives its causal meaning. It is frequently united with relative words to express a subjective reason.

Remark 27.—In *quūm, quandō, quandōquidēm*, the causal idea is derived from that of time (compare the English *since*). *Sīquidēm* is conditional originally (though the antepenult has become short). *Antiquissimū ē doctis gēnūs est poetarūm, sīquidēm* (if, indeed, as every one admits,—since) *Hōmērūs fuit et Hēsiodūs antē Rōmām conditām*.

5. CONCLUSIVE, which express a conclusion or inference (*therefore*): they are *ergō, eō, ideō, idcirco, igitur, itaque, proinde, propterea*, and the relative words *quapropter, quārē, quāmobrēm, quōcircā, undē*.

Remark 28.—*Ergō* and *igitur* express a *logical* consequence (*therefore*), while *itaque* expresses a *natural* consequence (*and so*). *Ergō* and *eō* are causal ablatives, and all the other conclusives may be considered adverbial expressions of cause or result, limiting the predicate.

6. FINAL, which express an end aimed at—*purpose*; or an end reached—*result* (*that, in order that*): they are *ūt, nē, quō, quīn, quōmīnūs, nēvē, neu*.

7. CONDITIONAL, which express a condition (*if, unless*): they are *sī, sīn, nīsī* or *nī, dūm, mōdō, dum-mōdō*.

8. CONCESSIVE, which express something granted (*although*): they are *etsī, quanquām, tāmetsī, tāmēnetsī, ětiamsī, licēt, quamvīs, quantumvīs, quamlibēt; ūt* and *quām* in the sense of *although*.

9. TEMPORAL, expressing time (*when, as soon as, after, before*): they are *quām, ūt, ŭbī, postquām, post-āquām, antĕquām, priusquām, quandō, sīmŭlāc, sīmŭl, dūm, dōnĕc, quoad*.

10. COMPARATIVE, expressing comparison (*than, as*): they are *quām, sīcŭt, vĕlŭt, proŭt, tanquām, quāsi, utsī, acsī*, with *āc* and *atquĕ* in the sense of *as* or *than*.

Remark 29.—The following conjunctions stand always at the beginning of a sentence, viz.: *ĕt, ĕtĕnīm, āc, āt, atquĕ, atquī, nĕquĕ, nĕc, aut, vĕl, sīvē, sīn, sĕd, nām, vĕrŭm*, and the relatives *quārĕ, quōcircā, quāmobrĕm*.

Remark 30.—*Enīm, autĕm, and vĕro* are placed after the first word, or the second if the first two belong together; rarely after three or more words.

Remark 31.—The other conjunctions usually stand at the beginning, unless some word or expression is especially emphatic and is therefore placed first in the sentence.

Remark 32.—The copulative and disjunctive conjunctions are often repeated when things are emphatically connected:—

ĕt — ĕt, both — and.

ĕt — ĕt — ĕt, not only — but also — and

nĕquĕ — ĕt, both not — and.

ĕt — nĕquĕ, both — and not.

něquě — něquě, }
 něc — něc, } *neither — nor.*
 něquě — něc, }

ět — quě, *both — and*; sometimes used in prose.

quě — quě, *both — and*; frequently used by Sallust and the poets.

INTERJECTIONS.

§ 124. Interjections are used to express strong or sudden emotion: as, *væ nōbīs!* woe to us!

SYNTAX.

§ 125. 1. SYNTAX treats of the construction of sentences.

2. A proposition is a thought expressed in words: as, *snow melts*. A sentence consists of one proposition, or of several connected together so as to make complete sense.

3. Every proposition consists of—

(a.) A predicate; *i.e.* that which is declared.

(b.) A subject; *i.e.* that of which the declaration is made.

4. The predicate consists of a verb alone (as, *melts*, in the above example), or the verb *essě*, *to be*, with a noun, adjective, or participle: as, *nix gělīdā est*, snow is cold.

5. The subject consists of a noun, or some word or phrase used as a noun, and may be known by asking

the question *who?* or *what?* with the predicate: as, *John runs.* (*Who runs? John.*) *To play is pleasant.* (*What is pleasant? To play.*)

6. The subject and predicate may stand alone, or each may have words or sentences limiting its meaning. Thus, *prīmā lūcē, quūm mons ā Titō Lābiēnō tēnērētūr, idēm Consīdiūs quī cūm explōrātōribūs prēmīssūs ērāt, ēquō admissō, ād Cēsārēm accurrīt*, at daylight, when the mountain was held by Titus Labienus, the same Considius who had been sent forward with the scouts, runs to Cæsar with his horse at full speed.

Here the leading thought is *Consīdiūs accurrīt*, Considius runs. The subject is limited by the adjective *idēm*, and the adjective sentence *quī — prēmīssūs ērāt*. The predicate is limited by *prīmā lūcē*, designating the point of time when Considius ran; by *quūm mons tēnērētūr*, farther specifying the time or circumstances of the running; by *ēquō admissō*, participial sentence, expressing the manner of the running,—an adverbial limitation; and by *ād Cēsārēm*, the point to which the running was directed.

7. A sentence consisting of a single subject and a single predicate is commonly called a *simple* sentence; and one which consists of *two or more* simple sentences combined, is commonly called a *compound* sentence.

AGREEMENT.

§ 126. RULE I.—The verb agrees with its subject in number and person.

Remark 1.—If the subject consists of more than one, the verb

is plural: as, *fūrōr īrāquē mentēm prācīpitant*, fury and rage hurry on my mind. Hence—

(a.) A collective noun *may* have a plural verb: as, *plebs clāmant*.

(b.) A noun connected to an ablative with *cūm* often has a plural verb: as, *Bocchūs cūm pēditībūs postrēmām āciēm invādunt*, Bocchus and the footmen attack the rear.

(c.) A plural verb is sometimes used with *ūterquē* and *quisquē*.

Remark 2.—But the verb often agrees with the nearest nominative, especially when the nouns denote things without life: as, *Mens, enīm ēt rātio, ēt consiliūm īn sēnībūs est*, for mind, and skill, and wisdom, are in old men.

Remark 3.—If the nominatives are of different persons, the verb takes the first person rather than the second, and the second rather than the third: as, *sī tū ēt Tulliā vālētis, ēgo ēt Cīcēro vālēmūs*, if you and Tullia are well, Cicero and I are well.

Remark 4.—The verb is frequently omitted when it may be readily supplied. This is especially the case with the verb *essē* with adjectives and participles: as, *quōt hōmīnēs (sunt) tōt (sunt) sententiæ. Cēsār mēmōriā tēnēbāt L. Cassiūm consulēm occisūm (essē) exercitūquē ējūs pulsūm (essē) ēt sūb jūgūm missūm (essē)*, Caesar remembered that Lucius Cassius the consul had been slain, and his army beaten and sent under the yoke.

Remark 5.—The subject is omitted—

(a.) When it can be readily supplied from what precedes: as, *Mōsā profluīt ex montē Vōsēgō ēt īn Oceānūm īnfluīt*, the Meuse flows from mount Vosegus and runs into the ocean.

(b.) When it is indefinite: as, *aiunt, fērunt*, they say.

(c.) With impersonal verbs, when it is the cognate notion: as, *pugnātūm est*, (a fight) was fought.

(d.) The pronouns *ēgo, tū, nōs*, and *vōs*, are expressed only for the sake of emphasis or contrast, as the ending of the verb sufficiently indicates the subject.

APPOSITION.

§ 127. A noun limiting another, and denoting the same person or thing, is said to be in *apposition* with it.

RULE II.—Nouns in apposition agree in case: as, *Jūgurthā rex*, Jugurtha the king.

Remark 1.—A noun in apposition often expresses character, purpose, time, cause, etc.: as, *Cicēro prætōr lēgēm Māniliām suāsīt*, consūl *conjūrātiōnēm Cātilinæ oppressīt*; Cicero, when prætōr (or, as prætōr), advocated the Manilian law, when consūl, suppressed Catiline's conspiracy.

Remark 2.—The personal pronoun is often omitted before a noun in apposition with it: as, *consūl dixī*, I the consūl have said.

Remark 3.—A noun in apposition with two or more nouns is put in the plural: as, *Jūgurthā et Bocchūs, rēgēs*, Jugurtha and Bocchus, kings.

Remark 4.—The ablative is used in apposition with the name of a town in the genitive (see § 166, Exc.): as, *Cōrinthī, Achaiaē urbē*, at Corinth, a city of Achaia.

Remark 5.—A noun may be in apposition with a sentence: as, *cōgītēt ōrātōrēm instituī*,—rēm arduām; let him reflect that an orator is training,—a difficult thing.

Remark 6.—PARTITIVE APPPOSITION.—Expressions denoting the *parts* are often placed in apposition with a noun denoting the *whole*: as, *ōnērārice, pars maximā ad Ægimūrūm,—ālicē adversūs urbēm ipsām, dēlātæ sunt*; the transports were carried, the greatest part to Ægimurum,—others, opposite the city itself. *Quisquē* in partitive apposition with a noun is in the nominative: as, *multīs sibi quisquē impēriūm pētentībūs*, while many were seeking power, each for himself.

Remark 7.—A proper name with *nōmēn* or *cognōmēn* may be—

(a.) In the same case: as, *nōmēn Arctūrūs mīhi est*, I have the name Arcturus.

(b.) In the genitive: as, *nōmēn Arctūrī mīhi est*.

(c.) By attraction, in the dative, if the verb is followed by a

dative: as, *nōmēn Arctūro mīhi est*, I have the name Arcturus.

Remark 8.—A genitive is sometimes used instead of an apposition: as, *urbs Pātāvī*, the city of Patavium.

Remark 9.—When the apposition has forms of different genders, it agrees in gender with the limited noun: as, *ūsūs, māgistr̃ egr̃giūs*, experience, an excellent teacher; *philōsōphiā, māgistrā vitæ*, philosophy, the mistress of our life. If nouns of different genders are connected, the apposition takes the more worthy gender: as, *Ptōlēmæūs ēt Cleōpatrā rēgēs*, Ptolemy and Cleopatra, sovereigns.

ADJECTIVES.

§ 128. An adjective may limit a noun: as, *puellā pulchrā saltāt*, the beautiful girl dances; or it may form part of the predicate: as, *puellā pulchrā est*, the girl is beautiful.

. RULE III.—(a.) Adjective words agree with the nouns which they limit, in gender, number, and case.

(b.) An adjective word in the predicate agrees with the subject in gender, number, and case.

Remark 1.—An adjective belonging to two or more nouns is put in the plural. If the nouns are of the same gender, the adjective is of that gender: as, *lūpūs ēt agnūs sīti compulsī*, a wolf and a lamb compelled by thirst. When the nouns are of different genders,—

(a.) If they denote animate things, the adjective is masculine rather than feminine: as, *pātēr mīhī ēt mātēr mortuī sunt*, my father and mother are dead.

(b.) If they denote inanimate things, the adjective is generally neuter: *irā ēt āvāritiā impēriō pōtentiōrā ērant*, rage and avarice were stronger than government.

(c.) If names of living things and things without life are combined, the adjective is sometimes neuter, and sometimes takes the gender of the living being, whichever idea is uppermost.

Nūmīdæ atquē signā militāriā obscurātī sunt, the Numidians and their military standards were concealed. (Here the idea of *persons* is uppermost.) *Inimicā sunt libērā civitās et rex*, a free state and a king are *hostile things*.

Remark 2.—The adjective, however, often agrees with the nearest noun.

Remark 3.—SYNESIS OF THE ADJECTIVE.—An adjective word (especially in the predicate) often agrees with the *sense* of the noun rather than with its form (*constructio ad s̄ynēsīn*): as, *pars in flūmēn actī sunt*, part were driven into the river.

Remark 4.—An adjective word in the predicate, instead of agreeing with the subject, often agrees—

(a.) With a noun in apposition with the subject (especially the words *urbs*, *oppīdūm*): as, *Cōrīnthūs, lūmēn Grēcīæ, extinctū est*, Corinth, the light of Greece, was destroyed (*put out*).

(b.) With a predicate noun: as, *gens ūnīversā Vēnētī appellātī*, the whole race were *called* Veneti.

Remark 5.—An adjective without a noun is often used as a noun. Masculine adjectives, when so used, denote persons; neuter adjectives, things: as, *bōnī*, the good; *bōnā*, property, goods. Adjectives are sometimes used as adverbs: as, *multūm*, much (§ 150, *Rem. 3*); *multō*, by much (§ 168). Such words are rather nouns than adverbs.

Remark 6.—In general expressions, an adjective in the predicate is often neuter: as, *lūpūs tristē est stābūlis*, the wolf is a sad thing to the folds. The adjective is here a noun.

Remark 7.—A possessive pronoun, being equivalent to the genitive of the substantive pronoun, may have an adjective word in the genitive agreeing with it: as, *meā ipsiūs causā*, for my own sake; or a noun in the genitive in apposition with it: as, *tuūs, virī fortīs, glādiūs*, the sword of thee, a brave man.

Remark 8.—The adjectives *primūs*, *mēdiūs*, *ultimūs*, *extrēmūs*, *intimūs*, *infimūs*, *imūs*, *summūs*, *suprēmūs*, *rēliquūs*, and *cētērā*, express the first part, middle part, etc.: as, *summūs mons*, the top of the mountain.

Remark 9.—An adjective often agrees with the subject, but limits the predicate: as, *prōnūs cecīdit*, he fell headlong.

RELATIVES.

§ 129. RULE IV.—The relative pronoun agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person; but its case depends upon the construction of the relative sentence: as, *ego quī scribo*, *I who write*; *vōs quī scribitis*, *you who write*; *puellā quā vīdī*, *the girl whom I saw*.

Remark 1.—The antecedent is so called because it usually goes before the relative sentence. But it also stands—

(a.) In the relative sentence, especially when this latter is emphatic: *in quē primū egressi sunt lōcū*, *Trōjā vocātūr*, the place upon which *they first disembarked is called Troy*.

(b.) Both in the principal and relative sentence: as, *erant omnīnō itinērā duō*, *quibūs itinēribūs dōmō exīrē possent*, there were only two routes, by which routes they could go out from home.

Remark 2.—The antecedent, especially when indefinite, is often omitted: as, *quī bēnē vivit*, *beātē vivit*.

Remark 3.—ATTRACTION.—The relative is sometimes attracted into the case of the antecedent: as, *ejūs gēnērīs cūjās dēmonstrāvimūs*, of that kind which we have shown. The antecedent is sometimes attracted into the case of the relative: as, *urbem quā stātūō vestrā est*, the city which I am building is yours.

Remark 4.—The relative often agrees with a noun in apposition with the antecedent: as, *flūmēn Rhēnūs*, *quī agrūm Helvētiūm ā Germānīs dividit*, the river Rhine, which separates the Helvetian territory from the Germans.

Remark 5.—A relative or demonstrative usually agrees with a predicate noun after the verb *essē* or a verb of *naming*, *esteeming*, etc., instead of agreeing with the antecedent: as, *Thēbæ*, *quōd Bæōtiæ cāpūt est*, Thebes, which is the capital of Bæotia. *Anīmāl quēm vocāmūs hōmīnēm*, the animal which we call man.

But if the predicate noun is a foreign word, the relative agrees with the antecedent: as, *gēnūs hōmīnūm quōd Hēlōtēs vocātūr*, the race of men which is called Helots.

Remark 6.—A numeral, comparative, or superlative, which in English limits the antecedent, is usually placed in the relative sentence: as, *noctē quā in terrīs ultimā ēgīt*, on the *last* night which he spent on earth. Other adjectives have sometimes a similar position: as, *intēr jōcōs quōs incondītōs jāciunt*, among the *rude* jokes which they utter.

Remark 7.—SYNESIS OF THE RELATIVE.—The relative often agrees with the *sense* of the antecedent, instead of its form: as, *Cæsār ēquitātūm prēmittit quī vīdeant*, Cæsar sends forward *the* horse to see, etc.

Remark 8.—An explanatory noun is often introduced into the relative sentence: as, *antē cōmītiā, quōd tempūs haud longē ābērāt*, before the election, *which* time was not far distant.

Remark 9.—*Quī* at the beginning of a sentence is often translated like a demonstrative: as, *quībūs rēbūs cognītis*, *these* things being found out. Here also observe the idiomatic expression *quæ est tempĕrantiā*, or *quā ēs tempĕrantiā* (ablative of quality), instead of *prō tuā tempĕrantiā*: as, *tū, quæ est tempĕrantiā, jān vālēs*, you, *such* is your temperance, are already well.

Remark 10.—The adverbial is often used for the adjectival relative: as, *locūs undē vēnīt*, the place *from which* he came.

THE CASES. THE NOMINATIVE.

§ 130. 1. The subject of a finite verb is in the nominative, and is called the *subject nominative*.

2. A noun in the predicate denoting the same thing as the subject, after a verb expressing an incomplete idea, is in the nominative, and is called the *predicate nominative*: as, *Caiūs ēt Lūciūs fratrēs fuērunt*.

3. A predicate nominative is used with verbs denoting, *to be*, *to become*, *to appear*, *to be named*, *to be called*, *to be esteemed*, etc.

Remark 1.—The verb sometimes agrees with the predicate nominative: as, *āmantiūm iræ āmōris integratio est*, the quarrels of lovers are a *renewal* of love.

Remark 2.—If the object is in the accusative, the predicate noun must be in the accusative also: as, *dicīt Cæsārēm essē rēgēm*, he says that *Cæsar* is a *king*.

Remark 3.—When the subject of the infinitive is omitted, a predicate noun or adjective is often put in the dative, if a dative precedes: as, *nēmīnī mēdiō essē licēt*, no man may be *neutral*.

THE GENITIVE.

§ 131. The genitive case expresses the precise limit within which the meaning of a word is to be taken.

Thus, in the expression *āmōr glōriæ*, the genitive, *glōriæ*, expresses the limit within which the meaning of *āmōr* is restricted.

RULE V.—A noun in the genitive limits the meaning of another noun denoting a different thing: as, *Cicērōnīs ōrātiōnēs*, Cicero's orations: *āmōr glōriæ*, the love of glory.

Remark 1.—The genitive is said to be *subjective* when it expresses that which does something, or to which something pertains or belongs: as, *Cicērōnīs ōrātiōnēs*, Cicero's orations. It is *objective* when it expresses the object to which an action or feeling is directed: as, *āmōr glōriæ*, the love of glory.

Remark 2.—A noun may be limited both by a subjective and an objective genitive: as, *Cæsārīs āmōr glōriæ*, Cæsar's love of glory.

Remark 3.—Instead of an objective genitive, a preposition with its case is often used to avoid ambiguity: as, *āmōr īn rempublīcām*, or *ergā rempublīcām*, love towards the state.

Remark 4.—The genitive of a substantive pronoun is usually objective: as, *cūrā meī*, care for me;—while possessive adjectives and pronouns usually express subjective relations: as, *cūrā meā*, my care; *causā rēgiā*, the king's cause. But the latter are sometimes objective: as, *meā injūriā*, injury done to me; *mētūs hostilīs*, fear of the enemy.

§ 132. RULE VI.—*Genitive of Quality*.—The genitive, limited by an adjective agreeing with it, is used to express the quality of a thing: as, *vīr magnæ virtūtis*, a man of great valor.

The ablative is used in the same way.

Remark 1.—This genitive may limit a noun, or form part of the predicate, like an adjective: as, *maximē animē fuit*, he was very brave.

Remark 2.—Here belong such expressions as *libertātis conservandæ est*, it has a tendency to preserve liberty.

Remark 3.—*Sēcūs*, *gēnūs*, *librām*, and *librās* are sometimes put in the accusative instead of the genitive, to express a quality: as, *oratiōnēs aut āliquid id gēnūs*, instead of *ējūs gēnērīs*.

§ 133. RULE VII.—*Genitive of Property*.—The genitive, the limited noun being omitted, is used with the verb *essē* to denote that to which something belongs, or to which something is peculiar: as, *hæc dōmūs Marcī est*, this house is *Mark's* (house). *Paupērīs est nūmērārē pęcūs*, it is characteristic of a poor man to count his flock.

Remark 1.—Instead of the genitives *meī*, *tuī*, *suī*, etc., the neuter possessives *meūm*, *tuūm*, *suūm*, etc., are used: as, *tuūm est vīdērē quīd āgātūr*, it is *your business* to see what is going on. A possessive adjective may be used in the same way: as, *hūmānūm est errārē*, it is *human*, i.e. *characteristic of man*, to err.

§ 134. RULE VIII.—*Partitive Genitive*.—With words expressing a part, the genitive is used to denote the whole: as, *ūnūs mīlītūm*, one of the soldiers.

This genitive is used with nouns expressing a part; with adjectives, especially comparatives, superlatives, and numerals; with many pronouns; and with adverbs of time, place, and quantity.

Remark 1.—The partitive word, if an adjective, usually agrees in gender with the genitive; but adjectives of quantity are used as nouns in the neuter: as, *quid novī?* what news? *tantum aurī*, so much gold.

Remark 2.—Instead of a genitive, the prepositions *ex*, *dē*, and sometimes *in*, *intēr*, are used: as, *quidā ex militibūs*, *intēr omnēs fortissimūs*.

Remark 3.—Here may be noticed a peculiar use of the genitives *lōcī*, *lōcōrūm*, and *tempōris* with *id*, *adhūc*, *postea*, etc.: as, *ad id lōcōrūm*, up to that time; *postea lōcī*, afterwards.

Remark 4.—The genitive with *prīdiē* and *postrīdiē* is subjective, these words being ablatives of the adjectives *prīs* or *prūs* and *postērūs*, with *diē*. *Postrīdiē ejūs diēi*, on that day's successor, on the next day.

§ 135. RULE IX.—*Objective Genitive with Adjectives and Verbs.*—The genitive is used to express the object to which an action or feeling is directed, with—

(a.) Adjectives expressing *desire, experience, knowledge, capacity, participation, fulness, memory, care, certainty, fear, guilt*, and their contraries: as, *āvidūs laudis*, desirous of praise.

Here also belong participial adjectives in *ns*; *āmāns pēcūniæ*.

(b.) Verbs of remembering, reminding, and forgetting: *rēcordōr*, *mēmīnī*, *rēmīniscōr*, *oblīviscōr*, *mōneo* and its compounds: as,

Mēmīnī bēnēficiū tuī (= *mēmōr sūm*, etc.), I remember your kindness.

Tē officiū mōneō (= *mēmōrēm faciō*), I remind you of your duty.

The thing remembered or forgotten is also put in the accusative.

(c.) Verbs expressing pity, etc.,—*mīsēreōr*, *mīsēresco*, and the impersonals *mīsērēt*, *pōenītēt*, *pūdēt*, *pīgēt*, *tādēt*: as, *mīsēresco infēliciūm*, I pity the unfortunate; *pōenītēt mē peccātī*, I repent of my sin.

Remark 1.—With these impersonals the *person* feeling is expressed by the accusative.

Remark 2.—The cause or object of the feeling may be expressed by an infinitive or a sentence: as, *pœnitēt mē peccāvissē* or *quōd peccāvī*, I repent of having sinned.

(d.) Verbs of plenty or want (sometimes): as, *ēgēt* (= *ēgens est*) *argentī*, he is in need of silver.

(e.) The impersonals *rēfert* and *intērest*: as, *rēipublīcæ intērest*, it is of importance to the state.

Remark 3.—Instead of the genitive of the personal pronouns, the forms *meā*, *tuā*, *suā*, *nostrā*, *vestrā*, are used with *rēfert* and *intērest*; as, *nōn tuā intērest*, it is not your business.

NOTE.—Grammarians are divided as to the origin of this expression, some regarding the pronoun as an ablative; others, with better reason, considering it an accusative (*m* being cut off, and *a* lengthened for compensation), agreeing with *rēm* (understood with *intērest* and forming the first part of *rēfert*), thus:

meā intērest = *intēr meām rēm est*.

meā rē-fert = *meām rēm fert*.

Others, again, regard these words as accusative plural neuter.

Remark 4.—The thing with reference to which any thing is important may be expressed by the accusative with *ād*; the degree of importance, by the genitives *magnī*, *parvī*, etc. (see Rule XI.), or by an adverb; while the subject may be an infinitive, a neuter pronoun, or a noun-clause: as, *hōc ād laudēm civitātis magnī intērest*, this is of great importance to the glory of the state.

Remark 5.—*Sīmīlis* and its compounds, especially with the names of living beings, take a genitive (see § 142, *Remark 3*): as, *sīmīlis patrīs*, like his father.

§ 136. RULE X.—*Genitive of Crime.*—With verbs of *accusing*, *condemning*, *acquitting*, etc., the genitive expresses the crime or offence charged: as, *servūm furī accūsāt*, he accuses the slave of theft.

Remark 1.—With some of these verbs the ablative, with or without *dē*, is used to express the crime: as, *āliquām dē vī accūsārē*, to accuse one of violence.

Remark 2.—With *damno* and *condemno* the penalty is expressed by the genitive, but oftener by the ablative, especially when it consists of money or land: as, *damnātūr cāpītis* or *cāpītē*, he is condemned to death. *Tertiā partē agrī damnātūr*, he is fined a third of his land.

§ 137. RULE XI.—*Genitive of Price.*—The genitive is used to express the price or value of a thing indefinitely: as, *magnī cēstimābāt pēcūniām*, he esteemed money highly.

In this manner are used the genitive of adjectives, and the genitives *assīs*, *flocē*, etc.; also *pensī* and *hūjūs*. This genitive is originally a genitive of quality, agreeing with *prētū* understood: (*rēm*) *magnī (prētū) cēstimābāt pēcūniām*, he esteemed money a thing of great value.

Remark 1.—To this rule may be referred the expression *æquī* or *bōnī fācio* or *consūlo*, I take in good part, I am satisfied with.

Remark 2.—With *cēstimo*, and verbs of buying and selling, the ablatives *magnō*, *permagnō*, *plūrimō*, *parvō*, *mīnimō*, and *nīhilō*, are often used.

For the genitive of place, see § 166, Exc.

For the genitive with *opūs*, and *ūs*, see § 160, Rem. 1.

EXERCISE LII.

§ 138. Vocabulary.

patriā, -æ, country, native land.
sōlūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 56), only, alone.
peccātū, -ī, sin, fault.
philōsōphūs, -ī, philosopher.
ultīmūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 74, 1), last.
impēriū, -ī, power, command.
cāsūs, -ūs, chance.

Cingētōrix, *Cingētōrigīs*, *Cingetorix*.
prudentiā, -æ, prudence.
Hannibāl, -bāl-īs, Hannibal.
ōdiū, -ī, hatred.
auctōritās, -tāt-īs, authority.
ādōlescens, -cent-īs, young man.
carcēr, *carcēr-īs*, prison.

arx, arc-īs, *citadel*.

dulcis, -ē, *sweet*.

dēcōrūs, -ā, -ūm, *honorable*.

turbidūs, -ā, -ūm, *muddy, troubled*.

āmīcitiā, -ae, *friendship*.

Oxūs, -ī, *Oxus (river)*.

Tulliānūm, -ī, *Tullian (a dungeon built by King Servius Tullius)*.

spectāt-ūs, -ā, -ūm (spect-ārē), *ap-proved*.

fortitūdō, -īn-īs, *courage*.

fīdēs, -ei, *faith, promise*.

corrīg-ō, -ērē, correx-ī, correct-ūm, *to correct*.

ā-mitt-ō, -ērē, āmis-ī, āmiss-ūm, *to lose*.

āg-ō, -ērē, ēg-ī, act-ūm, *to lead, drive; (of time,) to spend*.

mōr-iōr, mōr-irī and mōr-ī, mortuūs, mōritūrūs, *to die*.

sīn-ō, -ērē, sīv-ī, sīt-ūm, *to place*.

appell-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to call*.

per-dūc-ō, -ērē, perdux-ī, perduct-ūm, *to extend*.

in-flu-ō, -ērē, influx-ī, influx-ūm, *to flow into*.

rē-vēr-eōr, -ērī, rēvērītūs, *to respect, revere*.

EXAMPLES.

Stultī est (§ 133),

Adōlescentīs est (§ 133),

Meūm est,

Tuā ipsiūs (§ 128, *Rem. 7*) causā,

Cūjusvis hōmīnīs est,

Noctē quām ultimām (§ 129, *Rem.*

6) ēgīt,

It is *characteristic* of a fool.

It is *the duty* of a young man.

It is *my duty*.

For *your own sake*.

It is every man's *duty*.

On the *last night* which he spent.

Translate into English and analyze.

Sōliūs¹ meūm peccātūm corrīgī nōn pōtest. Philōsōphūs, noctē quām ultimām² in terrīs ēgīt, āmicōs omnēs convōcāvīt. Helvētīi oppidūm quōd optimūm² hābēbant āmisērant. Cātōnīs pātēr ēt mātēr mortuī³ sunt. Regnā, impēriā, hōnōrēs, dīvitiāe, in Deī mānībūs sītā sunt. Fīliūs Alexandrī cūm matrē in arcēm missī⁴ ērant. Dulcē ēt dēcōrūm est prō patriā mōrī. Amīcitiā bōnūm⁵ est. Ad flūmēn Oxūm perventūm est,⁶ quī⁷ turbidūs sempēr est.

¹ § 128, *Rem. 7*.

² § 129, *Rem. 6*.

³ § 128, *Rem. 1 (a)*.

⁴ § 126, *Rem. 1 (b)*.

⁵ § 128, *Rem. 6*.

⁶ § 114, 5.

⁷ § 129, *Rem. 4*.

Ad locum in carcerē quod¹ Tullianum vocātūr perventum est. Animal quī² hōmō vocātūr, sine lēgibus beātus esse nōn pōtest. Cingetōrix, quī ā sēnatū rex atquē amicus appellātus ērāt, summæ auctōritātis³ apud Gallōs fuit. Hannibālīs odiūm ergā Rōmānōs⁴ atrōcissimūm fuit. Cæsār ā lacū Lēmannō ad flūmē Rhēnūm, fossām quindēcim pedūm⁵ perduxit. Adōlescentis⁶ est pārentēs suōs amārē ac rēvērērī. Cūjusvis hōmīnis⁶ est virūm spectātæ fortitudinis rēvērērī. Stultī⁶ est dē sē ipsō prādicārē. Nōn meūm⁷ est nunciōs ad consulē mittērē.

Translate into Latin.

Your father corrects your faults for *your own* sake. On the last day which the consul spent in the winter quarters, he called together the centurions of the seventh legion. It is the general's duty to conquer the enemies of the republic. On the next (*postērō*) day they reached (*it was come to*) the river Rhone, which flows into our sea. Rome, which is the capital (*head*) of Italy, was taken by the Gauls. Is not a friend a good *thing*? Fabius was a man of the greatest prudence. A general of the greatest (*summūs*) valor does not always lead his army to victory. It is the *duty* of children to respect their parents, and of parents to love their own children and correct their (*eōrūm*) faults.

EXERCISE LIII.

§ 139. *Vocabulary.*

āvārūs, -ā, -ūm, *covetous.*

āvidūs, -ā, -ūm, *eager, desirous.*

fērax, fērac-īs, *productive.*

prōpōsītūm, -ī, *purpose.*

consciūs, -ā, -ūm, *conscious.*

vērītās, -tāt-īs, *truth.*

¹ § 129, Rem. 5.

² § 129, Rem. 5.

³ § 132, Rem. 1.

⁴ § 131, Rem. 3.

⁵ § 132.

⁶ § 133.

⁷ § 133, Rem. 1.

āmans, āmant-īs, <i>fond.</i>	tantūs-dēm, -ā-dēm, -un-dēm, <i>just so much.</i>
expers, expert-īs, <i>destitute.</i>	prōditiō, -ōn-īs, <i>treachery.</i>
impērītūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>ignorant.</i>	ēgestās, -tāt-īs, <i>poverty.</i>
mēmōr, mēmōr-īs, <i>mindful.</i>	cūpīdītās, -tāt-īs, <i>desire, lust.</i>
immēmōr, -ōr-īs, <i>unmindful.</i>	offīciūm, -ī, <i>duty.</i>
insuētūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>unaccustomed.</i>	floccūs, -ī, <i>lock of wool (something of small value).</i>
impōtens, -ent-īs, <i>unable to control.</i>	

mīser-ēt, mīseru-īt (impers.), *it pities.*
 pōnit-ēt, pōnītu-īt (impers.), *it repents.*
 pīg-ēt, pīgu-īt or pīgīt-ūm est (impers.), *it troubles, disgusts.*
 tād-ēt, tādu-īt or tās-ūm est (impers.), *it wearies.*
 pūd-ēt, pūdu-īt or pūdīt-ūm est (impers.), *it shames.*
 vend-ō, -ērē, vendīd-ī, vendīt-ūm, *to sell.*
 ēm-ō, -ērē, ēm-ī, empt-ūm, *to buy.*
 mōn-eō, -ērē, mōnu-ī, mōnīt-ūm, *to warn.*
 ad-mōn-eō, -ērē, -u-ī, -īt-ūm, *to remind.*
 mēmīnī (§ 113, *Remark 1*), *I remember.*
 rē-fert, rē-fēr-ēbāt, rē-tūl-īt (impers.), *it concerns.*
 intēr-est, intēr-ērāt, inter-fuit, *it is of importance, it interests.*
 ac-cūs-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to bring to trial, accuse.*
 ab-solv-ō, -ērē, absolv-ī, absōlūt-ūm, *to acquit.*
 con-demn-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to condemn.*
 aestīm-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to value, esteem.*
 fāc-i-ō, -ērē, fēc-ī, fact-ūm (§ 107, *Remark 1*), *to do, to make.*
 oblīvise-or, -ī, oblītūs, *to forget.*
 opprīm-ō, -ērē, oppress-ī, oppress-ūm, *to suppress.*

EXAMPLES

- (a.) Pātiens lābōrēm, *Enduring labor.—Participle.*
 (b.) Pātiens lābōrīs, *Capable of enduring labor.—Participial.*
 (a.) *The participle expresses a single action at the time spoken of.*
 (b.) *The participial expresses capability at any time.*

Mīserēt mē tuī,	<i>I pity you. (It pities me of you.)</i>
Mē rēgīs mīseruīt,	<i>I pitied the king.</i>
Pōnītēt puērūm stultitiā,	<i>The boy repents of his folly.</i>
Pūdēt mē scēlērīs,	<i>I am ashamed of my wickedness.</i>
Pīgēt tē vitā,	<i>You are disgusted with life.</i>
Cāpītīs or rei cāpītālīs accūsārē,	<i>To accuse of a capital crime.</i>
Cāpītīs or cāpītē condemnārē,	<i>To condemn to death.</i>

Floccī nōn faciūt,
Meā rēfert,
Quantī hōc faciēs?

*He cares not a straw—a rush, etc.
It is my business.
How much do you value this?*

Translate into English and analyze.

In hōc ōrātōrē plūs ēlōquentiæ¹ est quān fortitūdīnīs. Rēgīs frātēr āvidūs est glōriæ,² patiēns lābōrīs,² sēd impōtēns iræ,² vēritātīs² expers, rērū² impērītūs, atquē multōrū scēlērū² consciūs. Quantī³ quisquē sē ipsē⁴ faciūt, tantī³ fīt āb āmicīs. Mercātōrēs nōn tantīdēm³ vendunt, quantī³ ēmērunt. Fūrēs vēritātēm nōn floccī³ faciunt. Bōnī omnēs vīrtūtēm magnī³ aestīmant. Quantī³ istōs ēquōs ēmistī? Hunc latrōnēm scēlērīs⁵ suī nēquē pūdēt, nēquē pōnitēt. Mē cīvītātīs mōrū⁵ tādēt pīgetquē. Cīvīs quī rēī cāpītālīs⁶ accūsātūs est, tertiā partē⁷ āgrī condemnātūs est. Puērōs stultitiæ⁵ pōnitēbīt. Cātīlīnā āliūm (*one man*) ēgestātīs,⁸ āliūm (*another*) cūpīdītātīs⁸ admōnēbāt. Tuā ipsīūs causā tē officiī mōneō. Cīcērōnīs⁹ magnī³ intērest conjūratiōnēm Cātīlīnæ opprīmērē. Nōn meā¹⁰ sēd rēgīs rēfert fūrēs latrōnesquē pūnīrē.

Translate into Latin.

The general is desirous of money, but more desirous of praise. The farmer's fields are very productive of corn. The consul is fond of war and tenacious (*tēnax*) of his purpose, but ignorant of business (*rērū*) and destitute of truth. Lucius remembers a kindness and (*nēquē*) does not forget an injury. The soldiers who were accused of treachery have been condemned to death. Those who (§ 129, *Rem. 2*) are unaccustomed to navigation (§ 135) fear the sea. The

¹ § 134, *Rem. 1*.

⁴ § 85.

⁷ § 136, *Rem. 2*.

¹⁰ § 135, *Rem. 3*.

² § 135 (*a*).

⁵ § 135 (*c*).

⁸ § 135 (*b*).

³ § 137.

⁶ § 136.

⁹ § 135 (*e*).

king cares not a straw for the laws of the state. It is of great importance to us to lead the army into the enemy's country (*fīnēs*). For how much did you sell your horse? For the same (*tantīdēm*) for which (*for how much*) I bought (him). Do you remember the speech of the excellent orator? The scouts had not warned the general of the danger. The tribune has been acquitted of treachery. Do you pity me?

THE DATIVE.

§ 140. The dative expresses that *to* or *for* which, or *with reference to which*, any thing is, or is done.

§ 141. RULE XII.—*Dative of Indirect Object*.—The indirect object of a verb is in the dative: as, *servūs dōmīnō mēdicīnām pārāt*, the slave prepares medicine *for his master*.

The *indirect object* of a verb is the thing towards which its action *tends*, without necessarily *reaching* it.

NOTE.—This dative is used with most verbs, especially with verbs compounded with *ād*, *antě*, *cōn*, *īn*, *intěr*, *ōb*, *post*, *præ*, *prō*, *sūb*, *sūpěr*.

Remark 1.—Transitive verbs have also a direct object in the accusative.

§ 142. RULE XIII.—*Dative of Advantage or Disadvantage*.—The dative expresses the person or thing for whose advantage or disadvantage any thing is, or is done: as, *insīdiīs aptūs*, suitable *for ambush*; *servūs dōmīnō fīdūs*, a servant faithful *to his master*.

NOTE.—This dative is used with adjectives expressing *goodness*, *usefulness*, *fitness*, etc.; also with verbs meaning *to favor*, *please*, *trust*, *obey*, *threaten*, *be angry*, and their contraries. These verbs are equivalent to *essě* with an adjective: as, *īrascī īnīmīcīs* = *īrātūs essě īnīmīcīs*, to be angry with one's enemies.

Remark 1.—The verbs *jūvo*, *dēlecto*, *lædo*, *offendo*, are transitive, and have a direct object in the accusative. *Fīdo* and *confīdo* are often followed by a causal ablative, instead of a dative.

Remark 2.—Many adjectives take an accusative with a preposition, instead of a dative: as, *servūs* in dōmīnūm *fīdēlīs*; *lōcūs* ād insīdiās *aptūs*.

Remark 3.—*Dative of Reference.*—The dative expresses the person or thing *to* or *with* reference to which any thing is *clear*, *equal*, *like*, *unlike*, *near*, etc.: as, *simīlīs patrī*, like his father; *pār fratrī*, equal to his brother.

Remark 4.—*Prōpiōr* and *proximūs*, like *prōpē*, are sometimes followed by the accusative.

§ 143. RULE XIV.—*Dative of Possession.*—The dative is used with *essē* to express the person who has or possesses something, the thing possessed being the subject: as, *est mīhi libēr*, (*a book is to me*) I have a book; *sunt tībī libri*, thou hast books; *sunt Caiō librī*, Caius has books; *est nōbīs libēr*, we have a book.

Remark 1.—The *possessor* is expressed by the *dative* when the idea of *possession* is chiefly referred to: as, *Cæsārī dōmūs est*, Cæsar has a house;—by the *genitive*, when the *possessor*, or *thing possessed*, is referred to, rather than the fact of possession: as, *hæc dōmūs Cæsārīs est*, *illā Cīcērōnīs*, this house is *Cæsar's*, that one is *Cicero's*.

§ 144. RULE XV.—*Dative of Purpose or End.*—The dative is used with *essē*, and verbs of *giving*, *coming*, *sending*, *imputing*, and some others, to express the purpose of the action: as, *hæc mīhi curæ sunt*, these things are *for a care* to me, or, I have these things *for a care*.

NOTE.—These verbs may have a personal object in the dative, and, if transitive, a direct object in the accusative: as, *collēgæ*

venit auxiliō, he came for an aid to his colleague (i.e. to his colleague's assistance); *mihī librūm dōnō dedit*, he gave me the book for a gift.

Remark 1.—The verbs most commonly using a double dative are *essē*, *fiērī*, *dārē*, *dūcērē*, *hābērē*, *mittērē*, *rēlinquērē*, *tribuērē*, *venīrē*, *vertērē*.

Remark 2.—The purpose may be expressed by a predicate nominative, or an apposition (see § 127, *Rem. 1*): as, *mihī cōmēs Lūciūs est*, I have Lucius for a companion; *cōrōnām Jōvī dōnūm mittunt*, they send a crown to Jupiter, as a present.

§ 145. RULE XVI.—*Dative of the Agent.*—With the gerundive in *dūs* the dative expresses the *agent* or *doer*: as, *adhībendā est nōbīs dīligentiā*, diligence must be used by us.

Remark 1.—The poets sometimes use this dative with any of the passive forms: as, *nēquē cernītūr ullī*, nor is he seen by any one. But with prose writers it is rarely used with any other part of the verb than the gerundive, and occasionally with the perfect passive participle.

Remark 2.—Instead of the dative, the ablative with *ā* or *āb* is sometimes, though rarely, used with the gerundive.

§ 146. *Dātīvūs Ethicūs.*—The dative of the personal pronouns is used sometimes to express strong feeling, and can scarcely be rendered into English: as, *an illē mihī libēr cū muliēr impērāt?* is he free whom a woman rules?

Remark.—Here may be noticed the use of the participles *vōlens*, *cūpiens*, etc. with a dative, in imitation of the Greek: as, *nēquē plēbī militiā vōlentī (essē) pūtābātūr*, neither was the war thought to be agreeable to the common people (literally, to the common people wishing it).

§ 147. The dative is sometimes used almost like a genitive, but always with the idea of advantage, disadvantage, or reference: as, *cū corpūs porrīgītūr*

(compare the English), his body is stretched out for him.

EXERCISE LIV.

§ 148. Vocabulary.

sīmīlis, -ě, <i>like</i> .	ignōtūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>unknown</i> .
proxīmūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>nearest, next</i> .	impēdimentūm, -ī, <i>hindrance</i> .
aptūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>fit, suitable</i> .	dēdēcūs, -ōr-īs, <i>disgrace</i> .
æquūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>just</i> .	ūsūs, -ūs, <i>use, advantage</i> .
blandūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>flattering</i> .	impiētās, -tāt-īs, <i>undutifulness</i> .
ūtīlis, -ě, <i>useful</i> .	Nūmantīnūs, -ī, <i>Numantian</i> .
cārūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>dear</i> .	vēhementēr (adv.), <i>extremely</i> .
īngrātūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>disagreeable</i> .	commōdūm, -ī, <i>convenience, advantage</i> .
fācīlis, -ě, <i>easy</i> .	īnquām (§ 113, 4), <i>I say</i> .
per-fācīlis, -ě, <i>very easy</i> .	īnnōcentiā, -æ, <i>innocence, integrity</i> .
noxiūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>hurtful</i> .	
fāv-eō, -ērē, fāv-ī, faut-ūm, <i>to favor</i> .	
st-ō, stārē, stēt-ī, stāt-ūm, <i>to stand</i> .	
parc-ō, -ērē, pēperc-ī and pars-ī, parcīt-ūm and pars-ūm, <i>to spare, to be merciful</i> .	
prō-sūm, prōd-essē, prō-fuī, prō-fūtūrūs (§ 111, 12), <i>to do good</i> .	
præ-fīc-i-ō, præfīc-ērē, præfēc-ī, præfect-ūm, <i>to put over</i> .	
circum-dō, circumdārē, circumdēd-ī, circumdāt-ūm, <i>to put around, to surround</i> .	
circum-fund-ō, -ērē, -fūd-ī, -fūs-ūm, <i>to pour around, to surround</i> .	
mālē-dīc-ō, -ērē, -dīx-ī, -dict-ūm, <i>to be abusive</i> .	
prætēr-eō, -īrē, prætērīv-ī and prætēri-ī, prætēr-ītūm (§ 111, 9), <i>to pass by</i> .	

EXAMPLES.

Audiens dictō (§ 142), *Obedient (attentive to the word)*.
Mīhī magnō est dōlōrī (§ 144), *It is (for) a great grief to me*.
Hībernīs Lābiēnūm præfēcīt, *He put Labienus over the winter quarters*.
Rēgībūs (§ 143) mănūs sunt longæ, *Kings have long arms (hands)*.
Dīi omnībūs cōlendī sunt, *The gods ought to be worshipped by all*.
Urbēm mūrō (§ 159) circumdārē, }
Urbī (§ 141) mūrūm circumdārē, } *To surround the city with a wall*.
Terrās mārī (§ 159) circumfundērē, }
Terrīs (§ 141) mārē circumfundērē, } *To surround the land with sea*.

Aptūs insīdiīs (§ 142 and *Rem. 2*) or ād insīdiās, *Suitable for ambush.*

Sīmīlis patrīs, *Like his father* (in character). (§ 135, *Rem. 5*).

Sīmīlis patrī, *Like his father* (outwardly). (§ 142, *Rem. 3*.)

Mētuō patrēm, *I fear my father.*

Mētuō patrī (§ 142), *I fear for my father, i.e. for his safety.*

Sēnātūm consūlō, *I consult the senate, i.e. take its advice.*

Senātuī (§ 142) consūlō, *I consult for the senate, i.e. provide for its safety.*

Translate into English and analyze.

Helvētīi proximī Germānīs¹ incōlunt, quībuscūm continentēr bellūm gērunt. Lōcā proximā Carthāgīnēm² Nūmīdiā appellātūr.³ In lōcō insīdiīs aptō, duās lēgiōnēs collōcāvīt. Nonnē lūpūs est cānī sīmīlis? Ferrūm hōmīnībūs⁴ ūtīliūs est quām aurūm. Jūgurthā nostrīs⁵ vēhementēr cārūs, Nūmantīnīs⁶ maxīmō terrōrī⁷ fuīt. Cuīvīs⁵ fācīlē est āmicīs suīs⁴ fāvērē. Ventūs noxiūm⁸ est arbōrībūs. Lēgātūs cōhortēs duās castrīs⁹ præsīdiō⁷ rēlīquīt. Milītēs impērātōrī⁹ audientēs dictō nōn ērunt. Milītēs nōn mūliērībūs,⁴ nōn infantībūs⁴ pēpercērunt. Nēmīnī līcēt suī commōdī causā alterī⁴ nōcērē. Cēsār lēgiōnībūs,⁹ quās īn prōvīnciā conscripsērāt, Lābiēnūm prāfēcīt. Deūs tōtī orbī terrārūm mārē circumfūdīt. Cēsār oppīdūm vallō fossāquē circumdēdīt. Grāviā ōnērā ēquītībūs⁶ magnō sunt impēdīmentō.⁷ Innōcentīae¹⁰ sēpē plūs pēricūlī¹¹ est quām hōnōrīs.¹¹ Hēc mīhī¹² prætēreundā nōn sunt. Hædūs, īn dōmūs tectō stans, lūpō⁴ prætēreuntī mālēdixīt. Cuī lūpūs, “Nōn tū,” īnquīt, “sēd lōcūs mīhī⁴ mālēdicīt.” Sēnātūs ā consūlē dē fōedērē consultūs est. Dictātōr reīpublicæ consūluīt. Nonnē libērīs tuīs mētūīs?

¹ § 142, *Rem. 3*.

² § 142, *Rem. 4*.

³ § 130, *Rem. 1*.

⁴ § 142.

⁵ § 142, *Rem. 3*.

⁶ § 143 or § 142.

⁷ § 144.

⁸ § 128, *Rem. 6*.

⁹ § 141.

¹⁰ § 143.

¹¹ § 134.

¹² § 145.

Translate into Latin.

The number of the enemy was unknown to the general. The undutifulness of children is a great grief to (their) parents. The thick woods were a very great advantage (§ 144) to our skirmishers. It is sweet and honorable to do good to the commonwealth. Children are not always like their parents. It was very easy for our men to cross the river. The consul's speech was very disagreeable to the Gauls. The snares of the enemy have been (for) a very great hindrance to our cavalry. God ought to be worshipped by all men. The causes of this rebellion ought not to be passed over by me. It is the greatest disgrace (§ 144) to a soldier to leave his place in battle. The Roman people gave to the king for a gift the fields which he had conquered. Nature had surrounded the town with a broad and deep river. It is lawful for no man to lead an army against his country. Be kind and just to all, but flattering to none.

THE ACCUSATIVE.

§ 149. The accusative case marks the *direct object* of an action, *i.e.* the thing actually reached by the action; also the limit of space or time which an action or motion reaches.

§ 150. RULE XVII.—*Direct Object*.—The direct object of a transitive verb is in the accusative.

Remark 1.—Cognate Accusative.—An intransitive verb, though it does not require an object to complete its meaning, may be limited by an accusative of *similar* or *kindred* signification: as, *currĕrĕ cursūm*, to run a race; *vivĕrĕ vitā*, to live a life.

Remark 2.—Equivalent Accusative.—Instead of the cognate noun, a noun or noun-sentence equivalent to it in meaning may be used: as, *dōcĕrĕ grammaticā*, to teach grammar; *interrō-*

gāvīt quīs vēnīrēt, he asked who came; *longām viām irē*, to go a long way.

Remark 3.—Elliptical Accusative.—The cognate or equivalent noun is often omitted, and in its stead a neuter adjective is used, limiting the cognate notion understood: as, *multū ambulāt*, he walks much (walking). This accusative is used as an adverb.

Remark 4.—A cognate, equivalent, or elliptical accusative may be used with a passive verb: as, *dōceōr doctrinām*, I am taught teaching, science; *dōceōr grammaticām*, I am taught grammar; *nīmīūm doctūs*, taught too much, too learned.

Remark 5.—Many verbs which are transitive in English, represent in Latin an action only as done *with reference to* the object, and hence have a dative (see § 142, *Rem. 3*).

§ 151. RULE XVIII. (a.)—Verbs meaning to *ask* and *teach*, with *cēlārē*, to conceal, take two accusatives,—one of the *person*, the other of the *thing*: as, *rōgo tē nummōs*, I ask you for money; *dōcuīt mē mūsicām*, he taught me music.

(The thing asked or taught is an equivalent accusative.)

(b.) *Second Accusative.*—Verbs meaning to *name* or *call*, *choose*, *appoint*, *make*, *esteem*, or *reckon*, take, besides the direct object, a second accusative: as, *urbēm vocāvīt Rōmām*, he called the city *Rome*; *mē consulēm fēcistīs*, you have made me *consul*.

Remark 1.—With verbs of asking, the *person* is often put in the ablative with *ā* or *āb*, *dē*, *ex*, instead of the accusative: as, *hēc ā tē posco*, I demand these things of you. *Exīgo*, *pēto*, *postūlo*, *quēro*, *scītōr*, *sciscītōr*, never have an accusative of the person: as, *pācēm ā Cēsārē pētunt*.

Remark 2.—The name is clearly an equivalent accusative. *He named the city* a name (to wit), *Rome*. So, also, but indirectly, the *choice*, *appointment*, etc. *Mē consulēm creāvistīs*, you have made me *consul*. You have created a creation (*consulēm*), and the object upon which the act of consul-making has been performed is *me*. *Consulēm* is therefore an equivalent accusative,

and *mē* is the direct object of the compound verbal notion *consulēm creāvistis*, rather than of *creāvistis* alone:—"you have *consul-made* me."

§ 152. RULE XIX.—Twenty-six prepositions are followed by the accusative. See § 120, 1.

NOTE.—As a general rule, prepositions expressing *motion to* a place take the accusative.

Remark 1.—Many intransitive verbs, when compounded with a preposition, become transitive: as, *transīrē flūmēn*; *succēdere tectūm*, to go under *a roof*.

Remark 2.—A preposition in composition often has an object in the accusative: as, *ēquītātūm pontēm transdūcīt*, he leads the cavalry over *the bridge*; *ēquītātūs pontēm transdūcītūr*, the cavalry are led-over *the bridge*.

Remark 3.—The preposition is often repeated: as, *ēquītātūm trans pontēm transdūcīt*.

§ 153. RULE XX.—*Accusative of Time and Space.*—Duration of time and extent of space are expressed by the accusative, sometimes by the ablative: as, *trēs hōrās mansīt*, he remained *three hours*; *fossā duōs pēdēs lātā*, a ditch *two feet* wide.

NOTE.—The limit of time within which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative: as, *ūnō annō*, within *one year*.

Remark.—The accusative of time and space is an equivalent accusative.

§ 154. RULE XXI.—*Accusative of Place whither.*—The names of towns and small islands are put in the accusative to express the point which a motion reaches: as, *Rōmām vēnīt*, he came *to Rome*.

Remark 1.—*Dōmūs* and *rūs* are construed in the same way: as, *dōmūm rēdīt*, he returned *home*.

Remark 2.—A preposition is generally used when the name of a town is limited by an adjective or an apposition,—*urbis*, *oppidūm*, etc.: as, *Dēmārātūs sē contūlīt Tarquīniōs ād urbēm*

Etrūriæ,—to Tarquinii, a town of Etruria. Ad doctās Athēnās *prōfēiscē*.

Remark 3.—The preposition is sometimes omitted in prose, often in poetry, before the name of any place to which motion is directed. *Dēvēniunt spēluncām*.

§ 155. As the accusative expresses the limit actually *reached* by an action or motion, so also it expresses the limit to which the truth of a proposition extends. Thus, *membrā nūdūs est*, he is naked,—not *entirely*, but only *as to his limbs*. Hence,

RULE XXII.—The accusative is sometimes used to express a special limitation (*accusative of limitation*): as, *nūdūs membrā*, naked *as to his limbs*.

Remark 1.—This is a Greek construction, and is rarely used in prose.

Remark 2.—The poets often use an accusative with a passive verb in the sense of the Greek middle: as, *Priāmūs inūtīlē ferrūm cingītūr*, Priam girds himself with (puts on) *the useless sword*.

§ 156. RULE XXIII.—The accusative expresses the object of a feeling, with or without an interjection: as, *Heu mē mīsērūm! Ah wretched me!*

For the accusative with *prōpiōr* and *proximūs*, see § 142, *Rem. 4*; with *mīsērēt*, etc., see § 135, *Rem. 1*; with the infinitive, see § 188.

EXERCISE LV.

§ 157. Vocabulary.

Antiōchūs, -ī, *Antiochus*.

Antiōchiā, -æ, *Antioch*.

Ancūs Martiūs, -ī, *Ancus Martius*,
fourth king of Rome.

Mercūriūs, -ī, *Mercury*.

inventōr, -ōr-is, *inventor*.

jūventūs, -tūt-is, *youth*.

mūsicā, -æ, *music*.

grammāticā, -æ, *grammar*.

fīdēs, -iūm (fem.), *strings, a lute*,

Socrātēs, -īs, *Socrates*.

tīmīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *cowardly*.

Antigōnūs, -ī, *Antigonus*.

quōtīdiē, *daily*.

jūcundūs, -ā, -ūm, *delightful*.

servītūs, -tūt-īs, *slavery*.

Rēgūlūs, -ī, *Regulus*.

certūs, -ā, -ūm, *certain*.

stūdiūm, -ī, *zeal, desire, pl. study*.

vastītās, -tāt-īs, *devastation*.

arbitr-ārī, *to think, deem*.

hāb-eō, -ērē, hābu-ī, hābīt-ūm, *to have, hold; consider*.

cēl-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hide, conceal*.

flāgīt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to ask for, demand earnestly*.

serv-iō, -irē, -ivī, -itūm (intr.), *to be a slave, to serve*.

trans-dūc-ō, -ērē, -dux-ī, -duct-ūm, *to lead over*.

trans-jīc-i-ō, -ērē, -jēc-ī, -ject-ūm, *to throw over, ship over*.

rēd-eō, -irē, rēdi-ī, rēdīt-ūm, *to return*.

dis-cēd-ō, -ērē, discess-ī, discess-ūm, *to depart*.

pōn-ō, -ērē, pōsu-ī, pōsīt-ūm, *to put, place*.

sēqu-ōr, sēquī, sēcūt-ūs, *to follow*.

per-sēqu-ōr, persēquī, persēcūt-ūs, *to follow through, pursue*.

dōc-eō, -ērē, dōeu-ī, doet-ūm, *to teach*.

ē-dōc-eō, -ērē, ēdōeu-ī, ēdoet-ūm, *to teach thoroughly*.

nasc-ōr, nasc-ī, nāt-ūs, *to be born*.

illīe-i-ō, -ērē, illex-ī, illeet-ūm, *to allure, decoy*.

red-dō, reddērē, reddīd-ī, reddīt-ūm, *to render*.

sōl-eō, -ērē, sōlītūs (§ 109, 3), *to be accustomed*.

prōfīcisc-ōr, prōfīcisc-ī, prōfect-ūs, *to set out*.

posc-ō, -ērē, pōpose-ī, ———, *to demand, ask*.

EXAMPLES.

Itēr omnēs cēlāt,

Rēgēm pācēm poscunt,

Unīūs diēi itēr,

Annōs (§ 153) quīndēcīm nātūs,

A vitā discēdērē,

A millībūs passuūm duōbūs castrā }
pōsuīt,

Milliā passuūm duō (acc.), or, mil- }
libūs passuūm duōbūs (abl.), }
(§ 153), āb urbē, }

Mē fidībūs dōcuīt,

Cæsārēm certiōrēm (§ 151 b)
fāciunt,

He conceals his journey from all.

They ask the king for peace.

One day's journey.

Fifteen years old. (Born fifteen years.)

To depart from life, to die.

He pitched his camp two miles off.

Two miles from the city.

He taught me to play on the lyre (with the strings. Abl. of instrument).

They inform Cæsar (make more certain).

Translate into English and analyze.

Urbem, ex Antiöchī patrīs¹ nōminē, Antiöchīam² vōcāvīt. Ancūm Martiūm pōpūlūs rēgēm² creāvīt. Vētērēs Rōmānī Mercūriūm omniūm inventōrēm² artiūm hābēbant. Antīgōnūs itēr exercītūs omnēs cēlāt. Quōtīdiē Cēsār Æduōs frūmentūm³ flāgītābāt. Nūm tīmīdūs vītām⁴ jūcundām vīvērē pōtest? Quī⁵ aurī servūs est, turpissimām servītūtēm⁴ servīt. Ariōvistūs maxīmās Germānōrūm cōpiās Rhēnūm⁶ transjēcērāt, nēquē multōrūm diērūm⁷ itēr⁸ ā Cēsārīs castrīs abfuīt. Quīs rēgēm fidībūs dōcuīt? Alexandēr mensēm⁹ ūnūm, annōs⁹ trēs ēt trīgintā nātūs, ā vītā discessīt. Jam vīcēsīmūm annūm⁹ Itāliāe vastitātēm pātīmūr. Rēgūlūs Carthāgīnēm¹⁰ rēdiīt. Consūl īn Africām prōfectūs, Carthāgīnēm vēnīt. Consūl milliā⁸ passuūm duō āb oppidō castrā pōsuērāt. Cātīlinā jūventūtēm quām illexērāt mālā făcīnōrā³ ēdōcēbāt. Socrātēs tōtīūs mūdī sē incōlām² ēt cīvēm arbitrābātūr. Explōrātōrēs dē hostiūm adventū consūlēm cērtiōrēm făciunt. Jūvērēs Rōmānī Athēnās¹⁰ stūdiōrūm causā prōfīciscī sōlēbant.

Translate into Latin.

Labienus followed Cæsar into Gaul; Marius returned home. Our cavalry pursued the enemy ten miles. Cæsar set out from the winter quarters to Rome. The place and time often render cowards brave. Lust makes (*renders*) men blind. Which of the teachers (*masters*) taught the boys grammar and music? My brother taught me to play on the lute. The general led all his forces across the bridge in one night. My brother is twenty years old.

¹ § 127.² § 151 *b*.³ § 151 *a*.⁴ § 150, *Rem. 1*.⁵ § 129, *Rem. 2*.⁶ § 152, *Rem. 2*.⁷ § 132.⁸ § 153.⁹ § 153.¹⁰ § 154.

Cæsar asked the senate for an army. The robbers demanded money from Caius. Are you going to Rome for the sake of study? Cæsar was distant ten days' journey from the camp of Ariovistus. It-is-characteristic of a good general to throw his forces over a river quickly. A boy twelve years old used to inform the enemy of the approach of our forces. The Germans will pitch their camp ten miles off.

THE VOCATIVE.

§ 158. The name of the person addressed is put in the vocative.

The vocative has no grammatical connection with the sentence, but merely serves to call the attention of the person to whom the discourse is directed.

THE ABLATIVE.

§ 159. RULE XXIV.—*Ablative of Cause, Manner, Means, Instrument.* The ablative expresses the cause, manner, means, and instrument: as,

Cæcūs āvārītīā,

Blinded *by avarice.*

Hōc mōdō fēcīt,

He did it *in this manner.*

Aquilū ālis vōlūt,

The eagle flies *with his wings.*

Captīvūm glādiō occīdīt,

He kills the captive *with a sword.*

Remark 1.—The *causal ablative* is used mostly with intransitive and passive verbs, and with adjectives.

Remark 2.—The cause, especially with transitive verbs, is often expressed by *ob* or *proptēr*, with the accusative.

Remark 3.—Akin to the causal ablative is the ablative of *source* with participles expressing origin: as, *nātūs deā*, born of a goddess.

Remark 4.—The *manner* is expressed by the ablative of words meaning manner,—*mōdūs*, *mōs*, *rātīō*, *rītūs*;—or by the ablative

of other words with *cūm* : as, *cūm vōluptātē tē audio*. When an adjective is added to the noun, *cūm* is usually omitted : as, *æquō ānimō cālāmītātēs ferrē*, to bear calamities with patience.

Remark 5.—When the *means* or *instrument* is a person, *pěr* with the accusative must be used : as, *pěr tē libērātūs sūm*, I was freed through you. But the use of *pěr* is not confined to *persons* : as, *pěr vīm*, *pěr fidēm*.

Remark 6.—To this rule may be referred the ablative with the deponents *ūtōr*, I employ myself with, I use ; *fruōr*, I delight myself with, I enjoy ; *fungōr*, I busy myself with, I perform ; *pōtiōr* (*pōtis*), I make myself powerful with, I take possession of ; *vescōr*, I feed myself with, I eat.

NOTE.—*Pōtiōr* sometimes takes an objective genitive (*I make myself master of*).

Remark 7.—A causal ablative is used with expressions of trust, —*fīdo*, *confīdo*, *frētūs*, etc. : as, *frētūs virībūs*, trusting in his strength.

§ 160. RULE XXV.—The ablative expresses the *material* or *supply* : as, *Germāniā flūmīnībūs ābundāt*, Germany abounds in rivers.

This ablative is used with verbs and adjectives of *plenty* or *want*, *filling* or *emptying*, *depriving*, etc. ; also with *ōpūs est*, there is need. This is a branch of the *causal* ablative, the supply being the *necessary antecedent* of the idea of filling ;—there can be no filling without something to fill with. *Emptying and depriving* are the contraries of filling.

Remark 1.—With *ōpūs* and *ūsūs* the genitive is sometimes used, and rarely the accusative. *Opūs* is either subject of *est*, or an indeclinable adjective in the predicate. *Dūcē nōbīs ōpūs est*, we have need of a leader ; or, *dux nōbīs ōpūs est*, a leader is necessary for us. The latter construction is used with neuter pronouns and adjectives : as, *quid nōbīs ōpūs est* ?

Remark 2.—The genitive is also used with expressions of *plenty* or *wants*. See § 135, Rule IX., *d*.

§ 161. RULE XXVI.—*Ablative of Limitation.*—Nouns, adjectives, and verbs are limited by the ablative showing in *what respect* their meaning is taken: as, *oppidūm nōmīnē Bibrax*, a town, Bibrax by name; *ægēr pēdībūs*, lame in his feet.

§ 162. RULE XXVII.—*Ablative of Price.*—The price or value of a thing, if stated definitely, is expressed by the ablative: as, *patriām aurō vendidit*, he sold his country for gold.

Remark 1.—The price or value, if indefinitely stated, is expressed by the genitive. See § 137.

Remark 2.—To this rule may be referred the ablative with *dignūs*, *indignūs*, etc.

Remark 3.—The ablative of price is akin to the *causal* ablative, as the price is the *necessary antecedent* of buying and selling;—there can be no buying and selling without a *price*.

§ 163. RULE XXVIII.—*Ablative of Separation.*—That from which any thing is *freed, removed, or separated*, is expressed by the ablative: as, *patriām hostībūs libērāvit*, he freed his country from enemies.

Remark 1.—A preposition (*āb*, *dē*, *ex*) is often used with this ablative.

Remark 2.—The preposition is rarely used with names of towns denoting the *place from which* motion proceeds, or with the ablatives *dōmō*, *hūmō*, *rūrē*, and *rūrī*. *Rōmā discessit*. *Dōmō exīrē*, to go out from home.

Remark 3.—Verbs of *taking away* have sometimes, instead of an ablative, a dative of advantage or disadvantage: as, *nēc mīhi tē ēripiēt*, nor shall they take you from me.

§ 164. RULE XXIX.—*Ablative of Quality.*—The ablative limited by an adjective is used to express the quality of a thing: as, *serpens ingentī magnītūdīnē*, a serpent of huge size.

Remark 1.—This ablative may form part of the predicate, like an adjective: as, *Agēsilaūs stātūrā fuīt hūmilī*, Agesilaus was of low stature.

The same idea is sometimes expressed by an ablative of limitation, limiting the adjective: as, *Agēsilaūs stātūrā fuīt hūmilīs*, Agesilaus was low in stature.

Remark 2.—A genitive may supply the place of the adjective: as, *est bōs cervī figūrā*, there is an ox of the shape of a stag (a stag-shaped ox).

§ 165. RULE XXX.—*Ablative of Comparison.*—The ablative is used with the comparative degree when *quām* is omitted, to express that with which something is compared: as, *mons est arbōrē altiōr*, a mountain is higher than a tree.

NOTE.—This may be considered a branch of the causal ablative, that with which something is compared being a necessary antecedent of the idea of comparison. It is perhaps better to consider it an ablative of limitation:—"as far as a tree is concerned, a mountain is higher."

Remark 1.—The complement of a comparative may be connected by the conjunction *quām*, either in the same case or in the nominative, subject of *est*, *fuīt*, etc., understood: as, *fortiōrēm vīdī nēmīnēm quām Māriūm*, or *quām Māriūs (est)*.

Remark 2.—When the thing compared is the *subject*, the ablative is generally used: as, *saxūm aurō dūriūs est*; also, when the thing compared is the *object*, the ablative, especially of pronouns, is used: as, *hoc nīhīl grātiūs fācērē pōtēs*, you can do nothing more agreeable than *this*.

But with a comparative in any other case than the nominative or accusative the ablative is very rarely used. *Quām* is used with all cases.

Remark 3.—The complement of a comparative is often omitted altogether, and the comparative is then translated by *too*, or *rather*, with the positive: as, *ēquītēs paulō longiūs prōcessērant*, the horsemen had advanced a little *too far*.

Remark 4.—*Plūs, mīnūs, and ampliūs* are often prefixed to expressions of number, magnitude, etc., without effect upon the construction: as, *nōn ampliūs hōrās sex mansīt*, he stayed not more than *six hours*. These words may be considered adverbs, or indeclinable nouns.

Longiūs and the adjectives *mājōr* and *mīnōr* are sometimes used in the same way: thus, *puēr annōrūm dēcēm*, a boy of ten years; *puēr mīnōr annōrūm dēcēm*, a boy of *less than* ten years.

§ 166. RULE XXXI.—*Ablative of Place where.*—The ablative, usually with the preposition *in*, expresses the *place where*: as, *castrīs or in castrīs mansīt*, he remained *in the camp*; *Alexandēr Bābŷlōnē mortuūs est*, Alexander died *at Babylon*.

. NOTE.—The preposition is rarely used with names of towns.

Exc.—The name of a town denoting the place where, if of the first or second declension and in the singular number, is in the genitive: as, *hābitāt Rōmæ*, he lives *at Rome*; *Milētī mortuūs est*, he died *at Miletus*.

Remark 1.—The genitives *dōmī, hūmī, mīlītīæ, and bellī*, also express the place where: as, *dōmī mīlītīæquē, at home and in service*.

Remark 2.—The genitive of names of islands and countries is sometimes used in the same way: as, *Rōmæ Nūmīdiæquē*, *at Rome and in Numidia*.

§ 167. RULE XXXII.—*Ablative of Time when.*—The point of time at which any thing occurs is expressed by the ablative: as, *tertiā hōrā*, *at the third hour*.

Remark 1.—The limit of time within which any thing is done is expressed by the ablative. See § 153, *note*.

Remark 2.—The time before or after an event is expressed—

(a.) By *antē* or *post* with a numeral.

(b.) By *antēquām* or *postquām*.

(c.) The time after an event, by the relative or *quām*.

- (a.) After ten years, or ten years after. { *post dĕcĕm annōs.*
dĕcĕm post annōs.
post dĕcĭmūm annūm.
dĕcĭmūm post annūm.
dĕcĕm annīs post.
dĕcĕm post annīs.
dĕcĭmō annō post.
dĕcĭmō post annō.
- (b.) Ten years after he had come. { *post dĕcĕm annōs*
dĕcĕm post annōs
post dĕcĭmūm annūm
dĕcĭmūm post annūm
dĕcĕm annīs post
dĕcĕm post annīs
dĕcĭmō annō post
dĕcĭmō post annō } *quān vĕnĕrāt.*

When *antē* or *post* stands last, an accusative specifying the event is often added: as, *dĕcĭmō annō antē conjūrātiōnĕm*.

(c.) *Octō diēbūs quĭbūs occĭsūs est*, eight days after he was killed.

Quatrĭduō quō occĭsūs est, in four days after he was killed.

§ 168. RULE XXXIII.—*Ablative of Difference*.—The ablative is used to show how much one thing exceeds or falls short of another: as, *multīs partĭbūs mājor*, many times larger; *dīmīdiō mĭnōr*, less by half.

§ 169. RULE XXXIV.—*Ablative with Prepositions*.—Twelve prepositions are followed by the ablative. See § 120.

For the ablative of duration of time and extent of space, see § 153.
 For the ablative absolute, see § 186.

EXERCISE LVI.

§ 170. Vocabulary.

<i>frĕtūs</i> , -ā, -ūm, <i>trusting</i> .	<i>sĕcundūs</i> , -ā, -ūm, <i>favorable</i> .
<i>concordiā</i> , -æ, <i>agreement</i> .	<i>tūmultūs</i> , -ūs, <i>tumult</i> .
<i>discordiā</i> , -æ, <i>disagreement</i> .	<i>cādāvēr</i> , -ēr-īs (§ 38, Exc. 2), <i>corpse</i> .
<i>plĕrumquĕ</i> (adv.), <i>for the most part</i> .	<i>sensūs</i> , -ūs, <i>feeling, sense</i> .
<i>mœrōr</i> , -ōr-īs, <i>grief</i> .	<i>tālentūm</i> , -ī, <i>talent</i> .
<i>incrĕdĭbĭlīs</i> , -ĕ, <i>incredible</i> .	<i>ās</i> , <i>assīs</i> (m.), <i>a farthing, a small coin</i> .

morsūs, -ūs, *biting.*

anxiūs, -ā, -ūm, *anxious.*

nātūs, -ūs, *birth.*

rēlīgiō, -ōn-īs, *religion.*

Neptūnūs, -ī, *Neptune* (god of the sea).

in-vād-ō, -ērē, invās-ī, invās-ūm, *to attack.*

con-fīd-ō, -ērē, confīs-ūs, *to trust.* (§ 109, 3.)

crese-ō, -ērē, crēv-ī, crēt-ūm, *to grow.*

dī-lāb-ōr, -ī, dī-laps-ūs, *to fall to pieces.*

intēr-eō, -īrē, intērī-ī, intērīt-ūm (§ 111, 9), *to perish.*

lōqu-ōr, lōquī, lōcūt-ūs, *to speak.*

ūt-ōr, -ī, ūsūs, *to use.*

fru-ōr, -ī, fruct-ūs, *to enjoy.*

vesc-ōr, vescī, —, *to eat, feed upon.*

con-fīc-ī-ō, -ērē, confēc-ī, confect-ūm, *to finish.*

tūt-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to protect.*

in-dūc-ō, -ērē, indux-ī, induct-ūm, *to lead on, induce.*

im-pl-eō, -ērē, implēv-ī, implēt-ūm, *to fill.*

spōli-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to strip, rob, deprive.*

nūd-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to make naked, strip.*

prō-hīb-eō, -ērē, prōhību-ī, prōhībīt-ūm, *to keep off, prevent.*

ex-pell-ō, -ērē, expul-ī, expuls-ūm, *to drive out.*

inter-dic-ō, -ērē, inter-dix-ī, inter-dict-ūm, *to forbid.*

mūt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to exchange, to change.*

EXAMPLES.

Præ moerōrē,

On account of grief. A preventing cause.

Mājōr nātū (§ 161),

Greater by birth, older, elder.

Rē (abl. of res),

In fact.

Dux nōbīs (§ 142) ōpūs est,

A leader is necessary for us.

Dūcē (§ 160) nōbīs (§ 143) ōpūs est,

We have need of a leader.

Mātūrātō (part. perf. pass.) ōpūs est,

There is need of haste.

Cīvēs āgrīs (§ 160) spōliārē,

To deprive the citizens of their land.

Equūs mihī (§ 142, Rem. 3) tālentō (§ 162) stētīt,

The horse cost me a talent (stood to me at a talent).

Dēnīs in diēm assībūs (§ 162),

For or at ten farthings a day.

Assē (§ 162) cārūm,

Dear at an as.

Aquā (§ 163) āliquēm interdīcērē,

To cut one off from water.

Alīcuī (§ 141 or 142) āquām interdīcērē,

To forbid water to one.

Alīcuī (§ 142) āquā ēt ignī (§ 163) interdīcērē,

To cut one off from fire and water, to banish.

Translate into English and analyze.

Hostēs nūmērō¹ frētī in nostrōs impētūm fēcērē. Dux hostiūm nātūrā² lōcī confidēbāt. Dēcīmāe lēgiōnī² Cēsār maxīmē confidēbāt. Concordiā¹ rēs parvāe crescunt; discordiā¹ maxīmāe dilābuntūr. Multī oppidānōrūm fāmē ēt sītī intēriērunt. Nūmīdāe plērumquē lactē ēt carnē³ vescuntūr. Hannībāl victōriā³ fruī quām ūtī māluit. Cātīlinā, cūpīditātē regnī inductūs, conjūratiōnēm fēcīt. Sāpientīs⁴ est æquō ānimō dōlōrēm ferrē. Cornībūs taurī, aprī dentībūs, morsū leōnēs sē tūtantūr. Pātēr tuūs nōmīnē⁵ māgis quām impēriō⁵ rex fuīt. Fratrūm maxīmūs nātū⁵ fuīt Orgētōrix. Milītēs urbēm tūmultū⁶ implēbunt. Neptūnūs ventīs⁶ sēcundīs vėlā implēvīt. Auctōritātē tuā⁷ nōbīs⁸ ōpūs est. Quantūm argentī tībī² ōpūs est? Quanti⁹ istē ēquūs tībī stētīt? Tālētō.¹⁰ Hēc victōriā nōbīs multō sanguīnē¹⁰ stētīt. Dēnīs in diēm assībūs¹⁰ ānimā ēt corpūs milītīs aēstīmantūr. Quōd¹¹ nōn ōpūs est assē cārūm est. Dīvītēs cīvēs Rōmānī uxōrēs libērosquē milītūm āgrīs¹² expellēbant. Rēgūlūs Carthāgīnē¹² prōfectūs, Rōmām¹³ pervēnīt. Sācerdōtēs Balbō āquā¹³ ēt ignī interdixērant. Consūl Rōmā¹² discessīt.

Translate into Latin.

The Britons live mostly on milk and flesh. The general, trusting in the nature of the place, kept his forces in camp. Very many poor (men) have died of hunger and thirst. I cannot speak for (*on account of*) grief. The townsmen besought Cæsar with many tears. Orgetorix,

¹ § 159, *Rem.* 7.² § 142.³ § 159, *Rem.* 6.⁴ § 133.⁵ § 161.⁶ § 160.⁷ § 160, *Rem.* 1.⁸ § 142.⁹ § 137.¹⁰ § 162.¹¹ § 129, *Rem.* 2.¹² § 163.¹³ § 154.

the richest and most noble of the Helvetians, led on by the desire of reigning (*regnī*), made a conspiracy of the nobility. The soldiers finished the journey with incredible swiftness. Cicero wrote all his speeches with the greatest care and diligence. The Belgians attacked the camp with great shouting. It is the duty of a young man to respect his elders. Bocchus was king in name, but not in fact. The sailors had loaded the ships with gold. Thou hast deprived the citizens of (their) land; thou hast stripped the temples of (their) silver and gold; thou hast filled the city with blood and corpses; for these things (*ōb hās rēs*) I cut thee off from water and fire. We have need of haste. How much gold have we need of? This base fellow will exchange faith and religion for money. Lycurgus forbade the use of gold to his people. The Æduans were not able to keep off the Helvetians from their country.

EXERCISE LVII.

§ 171. *Vocabulary.*

stātūrā, -æ, <i>stature, height (of a man).</i>	Hiberniā, -æ, <i>Ireland.</i>
hūmilis, -ē (‡ 72, 2), <i>low.</i>	antēquā (conj.), <i>before.</i>
exiguūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>small, short.</i>	postquā (conj.), <i>after.</i>
pōtestās, -tāt-is, <i>power.</i>	doctūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>learned.</i>
perpētūus, -ā, -ūm, <i>continual.</i>	amplūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>large, much.</i>
tŷrannūs, -ī, <i>king, despot.</i>	dīmīdiūm, -ī, <i>half.</i>
gēnūs, gēnēr-is, <i>race, family.</i>	infīnitūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>boundless.</i>
spēluncā, -æ, <i>cave.</i>	altītūdō, -īn-is, <i>depth, height.</i>
prāvūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>depraved.</i>	paulūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>little. (Usually in neuter.)</i>
fīgūrā, -æ, <i>shape, figure.</i>	Diānā, -æ, <i>Diana.</i>
infēriōr (‡ 72, 4), <i>lower, of less value, inferior.</i>	Ephēsīus, -ā, -ūm, <i>Ephesian.</i>
postēriōr (‡ 72, 4), <i>later, of less account.</i>	Pūnicūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>Carthaginian.</i>
præcīpuūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>special.</i>	Scīpiō, -ōn-is, <i>Scipio.</i>
Varrō, -ōn-is, <i>Varro.</i>	Africānūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>African. (A surname of Scipio.)</i>
	Brītanniā, -æ, <i>Britain.</i>

- dīc-ō, -ērē, dix-ī, dict-ūm, *to say, to call.*
 dūc-ō, -ērē, dux-ī, duct-ūm, *to lead, to deem.*
 cūp-i-ō, -ērē, cūpīv-ī, cūpīt-ūm, *to desire.*
 de-flagr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to burn down, to be consumed.*

EXAMPLES.

Proeliūm atrōciūs quām prō nū- mērō pugnantiūm,	} <i>A battle more fierce than in proportion to the numbers of combatants ; or than would have been expected from, etc.</i>
Quō (§ 168) longiōr diēs, eō (§ 168) nox brēviōr,	
	<i>The longer the day, the shorter the night. (Eō is antecedent of quō.)</i>

Translate into English and analyze.

Agēsilaūs stātūrā¹ fuit hūmilī, corpōrē exiguō. Quī² pōtestatē est perpētūā, tȳrannūs hābētūr ēt dīcītūr. Lūciūs Cātīlinā, nōbilī gēnērē³ nātūs, fuit magnā vī¹ ēt⁴ ānīmī ēt corpōris, sēd ingēniō¹ mālō prāvōquē. Est bōs cervī⁵ figurā, cūjūs ā mēdiā⁶ frontē unūm cornū exsistīt. Sāpientīs⁷ est hūmānā omniā virtūtē⁸ infēriōrā dūcērē. Bellō Pūnicō⁹ quō⁸ nullūm mājūs Rōmānī gessērē, Scīpiō Africānūs prācēpuām glōriām tūlīt. Hēc verbā sunt Varrōnis, quām fuit Claudiūs doctiōris.¹⁰ Eō diē nōn ampliūs¹¹ triā milliā hōmīnūm occīsī sunt.¹² Gallōrūm cōpiā nōn longiūs milliā¹³ passuūm octō āb castrīs ābērant. Tribūs annīs¹⁴ post bellūm cīvilē pōpūlūs Sȳphacēm rēgēm creāvīt. Hōmīnēs quō plūrā hābent, eō cūpiunt ampliōrā. Varrō Antiōchīā¹⁵ vixīt. Cīcērō stūdiōrūm causā multōs annōs Athēnis hābitāvīt. Quā noctē nātūs est Alexandēr, eādēm templūm Diānē Ephēsīe deflagrāvīt.

- | | | |
|--------------------|-------------------|-------------------|
| • 1 § 164, Rem. 1. | 2 § 129, Rem. 2. | 3 § 159, Rem. 3. |
| 4 § 123, Rem. 31. | 5 § 164, Rem. 2. | 6 § 128, Rem. 8. |
| 7 § 133. | 8 § 165. | 9 § 167. |
| 10 § 127. | 11 § 165, Rem. 4. | 12 § 128, Rem. 3. |
| 13 § 153. | 14 § 167, Rem. 2. | 15 § 166, Exc. |

Translate into Latin.

It is the duty of a general to deem his own safety of less account than the common safety. Near the city is a cave of boundless depth. This soldier is of low stature and lame in his feet. I have seen no more beautiful (woman) than Tullia. On that day Cæsar advanced (*prōcēdērē*) not more than six miles. The burden was too heavy for his strength. More men were killed than *would have been expected* from the number of combatants. Three days after Cæsar reached the camp, ambassadors were sent by the Germans. The consul was blind for many years before (*antēquā*) you were born. The king of the Thracians dwelt many years at Rome. Ireland is less by half than Britain. Cicero was much more eloquent than Crassus. The farther the enemy retreated, the more swiftly did our men pursue. Our horsemen pursued the enemy a little too far.

THE PASSIVE CONSTRUCTION.

For the change from active to passive construction, see § 108.

§ 172. RULE XXXV.—Verbs which in the active take another case in addition to the object-accusative, in the passive retain that other case: as, *libēr puērō dātūr*, a book is given *to the boy*; *arbōrēs fōliīs nūdantūr*, the trees are stripped *of leaves*.

Remark 1.—A second accusative in the active (except with verbs of teaching and some verbs of asking) becomes a predicate nominative in the passive. *Urbēm vōcāvīt Rōmām*; *Urbs Rōmā vōcātūr*.

Remark 2.—As intransitive verbs have no direct object in the active, they are not used *personally* in the passive, except with a

cognate or equivalent nominative: as, *cursūs currītūr*. When they are used impersonally, the remote object is of course retained: as, *mīhi ā tē persuādētūr*, I am persuaded by you.

Remark 3.—The infinitive passive of an intransitive verb is often used as a complement of an impersonal expression: as, *mīhi persuādērī nōn pōtest*, it cannot be persuaded to me;—*I cannot be persuaded*.

SYNTAX OF THE INDEFINITE VERB.

The *finite* verb consists of the indicative, the subjunctive, and the imperative mood; the *indefinite* verb, of the infinitive, participles, gerund, and supine.

INFINITIVE.

§ 173. RULE XXXVI.—*Subject Infinitive.*—The infinitive is a neuter noun in the nominative or accusative, and may be the subject of a verb: as, *grātūm est tēcūm ambūlārē*, it is pleasant to walk with you.

§ 174. RULE XXXVII.—*Complementary Infinitive.*—The infinitive is used as a complement (*filling up*) with certain verbs and adjectives expressing an incomplete idea: as, *pārāt bellūm gērērē*, he is preparing to wage war.

NOTE.—The complementary infinitive may be regarded in every case as an accusative, either of direct object or limitation. *Transīrē cōnātūr*, he attempts the crossing. *Transīrē pōtest*, he is able as to the crossing (his ability reaches that limit).

Remark 1.—The infinitive with adjectives is rare in prose, the gerund being generally used. *Cūpīdūs mōriendī*, rather than *cūpīdūs mōrīrī*.

Remark 2.—A purpose is not expressed in Latin prose by the infinitive. Thus, *I came to see*, must be translated *vēnī ūt vīdērēm*, not *vēnī vīdērē*, though this construction is sometimes used by the poets.

Remark 3.—An infinitive expressing an incomplete idea (§ 130, 3) has the same case after it as before it, if both nouns refer to the same thing: as, *volo essē rex*; *nēmīnī mēdio essē licēt*; *mīhi essē poētæ diī nōn concessērē*, the gods have not permitted me to be a poet; *pūdet mē victūm discēdērē*, I am ashamed to come off conquered.

Remark 4.—An adjective limiting a complementary infinitive agrees with the subject: as, *Cæsār clēmēns existimārī voluit*, Cæsar wished to be esteemed merciful.

Remark 5.—The accusative with the infinitive (§ 188) is sometimes used with *licēt*, and the predicate noun must then be in the accusative: as, *nēmīnī (sē) mēdiūm essē licēt*.

§ 175. RULE XXXVIII.—*Historical Infinitive.*—In animated narration the infinitive is often used like a past indicative: as, *consul in Africām festinārē*, the consul hastened to Africa.

For the predicate infinitive, see § 188.

For the construction of participles, see § 185.

GERUND AND GERUNDIVE.

§ 176. RULE XXXIX.—The gerund is a verbal noun in the oblique cases (the nominative being supplied by the infinitive), and is construed with the same cases as the verb from which it is derived.

Stūdiūm patrēm videndī, the desire of seeing my father.

Parcendō victīs, by sparing the conquered.

§ 177. RULE XL.—Instead of a transitive gerund the gerundive is frequently used; the object-noun being put into the case of the gerund, and the gerundive agreeing with it in gender, number, and case: as,

Consiliūm scribendī epistolām, }
Consiliūm epistolæ scribendæ, } *The design of writing a letter.*

Remark 1.—A transitive gerund with an object accusative is not generally used in the dative or accusative, but the gerundive

is used instead: as, *chartā utilis est scribendis epistolis*, or *ad scribendas epistolās* (not *scribendō epistolās*). So also when the gerund would be the object of a preposition the gerundive is preferred: as, *in victorē laudandō* (not *victorēm*), in praising *the conqueror*.

Remark 2.—The gerund is preferred when the object is a neuter adjective or pronoun: as, *studiū aliquid faciendī*, the desire of doing *something*.

Remark 3.—The genitive singular of the gerund is sometimes used instead of the genitive plural of the gerundive, with a noun in the genitive plural: as, *fācultās agrorūm latronībūs suis condonandī*, the opportunity of *presenting our fields* to his ruffians. So also in the expression *sui purgandī causā*, for the purpose of excusing themselves; though *sui* may better be regarded as the genitive singular neuter of the possessive, like *nostrī* and *vestrī*.

Remark 4.—The verbs *ūtōr*, *fruōr*, *fungōr*, *pōtiōr*, and sometimes *medeōr*, use the gerundive like transitive verbs.

§ 178. RULE XLI.—The gerundive of intransitive verbs is used impersonally with the tenses of *essē*, to express the necessity or duty of doing an action: as,

Mihī eundū est,	<i>I must go.</i>
Tibī eundū est,	<i>Thou must go.</i>
Caiō eundū est,	<i>Caius must go.</i>
Nōbīs eundū est,	<i>We must go.</i>
Vōbīs eundū est,	<i>Ye must go.</i>
Puērīs eundū est,	<i>The boys must go.</i>
Mihī eundū ērāt,	<i>I had to go.</i>
Tibī eundū ērāt,	<i>Thou hadst to go.</i>
Caiō eundū ērāt,	<i>Caius had to go.</i>
Mihī eundū ērīt,	<i>I shall have to go.</i>
Mihī eundū essēt,	<i>I should have to go.</i>
Mihī eundū fuissēt,	<i>I should have had to go.</i>

Remark 1.—The object of the action is sometimes expressed: as, *nōbīs ratiōnē utendū est*, we must use *reason*.

But with transitive verbs the personal construction is almost always used: as,

Ēpistōlā mīhī est scribendā,

A letter must be written by me, I must write a letter.

Epistōlā tībī est scribendā,

You must write a letter.

Epistōlā nōbīs ērāt scribendā,

We had to write a letter.

Epistōlā vōbīs ērīt scribendā,

Ye will have to write a letter.

Epistōlā Caiō essēt scribendā,

Caius would have to write a letter.

(This use of the gerundive is sometimes called the second Periphrastic Conjugation.)

Remark 2.—The agent is expressed by the dative (§ 145), rarely by the ablative with *ā* or *āb*.

SUPINE.

§ 179. RULE XLII.—(a.) The supine in *ūm* (accusative) is used with verbs of motion to express the purpose of the motion, and is construed with the same cases as its verb: as, *vēnio tē rōgātūm, I come to ask you.*

(b.) The supine in *ū* is used with adjectives as an ablative of limitation (§ 161): as, *fācīlē factū, easy to be done (with respect to the doing).*

EXERCISE LVIII.

§ 180. Vocabulary.

spātiūm, -ī, *opportunity, time.*

vērūtūm, -ī, *javelin.*

dēfessūs, -ā, -ūm, *wearied.*

ēlōquentiā, -æ, *eloquence.*

negligens, -ent-īs, *careless.*

magnānīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *magnanimous.*

cūr-ārē, *to attend to.*

ætās, -tāt-īs, *age, life.*

Ārār, or Arāris, -īs (§ 33, *Rem. 1*),

sātīs (noun, adj., or adv.), *enough.*

the Saone, a river of Gaul.

sīmūl (adv.), *at the same time.*

hōnestē (adv.), *honorably.*

cūpīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *desirous.*

Hermīniūs, -ī, *Hermīnius.*

vexillūm, -ī, *flag, standard.*

præd-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to plunder.*

frūment-ōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to forage.*

purg-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to cleanse, excuse.*

con-serv-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to save, preserve.*

prō-pōn-ō, -ērē, prōpōsu-ī, prōpōsit-ūm, *to set up.*

āg-ō, -ērē, ēg-ī, act-ūm, *to do.*

ex-cēd-ō, -ērē, excess-ī, excess-ūm, *to go out, retire.*

dē-līg-ō, -ērē, dēlēg-i, dēlect-ūm, *to choose*.
 dī-rīp-i-ō, -ērē, dīrīpu-i, dīrept-ūm, *to pillage*.
 ād-hīb-eō, -ērē, ādhību-i, ādhībīt-ūm, *to apply, use*.
 re-scind-ō, -ērē, rescīd-i, re-sciss-ūm, *to cut down*.
 disc-ō, -ērē, dīdisc-i, *to learn*.
 quēr-ōr, quēr-i, quest-ūs, *to complain*.
 rē-pēt-ō, -ērē, rēpētiv-i, rēpētīt-ūm, *to ask back*.
 pēr-cūt-i-ō, -ērē, percuss-i, percuss-ūm, *to strike*.
 hort-ōr, hort-ārī, hort-ātūs, *to encourage, exhort*.
 prō-fūg-i-ō, -ērē, prōfūg-i, prōfūgīt-ūm, *to flee*.
 prō-puls-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to repel*.
 col-līg-ō, -ērē, collēg-i, collect-ūm, *to collect*.
 cōgīt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to think*.
 dē-sil-i-ō, -irē, dēsīlu-i, dēsult-ūm, *to leap down*.
 arcess-ō, -ērē, arcess-īvī, arcess-ītūm, *to send for*.
 cūr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to care for, attend to*.
 pār-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to prepare, acquire, buy*.

EXAMPLES.

Nēquē — nēquē,	<i>Neither — nor.</i>
Spātiūm excēdendī,	<i>Time for retiring.</i>
Consiliūm cāpērē,	<i>To form a design.</i>
Pontēm in flūminē faciendūm	<i>To have a bridge built over a river</i>
cūrārē,	<i>(to attend to the building of a bridge,</i> <i>etc.).</i>
Cæsārī (§ 145) omniā ērant āgendā,	<i>Cæsar had to do all things. (Literally,</i> <i>all things were to be done by Cæsar.)</i>
Suī (§ 177, <i>Rem. 3</i>) purgandī	<i>For the purpose of excusing himself,</i>
causā,	<i>herself, themselves.</i>

A purpose may be expressed—

(a.) After verbs of giving, etc., by a predicate gerundive: as, *urbs militibūs diripiendā datā est*, *the city was given to the soldiers to be plundered*.

(b.) By *ad* with the accusative of a gerund or gerundive: as, *ad eas res conficiendās*, *for finishing, to finish, these things*.

(c.) After a noun, by the dative of a gerundive: as, *mē rēgēm bellō gērendō creāvistī*, *you have made me king for the purpose of carrying on war*.

(d.) By *causā*, *grātiā*, with the genitive: as, *mē rēgēm bellī gērendī causā creāvistī*, *you have made me king for the purpose of carrying on war*.

(e.) By the supine after verbs of motion : as, *lēgātī rēs rēpētītūm vēniunt*, ambassadors come to seek redress.

(For other modes of expressing purpose, see § 193; § 210; § 185, 3 b.)

Translate into English.

Germānīs nēquē consīlii hābendī¹ nēquē armā cāpiendī² spātiūm dātūm est. Magnā pars ēquītātūs prædandī frūmentandīquē³ causā trans Rhēnūm missā ērāt. Ad eās rēs conficiendās⁴ Orgētōrix dēlīgītūr. Omnēs hōmīnēs plūrā hābendī⁵ cūpīdī sunt. Multī in ēquīs pārandīs⁶ ādhībent cūrām, sēd in āmicīs dēlīgēndīs⁷ neglīgēntēs sunt. Cæsār in Arārī pontēm fāciendūm⁸ cūrāvīt. Cæsār pontēm quēm in Rhēnō fāciendūm⁹ cūrāvērāt, rescīdīt. Hōmīnīs mens discendō ālītūr ēt cōgītandō. Brēvē tempūs ætātīs sātīs longūm est ād bēnē hōnestēquē vīvendūm. Hermīniūs intēr spōliandūm¹⁰ corpūs hostīs vērūtō percussūs est. Lōquēndī ēlōquentiā augētūr lēgendīs¹¹ ōrātōribūs ēt poētīs. Princīpēs cīvītātīs, suī conservandī¹² causā, Rōmā¹³ prōfūgērunt. Fortēs ēt magnānīmī* sunt hābendī nōn quī¹⁴ fāciunt, sēd quī prōpulsant injūriām. Illō ipsō diē mīhī¹⁵ prōfīciscendūm¹⁶ ērāt. Milītībūs dē nāvībūs ērāt dēsīliendūm.¹⁷ Mendācī¹⁸ ā nullō crēdītūr.¹⁹ Mīhī ā tē nōcērī²⁰ nōn pōtest.

Translate into Latin.

(The verb *essē* is often omitted with participles. See § 126, *Rem. 4.*)

The Gauls had formed the design of *attacking the town*. Time for *retiring* from (*out of*) the fight was not given to

¹ § 177.

² § 176.

³ § 135 a.

⁴ § 177, *Rem. 3.*

⁵ § 163.

⁶ § 129, *Rem. 2.*

⁷ § 145.

⁸ § 178.

⁹ § 142, or § 141.

¹⁰ § 114, 5; § 172, *Rem. 2.*

¹¹ § 172, *Rem. 3.*

* Predicate nominative after *sunt hābendī*; the subject is the relative sentence following.

the wearied. The hope of *plundering* had recalled the farmers from their fields. The general gave the city to his soldiers *to be plundered*. The chiefs of the state came to Cæsar *for the purpose of excusing themselves*. The king's daughters had fled from home *for the purpose of saving themselves*. The Gauls send ambassadors to Rome *to complain-of (supine) injuries, and to seek redress*. A short life is long enough *to accomplish* all these things. Cæsar *had to do* all things at one time: the flag *had to be set up*, the soldiers *recalled* from the work; (those) who had advanced a little too far, *sent for*; the line *had to be drawn up*; the soldiers *exhorted*; the signal *given*. The soldiers *had at the same time both to leap-down* from the ships and *to fight* with the enemy. We learn by teaching. We live by eating. The Helvetians were desirous of *carrying on* war. We must lead the army over the river. We must *respect* our elders, *favor* our friends, *obey* the laws. We *must love* (§ 178, *Rem. 2*) our parents and *worship* God. The enemy's ships (§ 142) cannot be hurt (§ 172, *Rem. 3*) by our sailors.

SYNTAX OF PROPOSITIONS.

§ 181. 1. Propositions are either principal or dependent. A principal proposition makes complete sense when standing alone; a dependent one does not make complete sense when alone, but must be connected with another proposition.

2. Dependent or subordinate propositions are of ten kinds, viz.:—

1. *Participial propositions*, i.e., those whose predicate is a *participle*.
2. *Infinitive propositions*, i.e., those whose predicate is an *infinitive*.
3. *Causal propositions*, introduced by the *causal conjunctions* *quod, quia, etc.*

4. *Final propositions*, introduced by a *final* conjunction.
5. *Conditional propositions*, introduced by a *conditional* conjunction.
6. *Concessive propositions*, introduced by a *concessive* conjunction.
7. *Comparative propositions*, introduced by a *comparative* conjunction.
8. *Temporal propositions*, introduced by a *temporal* conjunction.
9. *Relative propositions*, introduced by a *relative* pronoun.
10. *Interrogative propositions*, introduced by an *interrogative* word.

3. Every dependent proposition is either a noun, an adjective, or an adverb, limiting either the subject, or predicate, or some other word of the *principal* sentence on which it depends (*hangs down*).

4. Propositions of the same rank, whether principal or dependent, may be connected by conjunctions, and are then said to be *co-ordinate* with each other. Co-ordination is of five kinds, viz.:—

1. *Copulative*: e.g., he has lost his property, *and* forfeited his credit.
2. *Disjunctive*: e.g., either he has lost his property, *or* he has forfeited his credit.
3. *Adversative*: e.g., he has lost his property, *but* he has not forfeited his credit.
4. *Causal* (introduced by *nām*, *namquē*, *ěnim*, *ětěním*): e.g., he will forfeit his credit, *for* he has lost his property.
5. *Conclusive*: e.g., he has lost his property, *therefore* he will forfeit his credit.

THE MOODS.

§ 182. RULE XLIII.—The indicative is used both in principal and dependent sentences when a fact is stated.

§ 183. RULE XLIV.—The subjunctive is used when a thing is stated, not as a *fact*, but simply as *conceived in the mind*:—

- (a.) In a softened assertion: *as*, *hoc confirmāvērīm*, I think I can assert this.

- (b.) In a question, implying doubt or expecting a negative answer: as, *quid faciāmūs?* what shall we do?
 (c.) To express a supposed case: as, *forsitān aliquis dixerit*, perhaps some one will say.
 (d.) To express a command or prohibition: as, *nē hoc feceris*, do not do this.

Remark.—The subjunctive is always used to express a command or exhortation in the first person, the imperative having no first person: as, *eāmūs*, let us go.

TENSES.

§ 184. The tenses are either primary or historical.

Primary.	{	PRESENT.	FUTURES.	PRES. PERFECT.
		āmāt, he loves.	āmābīt, he will love. āmāvērīt, he will have loved.	āmāvīt, he has loved.
Historical.	{	IMPERFECT.	PAST PERFECT.	AORIST PERFECT.
		āmābāt, he was loving.	āmāvērāt, he had loved.	āmāvīt, he loved.

RULE XLV.—*Succession of Tenses.*—If there be a primary tense in the principal proposition, there must be a primary tense in the dependent; if there be an historical tense in the principal, there must be an historical tense in the dependent.

PRINCIPAL.	DEPENDENT.	
Vēniō	ūt vīdeām,	<i>I come, that I may see.</i>
Vēniām	ūt vīdeām,	<i>I will come, that I may see.</i>
Vēnī	ūt vīdeām,	<i>I have come, that I may see.</i>
Vēniēbām	ūt vīdērēm,	<i>I was coming, that I might see.</i>
Vēnī	ūt vīdērēm,	<i>I came, that I might see.</i>

Remark 1.—An historical present is primary in form, but past in fact: it is, therefore, often followed by past tenses in the dependent propositions.

Remark 2.—The latter part of a long oblique discourse, when the leading verb is past, is almost always shifted to the present, for the sake of animation.

PARTICIPIAL PROPOSITIONS.

§ 185. 1. The participle is used to abridge discourse, and may stand in the place of a *causal, final, conditional, concessive, relative, or temporal* proposition, or a principal proposition connected by *et* with what follows.

2. (a.) The participle may agree with the subject, object, or some other word of the principal proposition (*participial conjunctive construction*): as, *Aristīdēs patriā pulsūs Lăcēdămōnēm fūgīt*, Aristides *when driven* from his country fled to Sparta.

(b.) Or, it may stand with a noun or a pronoun in the ablative, without grammatical connection with any word in the principal proposition: as, *hīs rēbūs constītūtīs, consūl discessīt*, *these things being determined upon*, the consul departed. (*Ablative Absolute.*)

3. Here may be noted some peculiarities in the use of the participles.

(a.) The participle in *rūs* is used with the verb *essē* to represent the agent as *about to perform*, or *intending to perform*, an action. *Lēcūtūrūs fuīt*, he was on the point of speaking. (This is sometimes called the *First Periphrastic Conjugation.*)

(b.) The participle in *rūs*, especially with verbs of motion, is sometimes used to express a *purpose*. *Ad Jōvēm Ammōnēm pergīt consūltūrūs dē ōrīgīnē suā*, he goes to Jupiter Ammon *to consult* about his origin.

(c.) The perfect passive participle agreeing with a noun is often used like a verbal noun in *-io* or *-ūs* limited by a genitive: as, *āb urbē condītā*, from the *building* of the city; *post praeliūm factūm*, after the *fighting* of the battle. An adjective limiting a noun may often be translated in the same way, *i.e.* like an abstract noun with a genitive: as, *imprōvisā rē commōtī*, alarmed by the suddenness of the thing.

(d.) Instead of the perfect tenses in the active, the perfect pas-

sive participle is sometimes used with *habeo*; and the compound form thus obtained is generally stronger than the simple perfect: as, *Dumnōrix portōriā rēdemptā hābuit* (for *rēdēmērāt*), Dumnorix had farmed the revenues.

§ 186. RULE XLVI.—*Ablative Absolute*.—A noun and participle, whose case depends upon no other word, are put in the ablative called *absolute*, to express the time, cause, condition, or circumstances of an action: as, *Pythāgōrās, Tarquīniō regnantē, in Itāliām vēnit*, Pythagoras came to Italy in the reign of Tarquin (*Tarquin reigning*).

Remark 1.—Two nouns, or a noun and an adjective, are often used in the ablative absolute without a participle, the participle *ens* of *essē* having become obsolete: as, *nātūrā dūcē, under the guidance of nature* (*nature being guide*); *Manliō consulē, in the consulship of Manlius* (*Manlius being consul*).

Remark 2.—This omission of the participle *ens* is quite common in the participial conjunctive construction also: as, *C. Antōniūs, pēdibūs ægēr, praeliō ādessē nēquibāt*, Caius Antonius could not be present at the battle, (*being*) lame in his feet, i.e. *because he was lame*; *Mētellūs, vir egrēgiūs āliīs artībūs*, Metellus (though he was) an illustrious man in other respects, etc.

Remark 3.—The ablative absolute is very rarely used when the subject of the participial proposition is the same with that of the principal proposition; the conjunctive construction is then used.

EXERCISE LIX.

§ 187. Vocabulary.

rēpentinūs, -ā, -ūm, sudden.

tempestās, -tāt-īs, time.

ultēriōr (q̄ 74, 1), farther.

Dyonysius, -ī, Dyonysius.

Syracūsæ, -ārūm, Syracuse, a city of Sicily.

pollicitātiō, -ōn-īs, promise.

err-ārē, to err, to wander.

dē-spēr-ārē, to despair.

Athēniensis, -īs, an Athenian.

Messālā, -æ, Messala.

Pisō, -ōn-īs, Piso.

Persā, -æ, a Persian.

ex sententiā, according to one's notion, satisfactorily.

arrĭp-i-ŏ, -ĕrĕ, arrĭpu-ĭ, arrept-ŭm, *to snatch up.*
 nancisc-ŏr, nancisc-ĭ, nactŭs *and* nanct-ŭs, *to obtain.*
 pro-grĕd-i-ŏr, progrĕd-i, progress-ŭs, *to go forward.*
 cŏ-hort-ŏr, -ārĭ, -ātŭs, *to encourage, exhort.*
 cond-ŏ, cond-ĕrĕ, condĭd-ĭ, condĭt-ŭm, *to found, build.*
 com-mitt-ŏ, -ĕrĕ, com-mĭs-ĭ, commiss-ŭm, *to join.*
 dĕl-eŏ, -ĕrĕ, dĕlĕv-ĭ, dĕlĕt-ŭm, *to destroy.*
 aggrĕd-i-ŏr, aggrĕd-ĭ, aggress-ŭs, *to go to, attack.*
 vĕr-eŏr, vĕr-ĕrĭ, vĕrĭt-ŭs, *to fear.*
 ad-dŭc-ŏ, -ĕrĕ, addux-ĭ, adduct-ŭm, *to lead on.*

EXAMPLE.

Cæsar, *having called a council,* } Cæsār, concĭliŏ convŏcātŏ, centŭri-
 sharply censured the centurions. } ōnēs vēhĕmentĕr incŭsāvĭt.

(None but deponent verbs have a perfect participle with an active meaning; the perfect active participle in English must therefore be translated by the perfect passive participle in the ablative absolute, unless the verb is deponent.)

Translate into English.

Nostrĭ, rĕpentĭnā rĕ perturbātĭ, armā arrĭpiunt. Barbārĭ, multĭtŭdĭnē nāvĭŭm perterrĭtĭ,¹ ā lĭtŏrĕ discessĕrant. Nactŭs ĭdŏneām ād nāvĭgandŭm² tempestātĕm, tertiā fĕrĕ vĭgiliā³ ĕquĭtēs ĭn ultĕriŏrĕm portŭm progrĕdĭ jussĭt. Hĭs rĕbŭs ex sententiā confectĭs,⁴ ĭmpĕrātŏr, mĭlĭtēs cŏhortātŭs, prĕliŭm commĭsĭt. Vĭgintĭ annĭs⁵ antĕ Cātŏnĕm nātŭm⁶ pātĕr meŭs vitā⁷ discessĭt. Annŏ quadrāgĕsĭmŏ prĭmŏ āb urbĕ condĭtā⁸ Nŭmā rex⁹ creātŭs est. Haud multĭs annĭs post Carthāgĭnĕm dĕlĕtām⁶ Jŭgurthā nātŭs est. Dŷonŷ-siŭs tŷrannŭs, Sŷrācŭsĭs⁷ expulŭs, Cŏrĭnthĭ⁹ puĕrŏs dŏcĕbāt. Lĕgātŭs signŭm mĭlĭtĭbŭs nŏn dĕdĭt cŭpĭentĭbŭs.

¹ § 185, 2 a.² § 142, Rem. 3.³ § 167.⁴ § 186.⁵ § 167, Rem. 2.⁶ § 185, 3 c.⁷ § 163.⁸ § 130, 2.⁹ § 166, Exc.

Nātūrā dūcē¹ nunquām errābīmūs. His rēbūs constītūtīs² lēgātī rēgēm dē rēbūs suīs despērantēm, multis pollicītātīōnībūs aggrēdiuntūr.³ Hāc rē stātīm pēr spēcūlātōrēs⁴ cognītā, Cæsār, insīdiās vērītūs, exercītūm castrīs⁵ contīnuīt. Alexandēr īn Asiām contendīt regnūm Persārūm occūpātūrūs.⁶ Cæsār īn Itāliām prōfectūrūs⁷ princīpēs cīvītātūm ād sē convōcāt. Consūl collēm occūpātūrūs est. Athēniensēs lēgātōs mīsērunt ōrācūlūm consūltūrōs.⁶ Marcō Messālā ēt Marcō Pīsōnē consūlībūs,¹ Orgētōrix, cūpīdīnē regnī adductūs, conjūrātīōnēm nōbilitātīs fēcīt.

Translate into Latin.

Who will err under the guidance of nature? Who, pray, will not err under your guidance? In the consulship of Manlius the Gauls sent ambassadors to Rome. These things having been determined upon, the line of battle having been drawn up, the signal having been given, our men commenced battle. Both parties fought (§ 114, 5) bravely. The consul, fearing the enemy's cavalry, kept his forces in camp (*for*) three days. Two years before the destruction of Carthage the Numidians sent ambassadors to Rome to the senate. The general is going-to-attack the enemy at sunset. In the reign of Tarquin the Proud, many noble citizens were murdered at Rome. The general, having called together his lieutenants, ordered them to commence the battle. The Athenians, having consulted the oracle, returned home. Adherbal, (*when*) expelled from Numidia, fled to Rome. These things having been satisfactorily arranged, Cæsar set out to (*in*) Britain.

¹ § 186, *Rem.* 1.

² § 186.

³ § 95, *Rem.* 2.

⁴ § 159, *Rem.* 5.

⁵ § 166.

⁶ § 185, 3 *b.*

⁷ § 185, 3 *a.*

INFINITIVE PROPOSITIONS.

§ 188. RULE XLVII.—After expressions of *saying*, *thinking*, etc. (*verbū sentiendī et dicendī*), and certain impersonal expressions, dependent propositions introduced in English by *that*, are expressed in Latin by infinitive propositions: as, *dīcīt mē scrībērē*, he says that I write.

The subject of an infinitive proposition is in the accusative.

NOTE.—The infinitive cannot with propriety be called a predicate, as it is a *noun*, and not a mode of the verb. Thus, in the above example, the object of *dīcīt* is *scrībērē*, and *mē* shows the limit to which the assertion extends (§ 155), *he asserts the writing with respect to me*. The thing asserted is the *writing*, and the person *as to whom* the assertion is made is *me*. But as the accusative with the infinitive corresponds to English noun-propositions introduced by *that*, it is more convenient to regard it as a dependent proposition, the accusative being the subject, and the infinitive being the predicate.

Remark 1.—The infinitive expresses an action as present, past, or future, with reference, not to the present time, but to the time of the leading verb.

(a.) <i>Dīcīt, he says</i>	} <i>mē scrībērē,</i> } <i>that I write, or</i> } <i>am writing.</i>	} <i>mē scripsissē,</i> } <i>that I have written.</i>	} <i>mē scriptūrū essē,</i> } <i>that I will write.</i>
<i>Dīcēt, he will say</i>			
<i>Dixīt, he has said</i>			
(b.) <i>Dīcēbāt, he was saying</i>	} <i>mē scrībērē,</i> } <i>that I wrote, or</i> } <i>was writing.</i>	} <i>mē scripsissē,</i> } <i>that I had</i> } <i>written.</i>	} <i>mē scriptūrū essē,</i> } <i>that I would write.</i>
<i>Dixīt, he said</i>			
<i>Dixērāt, he had said</i>			
(a.) <i>Dīcīt, etc.</i>	} <i>ēpistōlām scrībī,</i> } <i>that the letter is</i> } <i>being written.*</i>	} <i>ep. scriptām essē,</i> } <i>that the letter has</i> } <i>been written.</i>	} <i>ep. scriptū īrī,</i> } <i>that the letter</i> } <i>will be written.</i>
(b.) <i>Dixīt, he said, etc.</i>	} <i>ēpistōlām scrībī,</i> } <i>that the letter was</i> } <i>being written.</i>	} <i>ep. scriptām essē,</i> } <i>that the letter had</i> } <i>been written.</i>	} <i>ep. scriptū īrī,</i> } <i>that the letter</i> } <i>would be written.</i>

* A doubtful expression, which, however, has been engrafted upon the language.

Hence, after a primary tense (*a*) the infinitive is translated like the indicative of the same tense, *i.e.* an infinitive present, like an indicative present, etc.; after an historical tense (*b*) the infinitive present is translated like the indicative imperfect; the infinitive perfect, like the indicative past-perfect; the infinitive future, like the subjunctive imperfect (*should* or *would*); and the infinitive future-perfect (*fuissē scriptūrūm*), like the subjunctive past-perfect (*should have, would have*).

Remark 2.—The accusative with the infinitive future passive is properly the object of the supine, the infinitive present passive *irī* being used impersonally: as, *dicīt epistolām scriptūm irī*, he says *that it is gone* to write the letter; *i.e.* that some one *is going* to write it, and, hence, *that it will be written*.

Remark 3.—The passive construction is preferred with transitive verbs where ambiguity would arise from the use of the direct object. Thus, *nunciātūm est Māriūm Jūgurthām vicissē*, might mean either “that Marius has conquered Jugurtha,” or “that Jugurtha has conquered Marius.” Hence *Jūgurthām ā Māriō victūm* is preferable.

Remark 4.—Verbs meaning to *wish* or *desire* are followed by a complementary infinitive, or an infinitive with a subject: as, *Cæsār clēmens existimārī vult*, or *Cæsār sē existimārī clēmētēm vult*, Cæsar wishes to be esteemed merciful.

Remark 5.—An infinitive proposition is always a noun-proposition, the object of a verb of saying or thinking, the subject of an impersonal verb, or in apposition with another noun. With an impersonal verb an infinitive proposition is *logically* (*i.e.* according to the manner of speaking) dependent, but *grammatically* the subject.

EXERCISE LX.

§ 189. Vocabulary.

jūgūm, -ī, *yoke*.
 biennīum, -ī, *two years*.
 victōr, -ōr-īs, *conqueror*.
 prōd-ītōr, -ōr-īs, *traitor*.

fāmiliārīs, -ē, *pertaining to the family*.
 rēs fāmiliārīs, *property*.
 spēs, -eī, *hope*.
 fācultās, -tāt-īs, *means, opportunity*.

nĕg-ŏ, -āřĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *to say no, to deny.*
 com-pār-ŏ, -āřĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *to acquire.*
 larg-iŏr, larg-īrī, largīt-ŭs, *to bribe.*
 nĕglīg-ŏ, -ĕřĕ, nĕglĕx-i, nĕglĕct-ŭm, *to neglect.*
 con-sīd-ŏ, -ĕřĕ, consĕd-i, consess-ŭm, *to encamp.*
 con-stāt, con-stābāt, con-sīt-īt (impers.), *it is evident.*
 nosc-ŏ, -ĕřĕ, nŏv-i, nŏt-ŭm, *to find out, to know.*
 conjĕc-i-ŏ, -ĕřĕ, conjĕc-i, conjĕct-ŭm, *to hurl.*
 pollic-eŏr, pollic-ĕrī, pollicīt-ŭs, *to promise.*
 spĕr-ŏ, -āřĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *to hope.*
 rĕ-nunti-ŏ, -āřĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *to bring back word.*
 pell-ŏ, -ĕřĕ, pĕpŭl-i, puls-ŭm, *to beat, drive.*
 mīn-ŏr, -ārī, -ātŭs, *to threaten.*
 confirm-ŏ, -āřĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, *to declare, assert.*
 red-dŏ, redd-ĕřĕ, reddīd-i, reddīt-ŭm, *to give back, return.*
 ānĭmadvert-ŏ, -ĕřĕ, ānĭmadvert-i, ānĭmadvers-ŭm, *to perceive.*
 opprīm-ŏ, -ĕřĕ, oppress-i, oppress-ŭm, *to oppress.*
 sŭb montĕ, *at the foot of the mountain.*

EXAMPLES.

- (a.) Cæsārī nunciātŭr, *Word is brought, it is announced, to Cæsar.*
 (b.) Rex sĕ nĕgŏtiŭm confectŭrŭm pollicĕtŭr, *The king promises to finish the business.*
 (c.) Latrŏnĕs sĕ rĕgĕm occīsŭrŏs *essĕ* mīnābantŭr, *The robbers threatened to slay the king.*
 (d.) Impĕrātŏr sĕ rĕgĕm fŭtŭrŭm spĕrābāt, *The general hoped to be king.*

(Observe that after the verbs *hope, promise, and threaten*, the Latins use an infinitive proposition, while we use a complementary infinitive; but a complementary infinitive sometimes occurs with these verbs: as, *pollicentŭr obsīdĕs dārĕ.*)

- (e.) Mĕmŏriā (‡ 166) tĕnĕrĕ, *To remember.*
 (f.) Cæsār nĕgāt sĕ possĕ, *Cæsar says that he cannot (denies that he can).*
 (g.) Turpĕ est rĕgĕm mentīrī, *It is base for a king to lie (that a king lie).*
 (h.) Constāt intĕr omnĕs, *All are aware (it is evident among all).*

- (i.) Dīcītūr Jūgurthām rēgēm essē, *It is said that Jugurtha is king.*
 (Impersonal construction.)
 Jūgurthā dicītūr rex essē, *Jugurtha is said to be king.* (Personal construction.)

Translate into English.

Explōrātōrēs dīcunt oppidūm āb hostībūs tēnērī. Caiūs fratrēm suūm magnō in pēriculō essē ānimadvertīt. Cēsārī¹ nōtūm est *Dumnōrigēm* Helvētiīs² fāvērē. Rēgīnæ nunciābō tē vēnissē. Galbā āb explōrātōrībūs certiōr³ factūs est *Gallōs* omnēs *discessissē*. Cēsārī nuntiātūm est *Gallōs* prōpiūs *accēdērē* āc lāpīdēs tēlāquē in nostrōs *con-jicērē*. Nunciūs pollicētūr sē nēgōtiūm ex sententiā *con-fectūrūm* essē. Princīpēs spērābant sē tōtīūs Gallīæ⁴ pōtīrī *possē*. Equītēs rēnuntiāvērunt oppidūm *expugnātūm* essē. Cēsār mēmōriā tēnēbāt *Lūciūm Cassiūm* consulēm *occīsūm*,⁷ *exercitūmquē* ējūs āb Helvētiīs *pulsūm*⁷ ēt sūb jūgūm *missūm*.⁷ Cēsār nēgāvit sē Helvētiīs itēr pēr prōvinciām dārē *possē*. Ad eās rēs conficiendās⁵ Helvētiī *bienniūm* sibi² sātīs *essē* duxērunt. *Æquūm* est *victōrēm* *parcērē* victīs. Nōn sīnē causā dictūm est *dīvitiās* ālās hābērē. Constāt intēr omnēs *nēmīnēm* sīnē virtutē *possē* *beātūm*⁶ *essē*.

Translate into Latin.

The cruel chief threatened to slay (§ 189, Exc.) the women and children. Ariovistus declared that he would not return the hostages. Caesar said that he was not leading the army against his country. This base traitor will say that he has *not* announced our plans to the enemy. Who can assert that he has never violated the laws of

¹ § 141.

⁴ § 159, *note*.

⁷ § 126, *Rem. 4*.

² § 142.

⁵ § 177.

³ § 128 *b*.

⁶ § 174, *Rem. 3*.

God? Dumnorix asserted that he was about to seize the kingdom. *All were aware* that the robbers had slain the merchant. It is not just for *a rich man to oppress* the poor. It is said that in Africa men eat human flesh. The Belgians are said to be the bravest of all the Gauls. Word had been brought to Cæsar that the enemy had moved their camp, and had encamped at the foot of the mountain. Cæsar had said (*dicĕrĕ*) that he would not neglect the injuries of the Æduans. The chief thought that he would compel the nobility by force. The consul hopes by these things to increase (§ 189, Exc. *d*) his property, and to acquire means for (*ad*) bribing.

CAUSAL PROPOSITIONS.

§ 190. Dependent causal propositions are introduced by all the causal conjunctions except *nām*, *namquĕ*, *ĕnim*, *ĕtĕnim*, which introduce principal propositions.

RULE XLVIII.—The subjunctive is used in causal propositions when a statement is made, not as a fact, but as the assertion or opinion of some one else: as, *Socrātĕs accūsātūs est quōd corrupĕrĕt jūventūtĕm*, Socrates was brought to trial *because (as men said) he corrupted* the youth.

Remark 1.—A verb of saying or thinking is sometimes expressed, and the subjunctive still retained by a species of attraction. What would have been the predicate of the causal sentence becomes the accusative with the infinitive. *Irātūs est Caiūs quōd dicĕrĕt lĕgĕs essĕ violātās*, instead of *irātūs est Caiūs quōd lĕgĕs essent violātæ*, Caius was angry *because (as he alleged) the laws had been violated*.

Remark 2.—Dependent causal sentences are nouns, usually limiting the predicate like a causal ablative. The causal conjunctions *quōd*, *quiā*, etc. are relative words.

EXERCISE LXI.

§ 191. Vocabulary.

Liscūs, -ī, *Liscus*.grāvītēr, *severely*.quōd (conj.), *because*.tām (adv.), *so*.nēcessāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *necessary, critical*.prōpinquūs, -ā, -ūm, *near*.Hārūdēs, -ūm, *the Harudians*.quiā, *because (expressing a motive)*.quōniām (quum-jam), *since, because (as everybody knows)*.undē (rel. adv.), *whence, from which*.prēsens, -ent-īs, *present*.rēligiō, -ōn-īs, *religion, a vow*.sūperstītiō, -ōn-īs, *superstition*.concīliūm, -ī, *council*.partīm (adv. § 31, Rem. 2), *partly*.prætēr mōdūm, *unduly, beyond measure*.rātiō, -ōn-īs, *plan, reason*.accūs-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to censure, accuse, bring to trial*.sub-lēv-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to relieve*.incūs-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to blame, censure*.intrō-dūc-ō, -ērē, -dux-ī, -duct-ūm, *to introduce*.corrump-ō, -ērē, corrūp-ī, corrupt-ūm, *to corrupt*.re-prēhend-ō, -ērē, reprēhend-ī, reprēhens-ūm, *to rebuke*.vāc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to be unoccupied*.jact-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to toss about, to discuss*.

EXAMPLES.

Rēs itā sē hābēt,

This is the case (the thing thus has itself).

Multīs prēsentiūbūs (§ 186),

In the presence of many.

Civitatī (§ 143) consūlērē,

*To consult for, look to, the state.**Translate into English.*

Cæsār, principibūs convocātis, Divitiacūm et Liscūm grāvītēr accūsāt quōd tām nēcessariō tempōrē, tām prōpinquīs hostībūs¹ āb iīs nōn sublēvētūr; multō² etiām grāviūs, quōd āb iīs sit destitūtūs queritūr. Æduī lēgātōs mīserunt questūm³ quōd Hārūdēs āgrōs eōrūm pōpūlārentūr. Socrātēs nēcātūs est, nōn quōd iuventūtē corrumpērēt et nōvās

¹ § 186, Rem. 1.² § 168.³ § 179 a.

sūperstītiōnēs *intrōdūcērēt*, sēd *quīā* Athēniensēs dē scēlērībūs *reprēhendēbāt*. Id eā rātiōnē Cæsār fēcīt; quōd nōlēbāt eūm lōcūm undē¹ Helvētiī discessērant vācārē.² Dumnōrix sē in Galliā rēlinquī² vōlēbāt, partīm *quōd* insuētūs nāvīgandī³ mārē tīmērēt, partīm *quōd* rēligiōnībūs *impēdīrētūr*. Cæsār, concīliō convōcātō, centūriōnēs omniūm ordīnūm⁴ vēhēmētēr incūsāvīt *quōd* dē rēbūs mīnīmē ād eōs pertīnentībūs⁵ sententiām *dixissent*. Quōniām cīvītātī consūlērē nōn possūm, mīhī consūlām. Quōniām rēs itā sē hābēt, in urbēm rēdeāmūs.⁶

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar cut down the bridge which he had built (see § 180, examples) over the Rhine, because he was unwilling for the Germans to follow him into Gaul. Was not Aristides banished from his country because (*as men thought*) he was unduly just? The Æduans complained that (*because*) Ariovistus had (*as they alleged*) led a great army of Germans across the Rhine. Cæsar, because he was unwilling (*a fact*) for these things to be discussed in the presence of the ambassadors, quickly dismissed the council. The consul said that, since he could not consult for the state, he would look to his own safety. You desire to slay me, not because (*as you allege*) I have violated the laws of the commonwealth, but because I have rebuked you severely for your crimes. The shepherd blamed his son strongly, because he had neglected to shear the sheep. Since this is the case, let us set out. Liscus said that, since such was the case, he would speak a few things.

¹ § 129, *Rem.* 10.

² § 188.

³ § 135 *a.*

⁴ § 132.

⁵ § 185, 2 *a.*

⁶ § 183, *Rem.*

FINAL PROPOSITIONS.

§ 192. Final propositions express a *purpose* or *result* (the end to which an action tends), and are introduced by the final conjunctions *ūt*, *nē*, *quō*, *quīn*, *quōmīnūs*.

§ 193. RULE XLIX.—The predicate of a final proposition is in the subjunctive: as, *vēnī ūt vīdeām*, I have come *to see*.

NOTE.—As a purpose has reference to the future, and is not a *fact*, but something conceived in the mind, it is purely subjective, and should obviously be expressed by the subjunctive. A result is a *purpose accomplished*, and was regarded by the Latins not so much in the character of a fact, as of what was intended to follow, or would naturally be expected to follow, in the circumstances: they give it, therefore, the shape which it was supposed to have before it became a result; and hence the use of the subjunctive.

Remark 1.—*Ut* or *ūtī* expresses either a purpose or a result. *Vēnī ūt vīdeām*, I have come *to see* (*that I may see*). *Eō impētū mīlītēs iērunt ūt hostēs sē fūgæ mandārent*, the soldiers went with such violence *that* the enemy *took to flight*.

Remark 2.—(a.) *Nē* always expresses a purpose (*that — not, lest*). *Tē obsēcro nē hoc faciās*, I beseech you *not to do* this.

A negative result must be expressed by *ūt — nōn*.

(b.) With verbs of fearing, *nē* is translated *that*, and *ūt*, *that — not*, the final sentence being constructed with reference to the *contrary purpose* or *hope* implied in the verb of fearing. *Tīmeo nē mōriātūr*, I am afraid *that he will die*. (*It is my purpose that he shall not.*) *Tīmeo ūt mōriātūr*, I am afraid *that he will not die*. (*It is my purpose that he shall.*)

Nē — nōn is sometimes used instead of *ūt* for emphasis, especially after a negative: as, *nōn vēreōr nē tuā virtūs ōpiniōnī hōmīnūm nōn respondeāt*, I am not afraid *that* your valor will not answer the expectation of men.

Remark 3.—*Quō*, *that*, is generally used in preference to *ūt*, when a comparative enters the sentence. *Cæsār pontē fēcīt quō facilius flūmēn transirēt*.

Remark 4.—*Quīn*, but *that*, but *that* — *not* (= *quī nōn* or *ūt — nōn*), is used with negative expressions, and expressions of doubt. *Nemo est quīn pūtēt*, there is no one who does not think. *Nemo tām impērītūs est quīn pūtēt*, no one is so foolish as not to think.

Remark 5.—*Quōmīnūs*, *that* — *not*, is generally used with expressions of hindering, in preference to *nē*. *Nihīl Caiō obstat quōmīnūs scribāt*, nothing hinders Caius from writing.

Quīn is sometimes used if a negative precedes.

Remark 6.—*Ut* is often omitted after *volo* and verbs of *permitting*, *asking*, *advising*, *commanding*, *reminding*.

Nē is often omitted after *cāvē*.

Remark 7.—A final sentence is usually a noun, though a result may be an adverb limiting *sic*, *itā*, *tām*, *tantūs*, etc. *Ut* in the sense of *as* is always a relative.

EXERCISE LXII. (*Ůt; Nē; Quō.*)

§ 194. Vocabulary.

commūtātiō, -ōn-īs, <i>change</i> .	mōtūs, -ūs, <i>movement, insurrection</i> .
ālācritās, -tāt-īs, <i>cheerfulness</i> .	collōquī, -lōcūtūs, <i>to confer, converse</i> .
mortī-fēr, -ā, -ūm, <i>mortal, deadly</i> .	ex ēquīs or ēquō, <i>on horseback</i> .
pristīnūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>former</i> .	ītēm (conj.), <i>likewise</i> .
commūnicātiō, -ōn-īs, <i>communication</i> .	sūbitō (adv.), <i>suddenly</i> .
neu, or nēvē (cop. fin. conj.), <i>and that not, nor (after a final sentence)</i> .	ūnā (partē, § 166), (adv.), <i>together</i> .
	contīnens, -ent-īs, <i>continent</i> .

ad-dūc-ō, -ērē, addux-ī, adduct-ūm, *to lead against*.

prācīp-i-ō, -ērē, prācēp-ī, prācept-ūm, *to instruct, enjoin*.

ē-dīc-ō, -ērē, ēdix-ī, ēdict-ūm, *to issue an edict*.

īn-stītu-ō, -ērē, īnstītu-ī, īnstītūt-ūm, *to instruct, teach*.

īncend-ō, -ērē, īncend-ī, īncens-ūm, *to set on fire*.

ex-ūr-ō, -ērē, exuss-ī, exust-ūm, *to burn up*.

īn-nasc-ōr, -ī, īnnāt-ūs, *to spring up*.

tīm-eō, -ērē, tīmu-ī, *to fear (as a coward)*.

mētū-ō, -ērē, mētū-ī, *to fear, to be apprehensive*.

vēr-eōr, -ērī, vērit-ūs, *to feel awe of, to fear*. (As *tīmeo* and *mētuo* have no supine stem, the parts formed from that stem are supplied by *vēreōr* in either sense.)

cōquō, -ērē, cox-ī, coct-ūm, *to cook.*

pāc-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to subdue.*

impēr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm (intr.), *to command, ordē.*

EXAMPLES.

	Negative Purpose.	Negative Result.
<i>That — no, that — not any,</i>	Nē quis (§ 89, Rem. 2),	Ut nullūs.
<i>That no one,</i>	Nē quis,	Ut nēmō.
<i>That no one at all,</i>	Nē quisquām,	Ut nēmō omnium.
<i>That — never,</i>	Nē unquām,	Ut nunquām.
<i>That nothing,</i>	Nē quid,	Ut nīhīl.

Tantā vīs prōbitātis est ut eām vel in hostē diligāmus, *So great is the power of honesty, that we love it even in an enemy.*

N.B.—*In final sentences expressing a result, the subjunctive is translated like the indicative of the same tense.*

Opērām dārē,	<i>To take care.</i>
Præceptū est,	<i>Instructions were given (§ 114, 5).</i>
Edictū est,	<i>An edict was issued (114, 5).</i>
Pātēr filiō præcēpit nē unquām mentīrētūr,	<i>The father instructed his son never to lie.</i>
Dōmīnūs servō impērāvīt ut ēquū infrēnārēt,	<i>The master commanded the servant to bridle the horse.</i>
Dōmīnūs servō impērāvīt nē ēquū infrēnārēt,	<i>The master ordered the servant not to bridle the horse.</i>

Translate into English.

Id mīhī sic ērit grātūm ut grātiūs¹ essē nīhīl possit. Eā nōn ut tē instituērēm scripsī. Cæsār castellā commūnit, quō faciiliūs Helvētiōs prōhibērē possit. Oppidānī multis cū lacrymīs impērātōrēm obsecrābant nē oppidūm incendrēt. Præceptū ērat Lābiēnō nē proeliū committērēt. Essē² nōs oportet ut vivāmus, nōn vivērē ut edāmūs. In eō itinērē Orgētōrix persuāsīt Castīcō³ ut regnūm in civitatē suā occupārēt; itēquē Dumnorīgī³ Æduō, fratrī⁴ Divītī-āci, ut idēm cōnārētūr persuāsīt. Raūrācis³ persuāsūm

¹ § 174, Rem. 4.

² § 111, 8.

³ § 141.

⁴ § 127.

erāt¹ ūtī, oppidīs suīs vicisque exustīs,² unā cūm Helvētiīs proficiscērentūr. Consūl ēdixīt nē quisquām in castrīs coctūm cibūm vendērēt. Tantūs tīmōr omnēm exercitūm sūbitō ocepāvīt ūt omniūm ānīmōs perturbārēt. Hāc ōrātiōnē hābitā,² tantā commūtātiō factā est ūt summā ālācritās ēt cūpīditās bellī gērendī³ innātā essēt. Lēgēm brēvēm essē⁴ oportēt quō faciiliūs āb impērītīs tēneātūr. Consūl mīlītībūs impērāvīt nē quēm cīvēm interficērent. Cēsār vēritūs nē quīs mōtūs in Galliā fīrēt, Lābiēnūm in continentē relīquīt. Mīlītēs mētūunt nē mortīfērūm⁵ sīt vulnūs Scīpiōnīs. Tīmeō ūt fratrēs meī ād urbēm pervēniant. Cēsār mīlītēs cōhortātūs est ūt sūe pristīnæ virtūtīs mēmōriām rētīnērent, neū perturbārentūr ānīmō.⁶ Opērā dābātūr nē quōd iīs⁷ collōquiūm intēr sē, nēvē commūnicātiō essēt.

Translate into Latin.

The enemy ran forward so swiftly *that time was not given* to our men for throwing their darts. So great a panic took possession of the citizens *that no man was able* to take up arms. An edict has been issued *that no one leave* the town. Instructions had been given to the horsemen *not to pursue* the enemy too far. Wise men *eat to live*, but fools and gluttons *live to eat*. I advise you, my son, *never to believe* a liar. Balbus is such a liar (*so lying*) *that he is never believed* (*it is never believed to him*). I fear *that some one* has announced our plans to the enemy. Ariovistus demanded *that they should confer* on horseback, and *not bring* more (*ampliūs*) than ten horsemen apiece to the conference. The Belgians, fearing (*having feared*) *that if all Gaul were subdued* (*abl. abs.*) the army of the Romans

¹ § 172, Rem. 2.

² § 186.

³ § 177.

⁴ § 188.

⁵ § 128 b.

⁶ § 161.

⁷ § 143.

would be led-against (*ād*) them, collected great forces. The citizens feared *that* the auxiliaries would not reach the city. Cæsar commanded (*impērārē*) the soldiers to run forward swiftly, and not give the enemy time for collecting themselves. Ariovistus said that he feared *that* snares were prepared for him. It has been said that brave men do not fear death. The consul thought that Catiline had formed the design of setting the city on fire. An edict was issued *that* no bread (*nothing of bread*) should be introduced into the camp.

EXERCISE LXIII. (*Quīn; Quōmīnūs.*)

§ 195. Vocabulary.

dūbiūs, -ā, -ūm, *doubtful.*compell-ārē, *to call, address.*dūbīt-ārē, *to doubt.*conjunctiō, -ōn-īs, *friendship, intimacy.*āvōc-ārē, *to call away, separate.*investīg-ārē, *to investigate.*Cīmōn, -ōn-īs, *Cimon.*fl-eō, flērē, flēv-ī, flēt-ūm, *to weep.*ob-st-ō, obst-ārē, obstīt-ī, obstīt-ūm (*intr.*), *to stand in front of, hinder, prevent.*im-pēd-iō, -īrē, -īvī, -ītūm (*tr.*), *to tangle the feet, hinder, prevent.*dē-terr-eō, -ērē, dēterru-ī, dēterrīt-ūm, *to frighten off, deter, prevent.*præter-mitt-ō, -ērē, -mīs-ī, -miss-ūm, *to pass by, leave undone.*circum-vēn-iō, -īrē, -vēn-ī, -vent-ūm, *to surround.*bīb-ō, -ērē, bīb-ī, bībīt-ūm, *to drink.*ad-spīc-i-ō, -ērē, adspex-ī, adspect-ūm, *to look at.*im-pōn-ō, -ērē, impōsu-ī, impōsīt-ūm, *to post, place.*fru-ōr, fru-ī, fruct-ūs, *to enjoy.*custōs, custōd-īs, *guard.*itāquē (*conj.*), *and so, therefore.*haud multūm (§ 153), *not much, not far.*Parmēniō, -ōn-īs, *Parmenio.*mēdicūs, -ī, *physician.*mēdicāmentūm, -ī, *dose of medicine.*

EXAMPLES.

Fiērī nōn pōtest quīn ventūrūs sūt, { *It cannot be that he is not going to come (but that he is going to come); he is certainly going to come.*

Nunquām Balbūm adspexit quīn frātrīcīdām compellārēt, { *He never saw Balbus without calling him a fratricide.*

Militēs rētīnērē nōn possūm quīn cur- *I cannot restrain the soldiers*
rant, *from running.*

Fācērē or mīhī } nōn possūm quīn fleām, *I cannot help weeping.*
tempērārē, }

Nōn est dūbiūm } quīn Deūs mun- } *There is no doubt* } that God
Nēgārī nōn pōtest } dūm rēgāt, } *It cannot be denied* } rules the
Quīs dūbitāt } } *Who doubts* } world.

After the above expressions, *quīn* must be translated *that*.

Nihīl prātermīsī quīn ād tē vēniām, *I have left nothing undone to come to*
you.

Nihīl Cāiō obstāt quōmīnūs vēniāt, } *Nothing hinders Caius from coming.*
Nihīl obstāt quōmīnūs Cāiūs vēniāt, }

Pēr mē stāt quōmīnūs vēniās, *It is my fault that you do not come.*

Quīd tē impēdīvit quōmīnūs vēnīrēs, *What prevented you from coming?*

Mīnīmūm (§ 153) abfuīt quīn cūdērēt, *He was very near falling.*

Translate into English.

Nōn dūbiūm est quīn virtūs summūm sīt bōnūm.¹ Bal-
būm nunquām adspexit quīn prōdītōrēm² compellārēt.
Fiērī nōn pōtest quīn āliī ā nōbīs dissentiant. Nōn dū-
bitāvīt Adherbāl quīn Jūgurthā eūm interficērē cōnārētūr.
Quīs dūbitārē pōtest quīn multō³ turpiūs sīt fallērē⁴ quām
fallī? Germānī rētīnērī nōn pōtuērunt quīn īn nostrōs
tēlā conjicērent. Pēr Consīdiūm stētīt quōmīnūs Cēsār
Helvētiōs circumvēnīrēt. Orgētōrix nōn dūbitāt quīn brēvī
tempōrē⁵ tōtiūs Gallīae regnūm occūpātūrūs sīt. Altītūdō
flūmīnīs hostēs dēterrēbāt quōmīnūs transīrē cōnārentūr.
Nihīl prātermīsīt Cīcērō quīn Pompēiūm ā Cēsārīs con-
junctiōnē āvocārēt. Nihīl tān difficīlē est quīn quārendō
investīgārī possīt. Cīmōn nunquām īn hortīs custōdēm
impōsuit, nē quīs impēdīrētūr quōmīnūs fructībūs⁶ fruērē-
tūr. Parmēniō audīverāt vēnēnūm ā Phīlippi mēdicō
rēgī⁷ pārārī;⁸ itāquē ēpistolā scriptā⁹ eūm dēterrērē

¹ § 128, Rem. 5.

² § 151 b.

³ § 168.

⁴ § 173.

⁵ § 167, Rem. 1.

⁶ § 159, Rem. 6.

⁷ § 141.

⁸ § 188.

⁹ § 186.

võluīt quōmīnūs mēdicāmentūm bībērēt quōd mēdicūs dārē constituērāt.

Translate into Latin.

It cannot be denied that Cæsar was (a man) of the greatest courage. Who can doubt that our men are able to sustain the attack of the enemy (for) many months? The general *will certainly* relieve us in a few days. It cannot be denied that your son was born many years (§ 167, *Rem. 2*) after the building (§ 185, 3 *c*) of the city. I never converse with you *without becoming* wiser. What hinders us *from persuading* Marius *not to storm* the town? It was not Cicero's fault that Pompey was not separated from intimacy with (*of*) Cæsar. The army was not far *from being beaten* and *sent* under the yoke. The soldiers could not be restrained *from running forward* with a great shout. Orgetorix was not far *from getting possession of* the government of all Gaul. There is no man *but knows* that all things are ruled by God. The queen could not help *weeping*.

CONDITIONAL PROPOSITIONS.

§ 196. Conditional propositions express a condition, and are introduced by the conditional conjunctions *sī*, if; *nīsī* or *nī*, unless, if — not; *sīn*, but if; *dūm*, *mōdō*, *dummōdō*, provided.

The complement of the condition is called the *conclusion*.

§ 197. RULE L.—(a.) If the condition is represented as a *fact*, the indicative is used both in the condition and conclusion.

Sī vērū dīcīs, lēgēs viōlāvī, { If you speak the truth (*of which I have no doubt*), I have broken the laws.

(b.) If the condition is represented as *possible* or

likely to be realized, the subjunctive present or perfect is used in the condition, and the indicative (generally future) in the conclusion. (*Indeterminate Condition.*)

Sī pecūniām hābeāt, dābit, If he has the money, he will give it.
Sī mihī pecūniām dēdērīt, ibō, { If he will give (shall have given) me
the money, I will go. (The money must
be given before I go.)

(c.) If the *non-existence* of the condition is implied, the subjunctive is used both in the condition and conclusion, the imperfect for present or future time, the past-perfect for past time.

Sī pecūniām hābērēt, dārēt, { If he had money (now), he would give it.
If he should have money (at any future
time), he would give it.
Sī pecūniām hābuissēt, dēdissēt, { If he had had money, he would have
given it. (Past time.)

Remark 1.—On the same principle, the subjunctive present or present-perfect is used to express a possible wish, the imperfect or past-perfect to express a vain wish.

Ůtīnām filiūs { *vīvāt!*
vivērēt! *Oh that my son* { *may live!*
vixissēt! { *were living!*
had lived!

Remark 2.—The condition is sometimes—

(a.) Implied in some other expression: as, *sīnē cībō nēmo vīvērē possēt*, no one would be able to live *without food*; or,

(b.) Altogether suppressed, in which case the indicative imperfect is frequently used: as, *sātiūs ērāt mōrī quām mentīrī*, it *would be better* (if necessary) to die than to lie.

Remark 3.—When the non-existence of the condition is implied, the indicative (especially the imperfects *dēcēbāt*, *oportēbāt*, *dēbēbām*, *pōtērām*, and *ērām* with a gerundive or adjective) is sometimes used in the conclusion: as, *sī victōriā dūbiā essēt tāmēn omnēs bonōs reipublicæ subvērēre dēcēbāt*, if the victory were doubtful, yet all good men *ought* to come to the assistance of the state.

Remark 4.—The use of the imperfect or past-perfect in a conditional sentence does not necessarily imply the non-existence of

the condition, as they are often used simply because the leading verb is past, and not because the character of the condition requires their use. (See § 184.)

Remark 5.—In a conditional proposition, the subjunctive is usually translated like the indicative.

Remark 6.—The conclusion is a principal or a dependent proposition, according to the construction of the sentence in which it stands.

Sī vērā dicīs, lēgēs viōlāvī.

Caiūs confessūs est sē, sī frātēr vērā dicērēt, lēgēs viōlāvissē.

Remark 7.—If the condition must be fulfilled before the conclusion can follow, the Latins use a perfect tense where in English we use a present. as, *sī hoc fēcēris, tē āmābo*, *if you do (shall have done) this, I will love you.* (The *doing* must be accomplished before the *loving*.)

Remark 8.—A conditional proposition is an adverb, limiting the predicate of the conclusion.

EXERCISE LXIV.

§ 198. Vocabulary.

præceptūm, -ī, precept.

īnīmīcītiā, -æ, enmity.

ādhūc (adv.), still, yet.

mātūrē (adv.), soon.

ūtīnām (interj.), Oh that! I wish

that.

stipendiūm, -ī, tribute, tax.

quōtannis (adv.), yearly.

in-cīt-ārē, to arouse.

perpētūūs, -ā, -ūm, unending.

invīt-ārē, to invite.

vērā dicērē, to speak truth (true things).

subvēnīrē ālicuī, to come to one's assistance.

mīnu-ō, -ērē, mīnu-ī, mīnūt-ūm, to make less, weaken.

exerc-eō, -ērē, exercu-ī, exercīt-ūm, to exercise.

sūbīg-ō, -ērē, sūbēg-ī, sūbact-ūm, to subjugate.

lācess-ō, -ērē, lācessīv-ī, lācessīt-ūm, to provoke.

injūriā lācessērē, to provoke by injury, to injure.

dōl-eō, dōl-ērē, dōlu-ī, dōlīt-ūm, to grieve.

con-vēn-iō, -īrē, convēn-ī, convent-ūm, to agree.

pend-ō, pendērē, pēpend-ī, pens-ūm, to weigh, to pay.

respond-eō, -ērē, respond-ī, respons-ūm, to answer.

cāv-eō, -ērē, cāv-ī, caut-ūm, to avoid.

Translate into English.

Mēmōriā mīnuītūr nīsī eām *exerceās*. Sī Helvētīi flū-
mēn transīrē cōnentūr, Cæsār eōs prōhībēbīt. Cæsār
Æduīs bellūm intūlissēt nīsī obsīdēs mīsissent. Alexandēr,
sī diūtius *vixisset*, tōtūm orbēm terrārūm sūbēgissēt. Utī-
nām pātēr meūs *vivāt*! Utīnām rex *vivērēt*! Cæsār āb
Ariōvistō postulāvīt nē quām¹ multītūdīnēm hōmīnūm īn
Galliām *transdūcērēt*,² nēvē Æduōs injūriā³ lācessērēt² nēvē
hīs sōciisquē eōrūm bellūm *inferrēt*,² “Sī īd ītā *fēcērīs*,”
īnquīt, “mīhī⁴ pōpūlōquē Rōmānō perpētūā āmicītiā tēcūm
ērīt.” Ad hēc Ariōvistūs respondīt: “Æduīs⁵ injūriā³
bellūm nōn infērām, sī īn eō quōd convēnērunt *māneant*,
stīpendiūmquē quōtānnīs *pendant*.” Nīsī tē sātīs incītā-
tūm essē⁶ *confīdērēm*, plūrā *scribērēm*. Sīnē ferrō⁷ fiērī
nōn *possēt* (*it would be impossible*) ūt āgrī colērentūr.
Impērātōrē interfectō⁷ fiērī nōn pōtest quīn exercītūs
pellātūr. Sī vīs mē flērē, prīmūm dōlendūm est⁸ ipsī
tībī.⁹

Translate into Latin.

If you speak the truth, Cato has done (to) you a great
injury. If this is the case (§ 191, Ex.). I will set out
immediately to Rome. No man can be happy, *unless* his
life is ruled by the precepts of virtue. If Cæsar *had been*
able to avoid these enmities, he *would be* still living. If I
knew, I *would say*. If you *live* well, you will die happily.
I wish you had come a little (§ 168) sooner. Ariovistus
would not have led his army across the Rhine *unless he*
had been invited by the Sequanians. It would be im-
possible to believe this report *if we did not know* that the

¹ § 89.² § 193.³ § 159.⁴ § 143.⁵ § 141.⁶ § 188.⁷ § 197, *Rem. 2, a.*⁸ § 178.⁹ § 145.

messenger always speaks the truth. If I *had known* your danger, I *would have come* to your assistance. If I go to Rome, I will send you the money which you demand. If the Helvetians *had endeavored* to cross the river, Cæsar *would have prevented* them. Ariovistus *would not be waging* war on the Æduans if they *had paid* the tribute. Without an army it is *impossible* to wage war (*it cannot happen that war be waged*).

CONCESSIVE PROPOSITIONS.

§ 199. Concessive propositions express something *granted* or *yielded*, and are introduced by the concessive conjunctions *etsi*, *quanquā*, *tāmet*, *tāmēn*, *etiamsi*, *licet*, *quamvis*, *quantumvis*, *quamlibet*, *ut* and *quā* in the sense of *although*, etc., with the general meaning *although*.

§ 200. RULE LI.—(a.) If the thing granted is represented as a *fact*, the indicative is used, generally with *quanquā*, *etsi*, or *tāmet*: as, *Rōmānī, quanquā fessī erant, tāmēn instructi prōcēdunt*, the Romans, though they were weary, yet march in order of battle.

(b.) A concession merely for argument's sake, or where the non-existence of the thing granted is implied (a mere conception), is expressed by the subjunctive, usually with *quamvis* or *licet*, sometimes with *etiamsi* or *etsi*: as, *mendāciūm, quamvis occultētūr, tāmēn turpē est*, a falsehood, though it be concealed, is nevertheless base.

Remark 1.—The complement of a concessive sentence is an adversative sentence introduced by *tāmēn*.

Remark 2.—*Quanquā* is properly the accusative singular feminine of *quisquīs* (*rēm* being understood): thus, (a.) *In respect to whatever thing the Romans were weary*, etc.

Remark 3.—*Etsi, tāmetsi, etiamsi* (even if), and *ūt* in the sense of *even if, although*, are properly conditional conjunctions, the mood to be used depending upon the character of the condition. (See § 197.)

Remark 4.—*Quamvis, quantumlibet, quamlibet*, are properly relative pronouns (*as much as you please, however much*). Thus, in example (b), a falsehood, *however much it may be concealed, let it be concealed as much as you please*, etc. (See § 210, *Rem. 3.*)

Remark 5.—*Licet* is an impersonal verb, *ūt* being omitted: as, *frēmant omnēs licet, dicām quōd sentio*, though all cry out (*it is allowed that all cry out*), I will say what I think.

Remark 6.—The subjunctive is always used with *ūt* or *quūm* concessive.

Remark 7.—Concessive propositions are adverbs.

EXERCISE LXV.

§ 201. Vocabulary.

occult-ārē, to conceal.	strēnuūs, -ā, -ūm, brisk, active.
fessūs, -ā, -ūm, weary.	Itālicūs, -ī, Italian.
nondūm (adv.), not yet.	pēnēs (prep.), with, in the power of.
tāmēn (conj.), nevertheless, yet.	dēdītīō, -ōn-īs, surrender.
ēmōlūmentūm, -ī, advantage.	advers-ārī, to resist, object.
crebrō (adv.), frequently.	sīc (adv.), thus.
pūt-ārē, to think.	

cognosc-ō, -ērē, cognōv-ī, cognīt-ūm, to find out.

accīd-ō, -ērē, accīd-ī, —, to happen.

con-sēquōr, -ī, consēcūtūs, to follow, pursue and overtake, attain.

ne-sc-iō, nesc-īrē, nescīv-ī, nescīt-ūm, not to know.

suād-eō, -ērē, suās-ī, suās-ūm, to advise.

reōr, rērī, rātūs, to think, deem.

trans-eō (§ 111, 9), -īrē, transi-ī, transīt-ūm, to pass away.

vīt-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, to shun, to escape.

pōtiōr, pōtiūs (superl. pōtissimūs, from pōtis), better, preferable.

Translate into English.

Quōd turpē est, id,¹ *quamvis occultētūr*, hōnestūm² fiērī

¹ § 87, 6.

² § 174, *Rem. 4.*

nullō mōdō pōtest. Nostri mīlītēs *quanquām* ītinērē ēt prōliō fessī *ērānt*, tāmēn, consulē impērāntē,¹ ād summū² collēm cēlērītēr prōcurrērunt. Cēsār, *etsī* nondūm eōrūm consīliā *cognōvērāt*, tāmēn fērē īd quōd accidīt suspīcābātūr. Virī bōnī multā³ ōb eām causām faciunt, quōd dēcēt, *etsī* nullūm consēcūtūrūm ēmōlūmentūm *vident*. Quōd⁴ crebrō ālīquīs vīdēt, nōn mīrātūr, *ētiāmsī* causām *nescīt*. *Līcēt* strēnuūm mētūm *pūtēs* essē, vėlōciōr tāmēn spēs est. Itālicī Adherbālī⁵ suādēt *ūtī* sē ēt oppīdūm Jūgurthæ *trādāt*; āt illē, *tāmetsī* omniā pōtiōrā⁶ fīdē⁷ Jūgurthæ rēbātūr, tāmēn, quīā pēnēs Itālicōs, sī adversārētūr,⁸ cōgendī pōtestās ērāt, dēditiōnēm faciūt. Dīvitiæ, *quamvīs* magnæ *sint*, tāmēn ālās hābent. *Quamvīs* prūdēs atquē sāpiēs *sīs*, mortēm vītārē nullō mōdō pōtēs: sīc transit glōriā mundi.

COMPARATIVE PROPOSITIONS.

§ 202. Comparative propositions express comparison, and are introduced by comparative conjunctions (*than*, *as*), *quām*, *sīcūt*, *vėlūt*, *proūt*, *tanquām*, *quāsi*, *utsī*, *acsī*; with *ac* and *atquē* (*as* or *than*).

§ 203. RULE LII.—In comparative sentences,—

(a.) A *fact* is expressed by the indicative: *as*, *quām* *maxīmās* pōtest cōpiās cōgīt, he collects as great forces as he can.

(b.) A *mere conception*, and not a fact, is expressed by the subjunctive: *as*, *mē adspīcītis* quāsi monstrūm sīm, you gaze at me as if I were a monster.

Remark 1.—The comparative conjunctions are for the most

¹ § 186.

² § 128, *Rem. 3.*

³ § 128, *Rem. 5.*

⁴ § 129, *Rem. 2.*

⁵ § 141.

⁶ § 151 *b.*

⁷ § 165.

⁸ § 197, *Rem. 4.*

part either relative or conditional words. Thus, *quām*, *than*, is a relative, *rēm* being understood. *Cicēro ēlōquentiōr fuit quām (rēm) Cæsār (ēlōquens fuit)*. In respect-to-what Cæsar was eloquent, Cicero was more eloquent; i.e. *Cicero was more eloquent than Cæsar*. So, in example (a), (*cōpiās cōgīt (tām) maxīmās quām pōtest*, he collects forces very great in that degree in which degree he can), *quām* is an adverbial relative, *tām* understood being its antecedent; or it may be considered an accusative singular feminine of *quī*, *rēm* being understood: *cōpiās quām (rēm) pōtest maxīmās*, forces very great in what respect he can, i.e. as great as possible. The position of the superlative is the regular one. (See § 129, *Rem.* 6.) In the example, *in hortō ambulābām sicut meus est mos* (— as my custom is), *sic* is an adverbial demonstrative limiting *ambulābām*, and *ut* an adverbial relative having *sic* as its antecedent; (*in hortō eō mōdō ambulābām quō mōdō meus est mos ambulāre*). In example (b), *quām* (*quāsi* = *quām sī*) is a relative, and *sī* a conditional conjunction. *Mē adspicitis quām (adspicerētis) sī monstrum essem*, you gaze at me as (you would gaze) if I were a monster. It will be observed, however, that, as the leading verb is present, the present is used in the comparative proposition (*sīm*, not *essem*), though the non-existence of the condition is implied.

Remark 2.—In comparative sentences, the subjunctive is mostly translated by the indicative.

Remark 3.—Comparative propositions are adverbs.

EXERCISE LXVI.

Vocabulary.

<i>quāsī</i> (<i>quām-sī</i>), as if.	<i>vēlūtī</i> (<i>vēl-ūtī</i>), even so, just as.
<i>pērindē</i> (adv.), in the same manner, precisely, just, exactly.	<i>Græcūs</i> , -ā, -ūm, Greek.
<i>ālītēr</i> (adv.), otherwise.	<i>litērā</i> , -æ, a letter of the alphabet; pl. literature.
<i>ac</i> or <i>atquē</i> (after <i>ālītēr</i>), than; (after <i>pērindē</i>), as.	<i>āvidē</i> (adv.), eagerly.
<i>hōnōr</i> , -ōr-īs, office, honor.	<i>diūturnūs</i> , -ā, -ūm, long, lasting.
<i>hōnōrēs pōpūlī</i> , offices given by the people.	<i>impērātūm</i> , -ī, order, command.
	<i>itā</i> (adv.), so.
	<i>ops</i> (nom. obs. § 51), ōp-īs, help, might.

sicūti or sicūt (sīc-ūtī), so as,	rātiō, -ōn-īs, plan.
just as.	summā ōpē, with all one's might.
tanquām or tamquām (tām, so,	sīlentiūm, -ī, silence.
quām, as), so as, just as.	vītām transīrē, to pass one's life.
pecūs, -ōrīs, flock, herd; pl. cattle.	agmēn, -īn-īs, an army on the march.
ex-pl-eō, ērē, explēv-ī, explēt-ūm, to fill, satisfy.	
con-temn-ō, -ērē, contemps-ī, contempt-ūm, to despise.	
nīt-ōr, nīt-ī, nix-ūs and nīs-ūs, to strive.	
dē-fēr-ō, dē-ferrē, dē-tūl-ī, dē-lāt-ūm, to carry (from one to another), to report.	
ē-vēn-iō, -irē, ēvēn-ī, ēvent-ūm, to turn out, result.	
sub-sēquor, subsēquī, subsēcūt-ūs, to follow closely.	

Translate into English.

Grēcās litērās sīc āvidē arrīpuī, quāsī diūturnām sītīm explērē cūpērēm. Meā īn dōmō impērātā tuā dicīs, pērindē quāsī dōmīnūs sīs. Hōmīnēs corruptī¹ sūperbiā² itā aetātēm āgunt, quāsī pōpūlī hōnōrēs contemnant; itā hōs (hōnōrēs) pētunt quāsī hōnestē vixērīnt. Sicūti dixī faciām. Pātēr meūs septīmā hōrā³ rēdībīt, sicūt pollicītūs est. Mālā fortūnā tībī accidīt, tanquām mīhī (accidīt). Hōmīnēs summā ōpē⁴ nītī⁵ dēcēt, nē vītām sīlentiō⁴ transeant⁶ vėlūtī pecōrā (vītām transeunt). Rēs ēvēnīt nōn pērindē atquē pūtāvērām. Cēsār, ēquītātū prāmissō,⁷ subsēquēbātūr omnībūs cōpiīs; sēd rātiō ordōquē agmīnīs ālītēr sē hābēbāt āc Belgæ ād Nervīōs dētūlērānt.

TEMPORAL PROPOSITIONS.

§ 204. Temporal propositions point out the time of an action, and are introduced by the temporal conjunctions *ūt, ubī, quām*, when; *postquām, posteāquām*, after;

¹ § 185, 2 a.

² § 159.

³ § 167.

⁴ § 159.

⁵ § 173.

⁶ § 193.

⁷ § 186.

antēquām, priusquām, before ; *quandō*, when, whenever ; *simulac, simul*, as soon as ; *dūm, dōnēc, quoad*, while, as long as, until.

NOTE 1.—In the narration of facts, the indicative will of course be used in temporal propositions : as, *postquām in urbem vēnit*, after he came into the city.

NOTE 2.—The adverbial relative *quām* or *cūm* (at what time, when, while) frequently has also a *causal* or *concessive* force, *since, although*. As a pure particle of time, it takes the indicative, but is also followed by the subjunctive imperfect or past-perfect in the narration of past facts, especially when the aorist-perfect is used in the principal sentence. When the subjunctive is used, however, the idea of cause is usually combined with that of time. *Quām, causal* or *concessive*, always takes the subjunctive. Hence,—

§ 205. RULE LIII.—The subjunctive is always used (a) with *QUĀM causal* or *concessive* ; (b) frequently also with *QUĀM temporal*, especially when the aorist-perfect is used in the principal sentence.

(a.) *Quæ quām itā sint*, since these things are so.

(a.) *Cērēs frūmentū invēnit, quām antea hōmīnēs glandībūs vescerentūr*, Ceres invented grains, whereas men before lived on acorns.

(b.) *Quām nostrī armā cēpissent, hostēs sē rēcēperunt*, when our men had taken up arms, the enemy retreated. (Here *quām cēpissent* points out both the time and the cause of the enemy's retreat.)

§ 206. RULE LIV.—With *antēquām* and *priusquām* (a) the indicative is used to express the simple priority of one action to another (both having actually been performed).

Filiōs convōcāvīt antēquām mortuūs est, he called together his sons before he died.

(b.) The subjunctive is used—(1.) when the action is future and doubtful ; (2.) when the non-existence of the action is implied ; (3.) in indefinite general expressions.

(1.) *Cæsār, priusquā́m quidquā́m* *Cæsar, before he attempted any*
cōnārētūr, Divitiācū́m vōcāvit, *thing, called Divitiacus.*

(The attempting was future to the calling, and dependent upon the result of Cæsar's interview with Divitiacus.)

(2.) *Priūs ād hostiū́m castrā́ per-* *He reached the enemy's camp before*
vēnīt, quā́m Germānī quid āgērētūr *the Germans could find out what was*
sentīrē possent, *going on.*

(It is here implied that the Germans never could find out.)

(3.) *Tempestās mīnātūr antēquā́m* *The tempest threatens before it rises.*
surgāt, *(A general truth.)*

Remark 1.—After a future in the principal proposition, the indicative present or future-perfect is used with *antēquā́m* and *priusquā́m*: as, *antēquā́m prō Mūrēnā dīcērē* instituo *paucā prō mē dicā́m*, before I begin to speak for Murena, I will say a little for myself.

Remark 2.—In historical narrative, the subjunctive imperfect and past-perfect are sometimes used with these conjunctions, very much in the same way as with *quū́m* temporal. *Paucīs antē diēbūs quā́m Sýrācūsæ cāpērentūr*, a few days before Syracuse was taken.

§ 207. RULE LV.—*Dū́m, dṓnēc, and quoā́d*, in the sense of *until*, are followed by the indicative when a fact is stated; by the subjunctive when the action is doubtful or future (not a *fact*, but a *conception*).

Lōcū́m rēlinquḗrē nṓluīt dū́m Mīlo *He would not leave his post till*
vēnīrēt, *Milo should come.*

(These conjunctions in the sense of *while, as long as*, take the indicative.)

Remark.—All temporal propositions are adverbs, and in such propositions the subjunctive is, for the most part, translated like the indicative.

EXERCISE LXVII.

§ 208. *Vocabulary.*āriēs, -ētīs, *ram.*infirmūs, -ā, -ūm, *weak.*scāphā, -æ, *boat.*Comniūs, -ī, *Commius.*Atrēbās, -āt-īs, *Atrebatian.*mandātūm, -ī, *order.*vēr, vēr-īs, *spring.*ācerbūs, -ā, -ūm, *bitter.*Phōciōn, -ōn-īs, *Phocion.*perpētūō, *continually.*Epāmīnondās, -æ, *Epaminondas*

(App. I.).

obsīdiō, -ōn-īs, *siege.*sūm-ō, -ērē, sumps-ī, sumpt-ūm, *to take.*dif-fēr-ō, -ferrē, dis-tūl-ī, dī-lāt-ūm, *to put off, defer.*in-cīp-i-ō, -ērē, incēp-ī, incept-ūm, *to begin.*in-cīd-ō, -ērē, incīd-ī, incās-ūm, *to fall upon.*con-sperg-ō, -ērē, -spers-ī, -spers-ūm, *to sprinkle.*præ-stō, -ārē, præstīt-ī, præstīt-ūm and præstāt-ūm, *to stand before, be superior.*at-ting-ō, -ērē, attīg-ī, attact-ūm, *to touch, reach.*dē-sist-ō, -ērē, destīt-ī, destīt-ūm, *to leave off, cease.*bell-ō. -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to make war.*claud-ō, -ērē, claus-ī, claus-ūm, *to shut up.*ex-pōn-ō, -ērē, expōsu-ī, expōsīt-ūm, *to set forth, explain.*dē-fervesc-ō, -ērē, dēferv-ī, *to subside.*inter-cēd-ō, -ērē, -cess-ī, -cess-ūm, *to come between, intervene.*dē-libēr-ō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to deliberate.*de-flu-ō, -ērē, de-flux-ī, deflux-ūm, *to flow away.*com-pl-eō, -ērē, complēv-ī, complēt-ūm, *to fill.*pāvōr, -ōr-īs, *fright.*sē rēcīpērē, *to recover one's self.*exspect-ārē dūm, *to wait for any thing to happen.*pērīcūlūm faciērē, *to make a trial.*fulgūrātiō, -ōn-īs, *lightning.*sōnūs, -ī, *sound.*rustīcūs, -ā, -ūm, *rustic.*Suessiōnēs, -ūm, *Succians.*Bæōtīi, -ōrūm, *Bæotians.*dēmentiā, -æ, *madness.*Verrēs, -īs, *Verres.*rōsā, -æ, *rose.**Translate into English.*1. QUUM, *when, since, although, whereas.*

Cæsār quūm id nunciātūm essēt, mātūrāvīt āb urbē prōfīciscī.¹ Quōd² cūm ānimadvertissēt Cæsār, scāphās longārūm nāviūm mīlītībūs³ complērī⁴ jussīt. Britānnī Com-

¹ § 174.² § 129, *Rem. 9.*³ § 160.⁴ § 188.

miūm Atrēbātēm, *quūm* ād eōs Cēsārīs mandātā *dēferrēt*, comprēhendērant, ēt īn vinculā conjēcērant. *Quūm* rōsām *vidērāt*, tūm incīpērē¹ vēr arbitrābātūr. O ācerbām mīhī² mēmōriām³ tempōrīs illīūs ēt lōcī, *quūm* hīc īn mē *incīdīt*, *quūm complexūs est, conspersitquē* lacrymīs, nēc lōquī prae mœrōrē pōtuit! Phōciōn fuīt perpētuo paupēr, *quūm* dītissimūs *essē possēt*. Hōmīnēs, *quūm* multīs rēbūs infirmiorēs *sint*, hāc rē⁴ maxīmē bestiīs⁵ præstant, quōd lōquī possunt. Æduī, *quūm* sē suāquē āb Helvētiīs dēfendērē nōn *possint*, lēgātōs ād Cēsārēm mittunt rōgātūm⁶ auxiliūm. *Quūm* vitā sinē āmicīs mētūs⁷ plēnā *sit*, rātiō ipsā mōnēt āmicitiās comparārē. Quæ cūm itā *sint*, ād urbēm profīciscāmūr.⁸

2. *Postquām; Antēquām; Priusquām.*

Eā *postquām* Rōmæ⁹ *audītā sunt*, tīmōr omnēs invāsīt. Dēcēm *post* diēbūs¹¹ *quām* Cēsār īn Itāliām *pervēnīt*, lēgiōnēs duæ ērant conscriptæ.

(RULE LV., a.) *Antē* dēcīmūm diēm¹⁰ *quām* vitā¹¹ *discessīt*, libērōs omnēs convōcāvīt. Hæc omniā *antē* factā sunt *quām* Verrēs Itāliām attīgīt. Epāmī nondās nōn *priūs* bellārē destītīt *quām* Lācēdæmōnēm obsidiōnē¹² clausīt.

(b.) Cīvēs *priūs* sē dēdīdērunt *quām* āriēs mūrūm *attīgissēt*. *Antēquām* dē rēpublicā *dīcām*, expōnām brēvītēr consiliūm meūm. Cēsār *priusquām* hostēs sē ex pāvōrē ēt fūgā *rēcīpērent*, īn finēs Suessiōnūm exercitūm duxīt. Ad hæc cognoscendā¹³ *priusquām* pēriculūm *fācērēt*, Caiūm præmittīt. *Antē* vidēmūs fulgūrātiōnēm *quām* sōnūm *audīāmūs*.

3. *Dūm; Dōnēc; Quoād.*

Dūm hæc gēruntūr, Cēsārī nunciātūm est hostēs prōpiūs

¹ § 188.

² § 142.

³ § 156.

⁴ § 161.

⁵ § 141.

⁶ § 179 a.

⁷ § 135 a.

⁸ § 183, Rem.

⁹ § 166, Exc.

¹⁰ § 167, Rem. 2.

¹¹ § 163.

¹² § 159.

¹³ § 177.

accēdērē.¹ Lūciūs, quoad pōtuit, pontēm dēfendit. Epāmīnondās, quūm ānimadvertērēt² mortifērūm sē vulnūs accepiſſē,¹ ferrūm in corpōrē continuīt *quoad rēnuntiātūm est* viciſſē¹ Bœōtiōs. Irātī rōgandī sunt* ūt vīm diffērant, *dūm dēfervescāt* irā. Cēsār, ūt spātiūm intercēdērē possēt³ *dūm* milītēs *convēnīrent*, lēgātīs respondīt diēm sē ād dēlibērandūm sumptūrūm. Dūm vīvīmūs vīvāmūs.⁴ Cēsār summæ dēmentīæ⁵ eſſē iūdicābāt, expectārē *dūm* hostiūm cōpiæ *augērentūr*. Rusticūs expectāt *dūm* defluāt amnis.

RELATIVE PROPOSITIONS.

§ 209. Relative propositions are introduced by a relative word. (For construction of relatives, see § 129.)

The predicate of a relative proposition is of course in the indicative when a *fact* is stated. The subjunctive is used in three cases.

§ 210. RULE LVI.—The subjunctive is used in relative propositions — (a) expressing *purpose, result, or cause* (*quī* = *ūt* or *quōd* with a personal pronoun): as,

Lēgātōs mīsērunt quī (= *ūt* ii) *They sent ambassadors that they might*
pācē pētērent, sue (to sue) for peace. (*Purpose.*)

Nōn īs sūm *quī* (= *ūt* ēgō) *hoc* *I am not such a one as to do this.*
fāciām, (*Result.*)

Mālē fēcīt Hannibāl quī (= *quōd* { *Hannibal did wrong in wintering*
īs *Cāpuæ* hiēmārīt, (because he wintered) at Capua.
(*Cause.*)

(b.) In indefinite general expressions, both affirmative and negative: as,

Sunt quī dicant, *There are some who say.*

Nēmō est orātōr quī sē Dēmōsthēnīs *No one is an orator who is unwilling*
similēm eſſē nōlīt, *to be like Demosthenes.*

¹ § 188.² § 205 b.³ § 193.⁴ § 183, *Rem.*⁵ § 133.

* Ought to be asked.

(c.) To express the words or opinions of some one else, and not of the author: as, *nunciātū est equitēs quī præmissī essent rēvertissē*, word was brought that the horsemen *who had been sent forward* had returned.

Remark 1.—The subjunctive with *quī* expresses a purpose with reference to the *object* of the sentence, a purpose with reference to the subject being expressed by *ut*. (See § 193, § 180, Example.) Thus, *quī pācē pētērent* means, *that they (the ambassadors) might seek peace*. *Quī* may be used with the passive construction, *lēgātī missī sunt quī pācē pētērent*, where the object in the active becomes subject in the passive.

Remark 2.—*Quippē*, *utpōtē*, and *ut* are frequently joined with *quī* expressing a cause. The indicative is frequently used with *quippē quī*.

Remark 3.—The subjunctive is used in indefinite general expressions introduced by any relative word, whether adjectival or adverbial. *Ubi rēs poscērēt castellū commūnīvīt*, *wherever circumstances required*, he built a fort. Such relative sentences express a *condition*:—thus, *if circumstances anywhere required*, etc. But the indicative is frequently used: as, *quamcunquē in partē nostrī impētū fēcērant*, *hostēs locō cēdērē cōgēbantūr*.

Remark 4.—The poets and some prose writers use the indicative with *sunt quī*, *ērāt quī*, etc. The indicative will of course be used when a definite subject is introduced. *Sunt fēræ quæ dōmārī nōn possunt*, *there are wild beasts which cannot be tamed*. (A fact.) But the subjunctive is used even then, if a *particular fact* is not stated: as, *sunt fēræ quæ dōmārī nōn possint*, ——— *such that they cannot be tamed* (if one should make the attempt).

Remark 5.—The subjunctive is used in a relative proposition included in another dependent proposition expressing a conception rather than a fact. In such cases the relative proposition takes the *subjective* complexion of the sentence: as, *mīlītēs cōhortātūs est ut omnēs quī essent vulnerātī, prōliūm rēintegrārent*, *he exhorted the soldiers, in order that all who had been wounded might renew the fight*. *Tantā rērū commūtatio factā est, ut nostrī, etiām quī vulnerībūs confectī prōcūbuissent, prōliūm rēintegrārent*, *so great a change of things was produced, that our*

men, even those who had fallen worn out with wounds, renewed the fight.

Remark 6.—A relative proposition is an adjective, limiting the antecedent. *Puēr quī lēgīt*, the *reading* boy. But as an adjective often agrees with a noun while limiting a verb, so an adjective proposition frequently limits the predicate, expressing the *purpose* (like a dative of purpose, § 144) or the *cause* (like an ablative of cause (§ 159)). See examples, § 210 *a*.

EXERCISE LXVIII.

§ 211. *Vocabulary.*

dīvinūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>pertaining to the gods.</i>	ādulātiō, -ōn-īs, <i>flattery.</i>
quō (adv. for old acc. quōn), <i>whither.</i>	fortūnā, -æ, <i>fortune.</i>
rūdīs, -ē, <i>uncivilized.</i>	nātūs (part. of naseōr), <i>a son.</i>
argūtūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>sagacious.</i>	aut — aut, <i>either — or.</i>
fortūnātūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>fortunate.</i>	Druīdēs, -ūm, <i>Druids.</i>
præcō, -ōn-īs, <i>herald, crier.</i>	fāmā, -æ, <i>fame, report.</i>
pecc-ārē, <i>to do wrong, to sin.</i>	prædītūs, -ā, -ūm, <i>endowed.</i>
complūrēs, -ā and -iā, <i>very many, quite a number.</i>	ēsūriens, -ent-īs (part. of ēsūrīrē), <i>hungry.</i>
phālanx, phālang-īs (<i>Gr. acc. phālangā, pl. phālangās</i>), <i>phalanx.</i>	quām (relative adv.), <i>as.</i>
Hōmērūs, -ī, <i>Homer.</i>	unā (partē understood, § 166), <i>together.</i>

com-mitt-ō, -ērē, commīs-ī, commiss-ūm, *to commit.*

ad-vēn-iō, -īrē, advēn-ī, advent-ūm, *to arrive.*

præ-sūm, præ-essē, præ-fuī, præ-fūtūrūs, *to preside over.*

dī-līg-ō, -ērē, dīlex-ī, dīlect-ūm, *to choose, to love.*

vid-eō, -ērē, vid-ī, vīs-ūm, *to see.*

vid-eōr, -ērī, vīs-ūs, *to be seen (hence, to seem, appear).*

cens-eō, -ērē, censu-ī, cens-ūm, *to be of opinion.*

rē-pēr-iō, -īrē, rēpēr-ī, rēpert-ūm, *to find.*

insīl-iō, -īrē, insīlu-ī, ———, *to leap upon.*

rē-vell-ō, -ērē, rēvell-ī, rēvuls-ūm, *to tear off.*

præ-pōn-ō, -ērē, præpōsu-ī, præpōsītūm, *to prefer.*

fall-ō, -ērē, fēfell-ī, fals-ūm, *to deceive.*

occīd-ō, -ērē, occīd-ī, occās-ūm, *to fall, die.*

EXAMPLES.

(*a.*) *Dignūs est quī amētūr* (§ 210 *a*), *He is worthy of being loved (that he be loved).*

- (b.) *Idōneūs est cui rēs mandētūr* He is fit to have the business in-
 (§ 210 a), trusted to him (*that the business be intrusted*).
- (c.) *Doctiōr sūm quā́m quī ā tē* I am too learned to be taught by you
 dōceār (§ 210 a), (*than that I be taught*).
- (d.) *Quōd sciām* (§ 210 b), *As far as I know.*
Quōd mēmīnērīm, *As far as I remember.*
- (e.) *Lēgātūs, ūt impērātūm ērāt,* *The lieutenant crossed the river, as*
flūmēn transīit, *had been ordered.*
- (f.) *Altērī, ūt cōpērant, sē rēcēpē-* *The other party retreated as (in the*
runt, *manner in which) they had begun.*

(*Ut* in the sense of *as* is a relative, in example (e) equivalent to *quōd*, and subject of *impērātūm ērāt*; in example (f) equivalent to *quō mōdō*, and limiting *cōpērant*.)

- (g.) *Nēmo est quī pūtēt* (§ 210 b), *There is no one who thinks.*
Nēmo est quīn pūtēt (§ 193), *There is no one who does not think.*
- (h.) *An quisquām est?* *Is there any one? (stronger than*
numquīs).

Translate into English.

1. PURPOSE, LVI., a.—*Britannī Druīdēs hābent, quī rēbūs¹ divīnīs præsint. Æduī lēgātōs Rōmām² mīsērunt quī auxiliūm ā sēnātū³ pētērent. Lēgātī missī ērant quī nunciārent oppidūm expugnātum essē.⁴ Gallī lōcūm nōn hābēbant quō sē rēcēpērent. Cēsār ēquitātūm prēmīsīt quī⁵ hostiūm itinērā explōrārent.*

2. RESULT, LVI., a.—*Nēmō tām rūdīs est ād quēm fāmā sāpientiæ tuæ nōn pervēnērīt. Socrātēs dignūs ērāt quī āb omnībūs dīlīgērētūr. Caiūs nōn sātīs idōneūs vīsūs est cui tantūm nēgōtiūm mandārētūr. Nōn sūmūs iī quībūs nīhīl vērūm essē⁶ vīdeātūr. Nōn īs sūm quī tantūm scēlūs committām. Majōr sūm quā́m cui⁷ possīt fortunā nōcērē. Argūtior fuit Jūgurthā quā́m quī Mēcipsæ verbīs fallērētūr.*

¹ § 141, note.

² § 154.

³ § 151, Rem. 1.

⁴ § 188.

⁵ § 129, Rem. 7.

⁶ § 174.

⁷ § 142.

3. CAUSE, LVI., *a*.—O fortunātē ādōlescens, quī tuæ virtūtīs Hōmērūm prēcōnēm¹ *invēnērīs!* Peccāvissē² mīhī vīdeōr quī ā tē *discessērīm*. Omnēs laudābant fortunās meās, quī³ nātūm tālī ingēniō prædītūm *hābērēm*.

4. LVI., *b*.—Sunt quī *censeant* ūnā ānīmūm ēt corpūs occīdērē.⁴ Rēpertī sunt complūrēs quī in phālangās *insīlīrent*, ēt scūtā mānībūs *rēvellērent*. Nīhīl est quōd hōmīnēs tām mīsērōs¹ *fāciāt* quām impiētās ēt scēlūs. An quisquām est quī lībertātī servītūtēm *præpōnāt?* Nēmō est quīn Balbūm stultūm¹ *existīmēt*.

5. LVI., *c*.—Ariōvistūs dixīt sē obsīdēs quōs āb Æduīs *hābērēt* nōn reddītūrūm.⁴ Cæsār nēgāvīt⁵ sē Helvētiīs quōd *postūlārent* dārē² possē.⁴

Translate into Latin.

The Britons sent ambassadors *to say* (§ 210 *a*) that they would return the prisoners whom they had taken (§ 210 *c*). No one of the soldiers, *as far as I know*, has left his post. This boy has never, *as far as I recollect*, deceived me. Is Caius (*a*) suitable (person) *to commit* your daughter to? Kings are not too wise *to be conquered* by flattery, nor too sagacious *to be deceived*. Some say (*there are who say*) that the consul is both (*ēt*) a liar and a thief. *Some thought* that the enemy would not besiege the city. Is there any one *who doubts* that (§ 193, *Rem. 4*) God rules the world? Is there any one who thinks that a robber will return the booty *which he has taken?* The townsmen will send the noblest of the state *to sue for* (ask) peace. The general is worthy *of being loved* by all the soldiers. The lieutenant, as was ordered, sent forward the cavalry *to sustain* the attack of the enemy till the footmen should arrive (§ 207).

¹ § 151 *b*. ² § 174. ³ § 129, *Rem. 7*. ⁴ § 188. ⁵ § 189, *Exc. f*.

INTERROGATIVE PROPOSITIONS.

§ 212. Interrogative propositions are introduced by an interrogative word, and contain a question.

1. A *direct* question is asked by means of a principal proposition: as, *quīs vēnīt?* who comes?

2. An *indirect* question contains the *substance* of a direct question, without giving the exact words, and the proposition by which it is asked is always dependent: as, *jānītōr interrōgāvit quīs vēnīrēt*, the porter asked *who came*.

3. Questions, both direct and indirect, are asked by means of interrogative pronouns (§ 88), and the particles *nē*, *nonnē*, *nūm* (§ 81); and double questions, by *utrūm* — *ān*, *whether* — *or*. In an indirect question, *nē* means *whether, if*; *nonnē*, *if not*; *nūm*, *whether, if*.

§ 213. RULE LVII.—The subjunctive is used in a direct question implying doubt: as, *quō fūgiām?* whither shall I fly?

§ 214. RULE LVIII.—The subjunctive is used in indirect questions: as, *nescio quīs vēniāt*, I do not know who is coming.

Remark 1.—The older writers sometimes use the indicative in indirect questions.

Remark 2.—The first part of a double question is often omitted. *Cūjūm pēcūs est hōc? ān Mēlibœi?*—*Is it another person's, or is it Melibœus's?*

Remark 3.—Dependent interrogative propositions are nouns.

EXERCISE LXIX.

§ 215. Vocabulary.

quō? whither?

permultūm (adv.), very much.

consultūm, -ī, a thing determined;

abl. on purpose.

incertūs, -ā, -ūm, uncertain.

Delphī, -ōrūm, *Delphi* (a city of Greece).

pătīnā, -æ, dish.

Mōrīnī, -ōrūm, the *Morini*.

sīt-irē, to be thirsty.

vitreūs, -ă, -ūm, *of glass.*

concāvūs, -ă, -ūm, *hollow.*

mānūs concāvă, *the hollow of the hand.*

undē? *whence?*

cūr? *why?*

deorsūm (adv.), *down-hill.*

interrōg-ārē, *to ask.*

ab-dō, -ērē, abdīd-i, abdīt-ūm, *to run for concealment.*

af-fēr-ō, afferrē, attūl-i, allāt-ūm, *to bring forward.*

causām afferrē, *to bring forward a reason, to explain.*

īrasc-ōr, -ī, irāt-ūs, *to be angry.*

irātūs, -ă, -ūm (as an adjective), *angry.*

Apollō, -īn-īs, *Apollo.*

ăb Ap. pētērē, *to inquire of Apollo.*

infans, -ant-īs, *infant.*

prōvidentiă, -æ, *providence.*

præstantiă, -æ, *excellence.*

cătīnūs or -ūm, -ī, *bowl.*

fictīlis, -ē, *earthen.*

cāsūs, -ūs, *chance.*

EXAMPLES.

Quīd (§ 155) intērest?

Nihīl (§ 155) rēfert or intērest,

Ubī gentiūm (§ 134)?

Nesciō quīs clāmāvit,

What difference does it make?

It makes no difference.

Where in the world? (In what place of the nations?)

Somebody or other (I don't know who) shouted. (A fact. Nescio quīs = ūlīquīs, but stronger.)

Translate into English.

Quisnām īn hortō ambulāt? Nesciō quīs īn hortō ambulēt. Puēr dicērē nōn pōtuit quō latrōnēs sēsē abdīdissent. Sæpē nōn ūtilē¹ est scīrē² quīd fūtūrūm sīt. Quālis¹ sīt ānimūs, ipsē ānimūs nescīt. Permultūm intērest utrūm cāsū ān consultō fīāt injūriă. Caii nēpos-nē ēs, ān filiūs? Incertūm est Caii nēpos-nē sīm, ān filiūs. Sī sītīs³ nihīl intērest utrūm āquām bibās ān vīnūm, nec rēfert utrūm sīt aureūm¹ pōcūlūm,⁴ ān vitreūm, ān mānūs concāvă. Nonnē cānis lūpō⁵ similis est? Puēr pātrēm interrōgāvit nonnē cānēs lūpīs similēs essent. Puēr interrōgātūs est utrūm plūrīs⁶ pātrēm ān matrēm fācērēt. Numquīs⁷ infantībūs⁵

¹ § 128 b.

² § 173.

³ § 197 a.

⁴ § 130, 1.

⁵ § 142, Rem. 3.

⁶ § 137.

⁷ § 89.

irascitur? Interrogat Caius nūm quis infantibus irascatur. Quō itis, puērī? In hortūm? Ariōvistō mīrūm vīsūm est quid in ejūs Galliā Cēsārī¹ nēgōtīi² essēt. Mentīrī³ hōnestum-nē sit factū⁴ an turpē, nēmō dūbitāt. Undē lēgātī vēnissent rex nunquām rēpērīrē pōtuīt. An quisquām dūbitāt cāsū-nē an Deī prōvidentiā mundūs rēgātūr? Dūm in hīs locīs Cēsār nāvīūm pārandarūm⁵ causā mōrābātūr, ex magnā partē Mōrīnōrūm ad eūm lēgātī vēnērunt, quī causās afferrent⁶ cūr cīvītās pōpūlō Rōmānō bellūm intūlissēt. Nesciō quis in hortō ambūlābāt.

Translate into Latin.

Does any man doubt concerning the excellence of virtue? The poet asks *whether any one* doubts concerning the excellence of virtue. Can you explain, my son, *why* water always *flows* down hill? The king sent messengers to Delphi (§ 154) to inquire (§ 210 a) of Apollo *whether* he should give his daughter in marriage to Clodius *or* Glaucus. What difference does it make to a hungry man *whether* he *eats* his food out of a golden dish *or* an earthen bowl? It makes no difference to the dead whether the king is a wise man or a fool. It is uncertain whether the girl *thinks more of* (§ 137) her father or mother. It is uncertain whether Balbus values life or honor most (*plūris*). It seems wonderful to me what business either you or your father *has* (§ 143) in my garden. Did Caius kill his brother by chance, *or* on purpose? I have not been able to find out *whether* the injury *was done* by chance *or* on purpose. No one knows *where* in the world Glaucus is *wandering*.

¹ § 143.

⁴ § 179 b.

² § 134.

⁵ § 177.

³ § 173.

⁶ § 210 a.

ORATIO OBLIQUA.

§ 216. In narrating the words or opinions of another, the writer may give, either—

(a.) The exact words of the speaker: as, *Cæsār dixit*, “*Vēnī, vīdī, vīcī*,” Cæsar said, “*I came, I saw, I conquered*” (*Oratio rectā*, or *Direct discourse*); or,

(b.) The *substance* of what the speaker said, but not the exact words: as, *Cæsār dixit sē vēnissē, vīdissē, vīcissē*, Cæsar said *that he had come, seen, conquered*. (*Oratio obliquā*, or *Indirect discourse*.)

§ 217. RULE LIX.—Principal propositions in the *oratio recta* become infinitive propositions in the *oratio obliqua*; and dependent propositions in the *oratio recta* take the subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*.

Oratio recta.

Ariōvistūs dixit, “*Obsīdēs quōs
āb Æduīs hābeō nōn reddām.*”

Oratio obliqua.

Ariōvistūs dixit *sē* obsīdēs quōs āb
Æduīs hābērēt nōn reddītūrū
essē.

Remark 1.—An imperative in the *oratio recta* becomes a subjunctive in the *oratio obliqua*, a verb of commanding or exhorting being understood.

Remark 2.—The reason for the use of the subjunctive referred to above (Rule LIX.) is obvious, as the writer is making the statement not as a fact upon his own authority, but as the opinion or assertion of some one else.

Remark 3.—The accusative with the infinitive is sometimes used in relative propositions in the *oratio obliqua*, the relative being equivalent to *et* with a demonstrative, and the sentence being therefore dependent only in form. The same construction occurs occasionally in other dependent sentences.

Remark 4.—The indicative is occasionally used in dependent sentences in the *oratio obliqua*.

Remark 5.—Questions in which the indicative is used in direct discourse are generally expressed in oblique discourse by the accusative with the infinitive, if the subject is of the *first* or the *third* person; by the subjunctive, if the subject is of the *second* person.

Sī vētēris contūmēliæ obliviscī vellēt, nūm etiām rēcentiūm injūriarū mēmōriām dēpōnērē possē? (Sī — vellēm, nūm — possum?)

An quicquām sūperbiūs essē? (An quicquām sūperbiūs est?)

Quid tandēm vērērentūr, aut cūr dē suā virtutē despērārent? (Quid vērēminī, aut cūr despērātīs?)

But we also find the contrary construction: as, *cūr quisquām jūdicārēt*, which in the direct discourse would be *cūr quisquām jūdicāt*.

Remark 6.—If the subjunctive is used in direct discourse (§ 183), it is of course retained in oblique.

EXERCISE LXX.

§ 218. Vocabulary.

sūpēr-ārē, *to overcome.*

invictūs, -ā, -ūm, *invincible.*

suspīc-ārī, *to suspect.*

ōpulentūs, -ā, -ūm, *powerful.*

plūs (adv.) possē, *to be more powerful.* (See § 150, *Remark 3.*)

stīpēdiāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *tributary.*

proptēreā quōd, *for the reason that, because.*

sūb-eō, -īrē, sūbī-i, sūbīt-ūm (§ 111, 9), *to go under.*

intellig-ō, -ērē, intellex-i, intellect-ūm, *to find out, to know.*

Translate into English.

Ariōvistūs respondīt, ‘Æduōs, quōniām bellī fortūnām tentassent,* ēt armīs sūpērātī essent, stīpēdiāriōs¹ essē factōs: nēmīnēm sēcūm sinē suā pernīciē contendissē: cūm Cæsār vellēt,² congrēdērētūr:³ intellectūrūm⁴ quīd invictī Germānī, quī intēr annōs quātuordēcīm tectūm nōn sūbiissent, virtutē (fācērē) possent.’⁵ Dīvitiācūs dixīt

¹ § 128 b.

² § 205.

³ § 217, *Rem. 1.*

⁴ § 188.

⁵ § 214.

* For *tentavissent*.

‘pējūs¹ victōribūs Sēquānīs² quām Ēduīs victīs accīdissē,³ *proptēreā quōd* Ariōvistūs īn eōrūm fīnībūs *consēdissēt*, tertiamquē partē āgrī Sēquānī, *quī essēt* optimūs tōtīūs Gallīae,⁴ *occūpāvissēt.*’ Consūl pollicītūs est ‘sē, *postquām* rex finē lōquendī *fēcissēt*, lēgātōs audītūrūm essē.’ Impērātōr rēspondīt ‘sē, *etsī* nondūm principūm consīliā *cognōvissēt*,⁵ tāmēn conjūratiōnēm fiērī * suspīcārī.’ Philōsōphūs rēspondīt ‘nēgārī⁶ nōn possē quīn hōmīnēs mortālēs essent.’⁷ Rex dixīt, ‘*quī*⁸ ōpūlentiōr *essēt*, *ētiamsī* injūriām accīpērēt,⁵ tāmēn, *quīā* plūs *possēt*, fācērē⁶ vīdērī.’

Translate into Latin.

Cæsar said (*nēgāvīt*) that he could *not* give the Helvetii a way through the province, because he feared that (§ 193, 2 *b*) they would do injury to his allies. The scouts announced to Cæsar that the cavalry which he had sent forward had been routed by the enemy; that the skirmishers had not been able to cross the river; that the forces which the Germans had collected would arrive in three days. Word was brought that the footmen, the flight of the horsemen having been seen, had retreated to the mountain.

(Change the examples in the Latin exercise from *oratio obliqua* to *oratio recta*.)

¹ § 128, *Rem.* 5.

² § 141.

³ § 188.

⁴ § 134.

⁵ § 200.

⁶ § 174.

⁷ § 193.

⁸ § 129, *Rem.* 2.

* Depends on *sē suspīcārī*.

APPENDIX I.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE FIRST DECLENSION.

§ 219. 1. Nouns of this declension transferred from the Greek end in *ē* (fem.); *ās* and *ēs* (masc.).

PARADIGM.

<i>Nom.</i>	Pē-něl'-ō-pē,	Æ-nē'-ās,	An-chī'-sēs,
<i>Gen.</i>	Pē-něl'-ō-pēs,	Æ-nē'-æ,	An-chī'-sæ,
<i>Dat.</i>	Pē-něl'-ō-pæ,	Æ-nē'-æ,	An-chī'-sæ,
<i>Acc.</i>	Pē-něl'-ō-pēn,	Æ-nē'-ām or -ān,	An-chī'-sēn,
<i>Voc.</i>	Pē-něl'-ō-pē,	Æ-nē'-ā,	An-chī'-sē or -ā,
<i>Abl.</i>	Pē-něl'-ō-pē.	Æ-nē'-ā.	An-chī'-sē or -ā.

2. Nouns in *a* transferred from the Greek sometimes have *an* in the accusative.

3. Those Greek nouns which have a plural are declined in that number like *mensā*.

4. The genitive plural of patronymics in *ēs*, and of some compounds in *gěnā*, and *cōlā*, has *ūm* instead of *ārūm*.

APPENDIX II.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE SECOND DECLENSION.

§ 220. 1. Greek nouns of the second declension end in *ōs* (masc. and fem.), and *ōn* (neut.), commonly changed in Latin into *ūs* and *ūm*.

PARADIGM.

			Barbītōn, a lyre.	
<i>Singular.</i>			<i>Singular.</i>	<i>Plural.</i>
<i>Nom.</i>	Dē'-lōs,	An-drō'-gě-ōs,	bar'-bī-tōn,	bar'-bī-tā,
<i>Gen.</i>	Dē'-lī,	An-drō'-ge-ō or -ī,	bar'-bī-tī,	bar'-bī-tōn,
<i>Dat.</i>	Dē'-lō,	An-drō'-ge-ō,	bar'-bī-tō,	bar'-bī-tīs,
<i>Acc.</i>	Dē'-lōn,	An-drō'-ge-ō or -ōn,	bar'-bī-tōn,	bar'-bī-tā,
<i>Voc.</i>	Dē'-lē,	An-drō'-ge-ōs,	bar'-bī-tōn,	bar'-bī-tā,
<i>Abl.</i>	Dē'-lō.	An-drō'-ge-ō.	bar'-bī-tō;	bar'-bī-tīs.

2. The plural of Greek nouns in *ōs* is declined like the plural of *dōmīnūs*, except that they sometimes have *-ōn* instead of *-ōrūm* in the genitive.

3. Greek proper names in *eus* are declined like *dōmīnūs*, except that they have the vocative in *eu*. They sometimes retain the Greek forms in the other cases, viz.: genitive *eōs*, dative *eī* (contracted *ēī*), accusative *eā*, and are of the third declension.

4. *Pēlāgē* is found as the accusative plural of *pēlāgūs*.

APPENDIX III.

GREEK NOUNS OF THE THIRD DECLENSION.

§ 221. The following paradigms show the most usual forms of Greek nouns of the third declension:—

	<i>Nom.</i>	<i>Gen.</i>	<i>Dat.</i>	<i>Acc.</i>	<i>Voc.</i>	<i>Abl.</i>
<i>S.</i>	Lampās,	{ -ādīs, -ādōs, }	-ādī,	{ -ādēm, -ādā,	-ās,	-ādē.
<i>P.</i>	-ādēs,	-ādūm,	-ādībūs,	{ -ādēs, -ādās,	-ādēs,	-ādībūs.
<i>S.</i>	Hērōs,	-ōīs,	-ōī,	{ -ōēm, -ōā,	-ōs,	-ōē.
<i>P.</i>	-ōēs,	-ōūm,	-ōībūs,	{ -ōēs, -ōās,	-ōēs,	-ōībūs.
	Chēlŷs,	{ -ŷīs, -ŷōs, }	-ŷī,	{ -ŷm, -ŷn,	-ŷ,	-ŷē or ŷ.
	Poēsīs,	{ -īs, -iōs, -eōs, }	-ī,	{ -īm, -in,	-ī,	-ī.
	Achillēs,	{ -īs, -cī, -ī, -eōs, }	-ī,	{ -ēm, -eā, -ēn, }	-ēs, -ē,	-ē or -ī.
	Orpheus,	-eōs,	-eī,	-eā,	-eu,	See § 220, 3.
	Δῆρ,	-ērīs,	-ērī,	-ērā,	-ēr,	-ērē.
	Διδῶ,	-ūs,	-ō,	-ō-	-ō,	-ō.

APPENDIX IV.

DERIVATION OF NOUNS, ADJECTIVES, AND VERBS.

§ 222. 1. Nouns are derived from—other nouns (*Denominatives*); from adjectives (*Adjectival Abstracts*); from verbs (*Verbals*).

DENOMINATIVE NOUNS.

2. The ending *iŭm* added to the stem of a noun denotes condition, and sometimes a collection or assemblage: as, *collĕg-iŭm* (*collĕg-a*), being a colleague, the office of colleague, an assemblage of colleagues, a *college*.

3. The ending *īmōniŭm* added to a noun-stem denotes condition, and, derivatively, several other relations: as, *matr-īmōniŭm*, motherhood, the married state; *patr-īmōniŭm*, fatherhood, then, derivatively, *that which results from being a father, what a father gives a son, what a son inherits*, a patrimony.

4. The ending *ētŭm* added to the stem of names of plants denotes a place where they grow in abundance: as, *laur-ētŭm*, a laurel grove; *querc-ētŭm*, an oak grove.

5. The *diminutive* endings *lŭs*, *lă*, *lŭm*, *ŭlŭs* (*ă*, *ŭm*), *olŭs* (*ă*, *ŭm*), sometimes *cŭlŭs*, *uncŭlŭs*, *ŭleŭs*, denote a small specimen of the primitive: as, *libellŭs* (*libĕr*), a little book; *filiolŭs* (*filiŭs*), a little son.

6. *Patronymics* are personal names derived from the name of one's father or other ancestor. They end in *idēs* (penult short, feminine *is*); *idēs* (penult long, feminine *ēs*); *iās*, *iādēs* (feminine *ās*); and some feminines in *inē* or *iōnē*; as, *Tyndār-idēs*, a son of Tyndarus; *Tyndār-is*, a daughter of Tyndarus. *Nēr-idēs*, a son of Nereus; *Nēr-ēs*, a daughter of Nereus.

7. *Amplificatives* are personal names given on account of the great size of some part of the body. They are formed by adding *o* to noun-stems: as, *căpît-o*, big head; *năs-o*, big nose.

ABSTRACT NOUNS.

8. Adjectival abstracts are formed by adding to adjective-stems the endings *tās*, *itās*, *ētās*; *tŭs*, *itŭs*, *itŭdo*; *iă*, *itiă*, *itiēs*; *edo*, and *īmōniă*.

VERBAL NOUNS.

9. The name of an action or condition is expressed—

(a.) By adding *ōr* to the *present-stem* (generally of intransitive verbs); as, *măer-ōr*, grief; *splend-ōr*, brightness.

(b.) By adding *iŭm* to the *present* or *supine stem*: as, *gaud-iŭm*, joy; *exŭt-iŭm*, destruction.

(c.) By adding *io* or *ŭs* to the *supine-stem*: as, *lect-io*, a reading; *cant-ŭs*, a singing.

(d.) Sometimes by adding *ĕlă*, *ŭmōniă*, *ŭmōniŭm*, to the *present-stem*, or *ŭră* to the *supine-stem*: as, *quĕr-ĕlă*, complaining, a complaint.

10. *Ură* added to the *supine-stem* usually denotes the result of an action: as, *pict-ără*, the result of painting, a picture.

11. The doer of an action is expressed by *ör* (feminine *rix*) added to the *supine-stem*: as, *vict-ör*, *vict-rix*, a conqueror. Some nouns in *tör* are formed from other nouns, though an intermediate verb is always supposed to exist: as, *vi-ă*, *vi-ărĕ*, *vi-ăt-ör*; *glădi-ŭs*, *glădi-ărĕ*, *glădi-ăt-ör*.

The doer is expressed by adding *ă* or *o* to the *present-stem* of a few verbs: as, *scrib-ă*, *cōmĕd-o*.

12. The endings *ŭlŭm*, *bŭlŭm* (*brŭm*), *cŭlŭm* (*clŭm* or *crŭm*), *trŭm*, added to the *present-stem*, express the instrument, sometimes the place, for performing the action: as, *vĕn-ă-bŭlŭm*, a hunting-spear; *vĕh-ĭ-cŭlŭm*, a vehicle. These endings are sometimes added to *noun-stems*: as, *ăcĕt-ăbŭlŭm*, a vinegar-cruet.

13. The ending *mĕn* added to the *present-stem* expresses the thing in which the action of the verb is exhibited: as, *flă-mĕn*, that which exhibits *flowing*, a river; *ag-mĕn*, something which exhibits *motion*, an army on the march.

14. The ending *mentŭm* added to the *present-stem* usually with a connecting vowel, expresses the means of performing the action: as, *dŏc-ŭ-mentŭm*, a means of showing, a proof.

15. The ending *ōriŭm* added to the *supine-stem* expresses the place where an action is performed: as, *audit-ōriŭm*, a lecture-room. These nouns are neuter adjectives, formed by adding *iŭm* to the verbal in *ör* denoting the doer.

DERIVATION OF ADJECTIVES.

16. Adjectives are mostly derived from verbs (*Verbals*), or from nouns and adjectives (*Denominatives*).

DENOMINATIVE ADJECTIVES.

17. The ending *eūs* (sometimes *nūs*, *neūs*) means *made of*: as, *aur-eūs*, made of gold; *ēbur-nūs*, made of ivory. Sometimes it expresses resemblance in character: as, *virgīn-eūs*, maidenly. The endings *īnūs* (penult short) and *ēnūs* have the same meaning.

18. The endings *ālīs*, *ānūs*, *ārīs*, *āriūs*, *īlīs* (penult long), *ātīlīs*, *īcūs*, *īciūs*, *iūs*, *īnūs* (penult long), and *īvūs*, mean *pertaining to*, *belonging to*, and form *possessive* adjectives. The ending *īlīs* often denotes character: as, *puēr-īlīs*, boyish. These adjectives are often used as nouns, the limited noun being omitted: as, *ferr-āriūs* (*fābēr*), a smith; *mēdic-īnā* (*ars*), the physician's art, medicine; *āvi-āriūm*, a place pertaining to birds, an aviary; *ōv-īlē*, something pertaining to sheep, a fold.

19. The endings *ōsūs* and *lentūs* mean *full of*: as, *vīn-ōsūs*, full of wine; *fraud-ū-lentūs*, full of fraud.

20. From names of places are formed possessives in *ānūs*, *ās*, *ensīs*, *iūs*, *īnūs*: as, *Athēn-ī-ensīs*, of Athens, an Athenian.

21. The ending *ātūs* means *furnished with*, *wearing*: as, *āl-ātūs*, winged; *barb-ātūs*, bearded.

VERBAL ADJECTIVES.

22. The ending *bundūs* added to the present-stem, with a connecting vowel, has the meaning of the participle present, but usually with an intensive force: as, *err-ā-bundūs*, wandering to and fro. *Cundūs* has sometimes the same meaning.

23. The ending *īdūs* added to the present-stem expresses state or condition: as, *cāl-īdūs*, cold; *rāp-īdūs*, rapid.

24. The ending *uūs* added to the stem of an intransitive verb expresses condition or tendency; added to the stem of a transitive verb, it has a passive meaning: as, *congru-ūs*, agreeing; *nōc-uūs*, hurtful; *conspīc-uūs*, visible.

25. The endings *bīlīs* (with a connecting vowel) and *īlīs* added to verbal stems express, passively, capability or desert: as, *fāc-īlīs*, capable of being done; *ām-ā-bīlīs*, deserving to be loved. Sometimes they are active in meaning: as, *horr-ī-bīlīs*, producing horror.

26. The ending *īciūs* or *ītiūs* added to the supine-stem has a passive sense: as, *fict-īciūs*, feigned.

27. The ending *ax* expresses an inclination,—generally an evil one: as, *rāp-ax*, rapacious.

28. The ending *īvūs* added to the supine-stem expresses, actively, capacity or tendency: as, *conjunct-īvūs*, having a tendency to unite, conjunctive.

DERIVATION OF VERBS.

29. From noun and adjective stems are formed—

(a.) Intransitives (in *o*, *eo*, *ōr*), denoting *to be* that denoted by the primitive: as, *cōmīt-ōr*, I accompany.

(b.) Transitives (*ō*, *ōr*), denoting *to do* or *make*, *to exercise*, *employ*, or *use* upon something, that which is denoted by the primitive: as, *fraud-o*, I use fraud, I defraud; *libēr-o*, I make free.

30. From verbs are derived the following:—

(a.) *Frequentatives*, expressing frequency or increase of the action expressed by the primitive. They are formed by adding the endings of the first conjugation to the supine-stem, *āt* passing into *īt*: as, *clām-ārē* (*clām-āt-*), to cry—*clām-īt-ārē*, to cry aloud or frequently. A few add *īto* to the present-stem: as, *āg-īto*. Frequentatives are sometimes formed from frequentatives: as, *curro*, *curso*, *cursito*; *vēnio*, *vento*, *ventito*.

(b.) *Inceptives*, expressing the beginning of an action or condition. They are of the third conjugation, and are formed by adding *sco*, *scōr*, to the present-stem with a connecting vowel: as, *lāb-ā-sco*, I begin to totter; *ard-e-sco*, I begin to be warm; *prōfic-i-scōr*, I begin to make myself forward, I set out.

(c.) *Desideratives*, expressing strong desire. They are of the fourth conjugation, and are formed by adding *ūrīo* to the supine-stem of the primitive: as, *ēs-ūrīo* (*ēdo*), I desire to eat, I am hungry. They are few in number.

(d.) *Diminutives*, which express trifling action. They are formed by adding *illo* to the present or supine-stem: as, *conscrib-illo*, I scribble.

(e.) *Intensives*, which express earnest action. They are of the

third conjugation, and are formed by adding *esso* or *isso* to the stem of the primitive: as, *fāc-esso*, I do with all my might.

NOTE.—Many verbs of the above classes have only the meaning of the primitive.

APPENDIX V.

ANALYSIS OF TENSE-FORMATION.

§ 223. 1. Every verb-form consists of two parts, the stem and the ending. The ending consists of the *personal signs* (for the most part pronominal roots of the different persons); the *connecting vowel*, or *mood-sign*; and, in some tenses, the *tense-sign*. Though for the sake of convenience we call the radicals *ām-*, *mōn-*, and *aud-* the present-stems of the verbs *āmāre*, *mōnēre*, and *audire*, the stems are in fact *āmā-*, *mōnē-*, and *audī-*; verbs of the first, second, and fourth conjugations may, therefore, be termed *pure* or *vowel* verbs, while only those of the third conjugation have consonant stems. Thus, in the form *āmā-bā-tīs* (*āmā-ēbā-ī-tīs*), *āmā-* means *love*; *ēbā-*, the tense-sign, marks incomplete action in past time (the *e* being absorbed by *a* of the stem), and means *did*; *ī*, the connecting vowel, or *mood-sign*, is absorbed by the *ā* preceding; while *tīs*, the personal sign, means *ye* or *you*. The whole, if literally rendered, means *love-did-ye*, or, according to the English idiom, *ye love-did*, *ye love-d*.

2. The following tables show the personal, mood, and tense signs, which, uniting with the verb-stem, produce the various verb-forms.

(a.) PERSONAL ENDINGS.

Singular.				Plural.		
Person,	1st.	2d.	3d.	1st.	2d.	3d.
Active,	m,	s, Ind. Perf. stī.	t.	mūs,	tīs, Ind. Perf. stis.	nt.
Passive,	r,	rīs, rē,	tūr.	mūr,	mīnī,	ntur.

NOTE.—The personal sign *m* is the radical of the Greek, Latin, and English *me*; *mūs* is the pluralized form; *s*, frequently interchanged with *t*, is the radical of *tu* (Greek *σύ*, English *th-ou*), and *tīs* is the same form pluralized, the *t* being resumed: *t*, of the third person (plural *nt*), has a demonstrative force, and is found as a prefix in *tantūs*, *talīs*, etc.; and as a suffix in *īd* (English *i-t*), *is-te*, etc.

The sign of the passive is *r*, and enters into all the passive endings except *mīnī*, which is wholly unlike the rest, and is generally considered a participial ending (Greek *μένοι*), *estīs* being understood: —*āmā-mīnī estīs*. The personal signs for the imperative are *tō* (pl. *tōtē*), *tō* (pl. *ntō*). Passive, *rē* or *tōr* (pl. *mīnī*), *tōr* (pl. *ntōr*).

(b.) MOOD-SIGNS.

Persons.		1.	2.	3.	1.	2.	3.
Indicative.	{ All but Pres.-Perfect and Fut., 3d and 4th Conj. } Pres.-Perf. { Fut., 3d and 4th Conj.	ō,	{ ī, pass. ē	ī.	ī,	ī,	ū.
		ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī,	ērū.
		ā,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī,	ū.
Subjunctive.	Pres., 2d, 3d, and 4th Conj.	ā,	ā,	ā.	ā,	ā,	ā.
	Pres., 1st Conj.	ē,	ē,	ē.	ē,	ē,	ē.
	Pres.-Perf.	ī,	ī,	ī.	ī,	ī,	ī.
	Imperf. and Past-Perf.	ē,	ē,	ē.	ē,	ē,	ē.
Imperative.		—	ē,	ē.	—	ī,	ū.
Inf. Active, ē; Passive, ī.							

NOTE.—The mood-signs of the indicative are short (except *ī* and *ērū* of the present-perfect); those of the imperative are short; those of the subjunctive are long (except *ī* of the present-perfect, which is long or short).

(c.) TENSE-SIGNS.

	Pres.	Imperf.	Future.	Pres.-Perf.	Past-Perf.	Fut.Perf.
Indicative.	none.	ěbǎ.	ěb, 1st and 2d conj. ě, 3d and 4th conj.	none.	ěřǎ.	ěr.
Subjunctive.	none.	ěr.		ěr.	iss.	
Infinitive.	ěr.			iss.		

NOTE.—The sign of completed action must not be confounded with the tense-sign. It is—

In the 1st conj., *v*, sometimes passing into *u*,—*sěc-u-ĩ*;
 “ “ 2d “ *v*, generally passing into *u*,—*mǒn-u-ĩ*;
 “ “ 3d “ generally *s*, sometimes *u*.
 “ “ 4th “ *v*.

Before it the final letter of the stem is lengthened: as, *ǎmā-vĩ*, *flē-vĩ*, and *audĩ-vĩ*. The reduplication is sometimes used, as in Greek, to indicate completed action: as, *mǒ-mord-ĩ*, *pǒ-posc-ĩ*, *vě-věn-ĩ* (contr. *věn-ĩ*), *mǒ-mǒv-ĩ* (contr. *mōv-ĩ*). Such perfects as *pāv-ĩ* (*pǎ-sc-o*), *quiēv-ĩ* (*quiě-sc-o*), *sprē-vĩ* (*sper-n-o* for *sprě-n-o*), are regularly formed on vowel-stems, strengthened by the addition of *sc* (App. IV., 30 *b*) and *n*.

3. Where two vowels come together, the former usually absorbs the latter, the two short syllables making one long one. It must be borne in mind, however, that no vowel in Latin can be long before *m*, *t*, or *r* (final), except in certain monosyllables, and a long vowel before one of these final letters is shortened. The mood-sign *o* and the personal sign *m* never stand together, but one or the other is dropped: as, *ǎmǎǒ(m)*, *ǎmābǎ(ǒ)m*, — *ǎmo*, *ǎmābǎm*.

4. In the following table the stem, tense-sign, mood-sign, and personal sign are exhibited.

PARTS ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

Full Form.	Contracted Form.	Full Form.	Contracted Form.
rěg-ǒ-(m),	rěg-ǒ,	ǎmǎ-ǒ-(m),	ǎm-ǒ,
rěg-ĩ-s, etc.,	rěg-ĩs, etc.,	ǎmǎ-ĩ-s, etc.,	ǎm-ās,
rěg-ũ-nt.	rěg-unt.	ǎmǎ-ũ-nt.	ǎm-ant.

<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>	<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>
rĕg-ĕbă-(ǫ)-m,	rĕg-ĕbă ^m ,	ămă-ĕbă-(ǫ)-m,	ăm-ăbă ^m ,
rĕg-ĕbă-ī-s, etc.,	rĕg-ĕbās,	ămă-ĕbă-ī-s, etc.,	ăm-ăbās,
rĕg-ĕbă-ŭ-nt.	rĕg-ĕbant.	ămă-ĕbă-ī-t.	ăm-ăbăt.
rĕg-ĕ-ă-m,	rĕg-ă ^m ,	ămă-ĕb-ǫ-(m),	ăm-ăbǫ,
rĕg-ĕ-ī-s, etc.,	rĕg-ēs,	ămă-ĕb-ī-s, etc.,	ăm-ăbīs,
rĕg-ĕ-ŭ-nt.	rĕg-ent.	ămă-ĕb-ŭ-nt.	ăm-ăbunt.
rĕg-ă-m,	rĕg-ă ^m ,	ămă-ĕ-m,	ăm-ēm,
rĕg-ă-s, etc.,	rĕg-ăs,	ămă-ĕ-s, etc.,	ăm-ēs,
rĕg-ă-mŭs, etc.	rĕg-ămŭs.	ămă-ĕ-mŭs.	ăm-ēmŭs.
rĕg-ĕr-ĕ-m,	rĕg-ĕrēm,	ămă-ĕr-ĕ-m,	ăm-ărēm,
rĕg-ĕr-ĕ-s.	rĕg-ĕrēs, etc.	ămă-ĕr-ĕ-s.	ăm-ărēs, etc.
rĕg-ĕ-,	rĕg-ĕ,	ămă-ĕ-,	ăm-ă,
rĕg-ī-tǫ,	rĕg-ītǫ,	ămă-ī-tǫ,	ăm-ătǫ,
rĕg-ī-tĕ,	rĕg-ītĕ,	ămă-ī-tĕ,	ăm-ătĕ,
rĕg-ī-tǫtĕ, etc.	rĕg-ītǫtĕ, etc.	ămă-ī-tǫtĕ, etc.	ăm-ătǫtĕ.
rĕg-ĕr-ĕ.	rĕg-ĕrĕ.	ămă-ĕr-ĕ.	ăm-ărĕ.

PARTS ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

regs-ī,	rex-ī,	ămāv-ī,	ămāv-ī,
regs-ī-stī,	rex-istī,	ămāv-ī-stī,	ămāv-istī,
regs-ī-mŭs, etc.	rex-īmŭs, etc.	ămāv-ī-mŭs.	ămāv-īmŭs, etc.
regs-ĕră-(ǫ)-m,	rex-ĕră ^m ,	ămāv-ĕră-(ǫ)-m,	ămāv-ĕră ^m ,
regs-ĕră-ī-s, etc.	rex-ĕrās, etc.	ămāv-ĕră-ī-s, etc.	ămāv-ĕrās, etc.
regs-ĕr-ǫ-(m),	rex-ĕrǫ,	ămāv-ĕr-ǫ-(m),	ămāv-ĕrǫ,
regs-ĕr-ī-s, etc.	rex-ĕrīs, etc.	ămāv-ĕr-īs, etc.	ămāv-ĕrīs, etc.
regs-ĕr-ī-m,	rex-ĕrīm,	ămāv-ĕr-ī-m,	ămāv-ĕrīm,
regs-ĕr-ī-s, etc.	rex-ĕrīs, etc.	ămāv-ĕr-ī-s, etc.	ămāv-ĕrīs, etc.
regs-iss-ĕ-m,	rex-issĕ ^m ,	ămāv-iss-ĕ-m,	ămāv-issĕ ^m ,
regs-iss-ĕ-s, etc.	rex-issēs, etc.	ămāv-iss-ĕ-s, etc.	ămāv-issēs, etc.
regs-iss-ĕ.	rex-issĕ.	ămāv-iss-ĕ.	ămāv-issĕ.

PARTS ON THE PRESENT-STEM.

<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>	<i>Full Form.</i>	<i>Contracted Form.</i>
flē-ō-(m),	flē-ō,	audī-ō-(m),	aud-iō,
flē-ī-s,	fl-ēs,	audī-ī-s,	aud-īs,
flē-ī-t, etc.,	fl-ēt, etc.,	audī-ī-t, etc.,	aud-īt, etc.,
flē-ū-nt.	fl-ēnt.	audī-ū-nt.	aud-iunt.
flē-ēbā-(ō)-m,	fl-ēbām,	audī-ēbā-(ō)-m,	aud-iēbām,
flē-ēbā-ī-s,	fl-ēbās,	audī-ēbā-ī-s,	aud-iēbās,
flē-ēbā-ī-t, etc.	fl-ēbāt, etc.	audī-ēbā-ī-t, etc.	aud-iēbāt, etc.
flē-ēb-ō-(m),	fl-ēbō,	audī-ā-(ō)-m,	audī-ām,
flē-ēb-ī-s,	fl-ēbīs,	audī-ē-īs,	audī-ēs,
flē-ēb-ī-t, etc.	fl-ēbīt, etc.	audī-ē-ī-t, etc.	audī-ēt, etc.
flē-ā-m,	fl-eām,	audī-ā-m,	aud-iām,
flē-ā-s,	fl-eās,	audī-ā-s,	aud-iās,
flē-ā-t.	fl-eāt, etc.	audī-ā-t.	aud-iāt, etc.
flē-ēr-ē-m,	fl-ērēm,	audī-ēr-ēm,	aud-irēm,
flē-ēr-ē-s, etc.	fl-ērēs.	audī-ēr-ē-s.	aud-irēs, etc.
flē-ē—,	fl-ē,	audī-ē —,	aud-ī,
flē-ē-tē, etc.	fl-ētē, etc.	audī-ē-tē, etc.	aud-itē, etc.

PARTS ON THE PERFECT-STEM.

flē-v-ī-(m),	flēv-ī,	audī-v-ī-(m),	audīv-ī,
flēv-ērā-(ō)-m,	flēv-ērām,	audīv-ērā-(ō)-m,	audīv-ērām,
flēv-ēr-ō-(m).	flēv-ērō.	audīv-ēr-ō-(m).	audīv-ērō.
flēv-ēr-ī-m,	flēv-ērīm,	audīv-ēr-ī-m,	audīv-ērīm,
flēv-iss-ē-m,	flēv-issēm,	audīv-iss-ē-m,	audīv-issēm,
flēv-iss-ē.	flēv-issē.	audīv-iss-ē.	audīv-issē.

NOTE.—The pupil can readily complete the tables for himself.

5. The participles are formed by adding adjectival endings to the verb-stem (sometimes with a connecting vowel in consonant verbs), *ns* expressing continuance (actively); *tārūs*, futurity; *tūs*, completion (passively); and *-ndūs*, fitness, capacity.

6. The gerund is a verbal noun formed by adding *-ndī*, etc., to the verb-stem, a connecting vowel being necessary in consonant verbs: as, *rēg-e-ndī*.

7. The supine is a verbal noun of the fourth conjugation, sometimes complete (as, *cursūs*), but usually found only in the accusative and ablative. It is formed by adding *tūs* (sometimes *sūs*) to the verb-stem.

APPENDIX VI.

PECULIARITIES OF TENSE-FORMATION.

Tenses formed on the Present-stem.

§ 224. 1. The tense-sign of the indicative future in verbs of the fourth conjugation (*ī* stems) seems anciently to have been *ēb*, as in *ā* and *ē* stems, the *ī* of the stem absorbing the *ē* of the tense-sign: as, *vestī-b-o*, *sci-b-o*, instead of *vestiām*, *sciām*. The same contraction also occurs in the imperfect: as, *ves-tībām*. The forms *ībām* and *ibo* of *eo* are still retained.

2. The endings *īm*, *īs*, etc., in the subjunctive present (mood-sign *i*) are sometimes found in the earlier writers and in the poets: as, *ēdīm*, *ēdis*, *ēdit*, *ēdīmūs*, etc., for *ēdām*, etc. The same mood-sign is always found in the forms *sīm*, *sīs*, etc., *vēlīm*, *vēlīs*, etc., and their compounds.

3. The ending *ē* is dropped in the imperatives *dīc*, *dūc*, *fāc*, and *fēr*. The short forms are also used in their compounds, except those compounds of *fācio* which change *ā* into *ī*: as, *effīcē*.

4. The personal sign of the imperative future passive second person singular was anciently *mīno*: as, *hortā-mīno*, *progrēdī-mīno*. The older writers sometimes use the active ending of the imperative in deponent verbs: as, *arbitrāto*, instead of *arbitrātōr*.

Tenses formed on the Perfect-stem.

5. The letter *v* of the perfect-stem is frequently elided and the first vowel of the ending is absorbed, when followed in the first conjugation by *s*, in the other conjugations by *s* or *r*: as, *āmā-(v)-istī*, *āmastī*: *flē-(v)-ērām*, *flērām*. When *ī* precedes *v*, there

is usually no contraction. This is especially the case in compounds of *eo*: as, *rědũ*, *pěriũ*, *sũbiũ*, etc.

6. When the perfect-stem ends in *s*, the syllables *is*, *iss*, immediately following it, are sometimes omitted: as, *ēvastĩ*, *ēvassem*, *ēvastĩs*, for *ēvās-istĩ*, *ēvas-issēm*, *ēvās-istĩs*.

7. An ancient future-perfect in *so* sometimes occurs, from which subjunctive forms in *sēm* and *sīm* are formed: as, *rěcepso*, *rěcep-sīm*. Sometimes this future is formed on the present-stem: as, *hābesso*.

The forms *ausīm*, *faxīm*, and *faxo* are retained by the classic writers.

COMPOUND VERBS.

8. Compound verbs generally form their perfect and supine stem like the simple verbs from which they are derived. Sometimes, however, there is a change of the stem-vowel: as, *hāb-eo*, *prō-hīb-eo*; *fāc-io*, *con-fīc-io*; *scand-o*, *de-scend-o*. A reduplication in the perfect is omitted in compound verbs: as, *cæd-o*, *cě-cīd-ĩ*; *oc-cīd-o*, *oc-cīd-ĩ*; but the compounds of *dō*, *stō*, *disco*, and *posco*, and some of those of *curro*, retain it.

APPENDIX VII.

THE VARIOUS FORMATIONS OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

§ 225. *First Conjugation.*

1. The perfect and supine stems are formed, in the first conjugation, by adding respectively *āv* and *āt* to the present-stem; or, to speak more correctly, by adding *v* and *t* to the crude form of the verb: as, *āmā-*, *āmāv-*, *āmāt-*.

2. But—

(a.) The characteristic vowel *ā* is elided in the perfect tenses of a few verbs (*v* passing into *u* after a consonant), and in such cases is usually changed into *ĩ* in the supine: as, *crěpo*, *crěp-u-ĩ*, *crěp-ĩ-tũm*.

(b.) The perfect-stem is formed by reduplicating the initial consonant with *ě*: as, *d-ārě*, *děd-ĩ*.

(c.) Some verbs seem originally to have reduplicated, but the reduplication has been dropped, the first two syllables blending into one, and the short stem-vowel becoming long: as, *lāv-o*, *lāv-ī* for *lā-vā-vī*.

3. The following list contains the verbs which vary from the usual mode of formation:—

Crēpō, *crēpārē*, *crēpuī*, *crēpītūm*, to creak; *īnecrēpō*, *-āvī* or *-uī*, *-ātūm* or *-ītūm*; *diserēpō*, *-uī*, —; *rēc-rēpō*, *-ārē*, —, —.

Cūbō, *cūbuī*, *cūbītūm*, to lie down. *Incūbō* has rarely *-āvī*. Some of the compounds insert *m*, and are of the third conjugation.

Dō, *dārē*, *dēdī*, *dātūm*, to give. Compounds with monosyllabic prepositions are of the third conjugation.

Dōmō, *dōmuī*, *dōmītūm*, to tame.

Fricō, *fricuī*, *fricātūm* or *frietūm*, to rub; *confricō*, *confricāvī*, *confricātūm*.

Jūvō, *jūvī*, *jūtūm*, *jūvātūrūs*, to help. *Lāvō* (*-ārē* and *-ērē*), *lāvī* and *lāvāvī*, *lōtūm*, *lautūm*, and *lāvātūm*, *lāvātūrūs*, to wash.

Micō, *micuī*, —, to quiver; *dīmicō*, *-āvī*, rarely *-uī*, *-ātūm*; *ēmīcō*, *-uī*, *-ātūm*.

Nicō, *nēcāvī*, rarely *nēcui*, *nēcātūm*, rarely *necūtūm*, to kill.

Plīcō, *plīcāvī* and *plīcuī*, *plīcātūm* and *plīcītūm*, to fold. *Applicō*, *complicō*, *explicō*, *implicō*, in the same way. The other compounds have *-āvī*, *-ātūm*.

Pōtō, *pōtāvī*, *pōtūm* and *pōtātūm*, to drink.

Sēcō, *sēcui*, *sectūm* and *sēcātūm*, to cut. So also *præsēcō*, *rēsēcō*. The other compounds have only *sectūm*.

Sōnō, *sōnuī*, *sōnītūm*, *sōnītūrūs*, to sound; *consōnō*, *exsōnō*, *insōnō*, *præsōnō*, *-uī*, —; *rēsōnō*, *-āvī*.

Stō, *stētī* (for *sestī*), *stātūm*, to stand.

Tōnō, *tōnuī*, —, to thunder; *at-tōnō*, *-uī*, *-ītūm*.

Vētō, *vētuī*, *vētītūm*, to forbid.

§ 226. Second Conjugation.

1. The perfect-stem is formed, in the second conjugation,—

(a.) By adding *v* to the crude form of the verb, as in the first conjugation: as, *flē-o*, *flēv-ī*.

(b.) But in most verbs the characteristic *ē* is elided, *v* passing into *u*, and, as in the first conjugation, the characteristic passing into *ī* in the supine: as, *mōne-o*, *mōnu-ī*, *mōnīt-ūm*.

(c.) In many verbs *ē* is elided, and *s*, instead of *v*, added, with such consonant changes as euphony may require: as, *arde-o*, *ar-s-ī* for *ard-sī*; *auge-o*, *aux-ī*, for *aug-s-ī*.

(*d.*) A few verbs reduplicate the initial consonant, and drop the characteristic *e*: as, *morde-o*, *mō-mord-ī*.

(*e.*) Some verbs preserve a trace of the reduplication in the lengthening of the stem-vowel in the perfect, the characteristic, as in the last class, being elided: as, *mōve-o*, *mōv-ī*,—perhaps for *mō-mōv-ī*; or perhaps the original form was *mōvē-v-ī*, syncopated into *mōvī* to avoid having two successive syllables begin with *v*. All verbs of the first and second conjugations which lengthen the stem-vowel in the perfect have stems ending in *v*, except *vīdeo* and *sēdeo*.

2. The following list contains the verbs of the second conjugation which form the perfect and supine stems otherwise than according to § 226, 1 (*b*), that being considered the regular formation, as it is the one which most commonly occurs.

Abōleō, ābōlivī, ābōlitūm, *to destroy*.

The other compounds of the obsolete *ōleō* are *ādōleō*, *ādōluī* (rarely *ādōlēvī*), *ādultūm*; *exōlescō* (inceptive from *exōleō*), *exōlēvī*, *exōlētūm*; *dēleō*, *dēlēvī*, *dēlētūm*.

Algeō, alsī, —, *to be cold*.

Arceō, arcuī, arcetūm, *to keep off*.

Ardeō, arsī, arsūm, *to burn*.

Audeō, ausūs sum (rarely *ausī*, from which *ausīm*), *to dare*.

Augeō, auxī, auctūm, *to increase*.

Cāveō, cāvī, cautūm, *to beware*.

Censeō, censuī, censūm, *to be of opinion*. Percenseō, percensuī; rēcenseō, rēcensuī, rēcensūm and rēcensitūm.

Cieō, civī, citūm, *to arouse*. The compounds with *ex* and *ad* are of the fourth conjugation. The penult of *excitūs* is common, and that of *concitūs* is rarely long.

Conniveō, connivī or connixī, —, *to shut the eyes*.

Denseō, densētūm, *to be dense*.

Dōceō, dōcuī, doctūm, *to teach*.

Fāveō, fāvī, fautūm, *to favor*.

Ferveō, feruī, or fervō, fervī, *to boil*.

Fleō, flēvī, flētūm, *to weep*.

Fōveō, fōvī, fōtūm, *to warm*.

Fulgeō, fulsī (anteclassical and poetic, *fulgō*, *fulsī*), *to flash*.

Gaudeō, gāvīsūs, *to rejoice*.

Hæreō, hæsī, hæsūm, *to stick*; obhæreō, -ērē, —, —; so, also, subhæreō.

Indulgeō, indulsi, indultūm, *to indulge*.

Jūbeō, jussi, jussūm, *to order*.

Lūceō, luxī, —, *to shine*; polluceō, polluxī, polluctūm.

Lūgeō, luxī, luctūm, *to mourn*.

Māneō, mansī, mansūm, *to stay*.

Misceō, miscuī, mistūm or mixtūm, mistūrūs, *to mix*.

Mordeō, mōmordi, morsūm, *to bite*.

Mōveō, mōvī, mōtūm, *to move*.

Mulceō, mulsi, mulsūm, rarely mulctūm, *to stroke*.

Mulgeō, mulsi, rarely mulxi, mul-

sūm *or* muletūm, *to milk*; ĕmul-
geō, -ĕrĕ, —, ĕmulsūm.
Neō, nĕvī, nētūm, *to spin*.
Pāveō, pāvī, —, *to fear*.
Pendeō, pĕpendī, —, *to hang*; im-
pendeō, -ĕrĕ.
Pleō (*obsolete*), plĕvī, plētūm, *to fill*.
Prandeō, prandī, pransūm, *to break-*
fast.
Rīdeō, rīsī, rīsūm, *to laugh*.
Sĕdeō, sĕdī, sessūm, *to sit*; præsī-
deō, præsĕdī, —.
Sōleō, sōlitūs, *rarely* sōluī, *to be*
accustomed.
Sorbeō, sorbuī, —, *to suck up*;
rĕsorbeō, -ĕrĕ, —; absorbeō,
absorbuī, *rarely* absorpsī, absorp-
tūm.

Spondeō, spōpondī, sponsūm, *to*
pledge.
Strideō, stridī, *to creak*.
Suādeō, suāsī, suāsūm, *to advise*.
Tĕneō, tenuī, tentūm, *to hold*; per-
tĕneō, pertĭnuī, —.
Tergeō *or* tergō, tersī, tersūm, *to*
wipe.
Tondeō, tōtondī, tonsūm, *to shear*.
Torqueō, torsī, tortūm, *to twist*.
Torreō, torruī, tostūm, *to roast*.
Turgeō, tursī, —, *to swell*.
Urgeō *or* urgueō, ursī, —, *to*
press.
Vīdeō, vidī, vīsūm, *to see*.
Vieō, —, viētūm, *to plait*.
Vōveō, vōvī, vōtūm, *to vow*.

§ 227. To these may be added the following impersonal and deponent verbs of the second conjugation:—

Dĕcĕt, dĕcuīt, *it becomes*.
Lībĕt, lībuit *or* lībītūm est, *it*
pleases.
Līcĕt, līcuīt *or* līcītūm est, *it is*
allowed.
Līquĕt, līquīt *or* līcuīt, *it is clear*.
Mīsĕrĕt, mīsĕruīt, *sometimes* mīsĕrĕ-
tūr, mīsĕrītūm *or* mīsĕrtūm est, *it*
pities.
Oportĕt, ōportuīt, *it behooves*.
Pīgĕt, pīguīt *or* pīgītūm est, *it*
grieves.
Pōnītĕt, pōnītuit, *it repents*.

Pūdĕt, pūduīt *or* pūdītūm est, *it*
shames.
Tædĕt, tæduīt *or* tæsūm est, *it dis-*
gusts.
Fāteōr, fassūs, *to confess*; diffīteōr,
diffītĕrī, —.
Mĕdeōr, —, *to cure*.
Mīsĕreōr, mīsĕrītūs *or* mīsĕrtūs, *to*
pity.
Reōr, rātūs, *to think*.
Tueōr, tuitūs *or* tūtūs (*the latter*
passive), *to behold, to gaze at*.

§ 228. The following have the perfect in *uī*, but want the supine:—

Aceō, *to be sour*; candeō, *to be white*; cāneō, *to be hoary*; ĕgeō, *to*
want; ĕmīneō, *to rise up*; flōreō, *to flower*; horreō, *to bristle*; lāteō, *to*
lie hid; mūceō, *to be mouldy*; nigreō, *to be black*; ōleō, *to smell*; palleō,
to be pale; pāteō, *to be open*; sīleō, *to be silent*; strideō, *to creak*; stūdeō
(stūdīvī *once*), *to be eager*; stūpeō, *to be stunned*; tĕmeō, *to fear*.

§ 229. The following have neither perfect nor supine stems, though from some of them perfect tenses are formed with an inceptive force:—

Ægreð, to be sick; albeð, to be white; āreð, to be dry; āveð, to covet; calleð, to be hard; calveð, to be bald; cēveð, to fawn; clāreð, to be bright; clueð, to be famous; flacceð, to droop; flāveð, to be yellow; fæteð, to stink; frigeð, to be cold; frondeð, to bear leaves; hēbeð, to be dull; hūmeð, to be moist; lacteð, to suck; langueð, to be faint; lenteð, to be slow; līveð, to be livid; māceð, to be lean; mæreð, to grieve; niteð, to shine; ōleð, to smell; polleð, to be powerful; pūteð, to stink; rēnideð, to glitter; rīgeð, to be stiff; rūbeð, to be red; scāteð, to gush out; sēneð, to be old; sordeð, to be filthy; splendeð, to shine; squāleð, to be foul; sueð, to be wont; tēpeð, to be warm; torpeð, to be stiff; tūmeð, to swell; ūveð, to be moist; vēgeð, to arouse; vīgeð, to flourish; vīreð, to be green.

VARIOUS FORMATIONS OF THE PERFECT AND SUPINE STEMS.

Third Conjugation.

§ 230. 1. The perfect-stem is formed, in the third conjugation,—

(a.) By adding *s* to the present-stem, which in this conjugation is the crude form of the verb: as, *carp-o*, *carps-ī*.

(b.) By adding *v* to the crude form of the verb, which has been strengthened by adding *n* or *sc*, as in Greek.

These are all originally vowel verbs: as, *cre-sc-o*, *crēv-ī*; *pa-sc-o*, *pāv-ī*; *no-sc-o*, *nōv-ī*; *sī-n-o*, *sīv-ī*; *sper-n-o* (*spēr-o* by metathesis for *spre-o*), *sprēv-ī*.

(c.) By adding *u* (the form which the perfect-sign *v* assumes after a consonant): as, *āl-o*, *ālu-ī*.

(d.) By adding *iv* to the present-stem: as, *arcess-o*, *arcess-ivī*.

(e.) By reduplicating the initial consonant: as, *curr-o*, *cū-curr-o*.

(f.) By lengthening the present-stem, with or without vowel change: as, *ēm-o*, *ēm-ī*; *āg-o*, *ēg-ī*.

(g.) In a number of verbs (especially vowel verbs in *u*) the perfect-stem is like the present-stem: as, *ācū-o*, *ācū-ī*.

2. The supine-stem is usually formed in the third conjugation by adding *t*, frequently by adding *s*, to the present-stem.

3. The following list contains most of the verbs of this conjugation:—

Acuō, acuī, acūtū, *to sharpen.*
 Agō, ēgī, actū, *to set in motion;*
 ambīgō, -ērē, —, —; dēgō,
 dēgī; sātāgō, sātāgērē, —, —.
 Alō, āluī, altū and ālītū, *to*
nourish.
 Angō, anxī, anetū and anxū, *to*
choke.
 Arcessō (*pass.* -īrī or -ī), arcessīvī,
 arcessītū, *to send for.*
 Arguō, arguī, argūtū, *to convict.*
 Bātuō, būtuī, *to beat.*
 Bibō, bibī, bibītū, *to drink.*
 Cādō, cēcīdī, cāsū, *to fall;* accīdō,
 dēcīdō, excīdō, succīdō, *have no*
supine-stem. (See App. VI., 8.)
 Cædō, cæcīdī, cæsū, *to cut.* *The*
compounds change æ into i: as,
occīdō, occīdī, occīsū. (See
 App. VI., 8.)
 Candō, *to cause to shine; whence*
 accendō, incendō, succendō
 (-cendī, -censū).
 Cānō, cēcīnī, cantū, *to sing;*
 præcīnō, -cīnuī, -centū; concīnō,
 -cīnuī, —; *so* occīnō, accīnō,
 -ērē, —, —; *so, also,* incīnō,
 intercīnō, rēcīnō, succīnō.
 Cāpessō, -ivī or -iī, -itū, *to seize.*
 Cāpiō, cēpī, captū, *to take; so*
antēcāpiō. *The other compounds*
change ā of the present-stem into ī,
and of the supine-stem into ē: as,
 accēpiō, accēpī, acceptū.
 Carpō, carpsī, carptū, *to pluck.*
 Cēdō, cessī, cessū, *to yield.*
 Cellō, antē-, præ-, -ērē, —, —;
 excellō, excelluī, excelsū; per-
 cellō, percūlī, pereūlsū.
 Cernō, crēvī, crētū, *to decide.*

Cingō, cinxī, cinctū, *to gird.*
 Clangō, -ērē, —, —, *to clang.*
 Claudō, clausī, clausū, *to shut.*
 Claudō or -eō, —, clausū, *to*
limp.
 Clēpō, clepsī, rarely clēpī, cleptū,
to steal.
 Cōlō, cōluī, cultū, *to cultivate;*
 occūlō, occūluī, occultū.
 Cōmō, compsi, comptū, *to adorn.*
 Compescō, compescuī, *to check.*
 Condō, condīdī, condītū, *to build;*
 abscondō, -condīdī or -condī,
 -condītū or -consū. *For other*
compounds of dō, see § 225, 3.
 Consūlō, -sūluī, -sultū, *to consult.*
 Cōquō, coxī, coctū, *to cook.*
 Crescō, crēvī, crētū, *to grow.*
 Cūdō, -ērē, —, —, *to forge; ex-*
 cūdō, excūdī, excūsū.
 Cūpiō, -ivī or -iī, -itū, *to desire.*
 Currō, cūcurrī, cursū, *to run; con-*
 currō, succurrō, transcurrō, *drop*
the reduplication. *The other com-*
pounds have both forms: as, ac-
 currō, accurrī, accūcurrī, accur-
 sū; antēcurrō, -ērē, —, —; *so,*
also, circumcurrō. (See App.
 VI., 8.)
 Depsō, depsi, depstū, *to knead.*
 Dīcō, dixī, dictū, *to say.*
 Discō, dīdīcī, discītūrū, *to learn.*
 Dispescō, —, dispistū, *to sepa-*
rate.
 Divīdō, divīsī, divīsū, *to divide.*
 Dūcō, duxī, ductū, *to lead.*
 Edō, edī, ēsū, *to eat.* (See § 111.)
 Emō, ēmī, emptū, *to buy; dēmō,*
 dempsi, demptū.
 Exuō, exuī, exūtū, *to put off.*

Făcessŏ, -ivī, -itŭm, *to do eagerly.*
 Făciŏ; fēcī, factŭm, *to do; pass.*
 fiŏ, fiērī, factŭs ($\frac{1}{2}$ 111). *Imper. pres. făc.* *Compounds with verb-stems follow the simple; pătē-făciŏ, -fēcī, -factŭm, pătēfăc, pătēfiŏ; those with prepositions change ă of the present-stem into i, and of the supine-stem into ă, and have a regular passive: as, interficiŏ, interfēcī, interfectŭm; interficiŏr, interfici, interfectŭs.*
 Fallŏ, fēfelli, falsŭm, *to deceive; rēfellŏ, rēfelli, —.*
 Fendŏ (obs.), dēfendŏ, dēfendī, dēfensŭm, *to defend; offendŏ, offendī, -fensŭm, to offend.*
 Fērŏ, ferrē (*syncopated from fēr-ērē*), tŭlī, lātŭm, *to carry. A perf. tētŭlī occurs; affērŏ, attŭlī, allātŭm; aufērŏ, abstŭlī, ablātŭm; confērŏ, contŭlī, collātŭm; diffērŏ, distŭlī, dilātŭm; effērŏ, extŭlī, ēlātŭm; infērŏ, intŭlī, illātŭm; offērŏ, obtŭlī, oblātŭm; suffērŏ, sustŭlī, sublātŭm.*
 Fervŏ, fervī, *to boil. See Ferveŏ, second conjugation.*
 Fidŏ, fīsŭs, *to trust; confidŏ, confidī or confisŭs sŭm.*
 Figŏ, fixī, fixŭm, *rarely fietŭm, to fix.*
 Findŏ, fidī, fissŭm, *to split.*
 Fingŏ, finxī, fietŭm, *to feign.*
 Flectŏ, flexī, flexŭm, *to bend.*
 Fligŏ, flixī, —, *to dash; affligŏ, afflixī, afflictŭm; so infligŏ, profligŏ, -ārē, -āvī, -ātŭm.*
 Fluŏ, fluxī, fluxŭm, *to flow.*
 Fōdiŏ, fōdī, fossŭm, *to dig. Old inf. pass. fōdirī; so, also, effōdirī.*
 Frangŏ, frēgī, fractŭm, *to break.*
 Frēmŏ, frēmuī, frēmītŭm, *to roar.*

Frendŏ, —, frēsŭm and fressŭm, *to gnash.*
 Frīgŏ, frixī, frictŭm, *rarely frixŭm, to fry.*
 Fŭgiŏ, fŭgī, fŭgītŭm, *to fly.*
 Fulgŏ, —, —, *to flash.*
 Fundŏ, fŭsī, fŭsŭm, *to pour.*
 Fŭrŏ, —, —, *to rage.*
 Gēmŏ, gēmuī, gēmītŭm, *to groan.*
 Gērŏ, gessī, gestŭm, *to bear.*
 Gignŏ (*for gi-gēnŏ*), gēnuī, gēnītŭm, *to beget.*
 Gliscŏ, —, —, *to grow.*
 Glŭbŏ, —, —, *to peel; deglŭbŏ, degluptŭm.*
 Gruŏ (obs.), congruŏ, ingruŏ, -gruī.
 Ieŏ, icī, ictŭm, *to strike.*
 Imbuŏ, imbuī, imbūtŭm, *to imbue.*
 Incessŏ, incessivī or incessī, —, *to attack.*
 Induŏ, induī, indūtŭm, *to put on.*
 Jăciŏ, jēcī, jaetŭm, *to throw; conjiciŏ, -jēcī, -jectŭm; so the other compounds.*
 Jungŏ, junxī, junctŭm, *to join.*
 Lăcessŏ, -ivī, -itŭm, *to provoke.*
 Lăciŏ (obs.), allīciŏ, allexi, allectŭm, *to allure. So illiciŏ, pelliciŏ; but ēliciŏ, ēlicuī and ēlexī, ēlicitŭm.*
 Lădŏ, lăsi, lăsŭm, *to hurt.*
 Lambŏ, lambī, lambītŭm, *to lick.*
 Lēgŏ, lēgī, lectŭm, *to read. So the compounds with ăd, pēr, pră, rē, sŭb, and trans; the other compounds change ă into i. Dīligŏ, intelligŏ, and negligŏ, have -lexī, -lectŭm.*
 Lingŏ, linxī, linctŭm, *to lick; dēlingŏ, -ērē, to lick up.*
 Līnŏ, livī or lēvī, litŭm, *to daub.*
 Līnuŏ, līquī, —, *to leave; rēlinquŏ and dēlinquŏ, -līquī, -lictŭm.*

Lūdō, lūsī, lūsūm, *to play.*

Luō, luī, lūtūrūs, *to atone; abluō, -luī, -lūtūm. So diluō and eluō.*

Mandō, mandī, mansūm, *to chew.*

Mergō, mersī, mersūm, *to dip.*

Mētuō, mētui (mētūtūm, *rare*), *to fear.*

Mingō, minxī, minetūm and mic-
tūm, *to make water.*

Mīnuō, mīnuī, mīnūtūm, *to lessen.*

Mittō, mīsī, missūm, *to send.*

Mōlō, mōlui, mōlītūm, *to grind.*

Mungō (obs.), ēmungō, ēmunxī,
ēmunctūm, *to wipe the nose.*

Nectō, nexui and nexī, nexūm, *to knit; annectō, annexui, annec-
tūm. So innectō and connectō.*

Ningō or ninguō, ninxī, —, *to snow.*

Noscō, nōvī, nōtūm, *to know. Ag-
noscō and cognoscō have -nītūm;
dignoscō and prænoscō have only
the present-stem.*

Nūbō, nupsī, nuptūm, *to veil.*

Nuō, *to nod; abnuō, -nuī, -nūtūm
or -nūtūm; annuō, -nuī, -nūtūm;
innuō, -nuī, -nūtūm; rēnuō, -nuī,
—.*

Olō (ōlērē), —, —, *to smell.*

Pandō, pandī, passūm or pansūm,
*to spread; dispandō, —, dispan-
sūm.*

Pangō, panxī, pēgī and pēpīgī,
panetūm and pactūm, panetūrūs,
*to fix. The compounds have -pīgī,
-pactūm, except dēpangō and sup-
pingō, which want the perfect-stem;
and rēpangō, which wants both
perfect and supine stems.*

Parcō, pēperci, rarely parsī, parci-
tūm and parsūm, *to spare.*

Pāriō, pēpērī, partūm and pārītūm,
*to bring forth. The compounds are
of the fourth conjugation.*

Pascō, pāvī, pastūm, *to feed.*

Pectō, pexī, pexūm and peetītūm,
to comb.

Pēdō, pīpēdī, —, *to break wind;
oppēdō, —, —.*

Pellō, pēpūlī, pulsūm, *to drive.*

Pendō, pēpendī, pensūm, *to weigh.*

Pētō, pētīvī and -iī, pētītūm, *to beg.*

Pingō, pinxī, pietūm, *to paint.*

Pinsō or pīsō, pinsī and pinsui, pin-
sitūm, pinsūm and pistūm, *to
pound.*

Plangō, planxī, planetūm, *to beat.*

Plaudō, plausī, plausūm, *to clap;
circumplaudō, —, —. The
other compounds, except applaudō,
change au into ō.*

Plectō, plexī and plexui, plexūm, *to
twine.*

Pluō, pluī or plūvī, —, *to rain.*

Pōnō, pōsui, pōsitūm, *to place.*

Porriciō, porrēcī, porrectūm, *to sac-
rifice.*

Poscō, pōposci, —, *to demand.*

Prēhendō, }
Prendō, } -dī, -sūm, *to seize.*

Prēmō, pressī, pressūm, *to press.*

Prōmō, prompsī, promptūm, *to bring
out.*

Psallō, psallī, —, *to play on a
stringed instrument.*

Pungō, pūpūgī, punctūm, *to prick.
The compounds with con-, dis-, ex-,
and inter-, have punxī, punctūm;
rēpungō has no perfect or supine.*

Quærō, quæsivī and quæsiī, quæsi-
tūm, *to seek.*

Quātiō, —, quassūm, *to shake.
The compounds change quā into cū:
as, concūtiō, concussī, concussūm.*

Quiescō, quievī, quietūm, *to rest.*

Rādō, rāsī, rāsūm, *to shave.*

Rāpiō, rāpuī, raptūm, *to snatch.*

Rēgō, rexī, rectūm, *to rule.*
 Rēpō, repsī, reptūm, *to creep.*
 Rōdō, rōsī, rōsūm, *to gnaw.* E- and
 prae-rōdō *want the perfect-stem ;*
 and obrōdō, *both perfect and su-*
pine stems.
 Rūdō, rūdīvī, rūditūm, *to bray.*
 Rumpō, rūpī, ruptūm, *to break.*
 Ruō, ruī, rūtūm, ruītūrūs, *to fall ;*
 corruō, corruī, — ; *so irruō.*
 Sālō or sallō, —, salsūm, *to salt.*
 Sāpiō, sāpīvī and sāpiī, —, *to be*
wise ; rēsāpiō, —, — ; *so dē-*
sāpiō.
 Scābō, scābī, —, *to scratch.*
 Scalpō, scalpsī, scalptūm, *to engrave.*
 Scandō, scandī, scansūm, *to climb.*
 Scindō, scīdī (*anciently* sciscīdī),
 scissūm, *to cut.*
 Sciscō, scīvī, scitūm, *to order.*
 Scribō, scripsī, scriptūm, *to write.*
 Sculpō, sculpsī, sculptūm, *to carve.*
 Sērō, sēvī, sātūm, *to sow.*
 Sērō, —, sertūm, *to entwine.* Com-
 pounds *have sērui.*
 Serpō, serpsī, serptūm, *to creep.*
 Sīdō, sīdī (*collateral form of* sēdeō),
to settle.
 Sīnō, sīvī, sītūm, *to place.*
 Sistō, stītī, stātūm, *to stop.* The
 compounds *with con, de, ex, and ob,*
have stītī, stītūm ; the rest want
the supine-stem.
 Solvō, solvī, sōlūtūm, *to loose.*
 Spargō, sparsī, sparsūm, *to scatter.*
 Spēcīō, spexī, spectūm, *to look ;*
used only in the compounds.
 Spernō, sprēvī, sprētūm, *to despise.*
 Spuō, spuī, spūtūm, *to spit ;* respuō,
 respuī, —.
 Stātuō, stātuī, stātūtūm, *to place.*
 Sternō, strāvī, strātūm, *to strew.*
 Sternuō, sternuī, —, *to sneeze.*

Stertō, stertuī, —, *to snore.*
 Stinguō, —, —, *to put out.* The
 compounds *have stinxī, stinctūm.*
 Strēpō, strēpuī, —, *to make a*
noise.
 Strīdō, strīdī, *to creak.*
 Stringō, strinxī, strictūm, *to bind.*
 Struō, struxī, structūm, *to build.*
 Sūgō, suxī, suctūm, *to suck.*
 Sūmō, sumpsī, sumptūm, *to take.*
 Suō, suī, sūtūm, *to sew ;* consuō,
 —, consūtūm ; *so dissuō, assuō,*
 —, —.
 Tangō (*strengthened from* tǎgō), tē-
 tigī, tactūm, *to touch.*
 Tēgō, texī, tectūm, *to cover.*
 Temnō, —, — ; contemnō, -tem-
 psī, -temptūm, *to despise.*
 Tendō, tētendī, tensūm and tentūm,
to stretch. So in-, os-, and rētēn-
 do ; —dētendō, —, -tensūm. The
 other compounds *have tentūm.*
 Tergō (*tergeō, second conjugation*),
 tersī, tersūm, *to wipe.*
 Tērō, trīvī, trītūm (*syncopated for*
tērīvī, tērītūm), *to rub.*
 Texō, texuī, textūm, *to weave.*
 Tingō (*or* tinguō), tinxī, tinctūm, *to*
moisten.
 Tollō, tētūlī (*anciently*), rarely tollī,
 —, *to raise.* Sustūlī and sub-
 lātūm, *from* suffērō, *supply the*
perfect and supine stems of tollō
and sustollō. The compounds want
perfect-stem.
 Trāhō, traxī, tractūm, *to draw.*
 Trēmō, trēmuī, —, *to tremble.*
 Tribuō, tribuī, tribūtūm, *to attribute.*
 Trūdō, trūsī, trūsūm, *to thrust.*
 Tundō, tūtūdī, tunsūm and tūsūm,
to beat. The compounds *have -tū-*
sūm ; but dētunsūm *and obtun-*
sūm also occur.

Ungō (or -guō), unxī, unctūm, to anoint.

Urō, ussī, ustūm, to burn.

Vādō, vāsī (once), —, to go. Sūpervādō, —, —. The compounds have vāsī, vāsūm.

Vēhō, vexī, vectūm, to carry.

Vellō, vellī and vulsī, vulsūm, to pluck out. So āvellō, divellō, ēvellō, intervellō, -vulsī, -vulsūm.

The other compounds have vellī only.

Vergō, versī, —, to incline.

Verrō, verri, versūm, to sweep.

Vertō, verti, versūm, to turn.

Vincō, vicī, victūm, to conquer.

Visō, visī, vīsūm, to visit.

Vivō, vixī, victūm, to live.

Volvō, volvi, vōlūtūm, to roll.

Vōmō, vōmuī, vōmītūm, to vomit.

INCEPTIVE VERBS.

§ 231. Very few inceptive verbs have a supine-stem, and these take it from the simple verb; the perfect-stem, when used, is also adopted from the simple verb. In many inceptives, especially those derived from nouns and adjectives, the intermediate verb in -eo is not used: as, *grāvesco*, from *grāvīs*.

Acescō, ācuī, to grow sour.

Ægrescō, —, to grow sick.

Albescō, —, to grow white.

Alescō, —, to grow; coālescō, -ālūī, -ālītūm.

Ardescō, arsi, to take fire.

Arescō, —, to grow dry; exārescō, -āruī; so inārescō, pērārescō.

Augescō, —, to begin to grow.

Cālescō, —, to grow warm.

Calvescō, —, to grow bald.

Candescō, canduī, to grow white.

Cānescō, —, to grow gray.

Clārescō, clāruī, to become bright.

Condormiscō, -dormivī, to grow sleepy.

Conticescō, -tīcuī, to become silent.

Crebrescō, crēbuī and crebruī, to increase.

Crūdescō, crūdūī, to become cruel.

Dītescō, —, to grow rich.

Dulcescō, dulcuī, to grow sweet.

Dūrescō, dūruī, to grow hard.

Evīlescō, ēvilūī, to grow vile.

Extīnescō, extīmuī, to fear greatly.

Fātiscō, —, to gape.

Fervescō, —, to boil.

Flaccescō, flaccuī, to wilt.

Flōrescō, flōruī, to begin to flourish.

Frācescō, frācuī, to grow rancid.

Frīgescō, frixi, to grow cold.

Frondescō, frondūī, to grow leafy.

Frūticescō, —, to begin to shoot.

Gēlascō, —, to freeze.

Gēmiscō, —, to begin to sigh.

Gemmascō, —, to begin to bud.

Gemmescō, —, to become a gem.

Gēnērascō, —, to be produced.

Grandescō, —, to grow large.

Grāvescō, —, to grow heavy.

Hærescō, —, to adhere.

Hēbescō, —, to grow dull.

Horrescō, horruī, to grow rough.

Hūmescō, —, to grow moist.

Ignescō, —, to become inflamed.

Indōlescō, -dōluī, to be grieved.

Insölescö, —, to be haughty.
 Integrascö, —, to grow fresh.
 Jüvënescö, —, to grow young.
 Languescö, languī, to grow languid.
 Lăpidescö, —, to become stone.
 Lătescö, —, to grow broad.
 Lătescö, —, to lie hid; dëlătescö
 and oblătescö have -lătuī.
 Lentescö, to become soft.
 Lăquescö, lăcuī, to become liquid.
 Lăcescö, —, to grow light.
 Lătescö, —, to grow muddy.
 Măcescö, —, }
 Macrescö, macruī, } to grow lean.
 Mădescö, măduī, to grow wet.
 Marcescö, —, to pine away.
 Mătărescö, mătăruī, to ripen.
 Măşrescö, —, to pity.
 Mătescö, —, to grow mild.
 Mollescö, —, to grow soft.
 Mătescö, —, to grow dumb; ob-
 mătescö, obmătuī.
 Nigrescö, nigruī, to grow black.
 Nătescö, nătuī, to grow bright.
 Nătescö, nătuī, to become known.
 Obbrătescö, —, to become brutish.
 Obdormiscö, —, to fall asleep.
 Obsurdescö, obsurduī, to grow deaf.
 Occallescö, —, -calluī, to grow
 hard.
 Olescö (rarely used), ădălescö, ăd-
 ălēvī, ădultūm, to grow up; ex-
 ălescö, -ălēvī, -ălētūm, to grow
 obsolete; so, obsălescö; inălescö,
 —, -ălēvī, ălătūm.
 Pallescö, palluī, to grow pale.
 Pătescö, pătuī, to be opened.
 Păvescö, —, to grow fearful.
 Pertănescö, -tămuī, to fear greatly.

Pinguescö, —, to grow fat.
 Păbescö, păbuī, to grow to maturity.
 Puărescö, —, to become a boy.
 Pătescö, pătuī, }
 Putrescö, —, } to become rotten.
 Rărescö, —, to become thin.
 Răşpăscö, -şăpăvī, -şăpă and -şăpă,
 to come to oneself.
 Răgescö, răguī, to grow cold.
 Răbescö, răbuī, to grow red.
 Sănescö, —, to become sound; con-
 sănescö, -sănuī.
 Sănescö, sănuī, to grow old.
 Sentescö, —, to perceive.
 Siccescö, —, to become dry.
 Sălescö, —, to grow silent.
 Sălădescö, —, to grow solid.
 Sordescö, sorduī, to grow filthy.
 Splendescö, splendū, to grow bright.
 Spănescö, —, to begin to foam.
 Stăřlescö, —, to become barren.
 Stăřescö, —, to be astonished.
 Suescö, suăvī, suătūm, to become ac-
 customed.
 Tăbescö, tăbuī, to waste away.
 Tăněrescö and -ascö, —, to grow
 tender.
 Tăpescö, tăpuī, to grow warm.
 Torpăscö, torpuī, to grow torpid.
 Trămiscö, —, to grow tremulous.
 Tămiscö, tămuī, }
 Turgescö, } to begin to swell.
 Uvescö, —, to grow moist.
 Vălescö, to grow strong.
 Vănescö, —, to vanish; ăvănescö,
 ăvănă.
 Văţărescö, -ăvī, to grow old.
 Vărescö, —, to grow green.
 Văvescö, văxī, to come to life.

§ 232. *Dependent Verbs of the Third Conjugation.*

Apiscōr, aptūs, <i>to get.</i>	Nanciscōr, nactūs or nanetūs, <i>to obtain.</i>
Expergiscōr, -perrectūs, <i>to wake up.</i>	Nascōr, nātūs, nascitūrūs, <i>to be born.</i>
Fātiscōr, <i>to gape</i> ; dēfētiscōr, dēfessūs. <i>So the other compounds.</i>	Nītōr, nīsūs or nixūs, nīsūrūs, <i>to strive.</i>
Fruōr, fructūs, fruitūs, fruitūrūs, <i>to enjoy.</i>	Obliviscōr, oblītūs, <i>to forget.</i>
Fungōr, functūs, <i>to perform.</i>	Pāciscōr, pactūs, <i>to bargain.</i>
Grādiōr, gressūs, <i>to walk</i> ; aggrēdiōr, aggrēdī and aggrēdīrī, aggressūs; <i>so progrēdiōr.</i>	Pātiōr, passūs, <i>to suffer.</i>
Irascōr, irātūs, <i>to be angry.</i>	Prōfēiscōr, prōfectūs, <i>to set out.</i>
Lābōr, lapsūs, <i>to fall.</i>	Quērōr, questūs, <i>to complain.</i>
Līquōr, liquī, <i>to flow.</i>	Ringōr, rinctūs, <i>to snarl.</i>
Lōquōr, locūtūs, <i>to speak.</i>	Sēquōr, sēcūtūs, <i>to follow.</i>
Mīniscōr (obs.), commīniscōr, commentūs, <i>to invent</i> ; rēmīniscōr, <i>to remember.</i>	Tuōr, tūtūs, <i>to protect.</i>
Mōriōr, mōrī, rarely mōrīrī, mortuūs, mōritūrūs, <i>to die.</i>	Ulciscōr, ultūs, <i>to avenge.</i>
	Utōr, ūsūs, <i>to use.</i>
	Vescōr, <i>to eat.</i>

Fourth Conjugation.

§ 233. 1. Verbs of the fourth conjugation are vowel-verbs, the characteristic vowel being *i*. The perfect-stem is formed—

(a.) By adding *v*: as, *audio, audīvī*.

(b.) The characteristic vowel is dropped in some verbs, and then *v* passes into *u*: as, *sālī-o, sāl-u-ī*.

(c.) By dropping the characteristic and lengthening the stem-vowel: as, *vēnī-o, vēn-ī*.

2. The supine-stem is formed by adding *t*. In many verbs *v* of the perfect-stem is elided.

3. The following list contains those verbs which form the perfect-stem according to the last three methods mentioned above:

Amīciō, -uī or -xī, āmictūm, <i>to clothe.</i>	Cambiō, campsī, <i>to exchange.</i>
Balbūtīō, —, —, <i>to stammer.</i>	Dēmentīō, —, —, <i>to be mad.</i>
Cēcūtīō, —, —, <i>to be blind.</i>	Effūtīō, —, effūtītūm, <i>to prate.</i>

- Eĉ, ivī, itŭm, *to go. The compounds almost always elide v of the perfect-stem, rĕdiu, etc.; ħntĕĕĉ, -ivī or -iī, —. Contrāĕĉ and posteĉ have no perfect or supine.*
- Farciĉ, farsī, fartŭm and farcĕtŭm, *to pack. The compounds change a into e; rĕferciĉ, -fersī, -fertŭm; conferciĉ, —, confertŭm; effarciĉ or -ferciĉ, —, effortŭm.*
- Fĕriĉ, —, —, *to strike.*
- Fĕrōciĉ, -ivī and -iī, *to be fierce.*
- Fulciĉ, fulsī, fultŭm, *to prop. Fulcītŭs occurs.*
- Ganniĉ, —, —, *to bark.*
- Glōciĉ, —, —, *to cluck.*
- Grandiĉ, —, —, *to make great.*
- Hauriĉ, hausī, rarely hauriī, hausŭm, rarely hausītŭm, hausŭs, hausŭrŭs, haurītŭs, haurītŭrŭs.
- Hinniĉ, —, —, *to neigh.*
- Ineptiĉ, —, —, *to trifle.*
- Pariĉ *is of the third conjugation, but its compounds are of the fourth: as, ħpĕriĉ, ħpĕruī, ħpertŭm; so oppĕriĉ; rĕpĕriĉ, rĕpĕrī, rĕpertŭm; so compĕriĉ, rarely depōnent.*
- Prŭriĉ, —, —, *to itch.*
- Queĉ (*like cĉ*), quīvī, quītŭm, *to be able.*
- Rauciĉ, —, rausŭm, *to be hoarse.*
- Rŭgiĉ, —, —, *to roar.*
- Sæviĉ, sæviī, -itŭm, *to rage.*
- Săgiĉ, —, —, *to perceive keenly.*
- Săliĉ, săluī or saliī, saltŭm, *to leap; as- and dĕ- sīliĉ, -uī, -sultŭm; pro- and trans- sīliĉ, -uī, -ivī, -iī; ab-, in-, sub- sīliĉ, -iī, -uī; dis-, ex-, rĕ- sīliĉ, -uī; circum- and præ- sīliĉ have no perfect or supine.*
- Săliĉ, —, sālītŭm, *to salt.*
- Sanciĉ, sanxī, sanctŭm and sancītŭm, *to ratify.*
- Sarciĉ, sarsī, sartŭm, *to patch.*
- Sarriĉ, -ivī, -uī, -itŭm, *to hoe.*
- Scătŭriĉ, —, —, *to gush out.*
- Sentiĉ, sensī, sensŭm, *to feel.*
- Sĕpĕliĉ, -ivī and -iī, rarely sĕpĕlī, sĕpŭltŭm, rarely -itŭm, *to bury.*
- Sĕpiĉ, sepsī, septŭm, *to hedge.*
- Singultiĉ, —, —; also singultĉ, —, -ātŭm, *to sob.*
- Sitiĉ, -ivī and -iī, —, *to be thirsty.*
- Suffiĉ, -ivī and -iī, -itŭm, *to fumigate.*
- Tussiĉ, —, —, *to cough.*
- Văgiĉ, -ivī or -iī, *to cry.*
- Vĕniĉ, vĕnī, ventŭm, *to come.*
- Vinciĉ, vinxī, vinĕtŭm, *to bind.*

Deponent Verbs of the Fourth Conjugation.

- Mĕtiĉr, mensŭs and mĕtītŭs, *to measure.*
- Ordiĉr, orsŭs, *to begin.*
- Oriĉr, ortŭs, ōritŭrŭs, *to rise. Of the third conjugation, except infin. pres.*
- Pĕriĉr (obs. whence pĕrītŭs); expĕriĉr, expertŭs, *to try; oppĕriĉr, oppertŭs and oppĕrītŭs, to wait for.*
- Pōtiĉr, pōtītŭs, *to obtain. The poets sometimes use an indicative present and subjunctive imperfect of the third conjugation.*

APPENDIX VIII.

ROMAN MODE OF RECKONING TIME.

§ 234. 1. The Romans divided the natural day (from sunrise to sunset) into twelve equal hours of varying length according to the time of year. The night was also divided in the same way into four equal watches.

2. The year, according to the calendar of Julius Cæsar, was divided into twelve months, as follows:—

Jānuārius,	31 days.	Maius,	31 days.	September,	30 days.
Februārius,	28 “	Jūnius,	30 “	Octōber,	31 “
Martius,	31 “	Quintilis,	31 “	Nōvember,	30 “
Aprīlis,	30 “	Sextilis,	31 “	Dēcember,	31 “

3. In early times the year began in March: hence the names, *Quintilis*, *Sextilis*, *September*, etc. *Quintilis* and *Sextilis* were afterwards changed to *Jūlius* and *Augustus*, in honor of the first two Cæsars.

4. The day of the month was reckoned from three points, Kalends, Nones, and Ides, which fell respectively on the *first*, *fifth*, and *thirteenth* of each month; except March, May, July, and October, when the Nones fell on the *seventh*, and the Ides on the *fifteenth*.

5. Any given date was reckoned, not backward from the first day of the month as with us, but forward to the next Kalends, Nones, or Ides, *inclusive*. Thus, the 2d of March was called the “sixth before the Nones of March;” *sextūs (antē) Nōnās Martiās*, or *antē diēm sextūm Nōnās Martiās*; the 16th of March was called the “17th before the Kalends of April,” *septimūs dēcimūs (antē) Kālendās Aprīlēs*, or *antē diēm septimūm dēcimūm Kālendās Aprīlēs*. The 2d of June was called *quartūs Nōnās Jūniās*, or *antē diēm quartūm Nōnās Jūniās*, etc.

6. In leap-year February had 29 days, the 24th (*sextūs Kal. Mar.*) being doubled and called *bisextūs Kal. Mar.*—Hence leap-year was called *bisextilis*.

7. Therefore, to reduce the Roman calendar to our own,—

(a.) For a date before the Nones or Ides, subtract the number of days from the day of the month on which the Nones or Ides

fell, and add one to the remainder. Thus, *a. d. VIII, Idus Maias*, $(15 - 8) + 1 = 8$; May 8th.

(*b.*) For a date before the Kalends, subtract the number of days from the number of days in the month, and add *two* to the remainder. Thus, *a. d. XVII, Kal. Jun.*, $(31 - 17) + 2 = 16$; May 16th.

8. To reduce our calendar to the Roman, the process will be reversed.

9. The week of seven days (*hebdomās*) was not used in Rome till after the introduction of Christianity.

APPENDIX IX. PROSODY.

§ 235. Prosody is the science of versification, and belongs rather to poetry than to grammar.

QUANTITY.

§ 236. 1. The *quantity* of a syllable is the relative time occupied in pronouncing it, a long syllable requiring twice as much time as a short one.

2. A vowel is long by *nature*, as *dūco*; or by *position*, as *rēstiti*. A syllable that is sometimes long and sometimes short is said to be *common*.

§ 237. RULE I.—A vowel before another vowel is short.

So also when *h* comes between two vowels, it being only a breathing.

Exc. 1. *Fio* has *i* long except before *ēr*; and sometimes even then: as, *fiunt, fiam, fieret*.

Exc. 2. *E* between two *i*'s is long in the genitive and dative of the fifth declension: as, *fāciēi*.

Exc. 3. *A* is long in the penult of old genitives in *āi*: as, *aulāi*.

Exc. 4. *A* and *e* are long in the endings *āius, ēius, ēia*.

Exc. 5. *I* is common in genitives in *īus*, but in *altērius* it is almost always short; in *ālius*, long, contracted for *ālīius*.

Exc. 6. The first vowel of *ēheu* is long; that of *Diana*, *io*, and *ohe*, is common.

§ 238. RULE II.—Diphthongs are long.

Exc. 1. *Præ*, in composition, is short before a vowel.

Exc. 2. A diphthong at the end of a word is sometimes made short when the next word begins with a vowel.

§ 239. RULE III.—Contracted syllables are long. (For an exception, see § 223, 3.)

§ 240. RULE IV.—A vowel before two consonants, a double consonant, or the letter *j*, is long by position.

NOTE.—A vowel, other than *i*, really combines with *j* to form a diphthong.

Remark 1.—The vowel is long by position when one or both the consonants are in the same word with it; but when both stand at the beginning of the following word, it is common.

Remark 2.—A short vowel at the end of a word before a double consonant or *j* beginning the next word is not lengthened.

Remark 3.—The law of position is frequently disregarded by the comic poets.

Exc. 1. *I* is short before *j* in the compounds of *jūgūm*: as, *bījūgūs*.

Exc. 2. A vowel naturally short, before a mute followed by a liquid is common.

Remark 4.—A vowel is made long by position in compound words where the former part ends with a mute and the latter part begins with a liquid: as, *āb-luo*.

Remark 5.—A short vowel at the end of a word, before a mute and a liquid in the next word, is rarely lengthened, except in the arsis of a foot.

Remark 6.—In Latin words only *l* and *r* following a mute lengthen a preceding short vowel.

§ 241. RULE V.—Derivatives retain the quantity of their primitives.

Exc. 1. Frequentatives from verbs of the first conjugation change *ā* long into *ī* short: as, *clamāt-um*, *clamīt-o*.

Exc. 2. (a.) Some derivatives lengthen a short vowel: such as *dēni* from *dēcem*, *persōna* from *sōno*, *hūmānus* from *hōmo*, *sēcius* from *sēcus*, *lāterna* from *lāteo*, *sēdes* from *sēdeo*, *lītera* from *līno*, *tēgula* from *tēgo*, *suspicio* from *suspīcor*.

(b.) Some shorten a long vowel: as, *dīcax* from *dīco*, *dux* (*dūcis*) from *dūco*, *fīdes* from *fīdo*, *lābo* from *lābor*, *lūcerna* from *lūceo*, *molestus* from *mōles*, *nāto* from *nātum*, *nōto* from *nōtum*, *ōdium* from *ōdi*, *sōpor* from *sōpio*, *vādum* from *vādo*, *vōco* from *vōcis*.

§ 242. RULE VI.—Words introduced from the Greek or other languages retain their original quantity; so, also, Latin stems have the same quantity as the cognate Greek ones: as, *Darīus* (Greek *Δαρειος*); *vīcus* (Greek *οἶκος*, digammated).

§ 243. RULE VII.—Compound words retain the quantity of their components.

Exc. 1. *Agnītus* and *cognītus* from *nōtus*, *dējēro* and *pējēro* from *jūro*; *hōdiē* from *hōc diē*; compounds in *dīcus* from *dīco*; *innūba*, *prōnūba*, *subnūba*, from *nūbo* (but *connubium* has *u* common); *imbēcillus* from *bācillum*; *ambītum* from *ītum*, but *i* is short in *ambītus* and *ambītio*.

Exc. 2. *Pro* is short in *prōcella*, *prōcul*, *prōfānus*, *prōfāri*, *prōfestus*, *prōficiscor*, *prōfiteor*, *prōfūgio*, *prōfundus*, *prōnēpos*, *prōneptis*, and *prōtervus*. It is common in *prōcūro*, *prōfundo*, *prōpāgo*, *propello*, and *prōpīno*. The Greek *prō* is always short.

Remark 1.—The inseparable prepositions *dīs* and *rē* are short; *dī*, *sē*, and *vē*, are long.

Remark 2.—*A* ending the former part of a compound word is long; the other vowels, short.

Exc. 1. *E* is long in *sē* for *sex* or *sēmī*, and common in some compounds of *facio*.

Exc. 2. *I* is long when the first part of a compound is declined, or may be separated without altering the sense: as, *quīdam*, *agrīcultūra*; also in the former part of compounds of *diēs*

(*biduum*, *merīdiēs*, etc.), in *ibique*, *utrobique*, and *ibidem*, and in *idem* when masculine.

Exc. 3. *O* is long in compounds of *contro*, *intro*, *retro*, *quando* (except *quandōquidem*), and in *aliōqui*.

INCREMENTS.

§ 244. 1. A noun is said to *increase* when in any of its cases it has more syllables than in the nominative-singular. A plural increment is one which belongs to the endings of the plural number; while a singular increment always belongs to the stem.

2. If a word has but one increment, it is the penult; if two, the antepenult is called the first increment, and the penult the second; if three, the syllable before the antepenult is called the first, the antepenult the second, and the penult the third: as,

sermo, ser-mōn-¹īs, ser-mōn-ī-^{1 2}būs, īt-in-ēr-ī-^{1 2 3}būs.

SINGULAR INCREMENTS.

§ 245. RULE VIII.—Increments of the third declension in *a* and *o* are long; in *e*, *i*, and *u*, short.

Remark 1.—There are no singular increments in the second declension, stems in *r* merely dropping the nominative-ending. Those of the first, fourth, and fifth declensions belong to § 237.

A.

Exc. 1. Masculines in *āl* and *ār* (except *Car* and *Nar*), with *ānās*, *mās*, *vās* (*vādīs*), *baccār*, *hēpār*, *jūbār*, *lār*, *nectār*, *pār*, *fax*, and *sāl*, increase short.

Exc. 2. Nouns in *s* preceded by a consonant increase short in *a* and *o*: as, *daps*, *dāpīs*; *scrobs*, *scrōbīs*.

O.

Exc. 3. *O* in the increment of neuters is short; but *ōs* (*ōrīs*)

and neuter comparatives have *o* long. The increment of *ădŏr* is common.

Exc. 4. *Arbŏr*, *mĕmŏr*, *bŏs*, *compŏs*, *impŏs*, *lĕpŭs*, and *præcox* increase short.

E.

Exc. 5. Nouns in *ĕn*, *ĕnĭs* (except *Hymĕn*) with *Anĭo* and *Nĕrio*, increase long; also, *hæŕĕs*, *lŏcuplĕs*, *mansuĕs*, *mercĕs*, *quiĕs*, *Ibĕr*, *vĕr*, *ălĕc* or *ălex*, *lex*, *rex*, *vervex*, *plebs*, and *seps*.

I.

Exc. 6. Nouns and adjectives in *ix* increase long; but *călix*, *coxendix*, *filix*, *fornix*, *lărix*, *nix*, *pix*, *sălix*, and *strix*, increase short.

Exc. 7. *Dis*, *glis*, *lis*, *vis*, *Nesĭs*, *Quĭris*, *Samnĭs*, and *vĭbex*, increase long.

U.

Exc. 8. Nouns in *ŭs* (gen. *ŭrĭs*, *ŭdĭs*, *ŭtĭs*), with *fŭr*, *frux*, *lux*, *Pollux*, increase long; but *intercŭs*, *Ligŭs*, and *pĕcŭs* increase short.

Remark 2.—Increments in *y* belong to Greek nouns.

PLURAL INCREMENTS.

§ 246. RULE IX.—Plural increments in *a*, *e*, and *o* are long; in *i* and *u*, short.

INCREMENT OF VERBS.

§ 247. 1. A verb is said to *increase* when any of its forms has more syllables than the second person singular of the indicative present active.

2. The number of the increment is reckoned as in nouns (§ 244, 2): as,

audĭs, aud-¹-ĭ-tĭs, aud-^{1 2}-ĭ-ĕ-bās, aud-^{1 2 3}-ĭ-ĕ-bā-tĭs, aud-^{1 2 3 4}-ĭ-ĕ-bām-ĭ-nĭ.

§ 248. RULE X.—In the increment of verbs, *a*, *e*, and *o* are long, *i* and *u* are short.

A.

Exc. 1. The first increment of *dō* is short.

E.

Exc. 2. *E* is short before *r* in the *first* increment of the present and imperfect of the third conjugation, and in the second increment in *bērīs* and *běřě*.

Exc. 3. *E* is short before *rām*, *rīm*, and *ro*, and the persons formed from them.

I.

Exc. 4. *I* is long before *v* or *s* in the perfect-stem.

Exc. 5. *I* is long in the supine-stem of *gaudeo*, *arcesso*, *divīdo*, *fācesso*, *lācesso*, *pēto*, *quæro*, *rēcenseo*, and *obliviscōr*.

Exc. 6. *I* is long in the first increment of the fourth conjugation, except *imūs* of the perfect; also in *sīmus*, *sītīs*, *vētīmus*, *vēlītīs*, *nōlito*, *nōlite*, *nōlītōte*.

Exc. 7. *I* is common in *ris*, *rimus*, *ritīs*, of the indicative future-perfect and subjunctive perfect.

U.

Exc. 8. *U* is long in the supine-stem and future participle active.

PENULTS.

§ 249. RULE XI.—Monosyllabic perfect and supine stems are long (§ 225, 2 c): as, *mōvi*, *mōtum* (perhaps syncopated from *mōvītūm*).

Exc. (a.) Seven perfect-stems are short: *bīb-i*, *dēd-i*, *fīd-i* (from *findo*), *scīd-i*, *stēt-i*, *stīt-i*, *tūl-i*.

NOTE.—A reduplication is always short: hence the short stems of *bībi*, *dēdi*, *stēti* (for *sēsti*), and *stīti* (for *sīsti*).

(b.) Ten supine-stems are short: *cīt-um*, *dāt-um*, *īt-um*, *līt-um*, *quīt-um*, *rāt-um*, *rūt-um*, *sāt-um*, *sīt-um*, *stāt-um*.

So, also, the obsolete *fūtum*, whence *fūtūrus*.

§ 250. RULE XII.—(a.) Words in *ābrum*, *ācrum*,

ātrum, ūbrum, ōsus, ātum, ītum, ūtum, ūdus, āris, and ēlus, lengthen the penult.

Exc. *Gēlus, gēlum, and scēlus; defrūtum, pulpītum, pētōritum, lūtum*.

(b.) Words in *ca, do, ga, go, ma, tus, le, les, lis, na, ne, ni, nis, dex, dix, mex, mix, lex, and rex*, lengthen the penult.

Exc. In *ca*, *brassica, dīca, fūlīca, mantīca, pēdīca, pertīca, scūtīca, tūnīca, vōmīca*; in *do*, *cādo, divīdo, ēdo* (to eat), *sōlīdo, spādo, trēpīdo*; in *ga* and *go*, *cālīga, fūga, plāga, tōga, ēgo, ligo*; in *ma*, *ānīma, lacrima, victīma*; in *tus*, *cātus, lātus* (-ēris), *mētus, vēgētus, ānhēlītus, dīgītus, grātuītus, hālītus, servītus, spīrītus, nōtus, quōtus, arbūtus, pūtus, inclūtus*; in *le*, *māle*; in *lis*, verbals in *īlis* and *bīlis*; adjectives in *ātīlis, dapsīlis, grācīlis, hūmīlis, pārīlis, mūgīlis, sīmīlis, stērīlis, strīgīlis*; in *ne* and *nis*, *sīne, cānis, cīnis, jūvēnis*; in *na*, *buccīna, fiscīna, fēmīna, fuscīna, lāmīna, pāgīna, pātīna, sarcīna, āpīnæ, nundīnæ*; in *lex*, *cūlex, sīlex*; in *mex*, *rūmex*.

(c.) *A, e, o, and u*, before *mus, mum, nus, num*, are long.

Exc. *Glōmus, hūmus, postūmus, nēmus; ānus* (an old woman), *mānus, oceānus, pēnus, tēnus, Vēnus, ōnus, bōnus, sōnus, lāgānum*.

(d.) Words in *ātes, ītis, ōtis, āta, ēta, ōta, ūta*, lengthen the penult, except *sītis, pōtis, nōta, rōta*.

(e.) A penultimate vowel before *v* is long.

Exc. *Avis, brēvis, grāvis, lēvis, ōvis; jūvo, lāvo, ōvo; āvus, cāvus, fāvus, nōvus, fāvor, pāvor, nōvem*.

§ 251. RULE XIII.—(a.) Words in *ācus, īcus, īdus, īlus, īmus; ba, bo, pa, po; ētas, ītas, and īta*, shorten the penult.

Exc. *Dācus, mērācus, ōpācus; āmicus, aprīcus, fīcus, mēdīcus, pīcus, postīcus, pūdīcus, spīcus, umbilīcus; Īdus, fīdus*,

infidus, nīdus ; *aśilus, bīmus, līmus, ōpīmus, patrīmus, matrīmus, quadrīmus, trīmus*, and the superlatives *īmus* and *prīmus* ; *glēba, būbo, glūbo, lībo, nūbo, scrībo, rīpa, cūpa, pāpa, pūpa, scōpa, rēpo, pītūita*.

(b.) Diminutives and polysyllables in *ūlus*, with verbs in *īno, īnor*, shorten the penult.

Exc. *Festīno, sāgīno, prōpīno, ōpīnor*, and compounds of *clīno*.

§ 252. RULE XIV.—Words in *īnus*, except adjectives expressing time or material, lengthen the penult.

Exc. But *mātūtīnus, rēpentīnus*, and *vespertīnus* lengthen the penult, and the following shorten it: *accīnus, āsīnus, dōmīnus, fācīnus, sīnus, termīnus, gēmīnus, circīnus, mīnus*.

§ 253. RULE XV.—Before final *ro* and *ror*, *a* and *e* are short ; the other vowels, long.

Exc. *Pēro, spēro, fōro, sōror, vōro, fūro*.

§ 254. RULE XVI.—Before final *rus, ra, rum*, *e* is short ; the other vowels, long.

Exc. *Austērus, gālērus, plērus, prēcērus, sērus, sēvērus, vērus, stātēra* ; *barbārus, nūrus, pīrus, scārus, spārus, tōrus, hāra, mōra, pārum, suppārum*.

§ 255. RULE XVII.—Adverbs in *tīm* lengthen the penult ; those in *īter* and *ītus* shorten it. But *stātīm* (immediately) is short.

Remark 1.—Many apparent exceptions to the foregoing rules are covered by § 241, § 242, § 243. The masculine only of adjectival terminations is given, the quantity of the feminine and the neuter being of course that of the masculine.

Remark 2.—Patronymics (Greek) in *ādes* and *īdes* shorten the penult, while those in *āis, ēis, and ōis*, lengthen it. Nouns in *eus* form patronymics in *īdēs*.

ANTEPENULTS.

§ 256. RULE XVIII.—The connecting vowels *i*, *o*, and *u* are short; *a* is long: as, *vīnōlentus*, *fraudūlentus*, *ālimentum*, *atrāmentum*.

§ 257. RULE XIX.—A vowel before *nea*, *neo*, *nia*, *nio*, *nious*, *nium*, is long.

Exc. *Castānea*, *tīnea*, *māneo*, *mīneo*, *mōneo*, *tēneo*, *ignōmīnia*, *luscīnia*, *vēnia*, *lānio*, *vēnio*, and words in *cīnium*.

FINAL SYLLABLES.

MONOSYLLABLES.

§ 258. RULE XX.—(a.) Monosyllables ending in a vowel are long.

(b.) Monosyllabic nouns ending in a consonant are long; all other monosyllables ending in a consonant are short.

Exc. 1. *Cōr*, *fēl*, *mēl*, *pōl*, *vīr*, *ōs* (*ossis*), *vās* (*vadis*), are short.

Exc. 2. *En*, *nōn*, *crās*, *plūs*, *cūr*, *pār*, are long. So, also, monosyllables in *c*, except *nēc* (short), and *hēc* and *hōc* (common).

Exc. 3. Monosyllabic plural cases and verb-forms in *as*, *es*, and *is* are long; but *ēs* from *sūm* is short.

POLYSYLLABLES.

A final.

§ 259. RULE XXI.—*A final*, in words declined, is short, and long in words undeclined.

Exc. 1. *A final* is long in the ablative singular of the first declension, and in the vocative singular of Greek nouns in *as* and *es*.

Exc. 2. *A* final is short in *eiă, ită, quiă*, and *pătă*, when used adverbially; sometimes also in *contra* and numerals in *ginta*. In *postea* it is common.

E final.

§ 260. RULE XXII.—*E* final is short in words of two or more syllables.

Exc. 1. *E* final is long in the first and fifth declensions.

Exc. 2. Final *e* in the imperative active second person singular of the second conjugation is a contraction; but it is sometimes short in *căve, văle, vîde*.

Exc. 3. Final *e* is long in *fērē, fermē, ohē*, and in adverbs derived from adjectives of the second declension; but it is short in *běně, mălě, inferně*, and *superně*.

I final.

§ 261. RULE XXIII.—*I* final is long.

Exc. *I* final is common in *mîhi, tîbi, sîbi, îbi, ŭbi, nîsi, quăsi*, and *cui* when a dissyllable.

O final.

§ 262. RULE XXIV.—*O* final, in words of more than one syllable, is common.

Exc. 1. *O* final is long in the dative and the ablative, and in the local adverbs *quō, eō, eōdem*, etc.; also in *omnīnō* and *iō*.

Exc. 2. *O* final is short in *cîtō, illicō, prŏfectō*, and *mŏdō*, and generally in *ĕgo* and *hŏmo*.

U final.

§ 263. RULE XXV.—*U* final is long.

D, L, N, R, T, final.

§ 264. RULE XXVI.—A vowel before *d, l, n, r, t*, final, is short.

Exc. *E* is long in *liĕn, Ibĕr*, and *Celtĭbĕr*.

C final.

§ 265. RULE XXVII.—A vowel before *c* final is long; but *e* in *donec* is short.

As, Es, Os, final.

§ 266. RULE XXVIII.—*As, es, and os, final, are long.*

Exc. 1. *As* is short in *ănās*.

Exc. 2. *Es* is short in nouns of the third declension, Class III. (§ 35); and in *pēnēs*.

Exc. 3. *Os* is short in *compōs, impōs, and ōs (ossis)*.

Is, Us, Ys, final.

§ 267. RULE XXIX.—*Is, us, and ys, final, are short.*

Exc. 1. *Is* and *us* are long in plural cases, and in the nominative of nouns having a long stem-vowel: as, *mūsīs, fructūs, tellūs, Samnīs*. But *būs* of the dative and the ablative is short.

Exc. 2. Contracted final syllables in *us* and *is* are of course long: as, *audīs* for *audī-īs, fructūs* for *fructū-īs*.

Exc. 3. *Rīs* in the indicative future-perfect and subjunctive perfect is common.

Remark.—The last syllable of a verse (except the anapæstic and Ionic *a minore*) may be long or short.

VERSIFICATION.

§ 268. 1. A *foot* is a combination of two or more syllables. A compound foot consists of two simple feet united.

2. The simple feet of two syllables are the

<i>Spondee,</i>	two long,	— —: as,	<i>sēsē.</i>
<i>Pyrrhic,</i>	two short,	~ ~: as,	<i>bōnē.</i>
<i>Trochee</i> or <i>Choree,</i>	} long and short,	— ~: as,	<i>gāūdēt.</i>
<i>Iambus,</i>		~ —: as	<i>dēō.</i>

3. The simple feet of three syllables are the

<i>Dactyl</i> ,	one long and two short, — ∪ ∪: as,	<i>cōrpōrā</i> .
<i>Anapæst</i> ,	two short and one long, ∪ ∪ —: as,	<i>bōnītās</i> .
<i>Tribrach</i> ,	three short, ∪ ∪ ∪: as,	<i>cūpērē</i> .
<i>Molossus</i> ,	three long, — — —: as,	<i>mīrārī</i> .
<i>Amphibrach</i> ,	short, long, and short, ∪ — ∪: as,	<i>pērītūs</i> .
<i>Amphimæcer</i> or <i>Cretic</i> ,	} long, short, and long, — ∪ —: as,	<i>cēpērānt</i> .
<i>Bacchius</i> ,		
one short, two long,	∪ — —: as,	<i>āmābās</i> .
<i>Antibacchius</i> ,	two long, one short, — — ∪: as,	<i>fēcīssē</i> .

4. The compound feet are the

<i>Dispondee</i> ,	double spondee,	— — — —: as,	<i>āccēpīssēnt</i> .
<i>Proceleusmatic</i> ,	double Pyrrhic,	∪ ∪ ∪ ∪: as,	<i>cēlērītēr</i> .
<i>Ditrochee</i> ,	double trochee,	— ∪ — ∪: as,	<i>ērūdītūs</i> .
<i>Diiambus</i> ,	double iambus,	∪ — ∪ —: as,	<i>āmāvērās</i> .
<i>Ionic ā majōre</i> ,	spondee and Pyrrhic,	— — — ∪: as,	<i>cōnfēcērām</i> .
<i>Ionic ā mīnōre</i> ,	Pyrrhic and spondee,	∪ ∪ — —: as,	<i>ādōlēscēns</i> .
<i>Choriambus</i> ,	choree and iambus,	— ∪ ∪ —: as,	<i>crēdūlītās</i> .
<i>Antispast</i> ,	iambus and choree,	∪ — — ∪: as,	<i>vērēcūndūs</i> .
<i>First epitrit</i> ,	iambus and spondee,	∪ — — —: as,	<i>āmāvērūnt</i> .
<i>Second epitrit</i> ,	choree and spondee,	— ∪ — —: as,	<i>īmpērāvī</i> .
<i>Third epitrit</i> ,	spondee and iambus,	— — ∪ —: as,	<i>āuctōrītās</i> .
<i>Fourth epitrit</i> ,	spondee and choree,	— — — ∪: as,	<i>fēcīssētīs</i> .
<i>First pæon</i> ,	choree and Pyrrhic,	— ∪ ∪ ∪: as,	<i>ādmōnītūs</i> .
<i>Second pæon</i> ,	iambus and Pyrrhic,	∪ — ∪ ∪: as,	<i>āmābīlīs</i> .
<i>Third pæon</i> ,	Pyrrhic and choree,	∪ ∪ — ∪: as,	<i>pūērīlīs</i> .
<i>Fourth pæon</i> ,	Pyrrhic and iambus,	∪ ∪ ∪ —: as,	<i>cēlērītās</i> .

5. *Isochronous* feet are those whose average quantity is equal. Thus, a dactyl is isochronous with a spondee; a choree, with an iambus, etc.

METRE AND VERSES.

§ 269. 1. *Metre* is the arrangement of syllables and feet into verses.

2. There are six kinds of metre, named from the fundamental foot employed in each: to wit, *dactylic*, *anapæstic*, *iambic*, *trochaic*, *choriambic*, and *Ionic*.

3. A verse is a number of feet arranged in a certain order, constituting a line of poetry. Two verses are called a *distich*; half a verse, a *hemistich*.

4. Verses are sometimes named from the author who used them principally: as, *Anacreontic*, from Anacreon; *Asclepiadic*, from Asclepiādes; *Sapphic*, from Sappho, etc.,—sometimes from the number of feet or measures which they contain: as, *pentameter*, containing five feet; *hexameter*, containing six feet,—sometimes from the foot chiefly used: as, *dactylic*, consisting chiefly of dactyls; *spondaic*, consisting chiefly of spondees.

5. A verse wanting one syllable at the end is called *catalectic*; a verse wanting a whole foot at the end is called *brachycatalectic*; a complete verse is called *acatalectic*; a verse wanting a syllable at the beginning is called *acephalous*; a verse having a redundant syllable or foot is called *hypercatalectic* or *hypermeter*.

6. A verse or part of a verse consisting of a foot and a half (three half-feet) is called *trihēmimēris*; consisting of two feet and a half (five half-feet), *penthēmimēris*; consisting of three feet and a half (seven half-feet), *heptēmimēris*; consisting of four feet and a half (nine half-feet), *ennēmimēris*.

7. *Scanning* is dividing a verse into the feet of which it is composed, or reading it *metrically*.

FIGURES OF PROSODY.

§ 270. The figures of prosody are—

(a.) *Synalœpha*, or the elision of a final vowel or diphthong when the next word begins with a vowel. Thus, *sī omnēs* is read *s'omnēs*; *illī intēr sē* is read *ill' intēr sē*, etc. .

Remark 1.—*O, heu, ah, proh, vœ, and vah,* are not elided. Other long vowels and diphthongs sometimes stand unelided, and, if so, they are generally short in the thesis of a foot.

(b.) *Ecthlipsis*, or the elision of a final *m* with the preceding vowel, when the next word begins with a vowel: as,

Monstr-(*ŭm*) horrend-(*ŭm*), inform-(*ē*), ingens, cui lūmēn ādemptum.

Final *s* was sometimes elided in the same way by the earlier poets.

Remark 2.—*M* final, when unelided, is short before a vowel.

(c.) *Synœresis*, or the contraction of two separate vowels into one syllable: as, *deinde, fluviorum, tenuis*, pronounced *dine-de, fluv-yorum, ten-wis*.

(d.) *Dicœresis*, or the separation of one syllable into two: as, *silua* for *silva*; *su-udent* for *suudent*.

(e.) *Systole*, or the shortening of a syllable naturally or by position long: as,

Obstūpī, stētērunt cōmæ; vox faucibus hæsit.

(f.) *Diastole*, or lengthening a syllable naturally short.

(g.) *Synaphœia*, or such a connection between the last syllable of one verse and the first of the next, that the former is made long by position, or cut off by *synalœpha* or *ecthlipsis*.

RHYTHM.

§ 271. 1. *Rhythm* is the alternate elevation (*arsis*) or depression (*thesis*) of the voice in pronouncing the

syllables of a verse. The terms *arsis* and *thesis* are also applied to the part of the foot on which this elevation or depression takes place. The arsis of a foot is on the long syllable, and is determined by the fundamental foot of any measure. Thus, in dactylic measure the arsis is on the first syllable, while in iambic it is on the last; therefore a spondee in dactylic measure has the arsis on the first syllable, and in iambic, on the last.

2. The *ictus* is the stress of voice in pronouncing the arsis of a foot. A short syllable in the arsis of a foot is sometimes lengthened by the *ictus*.

3. The *cæsura* of the verse is such a division of the line by the ending of a word as affords a convenient and harmonious pause.

DACTYLIC METRE.

§ 272. I. 1. An *hexameter* or *heroic* verse consists of six feet, the last of which is a spondee, and the fifth a dactyl; but the fifth foot is sometimes a spondee, and then the verse is called *spondaic*:

Lūdĕrĕ | quā yĕl-|lēm || cālă-|mō pĕr-|mīsīt ă-|grĕstī. *Virg. Æ. 1, 10.*

În nŏvă | fĕrt ănĭ-|mūs || mŭ-|tătăs | dĭcĕrĕ | fŏrmăs. *Ov. M. 1, 1.*

Cără dĕ-|ŭm sŏbŏ-|lĕs || măg-|nŭm Jŏvīs | ĭncrĕ-|mĕntŭm. *Virg.*

2. The *cæsura* in hexameter usually occurs after the arsis of the third foot, as above; frequently, however, it occurs after the arsis of the fourth foot, and there is then a slighter one after the arsis of the second: as,

Îndĕ tŏ-|rŏ || pătĕr | Ænĕ-|ăs || sĭc | ōrsŭs ăb | ăltŏ.

3. A rapid and spirited movement is produced by the recurrence of dactyls; a slow and heavy one, by that of spondees:

Ātquĕ lĕ-|vĕm stĭpŭ-|lām || crĕpĭ-|tăntī | ūrĕrĕ | flămmă.

Ill-(i) ĭn-|tĕr sĕ | măg-|nă vĭ | brăchĭă | tŏllŭnt.

II. 1. A *pentameter* verse consists of five feet, of which the first and second may each be a dactyl or a spondee; the third is always a spondee; and the fourth and fifth are anapæsts (*i.e.* two short and one long):

Sūb quā | nūne rēcū-|bās || ārb-|ōrē vīr-|gā fūit.
Quāquē vē-|nīt mūlt-|ās || āc-|cīpīt ām-|nīs āquās.

2. It is generally, however, divided into two hemistichs, the first containing two dactyls, two spondees, or a dactyl and a spondee, followed by a long syllable; the second, two dactyls, followed by another long syllable. The cæsure occurs at the close of the first hemistich:

Sūb quā | nūne rēcū-|bās || ārbōrē | vīrgā fū-|īt.
Quāquē vē-|nīt mūlt-|ās || āccīpīt | āmnīs ā-|quās.

3. This verse usually alternates with hexameter, forming what is called *elegiac* verse.

III. *Æolic pentameter* consists of five feet, the first being a spondee, a trochee, or an iambus; and the rest, dactyls:

— — | — — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

IV. *Phalæcian pentameter* consists of the first half of a pentameter, followed by a dactyl and a spondee:

— — | — — — | — || — — — | — —

V. *Tetrameter a priore* consists of the first four feet of an hexameter, the fourth being a dactyl:

Gārrūlā | pēr rā-|mōs, āvis | ōbstrepīt.

Tetrameter catalectic wants the last two syllables of the fourth foot.

VI. *Tetrameter a posteriore* consists of the last four feet of an hexameter, the third foot being either a dactyl or a spondee:

Mōbīlī-|būs pō-|māriā | rīvīs.

Mēnsō-|rēm cōhī-|bēnt Ar-|chȳta.

VII. *Tetrameter Meiurus*, or *Faliscan*, is the same as tetrameter *a posteriore*, except that the last foot is an iambus instead of a spondee:

— — — | — — | — — — | — —

VIII. *Dactylic trimeter* consists of the last three feet of an hexameter:

Nīgrīs | æquōrā | vēntīs.

IX. *Archilochian trimeter catalectic* consists of the first half of a pentameter:

Arbōrī-|būsquē cō-|mæ.

X. *Dactylic dimeter*, or *Adonic*, consists of a dactyl and a spondee:

Mōrē pāl-|æstræ.

ANAPÆSTIC METRE.

§ 273. I. *Anapæstic monometer* consists of two anapæsts:

— — — | — — —

II. *Anapæstic dimeter* consists of four anapæsts:

— — — | — — — | — — — | — — —

IAMBIC METRE.

§ 274. I. *Iambic trimeter*, or *sēnārius*, consists of six iambic feet; but the iambus is often replaced by a spondee in the first, third, and fifth feet. A tribrach is used instead of an iambus in any foot except the last; and the spondee is replaced by its equivalents, the dactyl or

anapæst, and sometimes by a double Pyrrhic, in the first foot.

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.
— —		— —		— —	
— — —		— — —		— — —	
— — —	· — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— —
— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	— — —	
— — —		— — —		— — —	

There is generally a cæsure in the third or fourth foot.

II. The *choliambus*, or *σχαζων*, also called *Hipponactean*, from its inventor Hippönax, is *iambic trimeter*, or *senarius*, with a spondee or a trochee in the last foot.

III. *Iambic tetrameter*, or *octonarius*, consists of eight iambic feet, varied as in iambic trimeter, the cæsure usually falling on the arsis of the fourth foot.

IV. *Iambic tetrameter catalectic* is an iambic tetrameter without the last syllable of the last foot, and in the seventh place there is always an iambus.

V. *Iambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Archilochian*, is iambic trimeter without the last syllable of the last foot; but it does not admit of a spondee in the fifth place:

Lœcūs | sūb īp-|sūm fū-|nūs ēt | sēpūl-|crī.

VI. *Iambic dimeter*, or *Archilochian dimeter*, consists of four iambic feet, with the same variations as iambic trimeter. This measure is *acephalous* when it wants the first syllable, and *hypermeter* when a syllable is added at the end:

Quī mā-|jōr āb-|sēntēs | hābet.

Acephalous,

At | fīdēs | ēt īn-|gēnī.

Hypermeter,

Rēdē-|gīt īn | vērōs | tīmō-|rēs.

VII. *Iambic dimeter catalectic*, or *Anacreontic*, is

iambic dimeter without the final syllable, and with the third foot always an iambus :

— | — | — | —

VIII. The *Galliambus* consists of two iambic dimeters catalectic, the cæsura occurring at the end of the first dimeter.

TROCHAIC METRE.

§ 275. I. *Trochaic tetrameter catalectic* consists of seven trochees and a catalectic syllable. The first five trochees, and sometimes the sixth, are replaced by tribrachs ; and the second, fourth, and sixth, by a spondee or its equivalent :

1.	2.	3.	4.	5.	6.	7.	8.
— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	—
— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	—
— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	—
— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	—
— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	— —	—

The cæsura falls upon the thesis of the fourth foot.

II. *Sapphic* verse, so called from the poetess Sappho, consists of five feet,—the first, fourth, and fifth being trochees, the second a spondee, and the third a dactyl. The second foot is sometimes a trochee :

Audī-|ēt cī-|vēs ācū-|īssē | fērrūm.

The cæsura falls upon the arsis of the third foot.

III. *Phalæcian* verse, so called from the old Greek poet Phalæcus, consists of five feet,—a spondee, a dactyl, and three trochees :

— — | — — | — — | — — | — —

IV. *Trochaic dimeter catalectic* consists of three tro-

chees—the second being sometimes replaced by a spondee or dactyl—and a catalectic syllable. This measure may also be scanned as iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 274, VI.):

Āt fī-|dēs ēt | īngě-|nī;
Āt | fīdēs | ēt īn-|gěnī.

CHORIAMBIC METRE.

§ 276. I. *Choriambic pentameter* consists of a spondee, three choriambi, and an iambus:

Tēntā-|rīs nūmē-|rōs. | Ut mēliūs ! quidquid ērit | pātī.

II. *Choriambic tetrameter* consists of three choriambi and a Bacchiūs. The iambus of the first foot is sometimes replaced by a spondee:

Sāpē trāns fin-|ēm jācūlō | nōbīlis ēx-|pēdītō.

III. *Asclepiadic tetrameter*, so called from the poet Asclepiades, consists of a spondee, two choriambi, and an iambus, the cæsure occurring at the end of the first choriambus:

Māēcē-|nās, ātāvīs || ēdītē rēg-|ībūs.

This verse is sometimes scanned as dactylic pentameter catalectic (§ 272, II.):

Māēcē-|nās, ātā-|vīs || ēdītē | rēgībūs.

IV. *Choriambic trimeter*, or *Glyconic*, so called from the poet Glyco, is composed of a spondee, a choriambus, and an iambus, the spondee being sometimes replaced by a trochee or an iambus:

Illī | rōbūr ēt ās | triplex.

V. *Choriambic trimeter catalectic*, or *Pherecratic* (from the poet Pherecrātes), is composed of a spondee, a choriambus, and a catalectic syllable; in other words, it

is a *catalectic Glyconic*. The spondee is sometimes replaced by a trochee, anapæst, or iambus :

Nīgrīs | æquōrā vĕn-|tīs.

VI. A combination of Glyconic and Pherecratic produces *Priapean* verse :

-- | - - - | - - || -- | - - - | -

VII. *Choriambic dimeter* consists of a choriambus and a Bacchius :

Sānguīnē vīp-|ērīnō.

IONIC METRE.

§ 277. I. *Ionic a majore*, or *Sotadic* (from the poet Sotādes), is composed of three greater Ionics and a spondee. The Ionics are often replaced by ditrochees, and the long syllable of the trochees by two short ones :

1.	2.	3.	4.
-- - - -	-- - - -	-- - - -	--
- - - -	- - - -	- - - -	

II. *Ionic a minore* is composed entirely of lesser Ionics :

Sīmūl ūnetōs | Tībērīnīs | hūmērōs lā-|vīt īn āndīs.

COMPOUND METRES.

§ 278. I. *Greater Alcaic* is composed of two iambs and a catalectic syllable, followed by a choriambus and an iambus which may be scanned as two dactyls. The first iambus is frequently replaced by a spondee. The cæsura occurs after the catalectic syllable :

Vīdēs | ūt āl-|tā || stēt nīvē cān-|dīdum.

II. *Dactylico-trochaic tetrameter*, or *lesser Alcaic*, consists of two dactyls followed by two trochees :

— ∪ ∪ | — ∪ ∪ | — ∪ | — ∪

III. *Dactylico-trochaic* or *Archilochian heptameter* consists of the dactylic tetrameter *a priore* (§ 272, V.), followed by three trochees ; the cæsura after the fourth foot :

Sölvitŭr | æris hī-|ēms grā-|tā vīcē || vērys | ēt Fǣ-|vōnī.

IV. *Dactylico-iambic*, or *Elegiambus*, is composed of two and a half dactylic feet, followed by an iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.):

Scribēre | vērsicū-|lōs || āmō-|rē pēr-|cūssūm | grāvī.

The cæsura occurs after the penthemimeris, as in hexameter.

V. *Iambico-dactylic* verse, or *Iambelegus*, consists of an iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.) followed by a dactylic penthemimeris ; the cæsura occurring after the fourth foot :

Tū vī-|nǣ Tōr-|quātō | mōvē || cōnsülē | prēssǣ mē-|ō.

STANZAS.

§ 279. 1. A combination of verses recurring in a certain order is called a *stanza* or *strophe*. A poem containing stanzas of two lines is called *diströphon* ; of three lines, *triströphon* ; of four lines, *tetraströphon*.

2. A poem consisting of only one kind of metre is called *monocölon* ; of two kinds, *dicölon* ; of three kinds, *tricölon*.

HORATIAN METRES.

§ 280. In the lyric poems of Horace there are twenty different species of metre, used in nineteen different

combinations, which are arranged below according to the frequency of their use:—

1. Two greater Alcaics (§ 278, I.), one iambic dimeter hypermeter (§ 274, VI.), and one lesser Alcaic (§ 278, II.).
2. Three Sapphics (§ 275, II.) and one Adonic (§ 272, X.).
3. One Glyconic (§ 276, IV.) and one Asclepiadic (§ 276, III.).
4. One iambic trimeter (§ 274, II.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.).
5. Three Asclepiadics (§ 276, III.) and one Glyconic (§ 276, IV.).
6. Two Asclepiadics (§ 276, III.), one Pherecratic (§ 276, V.), and one Glyconic (§ 276, IV.).
7. Asclepiadic (§ 276, III.).
8. One hexameter (§ 272, I.) and one dactylic tetrameter *a posteriore* (§ 272, VI.).
9. Choriambic pentameter (§ 276, I.).
10. One hexameter (§ 272, I.) and one iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.).
11. Iambic trimeter (§ 274, I.).
12. One choriambic dimeter (§ 276, VII.) and one choriambic tetrameter (§ 276, II.).
13. One hexameter (§ 272, I.) and one iambic trimeter (§ 274, I.).
14. One hexameter (§ 272, I.) and one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 272, IX.).
15. One iambic trimeter (§ 274, I.), one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 272, IX.), and one iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.). The last two frequently constitute an Elegiambus (§ 278, IV.).
16. One hexameter (§ 272, I.), one iambic dimeter (§ 274, VI.), and one dactylic trimeter catalectic (§ 272, IX.). The last two frequently constitute an Iambelegus (§ 278, V.).
17. One Archilochian heptameter (§ 278, III.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 274, V.).
18. One iambic dimeter acephalous (§ 274, VI.) and one iambic trimeter catalectic (§ 274, V.).
19. Ionic *a minore* (§ 277, II.).

METRICAL KEY TO THE ODES OF HORACE.

§ 281. The following is an alphabetical list of the first words of the Odes, with the number in the preceding section annexed, where the metre is explained:—

Æli, vetusto.....	No. 1	Intermissa, Venus, diu.....	No. 3
Æquam memento.....	1	Jam jam effîcâci.....	11
Albi, ne doleas.....	5	Jam pauca arâtro.....	1
Altëra jam teritur.....	13	Jam satis terris.....	2
Angustam, amîce.....	1	Jam veris comîtes.....	5
At, O deôrum.....	4	Justum et tenâcem.....	1
Audivëre, Lyce.....	6	Laudâbunt alii.....	8
Bacchum in remôtis.....	1	Lupis et agnis.....	4
Beâtus ille.....	4	Lydia, dic, per omnes.....	12
Cœlo supînas.....	1	Mæcênas atâvis.....	7
Cœlo tonantem.....	1	Malâ solûta.....	4
Cùm tu, Lydia.....	3	Martiis cælebs.....	2
Cur me querêlis.....	1	Mater sæva Cupidînum.....	3
Delicta majôrum.....	1	Mercûri, facunde.....	2
Descende cœlo.....	1	Mercûri, nam te.....	2
Diânam, tenëræ.....	6	Miserârum est.....	19
Diffugëre nives.....	14	Mollis inertia.....	10
Dive, quem proles.....	2	Montium custos.....	2
Divis orte bonis.....	5	Motum ex Metello.....	1
Donârem patëras.....	7	Musis amicus.....	1
Donec gratus eram.....	3	Natis in usum.....	1
Eheu! fugâces.....	1	Ne forte credas.....	1
Est mihi nonum.....	2	Ne sit ancillæ.....	2
Et thure et fidibus.....	3	Nolis longa feræ.....	5
Exëgi monumentum.....	7	Nondum subacta.....	1
Extrênum Tanaim.....	5	Non ebur neque aureum.....	18
Faune, nymphârum.....	2	Non semper imbres.....	1
Festo quid potius die.....	3	Non usitâtâ.....	1
Hercûlis ritu.....	2	Non vides, quanto.....	2
Horrida tempestas.....	16	Nox erat.....	10
Ibis Liburnis.....	4	Nullam, Vare, sacrâ.....	9
Icci, beâtis.....	1	Nullus argento.....	2
Ille et nefasto.....	1	Nunc est bibendum.....	1
Impios parræ.....	2	O crudêlis adhuc.....	9
Inclûsam Danâën.....	5	O diva, gratum.....	1
Intactis opulentior.....	3	O fons Bandusîæ.....	6
Intëger vitæ.....	2	O matre pulchrâ.....	1

O nata mecum.....	No. 1	Quid fles, Asterie.....	No. 6
O navis, refērent.....	6	Quid immerentes.....	4
O sæpe mecum.....	1	Quid obserātis.....	11
O Venus, regīna.....	2	Quid tibi vis.....	8
Odi profānum.....	1	Quis desiderio.....	5
Otium Divos.....	2	Quis multa gracīlis.....	6
Parciūs junctas.....	2	Quo me, Bacche.....	3
Parcus Deōrum.....	1	Quo, quo, scelesti ruītis.....	4
Parentis olim.....	4	Rectiūs vives.....	2
Pastor quum trahēret.....	5	Rogāre longo.....	4
Persīcos odi, puer.....	2	Scribēris Vario.....	5
Petti, nihil me.....	15	Septīmi, Gades.....	2
Phœbe, silvarumque.....	2	Sic te Diva potens.....	3
Phœbus volentem.....	1	Solvitur acris hiems.....	17
Pindārum quisquis.....	2	Te maris et terræ.....	8
Poscīmur: si quid.....	2	Tu ne quæsiēris.....	9
Quæ cura Patrum.....	1	Tyrrhēna regum.....	1
Qualem ministrum.....	1	Ulla si juris.....	2
Quando repostum.....	4	Uxor paupēris Ibŷci.....	3
Quantum distet ab Inācho.....	3	Velox amœnum.....	1
Quem tu, Melpomēne.....	3	Vides, ut altā.....	1
Quem virum aut herōa.....	2	Vile potābis.....	2
Quid bellicōsus.....	1	Vitas hinnuleo.....	6
Quid dedicātum.....	1	Vixi puellis.....	1

APPENDIX X.

FIGURES.

§ 282. *Figures of Etymology.*

1. *Prosthēsis* is prefixing a letter or syllable to a word: as, *gŭ-gĕno*, *gŭ-gno*, for *gĕno*.

2. *Paragōge* is affixing a letter or syllable to a word: as, *āmāriēr* for *āmārī*.

3. *Epenthēsis* is the insertion of a letter or syllable in the middle of a word: as, *cer-n-o* for *cĕr-o*.

4. *Aphærēsis* is cutting off a letter or syllable from the beginning of a word: as, *'st* for *est*.

5. *Apocöpe* is cutting off a letter or syllable from the end of a word : as, *vě* for *věl*.

6. *Syncöpe* is taking away a letter or syllable from the middle of a word : as, *fer-re* for *fer-ě-re*.

7. *Crasis* is the blending of two vowels into one : as, *cōgo* for *cō-āgo*.

8. *Antithēsis* is putting one letter in the place of another : as, *vōlo* for *vělo* ; *olli* for *illi*.

9. *Metathēsis* is changing the order of letters : as, *certus* for *crētus*.

§ 283. *Figures of Syntax.*

1. *Ellipsis* is the omission of one or more words in a sentence. It includes—

(a.) *Asyndeton*, or the omission of copulative conjunctions in animated discourse : as, *copias educit, aciem instruit*.

(b.) *Zeugma*, or the connection of a word with two constructions while it is properly applicable to only one : as, *pollicentur se imperata facturos ; se nunquam contra populum Romanum conjurasse*. (Here the second infinitive proposition depends not on *pollicentur*, but on *dicunt* implied in it.)

(c.) *Syllepsis*, or the agreement of an adjective or verb with one of several different words, to all of which it equally belongs : as, *mens enim, et ratio, et consilium in senibus est. Sociis et rege recepto*.

(d.) *Prölepsis*, or placing the parts after the whole without repeating the verb : as, *consules discedunt, alter ad urbem, alter in Numidiam*.

2. *Pleonasm* is using more words than are necessary. It includes—

(a.) *Polysyndeton*, or redundancy of conjunctions : as, *et pater, et mater, et liberi*.

(b.) *Hendiādys* (one-by-two), or the connection of two words by *et* when one is an attributive of the other : as, *patēris et auro* for *aureis patēris*.

(c.) *Periphrasis*, or a roundabout mode of expression : as, *regina noctis* for *luna*.

3. *Enallāge* is a change of construction, or a departure from the established usage. It includes—

(a.) *Synēsis*, or a referring to the sense rather than the form : as, *plebs clamant ; equitatus qui præmissi erant ; mea ipsius causa*.

(b.) *Anācōluthon*, or beginning a sentence in one way and ending it in another, so that the harmony of its parts is destroyed.

(c.) *Antiptōsis*, or using one case for another : as, *nomen mihi Arcturo est*,—instead of *Arcturus*.

4. *Hyperbāton* is a change in the usual order of words or propositions. It includes—

(a.) *Anastrōphe*, or inversion of the natural order of words : as, *urbem circum*.

(b.) *Hystēron protēron* (hind-part-before), or inverting the natural order of the sense : as, *pater tuus valetne ? vīritne ?*

(c.) *Hypallāge*, or an interchange of constructions : as,

In nova fert animus mutatas dicere formas
Corpora,

instead of *corpora in novas formas mutata*.

(d.) *Tmēsis*, or the separation by intervening words of the parts of a compound : as, *prius advenit quam visus est*.

LATIN-ENGLISH VOCABULARY.

A or AB

A.

ā or āb (prep.), *from, by*; § 120, 2.
 ab-dō, -ērē, abdidī, abditūm, *to run for concealment, to hide.*
 āb-eō, -irē, ābii, ābitūm, *to go away.*
 absens, -entis (absūm), *absent.*
 ab-solvō, -ērē, -solvī, -solutūm, *to free from, clear, absolve, acquit.*
 ab-sūm, -essē, -fui, -fūtūrū, *to be away from, to be absent.* Mīnīmū abfuit, *he lacked very little, was very near.*
 āb-undō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to abound.*
 āb-ūtōr, -ī, -ūsus, *to abuse.*
 āc (cop. conj., § 123, Rem. 3), *and.*
 ac-cēdō, -ērē, -cessi, -cessūm, *to approach.*
 ac-cendō, -ērē, accendī, accensūm (ād and candō), *to set on fire.*
 ac-cidō, -ērē, accidī (ād and cādō), *to happen.*
 ac-cipiō, -ērē, -cēpi, -ceptūm (ād and cāpiō), *to receive.*
 ac-currō, -ērē, -curri, *seldom* -cū-curri, -cursūm (ād and currō), *to run to.*
 ac-cūsō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm (ād and causā), *to bring to trial, accuse, re-proach.*
 ācēr or acris, -is, -ē. (§ 59, Rem. 3), *sharp.*
 ācerbūs, -ā, -ūm, *bitter.*

ADVERSUS

Achaiā, -æ, *Achaia.*

āciēs, -ēī, *edge, point, line of battle.*

acritēr (adv. ācēr), *sharply*; § 119.

ād (prep., § 120, 1), *to, at, towards.*

ad-dō, -ērē, addidī, additūm, *to add.*

ad-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductūm, *to lead to or against, to prompt, excite.*

ādeō (adv.), *so.*

Adherbāl, -ālīs, *a Numidian prince, son of Micipsa and half-brother to Jugurtha.*

ād-hībeō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to bring to, apply, employ.*

ād-hūc (adv.), *as yet.*

ād-ītūs, -ūs, *approach.*

ad-mīrōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to wonder.*

ad-mittō, -ērē, -mīsī, -missūm, *to send forth.* Equō admissō, *with his horse at full speed.*

ad-mōneō, -ērē, -mōnuī, -mōnītūm, *to remind.*

ād-ōlescens, -entīs, *young, a young man.*

ad-spīciō, -ērē, -spexī, -spectūm, *to look at, behold.*

ād-ūlātiō, -ōnīs, *flattery.*

ad-vēniō, -irē, -vēnī, -ventūm, *to arrive.*

ad-ventūs, -ūs, *arrival, approach.*

adversōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to object, oppose.*

ad-versūs, adversūm (prep.), *against.*

ad-vertŏ, -ĕrĕ, -vertĭ, -versŭm, to turn towards. Participle, adversŭs, adversŭm, used as preposition.

ædificiŭm, -ī, building. From

ædificŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to build.

Æduŭs, -ī, an Æduan.

ægĕr, -grā, -grŭm, sick, lame.

Ægimŭrŭm, -ī, Ægimurum.

æquŏr, -ŏrĭs, a level surface, the sea.

From

æquŭs, -ā, -ŭm, level, even, just.

aĕr, -ĭs, air.

æstās, -tātĭs, summer.

æstimŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to value, esteem.

ætās, -tātĭs, age, life.

af-fĕrŏ, -ferrĕ, attŭlĭ, allātŭm, to bring to.

Afrĭcā, -æ, Africa. Hence

Africānŭs, -ā, -ŭm, African: a surname of Scipio on account of his exploits in Africa.

ægĕr, āgrĭ, field, land, territory.

Agĕsĭlaŭs, -ī, Agesilaus, a distinguished Spartan king.

ag-grĕdiŏr, -ī, -gressŭs, to go to, approach, attack.

ægĭlĭs, -ĕ, active.

agmĕn, -ĭnĭs, an army on the march.

agnŭs, -ī, lamb.

āgŏ, -ĕrĕ, ēgĭ, actŭm, to lead, drive; (of time,) to spend.

āgrĭcŏlā, -æ, farmer.

ālā, -æ, wing.

ālācĕr or -crĭs, -ĕ, cheerful; whence ālācĭtās, -tātĭs, eagerness, promptness.

Ālexandĕr, -drĭ, Alexander, king of Macedonia.

ālĭcĕnŭs, -ā, -ŭm, belonging to another, foreign.

ālĭquandŏ, at some time.

ālĭquantŭs, -ā, -ŭm, somewhat great,

considerable; ālĭquantŭm āgrĭ, a considerable piece of ground.

ālĭquĭs, -quā, -quŏd or -quĭd, some, any, some one; § 89.

ālĭtĕr, otherwise.

ālĭŭs, -ā, -ŭd (§ 56, Rem. 1 and 2), another (of many).

Allŏbrox, -brŏg-ĭs, an Allobrogian.

ālŏ, -ĕrĕ, āluĭ, ālĭtŭm and altŭm, to support.

Alpĕs, -iŭm, the Alps.

altĕr, -ā, -ŭm (§ 56), another (of two), second.

altĭtŭdŏ, -ĭnĭs, height, depth.

altŭs, -ā, -ŭm, high, deep.

āmāns, -antĭs, fond; (as noun,) lover.

ambŭlŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, ātŭm, to walk.

āmĕns, -entĭs, mad.

āmĭcĭtiā, -æ, friendship; from

āmĭcŭs, -ī, friend.

ā-mittŏ, -ĕrĕ, -mĭsĭ, -missŭm, to lose.

amĭs, -ĭs (§ 33, Rem. 6, Exc. 2), river.

āmŏ, -ārĕ, -āvī, -ātŭm, to love.

āmŏr, -ŏrĭs, love.

amplectŏr, -ī, -plexŭs, to embrace.

amplŭs, -ā, -ŭm, large, ample; amplĭŭs, more.

ān (interrog. disjunc. conj.), or.

ancillā, -æ, maid-servant.

ancŏrā, -æ, anchor.

Ancŭs Martiŭs, -ī, fourth king of Rome.

angustŭs, -ā, -ŭm, narrow.

ānĭmā, -æ, breath, life.

ānĭmadvertŏ, -ĕrĕ, -vertĭ, -versŭm, to turn the mind to, to perceive.

ānĭmāl, -ālĭs (§ 39), animal.

ānĭmŭs, -ī, mind, soul.

annŭs, -ī, year.

ansĕr, -ĕrĭs, goose.

antĕ (§ 120, 1), before.

anteā, *aforetime, before.*
 antennā, -æ, *sail-yard.*
 antequām (often separated; temp. conj.), *before.*
 Antigōnūs, -ī, *Antigonus.*
 Antiōchīa, -æ, *Antioch, a city of Syria.*
 Antiōchūs, -ī, *Antiochus.*
 anxiūs, -ā, -ūm, *anxious, uneasy.*
 āpēr, -prī, *wild boar.*
 āpēriō, -īrē, āpēruī, āpertūm, *to open.*
 Āpollō, -īnīs, *Apollo*; ab. Apollīnē pētērē, *to inquire of Apollo.*
 appellō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to call.*
 appētens, -entīs, *eager for.*
 ap-prōpinquō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to approach.*
 aptūs, -ā, -ūm, *fit, suitable.*
 āpūd, *with, among*; (of persons,) *at the house of, in the works of.*
 āquā, -æ, *water.*
 āquilā, -æ, *eagle.*
 ārā, -æ, *altar.*
 Ārār or Arārīs, -īs (33, *Rem. 1*), *the Saone, a river of Gaul.*
 ārātrūm, -ī, *plough.*
 arbītrōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to think, suppose.*
 arbōr, -ōrīs (‡ 38, *Exc. 1*), *tree.*
 arcessō, -ērē, -īvī, -ītūm, *to call, bring.*
 Arētūrūs, -ī, *Arcturus.*
 arcūs, -ūs, *bow*; ‡ 48, *Rem. 4.*
 arduūs, -ā, -ūm, *high, difficult.*
 argentūm, -ī, *silver.*
 argūtūs, -ā, -ūm, *sagacious.*
 āriēs, -ētīs, *ram, battering-ram.*
 Āriōvistūs, -ī, *a German king.*
 Āristidēs, -īs, *an Athenian, surnamed the Just, from his integrity.*
 armā, -ōrūm, *arms.*
 armō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to arm.*
 ārō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm. *to plough.*

ar-rīpiō, -ērē, -rīpuī, -reptūm, *to seize, snatch up.*
 ars, art-īs, *skill, art.*
 arx, arc-īs, *citadel.*
 as, assīs, *a pound of copper (about sixteen and two-third cents of our money); in general, a thing of small value.*
 ascendō, -ērē, -cendī, -censūm, *to ascend.*
 āsīnūs, -ī, *ass.*
 aspēr, -ā, -ūm (‡ 55, *Rem. 3*), *rough.*
 aspīciō, -ērē, -spexī, -spectūm, *to behold, see.*
 Āthēnæ, -ārūm, *Athens.*
 Athēniēnsīs, -īs, *Athenian.*
 atquē or āc (cop. conj.), *and* (‡ 123, *Rem. 3*), *as, than* (‡ 123, 10).
 Atrēbās, -ātīs, *an Atrebatian.*
 ātrox, -ōcīs, *savage, cruel, fierce.*
 attingō, -ērē, attigī, attactūm, *to touch.*
 auctōritās, -tātīs, *authority, influence.*
 audactēr (adv.), *boldly.*
 audax, -ācīs, *bold, daring.*
 audeō, -ērē, ausūs, *to dare.*
 audiens (participial adj.), *hearing, attentive*; audiens dictō, *attentive to orders, obedient.*
 audiō, -irē, -īvī, -ītūm, *to hear.*
 augeō, -ērē, auxī, auctūm, *to increase, swell.*
 aureūs, -ā, -ūm, *golden.* From
 aurūm, -ī, *gold.*
 aut, *or*; aut — aut, *either — or.*
 auxiliūm, -ī, *aid, help.*
 āvārītiā, -æ, *covetousness.*
 āvārūs, -ā, -ūm, *greedy, covetous.*
 āvidē (adv.), *eagerly.*
 āvidūs, -ā, -ūm, *desirous, eager.*
 āvīs, -īs, *bird*; ‡ 33, *Rem. 6.*
 āvōcō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to call away, separate.*

B.

Bābŷlōn, -ōnīs, *Babylon*.
 Balbūs, -ī, *Balbus* (stammerer).
 barbārūs, -ā, -ūm, *foreign, barbarous*.
 beātē, *happily*.
 beātūs, -ā, -ūm, *happy*.
 Belgā, -æ, *a Belgian*.
 bellō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to war*.
 bellūm, -ī, *war*.
 bēnē (mēliūs, optīmē), *well*.
 bēnēficiūm, -ī, *benefit*.
 bēnignūs, -ā, -ūm, *kind*.
 bestiā, -æ, *brute, beast*.
 bibō, -ērē, bibī, bibītūm, *to drink*.
 Bibrax, -actīs, *a town in Gaul*.
 bīduūm, -ī, *two days' time*.
 bienniūm, -ī, *two years' time*.
 bipartitō (adv.), *in two divisions*.
 blandūs, -ā, -ūm, *flattering*.
 Bocchūs, -ī, *Bocchus*.
 Bæōtiā, -æ, *Bæotia*.
 Bæōtiī, -ōrūm, *the Bæotians*.
 bōnūs, -ā, -ūm, *good*.
 bōs, bōvīs, *ox or cow*.
 brēvīs, -ē, *short*.
 brēvītēr (adv.), *shortly*.
 Brītanniā, -æ, *Britain*.
 Britannūs, -ā, -ūm, *British*; (as a noun,) *a Briton*.

C.

cādāvēr, -ērīs, *corpse*.
 Cadmūs, -ī, *Cadmus*.
 cādō, -ērē, cēcīdī, cāsūm, *to fall*.
 cæcūs, -ā, -ūm, *blind*.
 cædō, -ērē, cēcīdī, cæsūm, *to cut, kill*.
 Cæsār, -ārīs, *Cæsar*.
 cæspēs, -ītīs, *turf*.
 Caiūs, -ī, *Caius*.
 cālāmītās, -tātīs, *misfortune*.
 calcār, -ārīs, *spur*. From

calx, calc-īs, *heel*.
 campestēr, *level*. From
 campūs, -ī, *plain*.
 cānīs, -īs, *dog*.
 cantō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to sing*.
 cantūs, -ūs, *singing*.
 cāpax, -ācīs, *capable of receiving, roomy, large*.
 cāpiō, -ērē, cēpī, captūm, *to take*.
 cāpītālīs, -ē, *of the head, capital*.
 captīvūs, -ī, *prisoner, captive*.
 Cāpuā, -æ, *Capua*.
 cāpūt, cāpītīs, *head*.
 carcēr, -ērīs, *prison*.
 carmēn, -īnīs, *song, poem*.
 cārō, carnīs, *flesh*.
 carpō, -ērē, carpsī, carptūm, *to pluck*.
 Carthāgīniēnsīs, -īs, *Carthaginian*.
 Carthāgō, -īnīs, *Carthage*.
 cārūs, -ā, -ūm, *dear*.
 Cassiūs, -ī, *Cassius*.
 castellūm, -ī, *tower, fort*.
 Castīcūs, -ī, *Casticus*.
 castīgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to chastise*.
 castrā, -ōrūm, *camp*.
 cāsūs, -ūs, *a falling, chance*.
 cātēnā, -æ, *chain, fetter*.
 Cātīlinā, -æ, *Catiline*.
 cātīnūs or -ūm, -ī, *bowl, dish*.
 Cātō, -ōnīs, *Cato*.
 causā, -æ, *reason, cause*; abl., *for the sake of*' (always placed after the limiting word).
 cāveō, -ērē, cāvī, cautūm, *to beware*.
 Cēcrops, Cēcōrōpīs, *Cecrops*.
 cēdō, -ērē, cessī, cessūm, *to yield*.
 cēlēr or -īs, -ē, *swift*. Hence
 cēlērītās, -tātīs, *swiftness*.
 cēlērītēr (adv.), *swiftly*.
 cēlō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to conceal*.
 censeō, -ērē, censuī, censūm, *to be of opinion, to think*.

censör, -öris, *ensor, a Roman magistrate.*

centüm, *hundred ; § 63.*

centuriö, -önis, *centurion, captain of a hundred men.*

Cērēs, Cērēris, *Ceres.*

cernö, -ērē, crēvī, crētüm, *to perceive, see.*

certāmēn, -īnis, *contest, strife.*

certūs, -ā, -ūm, *certain.*

cervūs, -ī, *stag.*

cētērā, -ūm (nom. sing. masc. not used), *the rest (of a thing).*

chartā, -æ, *paper.*

cībūs, -ī, *food.*

Cicērö, -önis, *Cicero.*

Cimōn, -önis, *Cimon.*

Cingētōrix, -īgīs, *Cingetorix.*

cingö, -ērē, cinxī, cinetüm, *to gird.*

cīnis, -ērīs, *ashes.*

circitēr, *about.*

circüm, *around.*

circum-dö, -därē, -dēdī, -dätüm, *to put around, to surround.*

circum-fundö, -ērē, -fūdī, -fūsüm, *to pour around, to surround.*

circum-vēniö, -irē, -vēnī, -ventüm, *to surround.*

cīs, cītrā, *on this side of.*

cīvilīs, *of citizens, civil.*

cīvis, -īs, *citizen.*

cīvitās, -tātīs, *state.*

clāmitö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to cry out violently.*

clāmö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to shout.*

clāmör, -örīs, *shouting.*

clārūs, -ā, -ūm, *famous, renowned.*

classīs, -īs, *fleet.*

Claudiūs, -ī, *Claudius.*

claudö, -ērē, clausī, clausüm, *to shut.*

clāvīs, -īs, *key.*

clēmentīā, -æ, *mildness.*

cliens, -entīs, *client, dependant.*

Clōdiūs, -ī, *Clodius.*

coelüm, -ī, *heaven.*

cænö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to dine, sup.*

cœpī (§ 113, Rem. I), *I begin.*

cögītö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to think, reflect.*

cognōmēn, -īnis, *surname.*

cognoscö, -ērē, -nōvī, cognītüm, *to find out, learn.*

cögö, -ērē, coēgī, coactüm, *to collect, bring together, compel.*

cöhors, -hortīs, *cohort.*

cöhortör, -ārī, -ätüs, *to encourage.*

collēgā, -æ, *colleague.*

collīgö, -ērē, -lēgī, -lectüm, *to assemble, gather, collect.*

collīs, -īs, *hill.*

collöcö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to put, station, place, set up.*

collöquiüm, *conversation, conference.*

collöquör, -löcütüs, *to converse.*

cölö, -ērē, cöluī, cultüm, *to cultivate ; (of the gods,) to worship.*

cölör, -örīs, *color.*

cölobā, -æ, *dove.*

cöm-ēdö, -önis, *glutton.*

cöm-ēs, -ītīs, *companion.*

cömītiüm, -ī, *a place of assembling ; pl. elections.*

commēmörö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to relate.*

com-meö, -ärē, -āvī, -ätüm, *to come and go.*

com-missüm, -ī (part. of com-mittö), *a thing done, crime.*

com-mittö, -ērē, -mīsī, -missüm, *to bring or send together, to commence (battle), to commit.*

Commīūs, -ī, *Commius.*

commödüm, -ī, *convenience.*

com-möveö, -ērē, -mōvī, -mötüm, *to move, disturb, disquiet.*

commūnicātiö, -önis, *communication.*

- commūniō, -irē, -ivī, -itūm, *to fortify.*
 commūnis, -ē, *common.*
 commūtātiō, -ōnis, *change.*
 compārō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to bring together, acquire.*
 com-pellō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to call, address.*
 com-pellō, -ērē, -pūli, -pulsūm, *to drive together.*
 com-pēriō, -irē, -pērī, -pertūm, *to find out, ascertain.*
 com-plectōr, -ī, -plexūs, *to embrace.*
 compleō, -ērē, -plēvī, -plētūm, *to fill.*
 com-plūrēs, -iūm (2 72, 5), *a great many.*
 com-pōs, -ōtis, *having control of.*
 comprēhendō, -ērē, -prēhendī, -prēhensūm, *to catch hold of.*
 compulsūs, -ā, -ūm (*part. compellō*).
 cōnātūs, -ūs, *attempt.*
 con-cāvūs, -ā, -ūm, *hollow; mănūs concāvā, the hollow of the hand.*
 con-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, *to yield.*
 con-ciliūm, -ī, *council.*
 con-citō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to rouse, excite, urge on, raise.*
 con-cordiā, -ae, *agreement, concord.*
 con-currō, -ērē, -currī, -cursūm, *to run together.*
 con-cursūs, -ūs, *running together.*
 con-cūtiō, -ērē, -cussī, -cussūm, *to shake violently.*
 con-demnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to condemn.*
 con-dō, -ērē, -dīdī, -dītūm, *to found, build.*
 condōnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to present, give away.*
 con-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductūm, *to bring or lead together.*
 con-fērō, -ferrē, contūli, collātūm, *to bring together, compare.*
 con-fīciō, -ērē, -fēcī, -fectūm, *to finish.*
 con-fidō, -ērē, -fisūs, *to trust.*
 con-firmō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to assert, establish.*
 con-fiteōr, -ērī, -fessūs, *to confess.*
 con-grēdiōr, -ī, -gressūs, *to meet with (in a friendly or hostile sense).*
 con-jiciō, -ērē, -jēcī, -jectūm, *to throw, hurl.*
 con-junctiō, -ōnis, *union, friendship, intimacy.*
 con-jungō, -ērē, -junxī, -junctūm, *to unite.*
 con-jūrātiō, -ōnis, *conspiracy.*
 con-jūrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to swear together, conspire.*
 con-jux, -jūgis, *husband or wife.*
 cōnōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to attempt.*
 consciūs, -ā, -ūm, *conscious.*
 con-seribō, -ērē, -scripsī, -scriptūm, *to levy, enroll.*
 con-sectōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to pursue eagerly and overtake.*
 con-sēquōr, -ī, -sēcūtūs, *to pursue, attain.*
 con-servō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to preserve, save.*
 Considiūs, -ī, *Considius.*
 con-stidō, -ērē, -sēdī, -sessūm, *to encamp, settle.*
 con-siliūm, -ī, *counsel, advice.*
 con-spergō, -ērē, -spersī, -spersūm, *to sprinkle.*
 con-stantēr, *firmly, persistently.*
 con-stāt, constābāt, constitit, *it is evident.*
 con-stituō, -ērē, -stitui, -stitūtūm, *to determine, put, fix.*

con-suescō, -ērē, -suēvī, -suētūm, *to accustom.*

con-suētūdō, -īnīs, *custom.*

consūl, -īs, *consul.*

consulō, -ērē, -sūluī, -sultūm, *to counsel, reflect, consult.*

consultūm, -ī (part.), *a thing reflected on; abl., on purpose.*

con-sūmō, -ērē, -sumpsī, -sumptūm, *to consume.*

con-temnō, -ērē, -temp̄sī, -temptūm, *to despise.*

con-tendō, -ērē, -tendī, -tentūm, *to strive, contend, hasten.*

con-tīncens, -entīs (part. pres.), *holding together, continent.*

con-tīnentēr (adv.), *continually.*

con-tīnēō, -ērē, -tīnuī, -tētūm, *to hold on all sides, keep in.*

contrā, *against.*

con-trāhō, -ērē, -traxī, -tractūm, *to draw together.*

contūmēliā, -æ, *insult.*

con-vēniō, -irē, -vēnī, -ventūm, *to come together, assemble.*

con-vocō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to call together.*

cōpiā, -æ, *abundance; pl., forces.*

cōquō, -ērē, coxī, coctūm, *to cook.*

cōr, cordis, *heart.*

Cōrīnthūs, -ī, *Corinth.*

cornīgēr, -ā, -ūm, *horned.*

cornū, -ūs, *horn.*

cōrōnā, -æ, *crown.*

corpūs, -ōris, *body.*

cor-rīgō, -ērē, -rexī, -rectūm, *to set straight, correct.*

cor-rumpō, -ērē, -rūpī, -ruptūm, *to destroy, to corrupt.*

crās (adv.), *to-morrow.*

Crassūs, -ī, *Crassus.*

crēbēr, -ā, -ūm, *frequent.*

crebrō (adv.), *frequently.*

crēdō, -ērē, -dīdī, -dītūm, *to believe.*

crēmō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to burn.*

creō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to create, make.*

crescō, -ērē, crēvī, crētūm, *to grow.*

crīnīs, -īs, *hair.*

crūciātūs, -ūs, *torture.*

crūdēlis, -ē, *crudel.*

crūdēlitās, -tātīs, *cruelty.*

cūbicūlūm, -ī, *bedchamber.*

cūbilē, -īs, *couch.*

cujūs, -ā, -ūm, *whose* (§ 88).

culpā, -æ, *fault.*

cultēr, -ī, *knife.*

cūm, *with.*

cūpīditās, -tātīs, *longing, lust.*

cūpīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *desirous, eager.*

cūpiō, -ērē, -īvī, -ītūm, *to desire.*

cūr, *why.*

cūrā, -æ, *care.*

cūrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to care for, attend to.*

currō, -ērē, cūcurrī, cursūm, *to run.*

currūs, -ūs, *chariot.*

cursūs, -ūs, *running, course.*

custōs, -ōdis, *keeper, guardian, sentinel.*

D.

damnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to condemn.*

Dāvūs, -ī, *Davus.*

dē (prep. with abl.), *down from, concerning, of.*

deā, -æ (§ 18, Rem. 5), *goddess.*

dēbeō, -ērē, dēbui, dēbitūm, *to owe, ought.*

dē-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, *to depart.*

dēcēm, *ten; § 63.*

dēcēt, dēcēbāt, dēcuit (§ 114), *it becomes, it is right.*

dēcīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *tenth.*

de-clīvīs, -ē, *sloping downward.*

dēcōrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to adorn.*
 dēcōrūs, -ā, -ūm, *becoming.*
 dēcūs, -ōrīs, *honor, dignity.*
 dē-dēcūs, -ōrīs, *disgrace.*
 dē-dītiō, -ōnīs, *surrender.*
 dē-dō, -ērē, dēdidī, dēdītūm, *to surrender.*
 dē-fendō, -ērē, -fendī, -fensūm, *to defend.*
 dē-fensō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to defend diligently.*
 dē-fērō, -ferrē, -tūlī, -lātūm, *to bring or carry (from one place or person to another), to report, to tell.*
 dē-fervescō, -ērē, -fervī and -ferbuī, *to boil down, subside.*
 dēfessūs, -ā, -ūm, *weary.*
 de-flagrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to burn down.*
 de-fluō, -ērē, -fluxī, -fluxūm, *to flow down or away.*
 de-jiciō, -ērē, -jēcī, -jectūm, *to throw down.*
 dēlectō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to delight.*
 dēleō, -ērē, -ēvī, -ētūm, *to destroy.*
 dē-libērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to de-liberate.*
 dē-lictūm, -ī, *fault, crime.*
 dē-līgō, -ērē, -lēgī, -lectūm, *to choose.*
 Delphī, -ōrūm, *Delphi, a town of Greece.*
 Dēmārātūs, -ī, *Demaratus.*
 dēmentīā, -æ, *madness.*
 dē-monstrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to show.*
 Dēmōsthēnēs, -īs, *Demosthenes.*
 dēnī, *ten at a time ; § 63.*
 dens, dentīs, *tooth.*
 densūs, -ā, -ūm, *thick, dense.*
 dēnuntiō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to denounce, threaten.*
 deorsūm (adv.), *down-hill.*
 dē-pōnō, -ērē, -pōsuī, -ītūm, *to lay aside.*

dē-sīliō, -īrē, -sīluī, -sultūm, *to leap down.*
 dē-sistō, -ērē, destitī, destitūm, *to cease.*
 de-spērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to despair.*
 destīnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to fasten.*
 de-stituō, -ērē, -stītui, -stītūtūm, *to desert.*
 de-stringō, -ērē, -strinxī, -strictūm, *to draw.*
 dē-sūpēr (adv.), *from above.*
 dē-terreō, -ērē, -terrui, -territūm, *to scare off, deter.*
 deūs, -ī (§ 24, Rem. 3), *a god.*
 dē-vēniō, -īrē, -vēnī, -ventūm, *to come down.*
 dē-vōrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to gulp down.*
 dextēr, -tērā, -tērūm or -trā, -trūm, *on the right, right.*
 Diānā, -æ, *Diana.*
 dicō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dedicate.*
 dicō, -ērē, dixī, dictūm, *to say.*
 dictātōr, -ōrīs, *dictator.*
 dictūm, -ī, *word.*
 diēs, -ēī, *day.*
 dif-fērō, -ferrē, dis-tūlī, dī-lātūm, *to put off, defer.*
 dif-fīcīlīs, -ē, *difficult.*
 dif-fidō, -ērē, -fīsūs, *to distrust.*
 dignūs, -ā, -ūm, *worthy.*
 dī-lābōr, -ī, -lapsūs, *to fall to pieces.*
 diligentiā, -æ, *diligence.*
 dī-līgō, -ērē, -lexī, -lectūm, *to love.*
 dī-mīdiūm, -ī, *half.*
 dī-mittō, -ērē, -mīsī, -missūm, *to send out.*
 Diōnysius, -ī, *Dionysius.*
 dī-rīpiō, -ērē, -rīpuī, -reptūm, *to tear asunder, plunder, pillage.*

dis-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, *to depart.*

discipūlus, -ī, *pupil, learner.*

diseō, -ērē, dīdīcī, *to learn.*

dis-cordiā, -æ, *disagreement.*

dis-plīceō, -ērē, -plīcuī, -plīcītūm, *to displease.*

dis-pōnō, -ērē, -pōsuī, -pōsītūm, *to arrange.*

dis-pūtō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to discuss, dispute.*

dis-sentiō, -īrē, -sensī, -sensūm, *to differ in opinion, dissent.*

dis-sīmīlis, -ē, *unlike.*

diū, -ūtīus, -ūtīssīmē (adv.), *long.*

diūturnūs, -ā, -ūm, *lasting.*

divēs, -ītīs, *rich.*

divīdō, -ērē, -vīsī, -vīsūm, *to divide.*

divīnūs, -ā, -ūm, *divine.*

Divītiācūs, -ī, *an Æduan chief.*

divītiæ, -ārūm, *riches.*

dō, dārē, dēdī, dātūm, *to give.*

dōceō, -ērē, dōcuī, doctūm, *to teach.*

doctrīnā, -æ, *teaching, doctrine.*

doctūs, -ā, -ūm, *learned.*

dolceō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to grieve.*

dōlōr, -ōrīs, *pain, grief.*

dōmīnā, -æ, *mistress.*

dōmīnūs, -ī, *master.*

dōmō, -ārē, -uī, -ītūm, *to tame.*

dōmūs (‡ 48, Rem. 5), *house.*

dōnēc, *until (temp. conj.).*

dōnūm, -ī, *gift.*

dormiō, -īrē, -ivī, -ītūm, *to sleep.*

dormitō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to fall asleep.*

Druidēs, -ūm, *the Druids.*

dūbitātiō, -ōnīs, *doubt.*

dūbitō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to doubt.*

dūbiūs, -ā, -ūm, *doubtful.*

dūcentī, -æ, -ā (‡ 63), *two hundred.*

dūcō, -ērē, duxī, ductūm, *to lead, decm, consider, regard.*

dulcīs, -ē, *sweet.*

dūm, *while, as long as, until.*

Dumnōrix, -īgīs, *brother of Divitia-eus.*

duō, -æ, -ō, *two.*

dūplex, -īcīs, *double.*

dūplīcō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to double.*

dūrūs, -ā, -ūm, *hard.*

dux, dūcīs, *leader.*

Dyōnyūs, -ī, *Dyonysius.*

E.

Ē or ex, *out of, from, in consequence of, after.*

ē-dicō, -ērē, -dixī, -dictūm, *to issue an edict.*

ēdō, -ērē, ēdī, ēsūm (‡ 111), *to eat.*

ē-dōceō, -ērē, -dōcuī, -doctūm, *to teach thoroughly, educate.*

ē-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductūm, *to lead out.*

effīgīēs, -ēī, *image, likeness.*

ēgens, -entīs, *needy.*

ēgeō, -ērē, ēguī, *to need.*

ēgestās, -tātīs, *poverty.*

ēgō (‡ 78), *I.*

e-grēdiōr, -ī, egressūs, *to go out.*

egrēgiūs, -ā, -ūm, *remarkable.*

e-jīciō, -ērē, -jēcī, -jectūm, *to cast out.*

ēlēgans, -antīs, *luxurious, elegant.*

ēlōquens, -entīs, *eloquent.*

ēlōquentiā, -æ, *eloquence.*

ēmō, -ērē, ēmī, emptūm, *to buy.*

ēmōlūmentūm, -ī, *advantage.*

eō, irē, ivī, itūm, *to go.*

Ēpamīnondās, -æ (App. I.), *the great Theban general.*

Ēphēsīūs, -ā, -ūm, *Ephesian.*

Ēphēsūs, -ī, *a city of Asia Minor.*

ēpistōlā, -æ, *letter, epistle.*

ēquēs, -ītis, *horseman*.

ēquestēr or -trīs, -č, *of a horse*.

ēquitātūs, -ūs, *cavalry*.

ēquitō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to be a horseman, to ride on horseback*.

ēquūs, -ī, *horse*.

ergā (prep. with acc.), *towards*.

ē-rīpiō, -ērē, -rīpuī, -reptūm, *to rescue*.

errō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to err*.

errōr, -ōrīs, *error*.

ēsūriens, -entīs, *hungry*.

ēt, *and*; ēt — ēt, *both — and*.

ētiām, *also*.

Ētrūrīā, -æ, *Etruria*.

ex (prep. with abl.), *out of*.

ex-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, *to retire*.

exemplūm, -ī, *example*.

ex-eō, -īrē, exīī, exitūm, *to go out*.

exerceō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to exercise*.

exercītūs, -ūs, *army*.

exīgō, -ērē, -ēgī, -actūm, *to demand*.

exīguūs, -ā, -ūm, *slight, small*.

existimō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to judge, think*.

exitūm, -ī, *destruction*.

ex-pellō, -ērē, -pūlī, -pulsūm, *to drive out*.

expers, -pertīs, *destitute*.

expleō, -ērē, -plēvī, -plētūm, *to fill out, satisfy*.

ex-plōrātōr, -ōrīs, *scout*.

ex-plōrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to search out*.

ex-pōnō, -ērē, -pōsuī, -pōsitūm, *to explain*.

ex-pugnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to storm*.

ex-sistō, -ērē, exstītī, exstītūm, *to stand out*.

ex-spectō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to await, look for*.

ex-ūrō, -ērē, -ussī, -ustūm, *to burn up*.

F.

fāciēs, -ēī, *form, face*.

fācilē, *easily*. From

fācilīs, -č, *easy*.

fācīnūs, -ōrīs, *deed, crime*. From

fāciō, -ērē, fēcī, factūm, *to do, make, esteem, value*.

fācultās, -tātīs, *means, power*.

fallō, -ērē, fēfellī, falsūm, *to deceive*.

fāmā, -æ, *fame, reputation*.

fāmēs, -īs, *hunger, famine*.

fāmīliā, -æ, *family*.

fāmīliārīs, -č, *pertaining to the family*; res fam., *property*.

fāteōr, -ērī, fassūs, *to confess*.

fātīgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to weary*.

fāveō, -ērē, fāvī, fautūm, *to favor*.

febrīs, -īs, *fever*.

fēmīnā, -æ, *woman*.

fēmūr, -ōrīs and -īnīs, *thigh*.

fērax, -ācīs, *fertile*.

fērē (adv.), *almost*.

fērō, ferrē, tūlī, lātūm, *to bear, carry, acquire*.

fērox, -ōcīs, *fierce*.

ferreūs, -ā, -ūm, *made of iron*.

ferrūm, -ī, *iron*.

fērūs, -ā, -ūm, *wild, savage*.

fessūs, -ā, -ūm, *wearied*.

festīnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hasten*.

fietīlīs, -č, *earthen*.

fīdēs, -ēī, *faith, promise*.

fīdēs, -iūm, *strings, a lute, lyre*.

fīdō, -ērē, fīsūs, *to trust*.

fīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *faithful*.

fīgō, -ērē, fīxī, fīxūm, *to fix, fasten*.

fīgūrā, -æ, *figure, shape*.

filiā, -æ, *daughter*.

filiūs, -ī, *son*.

fīngō, -ērē, fīnxī, fietūm, *to make, feign*.

fīnīs, -īs, *end, limit, boundary*.

finītīmūs, -ă, -ūm, *neighboring*.
 fiō, fiērī, factūs, *to become, to be made*.
 firmūs, -ă, -ūm, *strong, firm*.
 flāgītō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to demand (earnestly)*.
 flātūs, -ūs, *blast*.
 flectō, -ērē, flexī, flexūm, *to bend*.
 fleō, flērē, flēvī, flētūm, *to weep*.
 flētūs, -ūs, *weeping*.
 floccūs, *a lock of wool (any thing of small value)*.
 flōs, flōrīs, *flower*.
 fluctūs, -ūs, *wave*.
 flūmēn, -inīs, *river*.
 fluō, -ērē, fluxī, fluxūm, *to flow*.
 foedūs, -ērīs, *league, treaty*.
 fōliūm, -ī, *leaf*.
 fons, fontīs, *fountain*.
 formă, -æ, *form, shape*.
 formidō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dread*.
 forsītān (adv.), *perhaps*.
 fortīs, -ē, *brave*.
 fortītēr (adv.), *bravely*.
 fortītūdō, -inīs, *fortitude, firmness*.
 fortună, -æ, *fortune*.
 fortunātūs, -ă, -ūm, *fortunate*.
 fossă, -æ, *ditch*.
 frātēr, -trīs, *brother*.
 frātrīcidă, -æ, *fratricide*.
 fraus, fraudīs, *deceit*.
 frēmō, -ērē, frēmuī, frēmītūm, *to murmur, rage*.
 frēnūm, -ī, pl. -ī and -ă, *bit, bridle*.
 frētūs, -ă, -ūm, *trusting*.
 frons, frontīs, *forehead*.
 fructūs, -ūs, *fruit*.
 frūmentāriūs, -ă, -ūm, *of corn*.
 frūmentōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to forage*.
 frūmentūm, -ī, *corn, grain*.
 fruōr, -ī, fructūs, fruītūs, *to enjoy*.
 frustră (adv.), *in vain*.
 fūgă, -æ, *flight*.

fūgiō, -ērē, fūgī, fūgītūm, *to flee*.
 fūgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to put to flight, rout*.
 fulgūrātiō, -ōnīs, *lightning*.
 fundītōr, -ōrīs, *slinger*.
 fungōr, -ī, functūs, *to perform*.
 fūr, fūrīs, *thief*.
 furfūr, -ūrīs, *bran*.
 fūrōr, -ōrīs, *rage, fury*.
 fūtūrūs, -ă, -ūm, *about to be*.

G.

Galbă, -æ, *Galba*.
 Galliă, -æ, *Gaul*.
 Gallicūs, -ă, -ūm, *Gallic*.
 gallină, -æ, *hen*.
 Gallūs, -ī, *a Gaul*.
 gaudeō, -ērē, gāvīsūs, *to rejoice*.
 gēnēr, -ī, *son-in-law*.
 gēnērātīm (adv.), *by tribes*.
 gens, gentīs, *race, family*.
 gēnūs, -ērīs, *kind, race*.
 Germāniă, -æ, *Germany*.
 Germānūs, -ī, *a German*.
 gērō, -ērē, gessī, gestūm, *to wage, carry on*.
 glādiūs, -ī, *sword*.
 glans, glandīs, *acorn*.
 Glaucūs, -ī, *Glaucus*.
 glōriă, -æ, *glory*.
 Græciă, -æ, *Greece*.
 Græcūs, -ī, *a Greek*.
 grammătică, -æ, *grammar*.
 grātūs, -ă, -ūm, *acceptable, pleasant*.
 grāvīs, -ē, *heavy, severe*.
 grāvītēr, *heavily, severely*.
 grēgātīm, *in flocks, herds*.
 grex, grēgis, *flock, herd*.

H.

hăbeō, -ērē, hăbuī, hăbītūm, *to have, hold*.
 hăbītō, *to have frequently, dwell*.

hædūs, -ī, *kid*.
 hæreð, -ērē, hæsi, hæsum, *to stick*.
 Hannibāl, -ālīs, *Hannibal*.
 Hārūdēs, -ūm, *Harudians*.
 hastā, -æ, *spear*.
 haud, *not*.
 Hēlōtēs, -ūm, *Helots*.
 Helvētiūs, -ī, *a Helvetian*.
 Hercūlē, -īs, *Hercules*.
 Hermīniūs, -ī, *Herminius*.
 hērūs, -ī, *master*.
 hibernā (castrā), *winter quarters*.
 Hiberniā, -æ, *Ireland*.
 hīc, hæc, hōc, *this*.
 hiēmō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to winter*.
 hiems, -īs, *winter*.
 hōdiē, *to-day*.
 Hōmērūs, -ī, *Homer*.
 hōmō, -īnīs, *man*.
 hōnestē, *honorably*.
 hōnestūs, *honorable*.
 hōnōr, -ōrīs, *honor*.
 hōrā, -æ, *hour*.
 horreūm, -ī, *granary*.
 hortōr, -ārī, -atūs, *to encourage*.
 hortūs, -ī, *garden*.
 hospēs, -ītīs, *guest*.
 hostilīs, -ē, *of an enemy, hostile*.
 hostīs, -īs, *enemy*.
 hūmānitās, -tātīs, *refinement*.
 hūmānūs, -ā, -ūm, *human*.
 hūmērūs, -ī, *shoulder*.
 hūmilīs, -ē, *low*.
 hūmūs, -ī, *ground*.

I.

ībī, *there*.
 idēm, eādēm, īdēm, *same*.
 idōneūs, -ā, -ūm, *fit, suitable*.
 ignārūs, -ā, -ūm, *ignorant*.
 ignīs, -īs, *fire*.
 ignoscō, -ērē, -nōvī, -nōtūm, *to forgive*.

ignōtūs, -ā, -ūm, *unknown*.
 illē, -ā, -ūd, *that, the former, he*.
 illiciō, -ērē, -lexī, -lectūm, *to decoy*.
 imbēr, -brīs, *rain, shower*.
 īmītōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to imitate*.
 immānīs, -ē, *immense, huge*.
 immēmōr, -ōrīs, *unmindful*.
 immortalīs, -īs, -ē, *immortal*.
 immortalitās, -tātīs, *immortality*.
 impātiens, -entīs, *not able or willing to bear, impatient*.
 impēdimentūm, -ī, *hindrance*.
 impēdiō, -īrē, -īvī, -ītūm, *to hinder*.
 impellō, -ērē, -pūlī, -pulsūm, *to drive on*.
 impērātōr, -ōrīs, *general, emperor*.
 impērātūm, -ī, *order*.
 impērītūs, -ā, -ūm, *ignorant, unskilled*.
 impēriūm, -ī, *command, government*.
 impērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to order*.
 impētrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to obtain*.
 impētūs, -ūs, *attack*.
 impiētās, -tātīs, *undutifulness*.
 impīgēr, -ā, -ūm, *active*.
 impleō, -ērē, -plēvī, -plētūm, *to fill*.
 impōnō, -ērē, pōsui, -pōsītūm, *to put upon*.
 importō, -āre, -āvī, -ātūm, *to bring in, import*.
 impōtens, -entīs, *unable to restrain*.
 imprōbūs, -ā, -ūm, *wicked*.
 imprūdēns, -entīs, *imprudent*.
 imūs, -ā, -ūm. *See infērūs*.
 īn (with acc.), *into, upon*; (with abl.), *in, among*.
 incendiūm, *a burning, conflagration*.
 incendō, -ērē, -cendī, -censūm, *to set on fire, to burn up*.
 incertūs, -ā, -ūm, *uncertain*.
 incīdō, -ērē, incīdī, -cāsūm, *to happen*.
 incīpiō, -ērē, -cēpī, -ceptūm, *to begin*.

incitō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, *to set in motion, arouse, excite.*

incōlā, -æ, *inhabitant.*

incōlō, -ērē, -cōluī, *to inhabit, dwell, live.*

incōlūmīs, -ē, *unhurt, safe.*

incondītūs, -ā, -ūm, *rude, uncouth.*

incrēdibilīs, -ē, *incredible.*

incūsō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, *to blame, censure, find fault with, accuse.*

indignūs, -ā, -ūm, *unworthy.*

in-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, ductum, *to lead on.*

indulgeō, -ērē, -dulsī, -dultum, *to indulge.*

infans, -antīs, *infant.*

infēlix, -icīs, *unfruitful, unhappy.*

infērō, -ferrē, intūlī, illātum, *to bring upon, wage upon, inflict.*

infērūs, -ā, -ūm, *low ; § 72, 4.*

infinītūs, -ā, -ūm, *boundless.*

infirmūs, -ā, -ūm, *weak.*

in-fluō, -ērē, -fluxī, -fluxum, *to flow into.*

infrēnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, *to bridle.*

ingēniūm, -ī, *intellect, natural disposition.*

ingens, -entīs, *huge.*

ingrātūs, -ā, -ūm, *disagreeable, ungrateful.*

īnīmicitīā, -æ, *enmity.*

īnīmīcūs, -ī, *enemy.*

īnīquūs, -ā, -ūm, *unjust.*

īnitīūm, -ī, *beginning.*

injūriā, -æ, *injury.*

in-nascōr, -ī, -nātūs, *to spring up.*

innōcens, -entīs, *innocent.*

innōcentīā, -æ, *innocence, purity.*

īnōpiā, -æ, *want, scarcity.*

inquām (§ 113), *I say (used only after one or more words of a quotation).*

insīdiæ, -ārūm, *ambush, snares.*

in-sīliō, -īrē, -sīliī and -sīluī, *to leap upon.*

instīgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, *to stir up.*

in-stītuō, -ērē, -stītui, -stītūtum, *to arrange, instruct.*

in-struō, -ērē, -struxī, -structum, *to set in order, draw up, build.*

in-suētūs, -ā, -ūm, *unaccustomed.*

insulā, -æ, *island.*

intēgēr, -grā, -grūm, *sound, unhurt.*

intēgrātīō, -ōnīs, *renewal.*

intelligō, -ērē, -lexī, -lectum, *to understand.*

intēr, *between, among, in the midst of ; intēr sē, with or against one another ; intēr spōliandūm, in the act of despoiling.*

inter-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessum, *to come between, intervene.*

inter-dīcō, -ērē, -dixī, -dictum, *to forbid.*

interdūm, *sometimes.*

intēreō, -īrē, intēriī, intērītum, *to die, perish.*

intērest. *See intersum.*

interficiō, -ērē, -fēcī, -fectum, *to kill.*

inter-rōgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātum, *to ask.*

intersum, -essē, -fuī, *to be of importance, to be between ; nihil intērest, it makes no difference.*

intērūs, -ā, -ūm, *inward.*

intrōdūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductum, *to introduce.*

in-ūtīlīs, -ē, *useless.*

in-vādō, -ērē, -vāsī, -vāsūm, *to attack, invade.*

in-vēniō, -īrē, -vēnī, -ventum, *to come upon, find, invent.*

in-ventōr, -ōrīs, *inventor.*

in-vestigō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to search out.*

in-victūs, -ā, -ūm, *invincible.*

invidiā, -æ, *envy.*

invitō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to invite.*

invītūs, -ā, -ūm, *unwilling.*

ipsē, -ā, -ūm, *self.*

irā, -æ, *anger.*

irācundiā, -æ, *hasty temper.*

irascōr, -ī, *to be angry.*

irātūs, -ā, -ūm, *angry.*

is, eā, id, *this, that ; § 82.*

istē, -ā, -ūd, *that (of yours).*

itā, *thus, so.*

Itāliā, -æ, *Italy.*

Itālicī, *the Italians.*

Itālicūs, -ā, -ūm, *Italian.*

itāquē, *and so, therefore.*

itēm, *likewise.*

itēr, itīnērīs, *journey, march, way.*

J.

jāciō, -ērē, jēcī, jactūm, *to throw.*

jactō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to throw about, discuss.*

jām, *now, already.*

jēcūr (§ 45), *the liver.*

jūbār, -ārīs, *sunshine.*

jūbeō, -ērē, jussī, jussūm, *to order.*

jūcundūs, -ā, -ūm, *delightful.*

jūdex, -icīs, *judge.*

jūdicō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to judge.*

jūgūm, -ī, *a yoke. Two spears set upright, with a third laid across the top, were called jūgūm.*

Jūgurthā, -æ, *king of Numidia.*

jūmentūm, -ī, *beast of burden, work-horse or ox.*

Jūpītēr, Jōvīs, *Jupiter.*

Jūrā, -æ, *Jura, a mountain.*

jūs, jūrīs, *law, right (usually unwritten law, as opposed to lex, statute law).*

jusjūrandūm (§ 45), *oath.*

justūs, -ā, -ūm, *just.*

jūvāt, -ābāt, jūvīt, *it pleases.*

jūvenīs, -īs, *young man.*

jūventūs, -tūtīs, *youth.*

jūvō, -ārē, jūvī, jūtūm, jūvātūrūs, *to help, please.*

L.

Lābiēnūs, -ī, *a lieutenant of Cæsar.*

lābōr, -ōrīs, *labor.*

lāc, lactīs, *milk.*

Lācēdæmōn, -ōnīs, *Sparta.*

lācessō, -ērē, -īvī, -ītūm, *to provoke ; injūriā lācessērē, to injure.*

lacrimā, -æ, *tear.*

lācūs, -ūs, *lake.*

lætūs, -ā, -ūm, *joyful.*

lāniō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to tear to pieces.*

lāpīs, -īdīs, *stone.*

largiōr, -īrī, -ītūs, *to bribe.*

lāteō, -ērē, lātuī, *to lie hid.*

lātītūdō, -īnīs, *breadth.*

latrō, -ōnīs, *robber.*

lātūs, -ā, -ūm, *wide, broad.*

lātūs, -ērīs, *side, flank.*

laudō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to praise.*

laus, laudīs, *praise, glory.*

lāvō, -ārē, lāvī, lōtūm, lautūm, lāvātūm, *to bathe.*

lēgātiō, -ōnīs, *embassy.*

lēgātūs, -ī, *ambassador, lieutenant.*

lēgiō, -ōnīs, *legion.*

lēgō, -ērē, lēgī, lectūm, *to read.*

Lēmānnūs, -ī, *the lake of Geneva.*

leō, -ōnīs, *lion.*

lēpūs, -ōrīs, *hare.*

lēvīs, -ē, *light, slight.*

lēvō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to lighten, relieve.*

lex, lēgīs, *law.*

libentĕr (adv.), *willingly, gladly*.
 libĕr, -ă, -ŭm, *free*.
 libĕr, -brī, *book*.
 libĕrī, -ōrŭm, *children*.
 libĕrŏ, -ărĕ, -ăvī, -ătŭm, *to free*.
 libertās, -tătis, *liberty*.
 licĕt, licuit, *it is allowed, permitted,*
right, lawful.
 lignŭm, -ī, *wood*.
 linguă, -æ, *tongue, language*.
 lintĕr, -trīs, *boat*.
 Liscŭs, -ī, *an Œduan chief*.
 litĕră, -æ, *a letter (of the alpha-*
bet).
 litŭs, -ŏrīs, *shore*.
 locŭplĕs, -ĕtis, *rich*.
 locŭs, -ī, *pl.* -ī and -ă, *place*.
 longĕ (adv.), *by far*.
 longitŭdŏ, -īnis, *length*.
 longŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *long*.
 loquŏr, -ī, locŭtŭs, *to speak*.
 Lŭcius, -ī, *Lucius*.
 lŭdŭs, -ī, *game, play*.
 lŭmĕn, -īnis, *light*.
 lŭnă, -æ, *moon*.
 lŭpŭs, -ī, *wolf*.
 lux, lŭcis, *light*.

M.

Măcĕdŏniă, -æ, *Macedonia*.
 maetŏ, -ărĕ, -ăvī, -ătŭm, *to sacri-*
fice.
 mæror, -ŏrīs, *grief*; præ mærorĕ,
for grief (a preventing cause).
 măgīs, maxīmĕ, *more, most*.
 măgistĕr, -ī, *master (of a school,*
etc.).
 magnănīmŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *great-souled,*
magnanimous.
 magnitŭdŏ, -īnis, *greatness*.
 magnŭs, -ă, -ŭm (majŏr, maxīmŭs),
great.
 mălē (pejŭs, pessīmĕ), *badly*.

mălēdicŏ, -ĕrĕ, -dixī, -dietŭm, *to be*
abusive, revile, curse.
 mălŏ, mallĕ, măluī, *to prefer*.
 mălŭm, -ī, *apple*.
 mălŭs, -ă, -ŭm (pejŏr, pessīmŭs),
bad, wicked, evil.
 mălŭs, -ī, *mast of a ship*.
 mandătŭm, -ī, *a thing intrusted, com-*
mand.
 mandŏ, -ărĕ, -ăvī, -ătŭm, *to intrust*.
 măneŏ, -ĕrĕ, mansī, mansŭm, *to re-*
main.
 Măniliŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *of Manilius*.
 Manliŭs, -ī, *Manlius*.
 mănŭs, -ŭs, *hand*.
 Marcŭs, -ī, *Mark*.
 mărĕ, -īs, *sea*.
 măritīmŭs, *bordering on the sea*.
 Măriŭs, -ī, *Marius*.
 marmŏr, -ŏrīs, *marble*.
 mătĕr, -trīs, *mother*.
 mătĕrfămiliās, *matron* (§ 45).
 mătŭrĕ (adv.), *quickly, soon*.
 mătŭrŏ, -ărĕ, -ăvī, -ătŭm, *to hasten*.
 mătŭrŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *ripe*.
 mĕdicămentŭm, -ī, *drug, dose*.
 mĕdicīnă, -æ, *medicine*.
 mĕdicŭs, -ī, *physician*.
 mĕdiŭs, -ă, -ŭm, *middle*.
 mĕliŏr, -ŭs, *better*.
 membrŭm, -ī, *limb*.
 mĕmīnī (§ 113), *I remember*.
 mĕmŏr, -ŏrīs, *mindful*.
 mĕmŏriă, -æ, *memory, recollection*.
 mendăciŭm, -ī, *falsehood, lie*.
 mendax, -ăcis, *false, lying*.
 mens, mentīs, *mind*.
 mĕnsă, -æ, *table*.
 mensīs, -īs, *month*.
 mentiŏr, -īrī, -ītŭs, *to lie*.
 mereătŏr, -ŏrīs, *merchant*.
 Mercŭriŭs, -ī, *Mercury*.
 mergĕs, -ītīs, *sheaf*.

mēriđiēs, -ei, *mid-day*.
 mēritūs, -ā, -ūm, *deserving*.
 Messālā, -æ, *Messala*.
 mētiōr, -iri, mensūs, *to measure*.
 mētō, -ērē, messui, messūm, *to reap*.
 mētūō, -ērē, mētui, *rarely mētūtūm, to fear, be apprehensive*.
 mētūs, -ūs, *apprehension, fear*.
 meūs, -ā, -ūm, *my, mine*.
 Micipsā, -æ, *Micipsa*.
 milēs, -itis, *soldier*.
 Milētūs, -ī, *Miletus, a city of Asia*.
 militāris, -ē, *military*.
 militiā, -æ, *military service*.
 millē (‡ 64, 6), *thousand*.
 mīnimē, *least, not at all*.
 mīnōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to threaten*.
 mīnōr, -ūs, *less*.
 mīnuō, -ērē, mīnuī, mīnūtūm, *to make less, weaken*.
 mīrōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to wonder*.
 mīrūs, -ā, -ūm, *wonderful*.
 mīsēr, -ā, -ūm, *wretched*.
 mīsēreō, -ērē, -ui, *to pity (generally used impersonally, ‡ 135 c)*.
 mīsērescō, -ērē, *to pity*.
 mittō, -ērē, mīsi, missūm, *to send*.
 mōdūs, -ī, *manner, measure, limit; prætēr mōdūm, beyond measure, unduly*.
 mōniā, -iūm, etc., *walls*.
 mōrōr, -ōris, *grief*.
 mollis, -ē, *soft*.
 mōneō, -ērē, mōnuī, mōnītūm, *to advise, remind*.
 mōnilē, -is, *necklace*.
 mons, mont-is, *mountain*.
 monstrō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to show*.
 mordeō, -ērē, mōmordi, morsūm, *to champ, bite*.
 Mōriņī, -ōrūm, *the Morini*.
 mōriōr, -ī and -iri, mortuūs, mōritū-rūs, *to die*.

mōrōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to delay*.
 mors, mortīs, *death*.
 morsūs, -ūs, *biting*.
 mortālis, -ē, *mortal*.
 mortī-fēr, -ā, -ūm, *death-bearing, mortal*.
 mortuūs, -ā, -ūm, *dead*.
 mōs, mōris, *manner, custom*.
 mōtūs, -ūs, *moving, insurrection*.
 mōveō, -ērē, mōvi, mōtūm, *to move*.
 mūliēr, -ēris, *woman*.
 multītūdō, -inīs, *multitude*.
 multūs (plūs, plūrīmūs), *much, many*.
 mundūs, -ī, *world*.
 mūniō, -irē, -īvi, -itūm, *to fortify*.
 mūnūs, -ēris, *duty, present*.
 mūrūs, -ī, *wall*.
 mūs, mūris, *mouse*.
 mūsā, -æ, *muse*.
 mūsicā, -æ, *music*.
 mūtō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to change*.

N.

nactūs, *participle from nanciscōr*.
 nām, *for (conj.)*.
 namquē, *for indeed*.
 nanciscōr, -ī, nactūs and nanctūs, *to get*.
 narrō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to tell, relate*.
 nascōr, -ī, nātūs, *to be born*.
 nātūrā, -æ, *nature*.
 nātūs, -ūs, *birth*.
 nautā, -æ, *sailor*.
 nāvālē, -is, *dock-yard*.
 nāvīgātiō, -ōnis, *navigation*.
 nāvīgō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to sail*.
 nāvis, -is, *ship*.
 nē (final conj.), *that — not, lest*.
 nec (conj.), *neither, nor, and not*.
 necēssāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *critical, necessary*.
 necō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to murder, kill*.

negligens, -entis, *negligent*; part. adj.

negligō, -ērē, -lexī, -lectūm, to *neglect*.

nēgō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, to *deny*.

nēgōtiūm, -ī, *business*.

nēmō, -īnis, *no man, no one*.

nēmūs, -ōris, *grove*.

nēpōs, -ōtis, *grandson*.

Neptūnūs, -ī, *Neptune, god of the sea*.

nēquē, *and not, neither, nor*.

nē — quidēm, *not even*.

Nerviūs, -ā, -ūm, *Nervian*.

nesciō, -irē, -ivī, -itūm, *not to know*.

neutēr, -ā, -ūm, *neither (of two)*.

nēvē, neu, *and — not, nor (neg. fin. conj.)*.

nīdificō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, to *build a nest*.

nīdūs, -ī, *nest*.

nīgēr, -ā, -ūm, *black*.

nīhīl (indecl.) or nīhīlūm, -ī, *nothing*.

nīmiūs, -ā, -ūm, *too much, excessive*.

nīsī (cond. conj.), *unless, if not*.

nītōr, -ī, nīsūs or nixūs, to *strive*.

nōbīlis, -ē, *noble*.

nōbīlītās, -ātīs, *nobility*.

nōccō, -ērē, -uī, -itūm, to *hurt, harm*.

nōlō, nollē, nōluī, to *be unwilling*.

nōmēn, -īnis, *name*.

nōn, *not*.

nondūm, *not yet*.

non nē (in direct questions, § 81, 4; in indirect questions), *if not, whether not*.

nōnūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 63), *ninth*.

nōs, § 78.

noscō, -ērē, nōvī, nōtūm, to *know*.

nostēr, -ā, -ūm, *our, ours*.

nōvēm (§ 63), *nine*.

nōvūs, -ā, -ūm, *new, late*.

nox, noctīs, *night*.

noxiūs, *hurtful*.

nūbēs, -īs, *cloud*.

nūdō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, to *strip*.

nūdūs, -ā, -ūm, *naked*.

nullūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 56), *none, not any*.

nūm, § 81, 3.

Nūmā, -æ, *Numa*.

Nūmantīnūs, -ā, -ūm, *Numantian*.

nūmērō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, to *count*.

nūmērūs, -ī, *number*.

Nūmīdā, -æ, a *Numidian*.

Nūmīdiā, -æ, *Numidia*.

numquīs, § 89.

nunc, *now*.

nunciō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, to *announce*.

nunciūs, -ī, *messenger*.

nunquām or numquām, *never*.

O.

ōb, *for, on account of*.

oblīviseōr, oblitūs, to *forget*.

obscurō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, to *obscure*.

ob-sēcō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, to *beseech*.

obsēs, -īdis, *hostage*.

ob-sīdeō, -ērē, -sēdī, -sessūm, to *besiege*.

obsīdīō, -ōnis, *siege*.

ob-stō, -ārē, -stītī, -stātūm, to *stand before, hinder, prevent*.

ob-truncō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, to *slay*.

occāsūs, -ūs, *going down, setting*.

oc-cīdō (ōb — cādō), -cīdī, -cīsūm, to *cut down, kill*.

oc-cīdō (ōb — cādō), -ērē, -cīdī, -cāsūm, to *fall, set*.

occultō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, to *hide*.

oc-cultūs, -ā, -ūm, *hidden*.

occūpō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, to *seize, take possession of*.

ōceānūs, -ī, *ocean.*

octāvūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 63), *eighth.*

octingentī, -æ, -ā (§ 63), *eight hundred.*

octō (§ 63), *eight.*

ōcūlūs, -ī, *eye.*

ōdī (§ 113, *Rem. 1*), *I hate.*

ōdiūm, -ī, *hatred.*

offendō, -ērē, offendī, offensūm, *to offend.*

officiūm, -ī, *duty, service.*

olīm (adv.), *formerly, anciently ;*
(of the future,) *some time or other.*

omnīnō, *altogether, wholly, at all.*

omnis, -ē, *all, every.*

ōnērāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *of burden.*

ōnērō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to load, lade.*

ōnūs, -ērīs, *burden.*

ōpērā, -æ, *pains, work, labor.*

ōpīniō, -ōnis, *opinion, belief.*

ōpīnōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to be of opinion.*

ōpis (gen.), *of help, strength, § 51 ;*

summā ōpē, *with all one's might.*

ōportēt, -uīt, *it is necessary, proper,*
it behooves.

oppidānūs, -ā, -ūm, *of a town.*

oppidūm, -ī, *town.*

opportunitās, -ātīs, *fitness, suitability-*
ness.

opportūnūs, -ā, -ūm, *fit, favorable.*

opprimō, -ērē, -pressī, -pressūm, *to*
press down, put down, suppress,
overcome, crush, oppress.

oppugnō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to as-*
sault.

optimūs, -ā, -ūm (bōnūs), *best.*

ōpūlens or ōpūlentūs, -ā, -ūm, *power-*
ful.

ōpūs, -ērīs, *work.*

ōpūs (indecl.), *need, necessity ;* ōpūs
est, it is necessary, there is need.

ōrācūlūm, -ī, *oracle.*

ōrātiō, -ōnis, *speech, oration.*

ōrātōr, -ōrīs, *orator.*

orbīs, -īs, *circle ; orbīs terrārūm,*
the world.

ordō, -īnis, *rank, order.*

Orgētōrix, -īgīs, *a Helvetian chief.*

ōrīgō, -īnis, *origin.*

ōriōr, -īrī, ortūs, ōritūrūs, *to rise.*

ōs, ōrīs, *mouth, face.*

ōs, ossīs, *bone.*

ōtiūm, -ī, *leisure, ease.*

Ovidiūs, -ī, *Ovid.*

ōvis, -īs, *sheep.*

ōvūm, -ī, *egg.*

Oxūs, -ī, *the Oxus.*

P.

pācō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to subdue.*

pāgūs, -ī, *canton.*

pālūs, -ūdīs, *marsh, bog.*

pāluster, -trīs, -trē, *marshy.*

pānis, -īs, *bread.*

pār, pārīs, *equal.*

pārātūs, -ā, -ūm, *ready, prepared.*

parcō, -ērē, pēperci, parsī, parcitūm
and parsūm, to spare.

pārens, -entīs, *parent.*

pāreō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to obey, be*
obedient.

pāriēs, -ētīs, *wall (of a house).*

pāriō, -ērē, pēpērī, partūm, *to beget,*
bring forth.

Parmēniō, -ōnīs, *Parmenio.*

pārō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to prepare.*

parricidā, -æ, *killer of a father,*
parricide.

pars, partīs, *part ;* ūnā ex partē, *on*
one side.

partīm (acc. of pars), *partly.*

pārūm, minūs, minīmē, *little.*

parvūs, -ā, -ūm, *small, little.*

passūs, -ūs, *pace ;* millē passūs, *a*
mile.

pastōr, -ōrīs, *shepherd.*

pătefăciō, -fēcī, -factūm, *to lay open,*
 § 107, *Rem. 1.*

păteō, -ērē, pătuī, *to lie open.*

pătēr, pătrīs, *father.*

păterfămīliās, § 45, *father of a family.*

pătīens, -entīs, *capable of enduring,*
patient.

pătientēr, *patiently.*

pătientīā, -æ, *patience.*

pătīnā, -æ, *dish.*

pătīor, -ī, passūs, *to suffer, endure,*
permit.

pătīriā, -æ, *country.*

paucī, -æ, -ă, *few.*

paulātīm, *by degrees.*

paulūs, -ă, -ūm, *little; usually in*
the acc. and abl. neuter.

paupēr, -īs, *poor.*

paupertās, -ātīs, *poverty.*

pāvōr, -ōrīs, *trembling.*

pax, păcīs, *peace.*

peccātūm, -ī, *fault, sin.*

peccō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to do wrong,*
sin.

pectūs, -ōrīs, *breast.*

pēcūniā, -æ, *sum of money.*

pēcūs, -ōrīs, *cattle, flock, herd.*

pēdēs, -ītīs, *footman.*

pēdestēr, -trīs, -trē, *on foot.*

pejōr, -ūs (mălūs), *worse.*

pellīs, -īs, *skin, hide.*

pellō, -ērē, pēpūlī, pulsūm, *to beat,*
drive, rout.

pendō, -ērē, pēpendī, pensūm, *to*
cause to hang, weigh, pay.

pēnēs (prep. with acc.), *in the power*
of.

pensūm, -ī, *weight.*

pēnūs, -ūs and -ī, *storehouse.*

pēr, *through.*

per-cūtiō, -ērē, -cussī, -cussūm, *to*
strike through, kill.

perdō, -ērē, -didī, -dītūm, *to destroy,*
lose.

per-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductūm, *to*
lead through, extend.

pēr-eō, -īrē, -iī, -ītūm, *to perish.*

per-făcīlīs, -ē, *very easy.*

per-fringō, -ērē, -frēgī, -fractūm, *to*
break through.

perfūgā, -æ, *deserter.*

pergō, -ērē, perrexī, -rectūm, *to pro-*
ceed.

pēricūlōsūs, -ă, -ūm, *dangerous.*

pēricūlūm, -ī, *trial, danger; pēri-*
cūlūm făcērē, to make a trial.

pērindē (adv.), *exactly, precisely.*

pēritūs, *skilled.*

permagnūs, -ă, -ūm, *very great.*

per-mōveō, -ērē, -mōvī, -mōtūm, *to*
move thoroughly, alarm.

permultūs, -ă, -ūm, *very much.*

pernīciēs, -ēī, *destruction.*

perpētūō (adv.), *continually.*

perpētūūs, -ă, -ūm, *unending.*

Persă, -æ, *Persian.*

per-sēquōr, -ī, -sēcūtūs, *to follow*
perseveringly, overtake.

per-suādō, -ērē, -suāsī, -suāsūm, *to*
persuade.

per-terreō, -ērē, -terrui, -terrītūm,
to frighten thoroughly, terrify.

per-tīneō, -ērē, -tīnuī, *to reach, ex-*
tend, pertain, belong.

per-turbō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to con-*
found.

per-vēniō, -īrē, -vēnī, -ventūm, *to*
come through, arrive.

pēs, pēdīs, *foot.*

pessimūs, -ă, -ūm (mălūs), *worst.*

pētō, -ērē, -ivī, -ītūm, *to seek, ask.*

phălanx, -gīs, *phalanx; acc. sing.*
-ēm and -ă; acc. pl. -ēs and -ās.

Philippūs, -ī, *Philip.*

philōsōphūs, -ī, *philosopher.*

Phōcion, -ōnīs, *Phocion*.
 piētās, -ātīs, *dutifulness*.
 pīgēr, -ā, -ūm, *slow, lazy*.
 pīgēt, pīguīt and pīgītūm est, *it disgusts, irks, troubles*; pīgēt mē tuī, *I am disgusted with you*.
 pīlūm, -ī, *javelin*.
 pīrātā, -æ, *pirate*.
 piscīs, -īs, *fish*.
 Pīsō, -ōnīs, *Piso*.
 piūs, -ā, -ūm, *dutiful, pious*.
 plăceō, -ērē, -uī, itūm, *to please*.
 Plātō, -ōnīs, *a Grecian philosopher*.
 plēbēs, -cī and -īs, and plebs, plēbīs, *common people*.
 plēnūs, -ā, -ūm, *full*.
 plērumquē (adv.), *for the most part*.
 plūmā, -æ, *feather*.
 plūs, plūrīs (‡ 72, 7), *more*.
 pōcūlūm, -ī, *drinking-cup*.
 poēmā, -ātīs, *poem*.
 Poenī, *Carthaginians*.
 pœnitēt, -uīt, *it repents*; p. mē peccātī, *I repent of my sin*.
 poētā, -æ, *poet*.
 polliceōr, -ērī, -ītūs, *to promise*.
 pollicītātīō, -ōnīs, *promise*.
 Pompēiūs, -ī, *Pompey*.
 pōmūm, -ī, *fruit*.
 pondūs, -ērīs, *weight*.
 pōnō, -ērē, pōsuī, pōsītūm, *to put, place*.
 pons, pontīs, *bridge*.
 pōpūlōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to lay waste*.
 pōpūlūs, -ī, *people*.
 porrīgō, -ērē, porrexī, porrectūm, *to stretch out*.
 portā, -æ, *gate of a city*.
 portō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to carry*.
 portūs, -ūs, *harbor*.
 poseō, -ērē, pōposeī, *to demand*.
 possūm, possē, pōtuī, *to be able*.
 post, *after, behind*.

postea, *afterwards*.
 postērūs, postēriōr, postrēmūs or postūmūs, *coming after*; comp., *of less account, inferior*.
 postquā (temp. conj.), *after*.
 postūlō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to demand*.
 pōtens, -entīs, *powerful*.
 pōtentiā, -æ, *power, ability*.
 pōtestās, -ātīs, *power, right*.
 pōtiōr, -īrī, -ītūs, *to get possession of, acquire*.
 præ, *before, in comparison with, for*; præ mærore, *for grief*.
 præbeō, -ērē, -uī, itūm, *to furnish*.
 præceptūm, -ī, *precept*. From
 præcipiō, -ērē, -cēpī, -ceptūm, *to instruct, order, command*.
 præcipitō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hurry forward*.
 præcipuē, *especially*.
 præcipuūs, -ā, -ūm, *especial*.
 præclārūs, -ā, -ūm, *very distinguished*.
 præcō, -ōnīs, *crier, herald*.
 prædā, -æ, *booty*.
 prædicō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to boast*.
 prædītūs, -ā, -ūm, *endowed*.
 prædōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to plunder*.
 præficiō, -ērē, -fēcī, -fectūm, *to put over*.
 præmittō, -mīsī, -missūm, *to send forward*.
 præmiūm, -ī, *reward*.
 præpōnō, -pōsuī, -pōsītūm, *to place before, to prefer*.
 præsens, -entīs, *present*.
 præsiđiūm, -ī, *garrison*.
 præstans, -antīs, *excellent, distinguished*.
 præstō, -ārē, -stītī, -stītūm, *to excel*.
 præsum, -essē, -fuī, *to be over*.
 prætēr, *past, besides, beyond*.
 prætēr-eō, -īrē, -īvī, -ītūm, *to pass by*.

præter-mittō, -mīsī, -missūm, *to let slip.*

prætēr mōdūm, *beyond measure, unduly.*

prætōr, -ōrīs, *prætor, chief.*

prāvūs, -ā, -ūm, *crooked, depraved.*

prēmō, -ērē, pressī, pressūm, *to press.*

prētiūm, -ī, *price, value.*

Priāmūs, -ī, *Priam.*

prīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *first.*

princeps, -īpīs, *chief.*

priōr, prīmūs, *former, sooner.*

pristinūs, -ā, -ūm, *form.*

priusquām, *before.*

privātūs, -ā, -ūm, *private.*

prō, *for, before.*

prōbītās, -ātīs, *honesty.*

prō-cēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, *to go forward.*

prōcūl, *at a distance.*

prō-currō, -ērē, -cūcurrī and -currī, -cursūm, *to run forward.*

prōditiō, -ōnīs, *treachery.*

prōdītōr, -ōrīs, *traitor.*

proeliūm, -ī, *battle.*

prōfectiō, -ōnīs, *departure.*

prō-ficiscōr, -ī, -fectūs, *to set out.*

prō-flīgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dash in pieces.*

prō-fūgiō, -ērē, -fūgī, -fūgītūm, *to flee, run away, escape.*

prōgēniēs, -cī, *offspring.*

progrēdiōr, -ī, -gressūs, *to go forth or forward.*

prō-hībcō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to prevent, keep off.*

prōmissūm, -ī, *promise.*

promptūs, -ā, -ūm, *ready, quick.*

prōnūs, -ā, -ūm, *headlong, bending over.*

prōpē, -iūs, *proximē, near, nearer, next.*

prōpērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hasten.*

prōpinquūs, -ā, -ūm, *near.*

prōpiōr, *proximūs, nearer, next.*

prō-pōnō, -ērē, -pōsuī, -pōsītūm, *to set up.*

prōpōsītūm, -ī, *purpose.*

proptēr, *on account of.*

proptēreā, *on this account.*

prō-pulsō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to repel.*

prō-sēquōr, -ī, -sēcūtūs, *to pursue.*

prō-sūm, prōdessē, prōfuī, *to benefit, to do good.*

prōvidentiā, -æ, *foresight, providence.*

prōvinciā, -æ, *province.*

proximē (adv.), *nearest, next.*

proximūs, -ā, -ūm, *nearest, next.*

prūdēns, -entīs, *prudent.*

prūdentiā, -æ, *prudence.*

publicūs, -ā, -ūm, *public.*

pūdēt, pūduīt, *it shames.*

pūdōr, -ōrīs, *shame, modesty.*

puellā, -æ, *girl.*

puēr, -ī, *boy.*

pugnā, -æ, *fight.*

pugnō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to fight.*

pulchēr, -ā, -ūm, *beautiful.*

pulchritūdō, -inīs, *beauty.*

pulvis, -ērīs, *dust.*

Pūnicūs, -ā, -ūm, *Carthaginian.*

pūniō, -irē, -ivī, -ītūm, *to punish.*

purgō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to cleanse, excuse.*

pūtō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to think.*

Pythāgōrās, -æ (§ 219), *Pythagoras.*

Q.

quadrāgēsīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *fortieth.*

quadrāgintā (§ 63), *forty.*

quærō, -ērē, quæsivī, quæsītūm, *to seek, ask.*

quālīs, *of what kind, as.*

quām, *than, as.*

quamquām, *although.*

quamvis, *however much, although.*

quantūs, -ā, -ūm, *how great, as;*

tantūs — quantūs, *as great — as.*

quāsī (§ 203), *as if.*

quatrīduūm, -ī, *four days.*

quatuōr (§ 63), *four.*

quērōr, -ī, questūs, *to complain.*

quī, quæ, quōd, *who, which.*

quīā (conj.), *because.*

quicumquē, *whoever.*

quīdām (§ 89), *a certain, a certain one, some one, some.*

quīdēm, *indeed.*

quīn, *but that, that, but.*

quīndēcīm (§ 63), *fifteen.*

quīngentī, -æ, -ā (§ 63), *five hundred.*

quippē, *surely, since.*

quīs, § 89; quīs, § 88.

quisnām, § 88.

quispiām, }
quisquām, } § 89.
quisquē, }

quisquīs, § 87, 4.

quīvis, quīlibēt, § 89.

quō, *whither.*

quo-ād, *to what point, as long as, until.*

quōd, *because.*

quō-mīnūs, § 193, *Rem. 5.*

quōniām, *since, because.*

quōquē, *also.*

quōt, *how many, as.*

quōtannis, *yearly.*

quōtīdiē, *daily.*

quūm, *when, since, although.*

R.

rāmūs, -ī, *branch, bough.*

rāpīnā, -æ, *plunder, pillage.*

rāpiō, -ērē, rapuī, raptūm, *to snatch, seize, carry off.*

raptō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to seize violently.*

rātiō, -ōnīs, *plan, reasoning, cause.*

Raurācī, -ōrūm, *a tribe of Gauls.*

rēbelliō, -ōnīs, *rebellion.*

rēcens, -entīs, *recent.*

rēceptūs, -ūs, *retreat.*

rēcipiō, -cēpī, -ceptūm, *to take back, regain, recover; sē rēcīpērē, to retreat, to recover oneself.*

rectūs, -ā, -ūm, *straight, right.*

rēcūpērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to recover.*

rēcūsō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to object, repudiate.*

red-dō, -ērē, -dīdī, -dītūm, *to give back, render, make.*

rēd-eō, -īrē, rēdīi, rēdītūm, *to return.*

rēdīgō, -ērē, -ēgī, -actūm, *to reduce.*

rēd-intēgrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to renew.*

rēdītūs, -ūs, *return.*

rē-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductūm, *to lead back.*

rē-fērō, -ferrē, -tūlī, -lātūm, *to withdraw.*

rē-fert, rētūlīt, *it concerns.*

rēficiō, -ērē, -fēcī, -fectūm, *to repair.*

rēgīnā, -æ, *queen.*

rēgiō, -ōnīs, *region, tract.*

regnūm, -ī, *kingdom.*

rēgō, -ērē, rexī, rectūm, *to rule.*

Rēgūlūs, -ī, *Regulus.*

rēligiō, -ōnīs, *vow, religion.*

rē-liquō, -ērē, -liquī, -lictūm, *to leave.*

rēliquūs, -ā, -ūm, *the rest.*

rēnunciātiō, -ōnīs, *report.*

rě-nunciō, -ārě, -āvī, -ātūm, *to carry back word.*

rěor, rěrī, rātūs, *to suppose.*

rěpens, -entīs, *sudden.*

rěpentě, *suddenly.*

rěpentīnūs, -ā, -ūm, *sudden.*

rěpěriō, -irě, rěpěrī, rěpertūm, *to find out.*

rěpětō, -ěrě, -ivī, -itūm, *to seek back.*

rěprěhendō, -ěrě, -dī, -sūm, *to rebuke.*

rěpūdiō, -ārě, -āvī, -ātūm, *to refuse.*

rēs, rēī, *thing.*

re-scindō, -ěrě, -scīdī, -scissūm, *to cut down.*

rě-sistō, -ěrě, -stītī, *to resist.*

re-spondeō, -ērě, -spondī, -sponsūm, *to answer.*

respublicā (§ 49, 5), *commonwealth.*

rětě, -īs, *net.*

rě-vellō, -ěrě, -vellī, -vulsūm, *to tear off.*

rě-věreōr, -ērī, -ītūs, *to reverence.*

rě-vocō, -ārě, -āvī, -ātūm, *to recall.*

rex, rēgīs, *king.*

Rhēnūs, -ī, *the Rhine.*

Rhōdānūs, -ī, *the Rhone.*

rōbūr, -ōrīs, *heart of oak, strength.*

rōgō, -ārě, -āvī, -ātūm, *to ask.*

Rōmā, -æ, *Rome.*

Rōmānūs, -ā, -ūm, *Roman.*

rōsā, -æ, *rose.*

rūběr, -ā, -ūm, *red.*

rūdēns, -entīs, *rope, cable.*

rūdīs, -ě, *rude, uncivilized.*

rumpō, -ěrě, rūpī, ruptūm, *to break.*

rūpēs, -īs, *rock.*

rursūs, *again.*

rūs, rūrīs, *country.*

rusticūs, -ā, -ūm, *living in the country, rustic.*

S.

Sābīnī, -ōrūm, *Sabines.*

sācēr, -ā, -ūm, *sacred.*

sācerdōs, -ōtīs, *priest.*

sāpě, *often.*

sāvūs, -ā, -ūm, *savage, fierce.*

sāgittā, -æ, *arrow.*

sāgittāriūs, -ī, *archer.*

sālār, -ārīs, *trout.*

saltō, -ārě, -āvī, -ātūm, *to dance.*

sālūběr, -brīs, -brě, *wholesome.*

sālūs, -ūtīs, *safety, health.*

sanctūs, -ā, -ūm, *sacred, pure.*

sanguīs, -īnīs, *blood.*

sānūs, *sound, healthy.*

sāpiēns, -entīs, *wise.*

sāpientiā, -æ, *wisdom.*

sātīs, *enough, sufficient, sufficiently.*

sauciūs, -ā, -ūm, *wounded.*

saxūm, -ī, *rock.*

scaphā, -æ, *boat, skiff.*

scēlūs, -ērīs, *crime, wickedness.*

sciō, -irě, -ivī, -itūm, *to know.*

Scipiō, -ōnīs, *Scipio.*

scribō, -ěrě, scripsī, scriptūm, *to write.*

scriptōr, -ōrīs, *writer.*

scūtūm, -ī, *shield.*

sē-cēdō, -ěrě, -cessī, -cessūm, *to secede.*

sē-cernō, -ěrě, -crēvī, -crētūm, *to separate.*

sēcō, -ārě, sēcūī, sectūm, sēcātūrūs, *to cut.*

sēcūm, § 79, 2.

sēcundūm, *following, according to.*

sēcundūs, -ā, -ūm, *following, second, favorable.*

sēcūrīs, -īs, *axe.*

sēd, *but.*

sēdeō, -ērě, sēdī, sessūm, *to sit.*

sēdēs, -īs, *seat, settlement.*

sēdīlē, -īs, *seat*.
 sēdītiō, -ōnīs, *sedition*.
 sempēr (adv.), *always*.
 sempiternūs, -ā, -ūm, *everlasting*.
 sēnātūs, -ūs and -ī, *senate*.
 sēnex, sēnīs, *old*.
 sensūs, -ūs, *feeling*.
 sententiā, -æ, *opinion*; ex sententiā, *satisfactorily*.
 sentiō, -irē, sensi, sensūm, *to perceive*.
 Sēquanūs, -ā, -ūm, *Sequan*. As a noun, *a Sequan*.
 sēquor, -ī, sēcūtūs, *to follow*.
 sermō, -ōnīs, *conversation, talk*.
 serpens, -entīs, *serpent*.
 serviō, -irē, -īvī, -itūm, *to be a slave, serve*.
 servītūs, -tūtīs, *slavery*.
 servō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to preserve*.
 servūs, -ī, *slave*.
 sex (2 63), *six*.
 sībilō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hiss*.
 sic, *thus*.
 sicūt or sicūtī, *as, just as*.
 sīdūs, -ērīs, *star, constellation*.
 signūm, -ī, *sign, signal*.
 sīlentiūm, -ī, *silence*.
 silvā, -æ, *wood, forest*.
 silvestris or -tēr, -ē, *woody*.
 sīmīlīs, -ē, *like*.
 sīmūl, *at the same time*.
 sīmūl āc, *as soon as*.
 sīnē, *without*.
 singūli, -æ, -ā, *single, one at a time*.
 sīnō, -ērē, sīvī, sītūm, *to put, permit*.
 sīnūs, -ūs, *gulf, bay*.
 sītiō, -irē, -īvī, *to be thirsty*.
 sītīs, -īs, *thirst*.
 sītūs, -ā, -ūm (part. sīnō).
 sūcēr, -ī, *father-in-law*.
 sūciūs, -ī, *companion*.

Socrātēs, -īs, *Socrates*.
 sōl, sōlīs, *sun*.
 sōlēō, -ērē, sōlitūs, *to be used, wont*.
 sōlūs, -ā, -ūm, *only, alone*.
 solvō, -ērē, solvī, sōlūtūm, *to loose*.
 somnūs, -ī, *sleep*.
 sōnūs, -ī, *sound*.
 sōrōr, -ōrīs, *sister*.
 sors, sortīs, *lot*.
 spātiūm, -ī, *room, space, time*.
 spectātūs, -ā, -ūm, *looked at, appeared*.
 spectō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to look at*.
 spēculātōr, -ōrīs, *scout*.
 spēcūs, -ūs, *den, cave, grotto*.
 spēluncā, -æ, *cave*.
 spērō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to hope*.
 spēs, -eī, *hope*.
 spēliō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to spoil, rob, plunder*.
 stābūlūm, -ī, *fold*.
 stātīm, *immediately*.
 stātuō, -ērē, stātuī, stātūtūm, *to place, put, determine*.
 stātūrā, -æ, *stature, size, height*.
 stellā, -æ, *star*.
 stīmūlō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to goad*.
 stīmūlūs, -ī, *goad*.
 stīpendiāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *tributary*.
 stīpendiūm, -ī, *tax, tribute*.
 stō, stārē, stētī, stātūm, *to stand*.
 strēnuūs, -ā, -ūm, *nimble, active*.
 stūdeō, -ērē, -uī, *to attend to, be eager for*.
 stūdiūm, *zeal, desire*; pl. *studies*.
 stultītiā, -æ, *folly*.
 stultūs, -ā, -ūm, *foolish*.
 suādeō, -ērē, suāsī, suāsūm, *to advise*.
 sūbeō, -irē, -iī, itūm, *to go under*.
 sūbigō, -ērē, -ēgī, -actūm, *to subdue*.
 sūbitō (adv.), *suddenly*.

sūbītūs, -ā, -ūm, *sudden*.
 sub-lēvō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to relieve*.
 subsēquōr, -ī, -sēcūtūs, *to follow closely*.
 subsidiūm, -ī, *reserve, support, help*.
 sub-vēniō, -īrē, -vēnī, -ventūm, *to come to one's assistance, help*.
 suēcēdō, -ērē, -cessī, -cessūm, *to come close up*.
 Suessiōnēs, -ūm, *the Suessiones*.
 suī, § 78.
 sum, essē, fuī, fūtūrūs, *to be*.
 summūs, -ā, -ūm, *the highest, the top*,
 § 72, 4, § 128, *Rem. 3*.
 sūmō, -ērē, sumpsī, sumptūm, *to take*.
 sūpellex, -lectīlis, *furniture*.
 sūperbiā, -æ, *pride*.
 sūperbūs, -ā, -ūm, *proud*.
 sūpērō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to over-come*.
 sūperstītiō, -ōnīs, *superstition*.
 sūpērūs, -ā, -ūm, § 72, 4.
 supplicīūm, -ī, *punishment*.
 surgō, -ērē, surrexī, surreetūm, *to rise*.
 sus-eīpiō, -ērē, -cēpī, -ceptūm, *to undertake*.
 suspīcōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to suspect*.
 sustīneō, -ērē, -tīnuī, -tentūm, *to sustain*.
 suūs, -ā, -ūm, *his, her, its, their*, § 80,
Rem. 2.
 Sŷphax, -æis, *Syphax*.
 Sŷrācūsæ, -ārūm, *Syracuse*.

T.

tāceō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to be silent*.
 tædēt, -uīt, *it wearies, disgusts*.
 tālentūm, -ī, *talent*.
 tālīs, -ē, *such*.
 tām, *so*.

tāmēn, *nevertheless*.
 tāmetsī, *although*.
 tandēm, *at length*.
 tangō, -ērē, tētīgī, tactūm, *to touch*.
 tanquām or tamquām, *as if*,
 § 203.
 tantūs, -ā, -ūm, *so much, so great*.
 tantūs-dēm, -ādēm, -undēm, *just as much*.
 tardō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to delay, retard*.
 tardūs, -ā, -ūm, *slow*.
 Tarquīnī, -ōrūm, *Tarquinius*.
 Tarquīniūs, -ī, *Tarquinius*.
 taurūs, -ī, *bull*.
 tectūm, -ī, *roof*.
 tellūs, -ūrīs, *earth*.
 tēlūm, -ī, *dart*.
 tēmērē, (adv.), *rashly*.
 tempērantīā, -æ, *self-control, temperance*.
 tempestās, -tātīs, *time, weather (good or bad), tempest*.
 templūm, -ī, *temple*.
 tempūs, -ōrīs, *time*.
 tēnax, -æis, *tenacious*.
 tēneō, -ērē, tēnuī, tentūm, *to hold*.
 tentō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to attempt*.
 tēnuīs, -ē, *slender*.
 tergūm, -ī, *back*.
 terminūs, -ī, *end, limit*.
 terrā, -æ, *earth, ground, land*.
 terreō, -ērē, -uī, -ītūm, *to frighten*.
 terrōr, -ōrīs, *terror, fright*.
 tertiūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 63), *third*.
 testīs, -īs, *witness*.
 Thēbæ, -ārūm, *Thebes*.
 Thrax, -æis, *Thracian*.
 thrōnūs, -ī, *throne*.
 Tībērīs, -īs, *the Tiber*.
 tīmeō, -ērē, tīmuī, *to fear*.
 tīmīdūs, -ā, -ūm, *cowardly*.
 tīmōr, -ōrīs, *fear, panic*.

Tītūs, -ī, *Titus*.

tōlēřō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to endure*.

tondeō, -ērē, tōtondī, tonsūm, *to shear*.

tōnītrūs, -ūs, *thunder*.

tōt, *so many*.

tōtūs, -ā, -ūm, *whole*.

trā-dō, -ērē, -didī, -dītūm, *to deliver over, hand down*.

trā-jīciō, -ērē, -jēcī, -jectūm, *to ship over*.

trāmēs, -ītīs, *by-path*.

trā-nō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to swim across*.

trans, *across, beyond*.

trans-dūcō, -ērē, -duxī, -ductūm, *to lead over*.

trans-eō, -Irē, transī, transītūm, *to go across, pass over, pass away, to spend*.

transjīciō. *See trajīciō*.

trēs, triā (§ 63), *three*.

tribūnūs, -ī, *tribune*.

tribuō, -ērē, -uī, -ūtūm, *to give, assign*.

tribūs, -ūs, *tribe*.

triduūm, -ī, *three days' time*.

trienniūm, -ī, *three years' time*.

trīgintā (§ 63), *thirty*.

trīpartītō, *in three divisions*.

trīplex, -īcis, *triple*.

tristīs, -ē, *sad*.

Trōjā, -æ, *Troy*.

trūcidō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to slay, butcher*.

tūbā, -æ, *trumpet*.

tueōr, -erī, tuītūs and tūtūs, *to protect*.

Tullīā, -æ, *Tullia*.

Tullīānūm, -ī, *a prison at Rome, built by king Servius Tullius*.

Tullīūs, -ī, *Tully*.

tūm, *then*.

tūmultūs, -ūs, *tumult, uproar*.

tūmulūs, -ī, *mound*.

tunc, *then*.

turbā, -æ, *crowd*.

turbidūs, -ā, -ūm, *disordered, muddy*.

turbō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to throw into confusion*.

turbō, -īnīs, *whirlwind*.

turpīs, -ē, *base*.

turrīs, -īs, *tower*.

tūtōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to defend, protect*.

tūtūs, -ā, -ūm, *safe*.

tuūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 80), *thy, thine, your, yours*.

tŷrannūs, -ī, *tyrant*.

U.

ŷbī, *where, when*.

ŷbīquē, *everywhere*.

ulciscōr, -ī, ultūs, *to avenge*.

ullūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 56, 1), *any*.

ultēriōr, -ūs (§ 74, 1), *farther*.

ultimūs, -ā, -ūm (§ 74, 1), *farthest, last*.

ŷlŷlō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to howl*.

umbrā, -æ, *shadow, shade*.

unquām or unquām, *ever*.

ŷnā (partē), *in one place, together*.

undā, -æ, *wave*.

undē, *whence, from which*.

undīquē, *on all sides*.

ŷnīversūs, -ā, -ūm, *all, universal*.

unquām (adv.), *ever*.

ŷnūs, -ā, -ūm, *one*.

ŷnusquisquē, *each* (§ 89, 7).

urbs, urbīs, *city*.

ŷrō, -ērē, ŷsī, ŷstūm, *to burn*.

ŷsūs, -ūs, *using, use, practice*.

ŷt or ŷtī, *that, in order that*.

ŷtēr? -ā? -ūm? *which of the two?*

ŷterquē, -āquē, -umquē, *both*.

ŷtīlīs, -ē, *useful*.

ŷtīnām, *O that!*

ūtrimquē (adv.), *on both sides.*

ūtōr, -ī, ūsūs, *to use.*

uxōr, -ōrīs, *wife.*

V.

vāeō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to be unoccupied.*

vāeuūs, -ā, -ūm, *empty.*

vādūm, -ī, *ford.*

vāgōr, -ārī, -ātūs, *to wander about.*

vāleō, -ērē, -uī, *to be strong, well.*

vallis, -īs, *valley.*

vallūm, -ī, *rampart.*

vāriūs, -ā, -ūm, *various.*

Varrō, -ōnīs, *Varro.*

vastitās, -ātīs, *devastation.*

vastō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to lay waste.*

vātēs, -īs, *prophet.*

vectigāl, -ālīs, *tax.*

vēhementēr, *excessively.*

vēhō, -ērē, vexit, *veetūm, to carry.*

vēl, *or, even.*

vēlēs, -ītīs, *skirmisher.*

vēlox, -ōeīs, *swift.*

vēlūm, -ī, *sail.*

vēlūtī (‡ 203), *just as, like.*

vēnātōr, -ōrīs, *hunter.*

vendō, -ērē, vendidī, venditūm, *to sell.*

vēnēnūm, -ī, *poison.*

Vēnētī, -ōrūm, *the Veneti.*

vēniō, -irē, vēnī, ventūm, *to come.*

ventēr, -trīs, *belly.*

ventūs, -ī, *wind.*

vēr, vērīs, *spring.*

verbūm, -ī, *word.*

vēreōr, -ērī, -ītūs, *to reverence, fear.*

vergō, -ērē, versī, *to turn, incline.*

vērītās, -ātīs, *truth.*

Verrēs, -īs, *Verrēs (boar).*

versūs, -ūs, *verse.*

vertō, -ērē, vertī, versūm, *to turn.*

vērūs, -ā, -ūm, *truc.*

vērūtūm, -ī, *javelin.*

veseōr, -ī, *to eat.*

vespēr, -ī and -īs, *evening.*

vestēr, -ā, -ūm, ‡ 80.

vestigiūm, -ī, *footprint.*

vestīs, -īs, *clothing.*

vētūs, -ērīs, *old, ancient.*

vexillūm, -ī, *flag, ensign.*

vexō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to vex, harass, annoy.*

viā, -æ, *way.*

vieēsīmūs, -ā, -ūm, *twentieth.*

vietōr, -ōrīs, *conqueror.*

vietōriā, -æ, *victory.*

vīeūs, -ī, *village.*

vīdeō, -ērē, vīdī, vīsūm, *to see; passive, to seem.*

vīgīliā, -æ, *watch.*

vīgīlō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to watch.*

vīgintī (‡ 63), *twenty.*

vineiō, -irē, vinxī, vinetūm, *to bind.*

vineō, -ērē, vīcī, vietūm, *to conquer.*

vineulūm, -ī, *chain.*

vinūm, -ī, *wine.*

viōlō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to injure, maltreat; (of a law,) to break.*

vīr, vīrī, *man, husband.*

Virgiliūs, -ī, *Virgil.*

virgō, -īnīs, *virgin.*

vīrīdīs, -ē, *green.*

virtūs, -tūtīs, *courage, virtue.*

vīs, *strength, ‡ 45.*

vītā, -æ, *life.*

vītiūm, -ī, *vīce.*

vītō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to shun, escape.*

vitreūs, -ā, -ūm, *made of glass.*

vīvō, -ērē, vixī, vietūm, *to live.*

vīvūs, -ā, -ūm, *alive.*

vix (adv.), *scarcely.*

vōcō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to call.*

vōlō, -ārē, -āvi, -ātūm, *to fly.*

vōlō, vellē, vōluī, *to will.*

vōluptās, -tātis, *pleasure*.
 volvō, -ērē, vōlvī, vōlūtūm, *to roll*.
 vōrō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to devour*.
 vōtūm, -ī, *vow*.
 vōveō, -ērē, vōvī, vōtūm, *to vow*.
 vox, vōcīs, *voice*.

vulgūs, -ī, *common people*.
 vulnerō, -ārē, -āvī, -ātūm, *to wound*.
 vulnūs, -ērīs, *wound*.
 vultūr, -ūrīs, *vulture*.
 vultūs, -ūs, *countenance*.

ENGLISH-LATIN VOCABULARY.

ABILITY

A.

ability, pōtestās.
able (to be), possūm.
abound, ābundō.
about, circitēr, dē.
above, sūpēr, sūprā.
absent, absens; *to be absent*, ābessē.
abuse, ābūtī (*use amiss*); mālēdicērē
 (*speak amiss*).
abusive (to be), mālēdicō.
access, āditūs.
accomplish, conficiō; *for the accomplishment of those things*, ād eās rēs
 conficiendās.
account (on account of), ōb.
accuse, arguō, accūsō.
accustom, consuescō.
accustomed (to be), sōlēō.
acquire, compārō.
acquit, absolvō.
across, trans.
active, āgilīs.
add, addō.
address, appellārē, compellārē.
Adherbal, Ādherbāl, -ālīs.
admire, mīrōr.

ALL

admonish, mōneō.
adorn, dēcōrō.
advance, progrēdiōr, prōcēdō.
advantage, commōdūm.
advice, consiliūm.
advise, mōneō.
Æduan, Æduūs.
affair, rēs.
afford, præbeō.
afraid (to be), tīmeō, mētuō, vēreōr.
after (prep.), post; (*conj.*), postquām,
 posteāquām.
afterwards, posteā.
against, contrā, ād, adversūs.
age, ætās.
agreeable, acceptūs, grātūs.
agreement, pactūm, -ī; conventūs,
 -ūs.
agriculture, agricultūrā.
ah! heu.
aid (n.), auxiliūm.
aid (v.), subvēniō, auxiliūm fērō.
air, āēr.
alarm, perturbō, permōveō.
Alexander, Ālexandēr.
all, omnīs.

allege (as you *allege*, etc.), by the subjunctive, § 190; *to allege*, dicō, prædicō.
allure, illīciō.
already, jām.
also, etiām, quōquē.
altar, ārā.
although, licēt, quamvis, quanquām, etsī, etc.
always, sempēr.
ambassador, lēgātūs.
ambassy, lēgātiō.
ambush, insīdiæ.
among (of things), intēr; (of persons), āpūd.
ancient, vētūs, antiquūs.
anger, irā.
angry, irācundūs, irātūs.
angry (to be), irascōr.
animal, ānimāl.
announce, nunciō.
annoy, vexō.
another (of two), altēr; (of many), aliūs.
answer, respondeō.
any, § 89.
apiece, expressed by distributive numerals (§ 63, 1 c).
Apollo, Apollō, -īnis.
approach (v.), aggrēdiōr, accēdō; (n.), adventūs.
archer, sāgittāriūs.
Ariovistus, Āriōvistūs, -ī.
arise, ōriōr.
Aristides, Āristīdēs.
arm (v.), armō.
arms, armā.
army, exercītūs.
around, circūm.
arrange, constituō.
arrival, adventūs.
arrow, sāgittā.
art, ars.

as (conj.), quām; *as great* — *as*, tantūs — quantūs; *as many* — *as*, tōt — quōt; *just as much* — *as*, tantusdēm — quantusdēm; *such* — *as*, tālis — quālīs.
ascend, ascendō.
ascertain, cognoscō.
ashamed (to be), pūdet, § 135 c.
ask, rōgō, pētō, interrōgō.
asleep (to fall), dormītō.
assault, oppugnō.
assert, confirmō.
assistance, auxiliūm; *to come to one's* assistance, subvēniō.
atrocious, atrox.
attack (n.), impētūs.
attack (v.), oppugnō, aggrēdiōr.
attempt, tentō, cōnōr.
authority, auctōritās.
auxiliaries, auxiliā, -ōrūm.
avarice, āvāritiā.
avenge, ulciscōr.
avoid, vitō.
await, exspectō.
aware (all are), constat intēr omnēs.

B.

Babylon, Bābȳlōn, -ōnis.
back, tergūm.
bad, mālūs.
badly, mālē.
Balbus, Balbūs.
banish, patriā pellō.
barbarian, barbārūs.
base, turpīs.
batle, proeliūm.
be, essē.
bear, fērō, tōlērō.
beat (defeat), pellō, vincō.
beautiful, pulchēr.
beauty, pulchritūdō.
because, quōd, quīā, quūm.
become, fiō; *it becomes*, dēcēt.

bedchamber, cūbīcūlūm.

bee, āpīs.

before (*prep.*), antē; (*conj.*), antē-
quām, priusquām.

beg, rōgō, pētō.

begin, cōepī, incīpiō.

behold, conspīciō, aspīciō.

behoove, *it behooves*, oportēt.

Belgian, Belgā.

believe, crēdō.

benefit, bēnēficiūm.

beseech, obsēcō.

besiege, obsīdēō.

best, optīmūs.

bestow (*labor, pains*), ōpērām dārē.

between, intēr.

beware, cāvēō.

Bibrax, Bibrax, -actīs.

big, magnūs, amplūs.

bind, vīnciō.

bird, āvis.

birth, nātūs, -ūs; *before one's birth*,
antē ālīquēm nātūm.

bite, mordeō.

biting, morsūs.

blame, rēprēhendō, incūsō.

blind, cēcūs.

blood, sanguīs.

boar, āpēr.

boast, prādicō.

boat, scaphā, līntēr.

Bocchus, Bocchūs, -ī.

body, corpūs; *nobody*, nēmō, nullūs;
anybody, § 89.

bold, audax.

boldly, audācītēr, audactēr.

book, lībēr.

booty, prāedā.

born (*to be*), nascōr.

both, ambō (*both together*); ūterquē
(*both separately*); *on both sides*,
ūtrimquē; *by both parties*, āb
ūtrisquē.

boundary, finīs.

boundless, infīnītūs.

bow, arcūs.

bowl, cātīnūs or -ūm.

boy, puēr.

brave, fortīs.

bravely, fortītēr.

bread, pānīs.

break (*a law*), viōlō.

break through, perfrīngō.

bribe (*n.*), largītiō, pēcūniā.

bribe (*v.*), largiōr.

bridge, pons.

bridle (*v.*), infrēnō; (*n.*), frēnūm.

bring, fērō; *bring word*, nuntiō;

bring back word, rēnuntiō.

Britain, Britannīa.

Briton, Britannūs.

broad, lātūs.

brother, frātēr.

build, ædificārē, condō; *build nest*,
nīdificō.

bull, taurūs.

burden, ōnūs.

burn, incendō, exūrō; *burn down*,
be burnt down, deflagrō.

business, nēgōtiūm, rēs (*pl.*).

but, sēd, vērūm, vērō.

buy, ēmō.

by, ā or āb, *with abl.*; pēr, *with acc.*

by far, longē.

bypath, trāmēs.

C.

Cadmus, Cadmūs.

Cæsar, Cæsār.

Caius, Cāiūs.

calamity, cālāmītās.

call, vōcārē; *call together*, convō-
cārē; *call back*, rēvōcārē.

camp, castrā.

can, possūm.

canton, pāgūs.

capital, cǎpūt.

captive, captīvūs.

care, cūrā.

cares not a straw, floccī nōn faciūt.

curry, portō, fērō.

Carthage, Carthāgō.

Carthaginian, Pœnūs, Carthāgini-
ensīs.

case (*this is the*), rēs itā sē hābēt.

Catiline, Cātilinā.

Cato, Cātō.

cause, causā.

cavalry, ēquitātūs.

cave, spēluncā.

cease, dēsistō.

centurion, centūriō.

certain, certūs; *a certain one*, quīdām.

certainly (*he will certainly come*), fiērī
nōn pōtest quīn.

chain, vineulūm.

champ, mordeō.

chance, cāsūs, fors.

change, mūtō.

characteristic (*it is characteristic of a
poor man*), paupērīs est.

chariot, currūs.

chief, princeps.

children, libērī.

choose, dēlīgō.

citizen, cīvīs.

city, urbs.

civil, cīvīlīs.

civilization, cultūs, hūmānītās.

claim (*v.*), postulō.

cloud, nūbēs.

colleague, collēgā.

collect, collīgō, compārō.

combatant, pugnans, -antīs.

come, vēniō.

command, jūbeō, impērō.

commander, impērātōr, prǎfectūs.

commence (*battle*), committō.

commit (*to any one*), mandō.

common, commūnīs; *common people*,
plebs.

commonwealth, respublicā.

companion, cōmēs, sōciūs.

compel, cōgō.

complain, quērōr.

conceal, cēlō.

concerning, dē.

concerns, rēfert, intērest.

concord, concordiā.

condemn, condemnō.

confer, collōquōr.

conference, collōquiūm.

confess, confīteōr.

conquer, vincō.

conscious, consciūs.

conspiracy, conjūrātiō.

conspire, conjūrō.

consul, consūl.

consult, consūlō.

contend, contendō, certō.

contest, certāmēn.

continual, perpētūūs.

control (*unable to*), impōtens, *with gen.*

convenience, commōdūm.

conversation, sermō.

converse, collōquōr.

cook, cōquō.

corn, frūmentūm.

corpse, cādāvēr.

correct, corrīgō.

corrupt, corrumpō.

cost, stārē ālīquā rē.

council, conciliūm.

count, nūmērō.

countenance, vultūs.

country, terrā, rēgiō; *finēs*, pl.

courage, virtūs, fortitūdō.

course, cursūs.

covetous, āvārūs.

cow, bōs, vaccā.

cowardly, coward, tīmīdūs.

Crassus, Crassūs.

create, creō.
crime, scēlūs.
cross, transeō.
crown, cōrōnā.
cruel, crūdēlīs, atrox.
cruelty, crūdēlītās.
cultivate, cōlō.
cup, pōcūlūm.
custom, consuētūdō; *according to*
custom, ex consuētūdīnē.
cut, sēcō.
cut down, rēscindō.
cut off, *interdict*, interdicō.

D.

dance, saltō.
danger, pēriculūm.
dare, audeō.
dart, tēlūm.
daughter, filiā.
day, diēs; *to-day*, hōdiē.
dead, mortuūs.
dear, cārūs.
death, mors.
debate, dispūtō.
deceive, fallō.
declare, confirmō, prædicō.
decoy, illiciō.
dedicate, dicō.
deem, existimō, dūcō, hābeō.
deep, altūs.
defend, dēfendō, dēfensō, tueor.
defer, diffērō.
delay, mōrōr.
delight, dēlectō, jūvō.
Delphi, Delphī, -ōrūm.
demand, poscō, postulō, flāgitō.
dense, densūs.
deny, nēgō.
depart, discēdō.
depraved, prāvūs.
deprive, privō, spōliō.
depth, altītūdō.

design, consiliūm, consultūm.
desire (v.), cūpiō; (n.), cūpīdītās, cū-
 pīdō.
desirous, āvidūs, cūpīdūs.
despair, despērō.
destitute, expers, inops.
destroy, dēleō.
destruction (*part. of* dēleō, § 185, 3 c).
determine, constituō.
devoid, vācuūs, expers.
devour, vōrō, dēvōrō.
dictator, dictātōr.
die, mōriōr.
differ (*in opinion*), dissentiō.
difference (*what difference does it*
make?) quīd intērest?
difficult, difficīlīs.
diligence, dilīgentiā.
diligent, dilīgens.
disagreeable, ingrātūs.
disagreement, dissensiō, discordiā.
disaster, cālāmītās.
discuss, jactō.
disgrace, dēdēcūs.
disgusts, pīgēt, tædēt.
dish, cātīnūs, cātīnūm.
dismiss, dīmittō.
displease, displīceō.
dispute, dispūtō.
distant (*to be*), absūm.
distinguished, præstans, præclārūs.
ditch, fossā.
divide, dividō.
do, faciō.
do good, prōsūm.
dock-yard, nāvālē.
dog, cānis.
double, dūplex; *to double*, dūplicē.
doubt, dūbitātiō; *to doubt*, dūbitō.
doubtful, dūbiūs.
dove, cōlumbā.
down-hill, deorsūm.
draw up, instruō.

dread, formidō.

drink, bibō.

drive, pellō.

Druids, Druidēs.

Dumnorix, Dumnōrix, -īgīs.

dust, pulvis.

duty, officiūm, mūnūs; *it is the king's*

duty, *my duty*, ȝ 133.

dwell, hăbitō, incōlō.

E.

each, quisquē, ūnusquisquē.

eager, avidūs, cūpiens.

eagle, aquilă.

earth, terră, tellūs.

earthen, fictilis.

easy, făcilis; *easily*, făcilē; *very easy*,
perfăcilis.

eat, edō, vescōr.

edict, edictūm; *to issue an edict*, edicō.

egg, ovūm.

eight, octō, ȝ 63.

either — *or*, aut — aut.

eloquence, elōquentiă.

eloquent, elōquens.

embassy, lēgătiō.

encamp, castră pōnō, considō.

encourage, hortōr, cōhortōr.

end, finis.

endeavor, cōnōr.

endure, fērō, pătior, tōlērō.

enemy, hostis.

enjoy, fruōr.

enmity, inimicită.

enough, sătis.

err, errō.

especial, prăcīpuūs.

especially, prăcīpuē.

establish, confirmō, constituō.

esteem, aestimō.

even, etiām; *not even*, nē quidēm.

every, omnīs.

evil (*adj.*), mălūs; (*n.*), mălūm.

excellence, prăstantiă.

excellent, prăstans.

exchange, mūtō.

excite, concitō, excitō, instigō.

excuse, purgō.

exercise, exerceō.

exhort, hortōr, cōhortōr.

expect, expectō.

expel, pellō, expellō.

explain, causăm afferē.

F.

face, făciēs.

fact (*in fact*), rē.

faith, fidēs.

faithful, fidūs, fidēlis.

fall, cădō.

fame, fāmă.

family, fămiliă.

famous, clărūs.

far (*adv.*), longē.

farmer, ăgricōlă.

farthing, ăs, assis.

fasten, figō, destinō.

father, pătēr.

father-in-law, sōcēr.

fault, culpă, delictūm, peccătūm; *it*
is my fault, pēr mē ștăt.

favor, făveō.

favorable, sēcundūs.

fear, timōr, mētūs; *to fear*, timeō,
mētuō, vĕreōr.

feather, plūmă.

feeling, sensūs.

fellow (*that fellow*), istē hōmō.

fertile, fĕrax.

fever, febris.

few, pauci.

field, ăgĕr.

fierce, ăcĕr, ătrox.

fiercely, acritĕr.

fifty, ȝ 63.

fight (*v.*), pugnō; (*n.*), pugnă.

figure, fīgūrā.
fill, compleđ, expleđ, impleđ.
find, invēniđ, rēpēriđ.
fine (v.), condemnō, muletō.
finish, conficiō.
fire, ignis; *with fire and sword*,
 ferrō ignīque.
first, primūs.
fish, piscis.
fit, aptūs, idōneūs.
five, 5 63.
flag, vexillūm.
flank, lātūs; *on the flank*, āb lātērē.
flattering, blandūs.
flattery, ādūlātiō.
flee, fūgiō, perfūgiō.
fleet, classis.
flesh, cārō.
flight, fūgā.
flock, grex.
flog, verbērō.
flow, fluō; *flow into*, influō.
flower, flōs.
fly, vōlō.
follow, sēquor.
folly, stultitiā.
fond, āmans, cūpidūs.
food, cibūs.
fool, foolish, stultūs.
foot, pēs; *at the foot of a mountain*,
 sūb montē.
footman, pēdēs.
for (conj.), nām, ēnīm, etc.
for grief (preventing cause), præ
 mārōrē.
for the purpose, causā.
for these things, ōb hās rēs.
forbid, prōhibēō, interdīcō.
force, vīs.
forces, cōpiæ.
forest, silvā.
forget, obliviscor.
form, formā, fīgūrā.

form a design, consiliūm cāpērē.
fortify, commūniō, mūniō.
fortitude, æquūs ānīmūs, fortitūdō.
fortune, fortūnā.
four, 4 63.
fratricide, frātrīcīdā.
free (adj.), libēr; (v.), libērō.
frequently, sæpē.
fresh, intēgēr.
friend, āmicūs.
friendship, āmicītiā.
fright, pāvōr, tīmōr, terrōr.
frighten, terređ.
from, ā or āb.
fruit, fructūs.
full, plēnūs.
furnish, præbeō.
furniture, sūpellex.

G.

Galba, Galbā, -æ.
garden, hortūs.
gate, portā.
Gaul, Galliā; *a Gaul*, Gallūs.
general, impērātōr.
German, Germānūs.
Germany, Germāniā.
gift, dōnūm.
gird, cingō.
girl, puellā.
give, dō.
glory, glōriā.
glutton, cōmēdō.
go, eō, prōficiscor; *go out*, exeō.
goad, stīmūlūs.
God, deūs.
goddess, deā.
gold, aurūm.
golden, aureūs.
good, bōnūs; *to do good*, prōsum.
goose, ansēr.
govern, rēgō, impērō.
government, impēriūm.

grammar, grammatică.
grandson, năpōs.
great, magnūs.
greatness, magnitūdō.
Greece, Græciā.
green, vīridīs.
grief, dōlōr, mārōr.
ground, terrā, hūmūs.
grove, nēmūs.
grow, crescō.
guard, præsidiūm, custōs.
guest, hospēs.
guidance (e.g. of nature), nātūrā dūcē.
guide, dux.
gulp down, dēvōrō.

H.

half, dimīdiūm.
hand, mănūs.
happily, beātē.
happy, beātūs.
harbor, portūs.
hard, dūrūs.
haste, prōpērātiō.
hasten, prōpērō, festīnō, mātūrō.
hasty temper, irācundiā.
hatred, ōdiūm.
have, hābeō, eſſē with dative.
he, him, is, ȳ 83, 1.
head, cāpūt.
hear, audiō.
heart, cōr.
heavy, grāvīs; *heavily*, grāvītēr.
heel, calx.
height, altitūdō, stātūrā.
help, auxiliūm.
Helvetian, Helvētiūs.
hide, abdō, lāteō.
high, altūs.
highly (at a high price), magnī, ȳ 137.
hill, collis.
himself, sē, ipsūm.

hinder, impēdiō, obstō.
hindrance, impēdimentūm.
hold, tēneō, hābeō; *hold in*, contīneō.
home, dōmūs.
honesty, prōbītās.
honor, hōnōr.
honorable, hōnestūs.
hope, spēs; *to hope*, spērō.
horn, cornū.
horned, cornīgēr.
horse, ēquūs; *on horseback*, ex ēquō, ex ēquīs.
horseman, ēquēs.
hostage, obsēs.
hour, hōrā.
house, dōmūs.
howl, ūlulō.
huge, ingens.
human, hūmānūs.
hunger, fāmēs.
hungry, ēsūriens.
hunter, vēnātōr.
hurl, conjiciō.
hurt, nōceō.
hurtful, noxiūs.

I.

I, ȳgō.
if, sī.
ignorant, ignārūs, insciūs, impērītūs.
image, effigiēs.
imitate, imītōr.
immediately, stātīm.
immortal, immortalīs.
immortality, immortalītās.
impatient, impātiens.
implore, obsēcōr.
import, importō.
important (it is), intērest.
impossible (it is), fiērī nōn pōtest.
in, into, in.
incapable of restraining, impōtens.
increase, augeō, crescō.

incredible, *incrēdibilis*.

indulge, *indulgeō*.

infant, *infans*.

infantry, *pēdītēs*.

inferior (*of less account*), *infēriōr*.

infinite, *infinītus*.

inflict, *infernē*.

inform, *certiōrēm faciēre*.

inhabit, *incōlō*.

inhabitant, *incōlā*.

injure, *nōceō*, *injūriā lācessō*.

injury, *injūriā*.

innocent, *insons*, *innōcuus*.

insolence, *insōlentiā*.

instigate, *incītō*, *instīgō*.

instruct, *instītūō*, *prācīpiō*.

instructions were given, *prāceptum est*.

integrity, *prōbītās*.

intellect, *ingēniūm*.

intimacy, *conjunctiō*.

into, *in*.

introduce, *intrōdūcō*.

intrust, *mandō*.

invade, *invādō*.

inventor, *inventōr*.

invincible, *invictus*.

invite, *invītō*.

Ireland, *Hiberniā*.

iron, *ferrum*.

island, *insulā*.

issue (*an edict*), *ēdicō*.

J.

javelin, *pīlūm*.

journey, *itēr*.

joyful, *lētūs*, *jūcundus*.

judge, *jūdex*.

Jugurtha, *Jūgurthā*, -æ.

Jupiter, § 45.

Jura, *Jūrā*.

just, *justus*, *æquus*; *just as*, *tanquā*; *just as if*, *pērindē quāsi*.

K.

keep, *servō*; *keep in*, *contīneō*; *keep off*, *prōhibeō*.

key, *clāvīs*.

kid, *hædus*.

kill, *occidō*, *trūcidō*, *nēcō*.

kind, *bēignus*.

kindness, *bēnēficiūm*.

king, *rex*.

kingdom, *regnūm*.

knife, *cultēr*.

know, *noscō*, *sciō*; *not to know*, *nesciō*.

L.

Labienu, *Lābiēnūs*.

labor, *lābōr*.

lake, *lēcūs*.

lamb, *agnūs*.

lame, *ægēr pēdībūs*.

land, *terrā*, *ægēr*.

language, *linguā*.

last, *ultimūs*.

law, *lex*, *jūs*.

lawful (*it is*), *licēt*.

lay waste, *vastō*.

lazy, *pīgēr*.

lead, *dūcō*; *to lead on*, *addūcō*, *indūcō*; *to lead over*, *transdūcō*; *to lead against*, *addūcō*; *to lead back*, *rēdūcō*.

leaf, *fōliūm*.

leap (*v.*), *sālīō*; *leap upon*, *insīliō*.

learn, *discō*.

learned, *doctus*.

leave, *rēlinquō*.

legion, *lēgiō*.

Lēman, *Lēmānūs*.

length, *longītūdō*.

less, *mīnōr*.

let (*him*), *third person imperative*.

let (*us*), *first person plural subjunctive*, § 183, *Remark*.

letter (of the alphabet), lītērā;
 (epistle), ěpistōlā.
 levy, conserībō.
 liar, mendax.
 liberty, libertās.
 lie (falsehood), mendāciūm; to lie,
 mentiōr.
 lie (to lie hid), lāteō.
 lieutenant, lēgātūs.
 life, vītā, ānīmā.
 light (adj.), lēvis; (n.), lux.
 like, sīmīlis.
 limbs, membrā.
 line of battle, āciēs.
 lion, leō.
 Liscus, Liscūs, -ī.
 little, parvūs.
 live, vīvō, hābītō.
 liver, jēcūr.
 load, ōnūs; to load, ōnērō.
 lock (of wool), floccūs.
 long (adj.), longūs; (adv.), diū.
 look at, aspiciō.
 look to, consūlō (with dative).
 lose, āmittō.
 love, āmōr; to love, āmō.
 lover, āmans.
 low, hūmīlis.
 lurk, lāteō.
 lust, cūpidō, libidō.
 lute, fīdēs, -iūm.
 Lycurgus, Lŷcurgūs, -ī.

M.

magnanimous, magnānīmūs.
 maid-servant, ancillā.
 make, faciō, reddō.
 maltreat, violō.
 man, hōmō, vīr.
 Manlius, Manliūs.
 manner, mōdūs.
 many, multī; how many, quōt.
 marble, marmōr.

Mark, Marcūs.
 marriage, matrīmōniūm.
 marry, in matrīmōniūm dūcērē.
 mast, mālūs.
 master, māgistēr, dōmīnūs.
 means, fācultās.
 measure, mētiōr.
 medicine, mēdicīnā.
 memory, mēmōriā.
 merchant, mercātōr.
 Mercury, Mercūriūs.
 messenger, nuntiūs.
 Micipsa, Micipsā, -æ.
 mile, millē passūs.
 Miletus, Milētūs.
 milk, lāc.
 mind, ānīmūs, mens.
 mindful, mēmōr.
 miserable, mīsēr.
 money, pēcūniā, nummūs.
 month, mensīs.
 moon, lūnā.
 morals, mōrēs.
 more, plūs, ampliūs, māgīs.
 mother, mātēr; of a family, mātēr-
 fāmiliās.
 mountain, mons.
 move, mōvēō.
 much, multūs.
 mullet, mūgīlis.
 multitude, multītūdō.
 murder, nēcō, occīdō.
 music, mūsicā.
 must, ȳ 178.
 my, meūs.

N.

naked, nūdūs.
 name, nōmēn.
 nation, nātiō, gens.
 nature, nātūrā.
 navigation, nāvīgātiō.
 near (prep.), prōpē; (adj.), prōpin-
 quūs.

necklace, mōnīlē.

need, ōpūs.

neglect, negligō.

neighboring, fīnītīmūs.

neither (of two), neutēr.

neither — nor, nēquē — nēquē, nēc
— nēquē.

Neptune, Neptūnūs.

nest, nīdūs; *to build a nest*, nīdīfīcō.

net, rētē.

never, nunquām, nē unquām, †
194.

new, nōvūs.

next, proximūs.

night, nox.

nine, † 63.

no, nullūs.

no one, nēmō, nē — quisquām, † 194.

nobility, nōbilitās.

noble, nōbilis.

noise, clāmōr, strēpītūs.

none, nullūs.

not, nōn.

nothing, nīhīl.

Numantian, Nūmantīnūs.

number, nūmērūs.

Numidia, Nūmīdiā.

Numidian, Nūmīdā.

O.

O! O! ōh!

O that! ūtīnām.

oath, jusjūrandūm.

obedient, dictō audiens.

obey, pāreō.

obscure, obscurūs.

obtain, pōtiōr, nanciscōr.

occupy, occupō.

off, — *two miles off*, ā duōbūs millī-
būs.

often, sēpē.

old, sēnex; *five years old*, quinquē
annōs nātūs.

oldest, maximūs nātū.

on, īn.

on horseback, ex ēquō or ēquīs.

one, ūnūs; *one of two*, altēr; *one of
many*, āliūs (*when followed by
another*).

opinion, sententiā.

opportunity, fācultās, pōtestās.

oppress, opprimō.

or, vėl, vė, aut, † 123, 2.

oracle, ōrācūlūm.

oration, ōrātiō.

orator, ōrātōr.

order, impērō, jūbeō.

origin, ōrīgīn.

ought, ōportēt, *gerundive with esse*,
† 178.

our, nostēr; *our men*, nostrī.

out of, ē, ex.

over, trans.

overcome, sūpērō, vincō.

overtake, consēquōr.

ox, bōs.

P.

pace, passūs.

pain, dōlōr.

pains, ōpērā.

panic, timōr.

paper, chartā.

parent, pārens.

parricide, parricīdā.

part, pars; *for the most part*, plē-
rumquē.

parties (by both), āb utrisquē.

partly, partīm.

pass away, transeō.

pass by, prætēreō.

patiently, æquō ānīmō.

pay, pendō.

peace, pax.

people, pōpūlūs; *common people*,
plebs, plēbēs.

perceive, intelligġ, ănimadvertġ.
perish, pĕrĕġ.
persuade, persuădeġ.
philosopher, phĭlġsġphĭs.
pirate, pĭrătă.
pitch camp, castră pġnĕrĕ.
pity, mĭsĕrcġr, mĭsĕrĕt, ȷ 135.
place, lġcĭs.
plan, consĭliĭm.
play (v.), lĭdġ.
pleasant, grătĭs.
please, plăceġ.
pleasure, vġluptăs.
plough, ărġ.
plunder (v.), prăedġr, đĭrĭpiġ; (n.), prăedă.
poet, poĕtă.
point, ăciĕs.
poison, vĕnĕnĭm.
Pompey, Pompĕiĭs.
poor, paupĕr.
post, lġcĭs.
poverty, paupertăs, ĕgestăs.
power, pġtestăs, vĭs.
powerful, pġtens.
praise (v.), laudġ; (n.), laus.
pray (who, pray?), quisnăm?
precept, prăceptĭm.
prefer, prăpġnġ.
prepare, părġ.
presence (in the presence of many), multĭs prăsentĭbĭs.
present, prăsens.
preserve, servġ, conservġ.
prevent, impĕdiġ, obstġ, dĕterreġ.
prey, prăedă.
Priam, Priămĭs.
price, prĕtiĭm.
pride, sĭperbiă.
priest, săcerdġs.
prison, carcĕr.
prisoner, captĭvĭs.
private, prĭvătĭs.

productive, fĕrax.
promise (v.), polĭccġr; (n.), prġmis-sĭm, fidĕs.
property (wealth), rĕs fămĭliărĭs.
protect, tĭtărĭ.
proud, sĭperbĭs.
providence, prġvidĕntiă.
province, prġvinciă.
provoke, lăcessġ.
prudence, prġdĕntiă.
prudent, prġdens.
public, publicĭs.
punish, pĭniġ.
punishment, supplĭciĭm.
purpose, prġpġsĭtĭm; on purpose, consultġ.
pursue, persĕquġr.
put, pġnġ; put into winter quarters, ĭn hĭbernă collġcărĕ.
put over, prăfĭciġ.
Pythagoras, Pĭthăgġrăs.

Q.

queen, rĕgĭnă.
quickly, cĕlĕrĭtĕr.

R.

race, cursĭs.
rain, imbĕr.
ram, ăriĕs.
rampart, vallĭm.
rank, ordġ.
reach, ăd lġcĭm pervĕnĭrĕ.
read, lĕgġ.
ready, promptĭs, părătĭs.
reason (mental faculty), rătĭġ.
rebellion, rĕbellĭġ.
rebuke, rĕprĕhendġ.
recall, rĕvġcġ.
receive, accĭpiġ.
recent, rĕcens.
recollect, mĕmĭnĭ.
redress (to ask), rĕs rĕpĕtĕrĕ.

refinement, hūmānītās.
refrain, sibi tempērārē quīn.
reign (in the reign of), ālīquō reg-
 nantē.
reject, rēpūdiō.
rejoice, gaudeō.
relieve, lēvō.
religion, rēlīgiō.
remain, māneō.
remember, mēmīnī, mēmōriā tēneō.
remind, mōneō, admōneō.
render, reddō.
renew, rēdintēgrō.
repair, rēfīciō.
repent, pœnitēt, § 135.
reply, rēspondeō.
report, rēnuntiātiō.
reprove, reprēhendō.
republic, respublicā.
resolve, stātūō.
respect, rēvēreōr.
rest, rēlīquūs, § 128, Rem. 8.
retard, tardō.
retire, excēdō, sē rēcīpērē.
retreat, rēcīpiō.
return, rēdeō, reddō.
reverence, rēvēreōr.
reward, prāmiūm.
Rhine, Rhēnūs.
Rhone, Rhōdānūs.
rich, dīvēs.
riches, dīvītiæ.
ride, ēquitō.
river, flūmēn, amnīs.
road, viā, ītēr.
robber, prædō, latrō.
rock, rūpēs, saxūm.
Roman, Rōmānūs.
Rome, Rōmā.
rope, rūdens.
rose, rōsā.
rough, aspēr.
rout, fūgō, profīgō.

rule, rēgō.
run, currō.
run forward, prōcurrō.

S.

sacred, sēcēr, sanctūs.
sacrifice, mactō.
safe, tūtūs.
safety, sālūs.
sagacious, argūtūs.
sail, vėlūm; to sail, nāvīgō.
sailor, nautā.
sail-yard, antennā.
sake, causā.
same, īdēm.
satisfactorily, ex sententiā.
satisfy, expleō, sātīsfāciō.
savage, ātrox, fērūs.
save, servō.
say, dīcō, inquām.
scout, explōrātōr.
sea, mārē.
search out, explōrō, investīgō.
seat, sēdilē.
secede, sēcēdō.
second, sēcundūs.
see, vīdeō.
seek, pētō, quærō.
seem, vīdeōr.
seize, occūpō, rāpiō, arrīpiō.
select, dēlīgō.
self, ipsē.
sell, vendō.
senate, sēnātūs.
send, mittō; send forward, prāmittō
sense, sensūs.
separate, dīvīdō, sēcernō.
Sequan, Sēcuanūs.
serpent, serpēns.
servant, servūs.
serve, serviō.
service, offīciūm.
set, pōnō; set up, collōcō, prōpōnō.

seven, ž 63.
severe, grāvīs.
severely, grāvītēr.
shade, umbrā.
shame, pūdōr.
sharp, ācēr, ācūtūs.
sheaf, mergēs.
shear, tondeō.
sheep, ōvis.
shepherd, pastōr.
shield, scūtūm.
ship, nāvīs.
shore, litūs.
short, brēvis.
shortness, brēvītās.
shout, clāmōr; *to shout*, clāmō.
show, monstrō.
side, lātūs, pars.
signal, signūm.
silver, argentūm.
sin, peccātūm.
since, quūm, quōniām.
sing, cantō.
singing, cantūs.
sister, sōrōr.
sit, sēdeō.
six, ž 63.
size, magnītūdō.
skirmisher, vēlē.
slave, servūs.
slavery, servītūs.
slay, trūcidō, occīdō.
sleep, dormiō.
slight, lēvis.
slinger, fundītōr.
slow, tardūs, pīgēr.
small, parvūs, exīguūs.
snakes, insīdiā.
snatch up, arripō.
soldier, mīlē.
some, āliquis, quīdām, etc., ž 89.
son, filiūs.
son-in-law, gēnēr.

soon, mātūrē.
soul, ānīmūs.
space, spātīūm.
spare, parcō.
speak, lōquōr.
speech, ōrātiō.
spend, consūmō; *to spend time*, āgō.
spoil (booty), prædā.
spur, calcār.
stag, cervūs.
stand, stō; *to stand out*, exsistō.
state, cīvītās.
stature, stātūrā.
stay, māneō.
still (as yet), ādhūc.
stir up, excitō, concītō.
stone, lāpis.
storm, tempestās; *to storm*, expugnō.
strength, rōbūr, vīs.
stretch (out), porrīgō.
strike, percūtīō.
strip, nūdō.
strong, fīrmūs, vālīdūs.
strongly, vēhementēr.
study, stūdiā, pl.
subdue, pācō, dōmō.
subjugate, sūbīgō.
such, tālīs.
sudden, sūbītūs, rēpentīnūs.
suddenly, rēpentē, sūbītō.
sue for, pētō.
suffer, pātīōr.
sufficiently, sātīs.
suitable, aptūs, idōneūs.
summer, æstās.
sun, sōl.
sunset, sōlīs occāsūs.
sup, cōenō.
superior, præstantiōr.
superstition, sūperstītiō.
support, sustīneō.
suppose, arbitrōr, ōpīnōr, existīmō.
suppress, opprīmō.

surrender, dēditiō; *to surrender*,
trādō, dēdō.

surround, circumdō, circumfundō.

suspect, suspicōr.

sustain, sustineō.

sweet, dulcis.

swell, augeō.

swift, celer, velox.

swiftly, celerit̃er.

swiftness, celerit̃as.

swim across, trānō.

sword, glādiūs; *the sword*, ferrūm.

T.

table, mensā.

take, sūmō, cāpiō; *take possession*
of, occupō.

talent, tālentūm.

talk, lōquōr, collōquōr.

tame, dōmō.

teach, doceō.

teacher, doctōr, māgistēr.

teaching, doct̃rinā.

tear, lacrimā.

tear to pieces, lāniō.

temper (hasty), irācundiā.

tempest, tempestās.

temple, templūm.

ten, 10.

tenacious, tēnax.

tenth, dēcimūs, 1/10.

terrible, ātrox, terrībilis.

terrify, perterreō.

than, quā.

their, suūs, eōrūm, 3, 2.

then, tūm.

thick, densūs.

thief, fūr.

thing, rēs.

think, reōr, cōgītō, existīmō, pūtō.

third, tertiūs, 1/3.

thirst, sitis; *to thirst*, sitiō.

thirty, 30.

this, hīc.

though, 1/200.

thousand, millē.

Thracian, Thrax.

threaten, minōr.

three, trēs, 3.

through, pēr.

throw, jāciō, jactō; *throw across*,
transjiciō.

thrust through, transfigō.

thunder, tōnitrū.

till, dūm, dōnēc, quoad.

time, tempūs.

to, ad, in.

together, unā, con-.

too, 1/68, Rem. 3.

too much, nimium.

tooth, dens.

top, summūs (mons, etc.).

torture, crūciātūs.

towards, ad, adversūs.

tower, turris.

town, oppidūm.

townsman, oppidānūs.

traitor, prōditōr.

transport, transportō.

treachery, prōditiō.

treaty, fœdūs.

tree, arbōr.

tribune, tribūnūs.

tribute, stipendiūm.

triple, triplex.

trouble, ōpērā, lābōr.

true, vērūs.

trumpet, tūbā.

trust, confidō.

trusting, frētūs.

truth, vērītās.

Tullia, Tulliā.

Tully, Tulliūs.

tumult, tūmultūs.

turf, cæspēs.

turn, vertō.

twelve, twelfth, ž 63.

twenty, two, etc., ž 63.

U.

unable, impōtens; to be unable, nōn possē.

unaccustomed, insuētūs.

unarmed, ĭnermīs.

uncertain, incertūs.

under, sūb.

understand, intelligō.

undertake, suscipiō.

unduly, prætēr mōdūm.

undutifulness, impiētās.

uneasy, anxiūs, sollicitūs.

unfortunate, infēlix.

ungrateful, ingrātūs.

unhurt, intēgēr.

unjust, ĭnīquūs.

unknown, ignōtūs.

unless, nīsī.

unlike, dissīmīlis.

unmindful, immēmōr.

until, dūm, dōnēc, quoad.

unwilling, invitūs; to be unwilling, nōlō.

uproar, tūmultūs.

urge on, concitō, incitō.

use, ūsūs.

useful, ūtilīs.

useless, ĭnūtīlis.

V.

vacant (to be), vācō.

valor, virtūs, fortītūdō.

value, prētiūm.

vast, ingens, immānīs.

very, valdē, maxīmē (superlative).

vex, vexō.

vice, vitiūm.

victory, victōriā.

village, vīcūs.

violate, violō.

violence, vīs.

virgin, virgō.

virtue, virtūs, prōbitās.

voice, vox.

vow, vōtūm.

vulture, vultūr.

W.

wage, gērō; wage upon, infērō.

wait for, expectō.

walk, ambŭlō.

wall, mūrūs.

wander, errō, vāgōr.

want (to be in want of), ēgeō.

war, bellūm.

warlike, fērox, ācēr.

warn, mōneō, admōneō.

watch, vīgīliā; to watch, vīgīlō.

water, āquā.

wave, fluctūs.

way, viā, ĭtēr.

weak, ĭfirmūs.

weary, fessūs, dēfessūs.

weep, lacrimō, fleō.

weight, pondūs.

well, bēnēc; to be well, vāleō.

what? quīd? quī? what, quōd.

when, quūm.

whence, undē.

where, ūbī.

where in the world, ūbī gentiūm.

whether, nūm, utrūm, ān.

which? quīs? ūtēr (of two).

whirlwind, turbō.

white, albūs.

whither, quō.

who? quī? quīs?

whole, tōtūs.

why? cūr? quārē?

wicked, ĭmprōbūs.

wide, lātūs.

wife, uxōr, conjux.

wild boar, āpēr.

willing (to be), vólǒ.
wind, ventūs.
wine, vīnūm.
wing, ālǎ.
winter, hiems; *to winter* (spend the winter), hiēmǒ.
winter quarters, hibernǎ.
wisdom, sǎpientiǎ.
wise, sǎpiens.
wish, vólǒ.
with, cūm.
without, sīnē.
witness, testīs.
wolf, lūpūs.
woman, mūliēr.
wonder, mīrǒr.
wonderful, mīrūs.
wood, sīlvǎ.
word, verbūm; *bring word*, nuntiǒ.
work, ōpūs.
work-horse, jūmentūm.
world, mundūs, orbīs terrārūm.

worse, *worst*, pejǒr, pessīmūs.
worship, cǒlǒ.
worthy, dignūs.
wound, vulnūs; *to wound*, vulnērǒ.
wrath, irǎ.
wretched, mīsēr.
write, scribǒ.
writer, scriptǒr.
wrong (to do), peccǒ, mǎlē făciǒ.

Y.

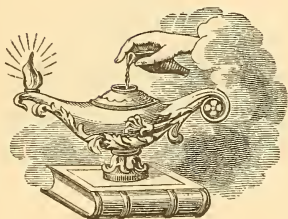
yard, antennǎ.
year, annūs.
yearly, quǒtannīs.
yesterday, hērī.
yet, tǎmēn.
yield, cēdǒ, concēdǒ.
yoke, jūgūm.
you, tū, vōs.
young, jūvēnīs, ādōlescens.
your, tuūs, vestēr.
youth, jūventūs.

THE END.

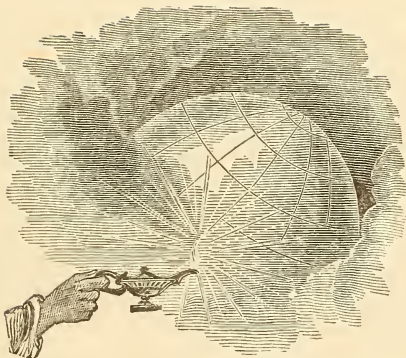
ERRATA.

- Page 128. Nom. plural neuter of *quis*, for quæ read quǎ.
- “ 157. Imperative Future, 2d plural, for (rě-*gǐm'*-ǐ-nī) read (rě-*gēm'*-ǐ-nī).
- “ 165. Imperative Future, 3d Conj., 2d plural, for (*īm'*-ǐnī) read (*ēm'*-ǐnī).

APPROVED SCHOOL-BOOKS.







F. H. BUTLER & Co.,

137 S. FOURTH STREET, PHILADELPHIA,

Invite the attention of Teachers and others interested in education to the following list of highly approved school-books. They can be had of the publishers, or may be ordered of any bookseller.

MITCHELL'S NEW SERIES OF GEOGRAPHIES.

MITCHELL'S FIRST LESSONS IN GEOGRAPHY FOR BEGINNERS, with Maps and Engravings.

MITCHELL'S NEW PRIMARY GEOGRAPHY, illustrated by twenty colored Maps and a hundred Engravings, designed as an Introduction to the author's New Intermediate.

MITCHELL'S NEW INTERMEDIATE. A system of Geography designed for the use of Schools and Academies; illustrated by twenty-three copper-plate Maps from the latest authorities, and embellished with numerous Engravings.

BUTLER'S PUBLICATIONS.

MITCHELL'S NEW SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY AND ATLAS.

MITCHELL'S NEW SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY. A system of Geography, Physical, Political, and Descriptive. 1 vol., small 12mo, 456 pages. Illustrated by two hundred Engravings, with Tables of the Principal Cities of the world, and their population, and a list of nearly one thousand Geographical Words, with their explanation and meaning.

MITCHELL'S NEW SCHOOL ATLAS. A series of forty-four copper-plate Maps, compiled from the great Atlases of Keith Johnston, Kiepert, the Geographical Institute of Weimar, from the United States Coast Survey, the Surveys of the War Department and of the several States, and from other reliable authorities, drawn and engraved expressly to illustrate Mitchell's New School Geography; with important Geographical Tables, and a Pronouncing Vocabulary of ten thousand Geographical Names found in these works.

MITCHELL'S NEW ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY, Classical and Sacred. An entirely new edition, drawn from the best authorities, Ancient and Modern; illustrated by numerous Engravings.

MITCHELL'S OLD SERIES OF GEOGRAPHIES.

Revised and Brought down to the Present Time.

MITCHELL'S (Old) PRIMARY GEOGRAPHY. An easy introduction to the study of Geography, designed for the instruction of children, with one hundred Engravings and sixteen colored Maps.

MITCHELL'S (Old) SCHOOL GEOGRAPHY AND ATLAS. Revised edition. A system of Modern Geography, comprising a description of the present state of the world and its Grand Divisions: North America, South America, Europe, Asia, Africa, and Oceanica, with their several Empires, Kingdoms, States, Territories, &c.; embellished with numerous Engravings, and accompanied by an Atlas of thirty-four copper-plate Maps.

MITCHELL'S (Old) ANCIENT GEOGRAPHY AND ATLAS. A system of Classical and Sacred Geography; embellished with numerous Engravings, and accompanied by an Ancient Atlas of twelve copper-plate Maps.

MITCHELL'S GEOGRAPHICAL QUESTION-BOOK.

MITCHELL'S BIBLICAL GEOGRAPHY.

GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL HISTORIES.

These Histories are written in a lively and pleasing style, abounding in illustrative anecdotes, incidents, and descriptions, the histories, in all cases, being based on Geography, illustrated by Maps. The works are freely supplied with Engravings, giving correct ideas of manners and customs, views of cities, monuments, battles, &c. It is believed that there is no series of familiar histories, in America or Europe, that can compare with these, either in interest, accuracy, or beauty of mechanical execution.

GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

A Pictorial History of the United States, with Notices of other Portions of America. For the use of Schools. A new edition, re-written, enlarged, and newly illustrated. By Samuel G. Goodrich. 1 vol. 12mo.

GOODRICH'S AMERICAN CHILD'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES.

An Introduction to the author's Pictorial History of the United States.

GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF ENGLAND.

A Pictorial History of England, Scotland, and Ireland. For the use of Schools. By Samuel G. Goodrich. 1 vol. 12mo.

GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF ROME.

A Pictorial History of Ancient Rome, with a Sketch of the History of Modern Italy. For the use of Schools. By Samuel G. Goodrich. 1 vol. 12mo.

GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF GREECE.

A Pictorial History of Greece, Ancient and Modern. For the use of Schools. By Samuel G. Goodrich. 1 vol. 12mo.

GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL HISTORY OF FRANCE.

A Pictorial History of France. For the use of Schools. By Samuel G. Goodrich. 1 vol. 12mo.

GOODRICH'S PARLEY'S COMMON SCHOOL HISTORY OF THE WORLD.

A Brief Compend of Universal History. For the use of Schools. A new edition, revised, enlarged, and newly illustrated. By Samuel G. Goodrich. 1 vol. 12mo.

GOODRICH'S PICTORIAL NATURAL HISTORY;

Embracing a View of the Mineral, Vegetable, and Animal Kingdoms. For the use of Schools. By Samuel G. Goodrich. Three hundred Engravings. 1 vol. 12mo.

BUTLER'S PUBLICATIONS.

ORMSBY'S GUIDE TO GEOGRAPHY. Embracing Primary Reading Lessons, Written and Oral Methods combined, Map Exercises, systematically arranged, a Chart of Latitude and Longitude, and Calculations in Mathematical Geography. Designed to accompany the Maps of Mitchell's New Intermediate Geography. By George S. Ormsby, Supt. Public Schools, Xenia, Ohio. With numerous Engravings.

SCHOOL HISTORY OF MARYLAND. To which are added brief Biographies of distinguished Statesmen, Philanthropists, Theologians, &c. With numerous Engravings. Prepared for the Schools of Maryland.

BINGHAM'S LATIN GRAMMAR. A Grammar of the Latin Language, for the use of Schools and Academies, with Exercises and Vocabularies. By William Bingham, A. M., Superintendent of the Bingham School, Mebaneville, North Carolina.



OTHER APPROVED SCHOOL-BOOKS,

PUBLISHED AND FOR SALE

BY E. H. BUTLER & CO.,

OR MAY BE ORDERED OF ANY BOOKSELLER.

PROF. HOWS' SERIES OF LADIES' READERS.

HOWS' JUVENILE LADIES' READER.

HOWS' JUNIOR LADIES' READER.

HOWS' LADIES' READER.

HOWS' LADIES' BOOK OF READING AND RECITATIONS.

PROF. COPPEE'S SERIES.

COPPEE'S ELEMENTS OF RHETORIC.

COPPEE'S ELEMENTS OF LOGIC.

COPPEE'S ACADEMIC SPEAKER.

PROF. HART'S SERIES.

HART'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR.

HART'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR. Part I.

HART'S CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

HART'S CLASS BOOK OF POETRY.

HART'S CLASS BOOK OF PROSE.

FLEMING & TIBBINS' FRENCH AND ENGLISH AND ENGLISH
AND FRENCH DICTIONARY.

FLEMING & TIBBINS' FRENCH AND ENGLISH AND ENGLISH
AND FRENCH DICTIONARY, ABRIDGED.

NUGENT'S FRENCH AND ENGLISH AND ENGLISH AND FRENCH
DICTIONARY.

BUTLER'S PUBLICATIONS.

- PORNEY'S FRENCH SPELLER, 12mo. '
DONNEGAN'S GREEK LEXICON, 8vo.
HALDEMAN'S ENGLISH AFFIXES.
GOULD'S ADAMS' LATIN GRAMMAR.
RAMSHORN'S LATIN SYNONYMS, 12mo.
COMSTOCK'S ELOCUTION, 12mo.
BECKER'S BOOK-KEEPING, 8vo.
BECKER'S SYSTEM OF BOOK-KEEPING, 8vo.
REID'S INTELLECTUAL POWERS. By Walker.
STEWART'S PHILOSOPHY. By Walker.
SMITH'S ENGLISH GRAMMAR, 12mo, half bound.
SCHOLAR'S COMPANION. Revised by Bailey. 12mo.
STOCKHARDT'S CHEMISTRY. Edited by Dr. Pierce.
STOCKHARDT'S CHEMISTRY, bound with Cooke's Problems.
RODGERS' MENSURATION, 12mo, half bound.
RODGERS' KEY TO MENSURATION, 12mo, half bound.
TENNEY'S GEOLOGY, 12mo.
VIRI ROMÆ, 8vo.
HISTORIA SACRA, 18mo.
HASKINS' SELECTIONS FROM THE SCRIPTURES.
ANGELL'S READER, No. 1. 18mo.
ANGELL'S READER, No. 2. 18mo.
ANGELL'S READER, No. 3. 18mo.
ANGELL'S READER, No. 4. 12mo.
ANGELL'S READER, No. 5. 12mo.
ANGELL'S READER (Select Reader), No. 6. 12mo.

Deacidified using the Bookkeeper process.
Neutralizing agent: Magnesium Oxide
Treatment Date: July 2006

PreservationTechnologies
A WORLD LEADER IN PAPER PRESERVATION

111 Thomson Park Drive
Cranberry Township, PA 16066
(724) 779-2111

LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 003 037 317 0

